

# INDIAN WOMEN

Edited by

Devaki Jain



Publications Division,  
Ministry of Information and  
Broadcasting, Government of India.



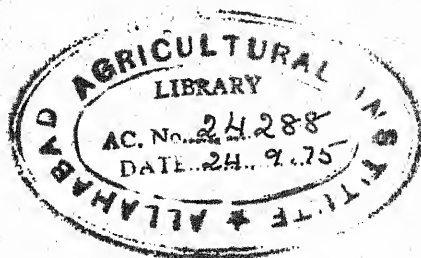


January 1975 (Pausa 1896)

©

Price Rs. 10-00

396  
J1991



Published by the Director, Publications Division,  
Ministry of Information and Broadcasting,  
Government of India,  
Patiala House, New Delhi-110 001

Sales Emporia, Publications Division:

Super Bazar (2nd floor),  
Connaught Circus, New Delhi

Botawala Chambers, Sir Pherozechah Mehta Road,  
Bombay-400 001

8, Esplanade East, Calcutta-700 001

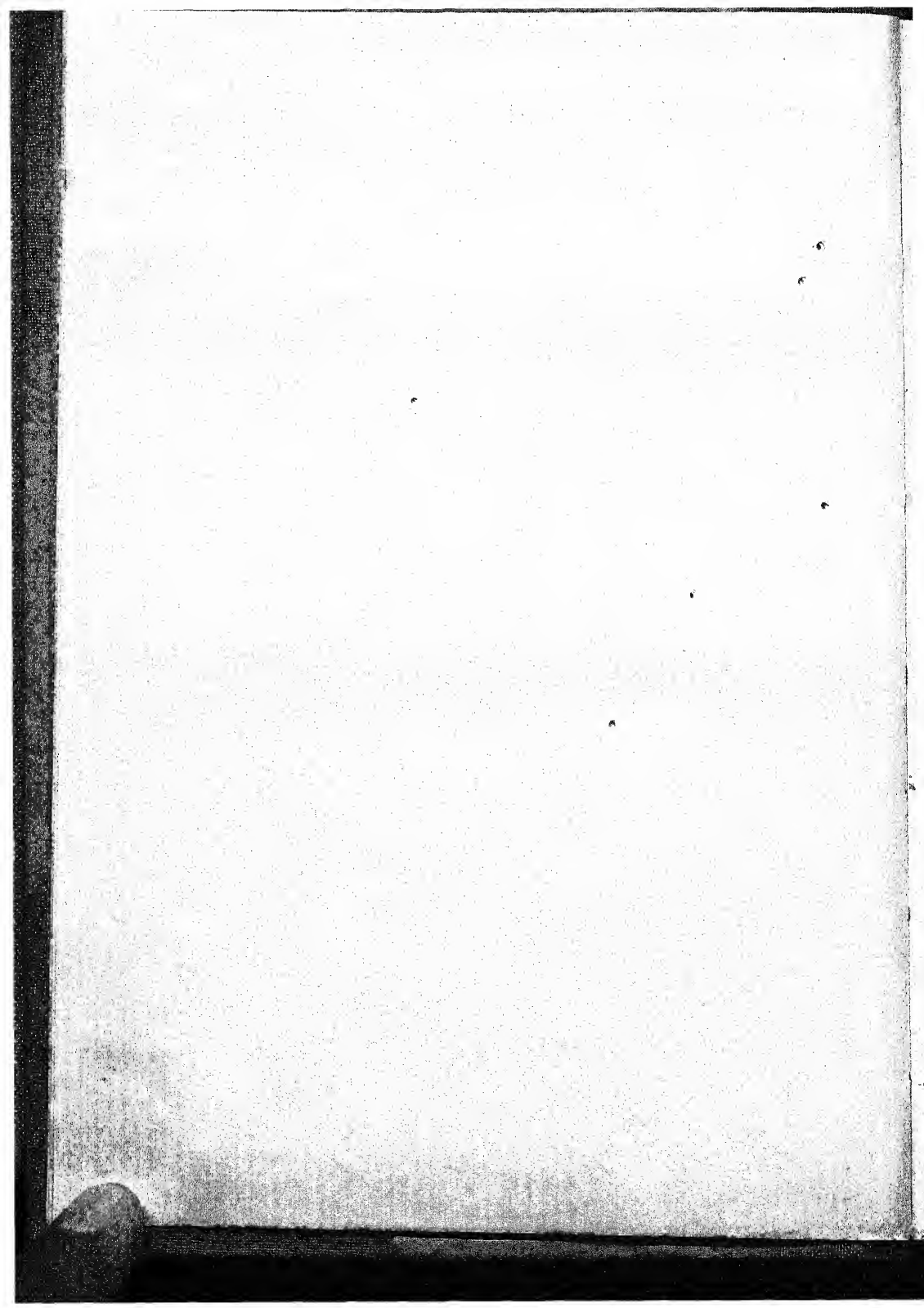
Shastri Bhawan, 35, Haddows Road, Madras-600 006

Printed at Navajivan Press, Ahmedabad-380 014

# Acknowledgements



19.9.75 JRCG P. 121.13.1.9. 11



## Acknowledgements

For making me aware of the woman issue by inviting me to compile this volume, I owe Sheila Dhar, of the Publications Division, Government of India, my first expression of gratitude.

Kamaladevi Chattopadhyay has been the wise counsellor for this compilation. She indicated the areas which needed investigation and guided me to persons who were interested in the subject.

Andre Beteille, Ashok Rudra, Ravi Dayal and Rajani Desai have been the exploited friends. Sparing time, offering ideas and encouragement as and when required. Every contributor can, in fact, be grouped with these four just mentioned. They have all allowed time generously for discussing not only their articles but the whole book—and extended themselves far beyond the normal role of contributors.

Pitambar Pant, Wendy Sommer, my father and my husband read the manuscript and offered suggestions which have made substantial improvements to the book. Special thanks are due to Benoy Sarkar for designing the book and its cover; and to Madan Mahatta and T. S. Natarajan for the photographs. D. Anjaneyulu and Shakuntala Mahawal have been strong allies in the Publications Division steering the manuscript to its final publication.

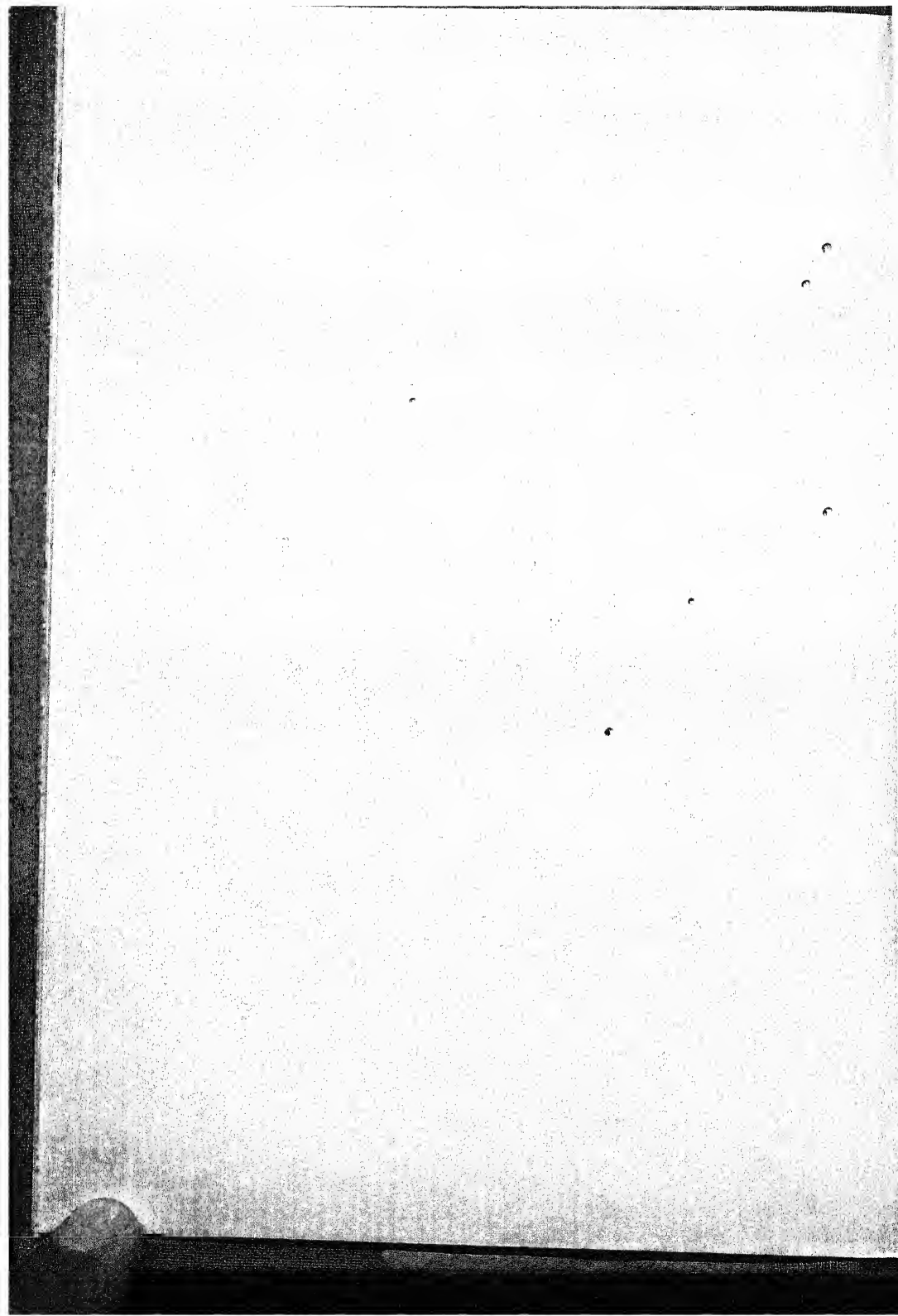
One person who absorbed the many burdens and trials of this book is Shri Niwas—who for one year enthusiastically tended

and typed the papers that have become this book. Others who most generously gave me similar assistance are Antoinette Lee, P. Vasudevan and V. K. Thakur. To all of them I owe my deepest gratitude.

# Introduction

## Devaki Jain

Mrs. Devaki Jain (b. 1933), M.A. (Oxon.), who taught Economics at the Miranda House, Delhi University, is now engaged in research, and contributes articles on current affairs to newspapers and periodicals.





## Introduction

In the first decade after Independence, when India was seeking to re-establish an identity, every aspect of its life needed to be explored, considered, recognised. Some of the images that had been formed while it was a colony had to be effaced and more authentic ones offered. An earlier book on *Women of India* edited by Tara Ali Baig and brought out by the Publications Division in 1958, was compiled in that spirit. It described the achievements of Indian women and illustrated how they were partners with men in a variety of activities. Most of the contributors to that book were outstanding women, specialists in their field.

Today in the 1970s the curiosity is of a different kind—as is to be expected. The country has had twenty-five years to establish an identity, to display its characteristics and capabilities. In fact, some women ask “Why a book on women? Why not on the men of India?”—implying that there is really no need to single women out, that they are part of a society, and its problems and hopes are their problems and hopes. Such a reaction in a sense measures the change between the fifties and the seventies.

There are others, however, who believe that women in India and elsewhere do have to identify themselves and press their case for a better place in the society, that the task of the women’s movement is not yet over.

Then there is the controversial hypothesis—supported by persons in India and abroad—that there is something unique about Indian women. They seem to be participating more than

## Indian Women

in other societies at the highest levels of leadership and decision-making with confidence and ease.

Finally, there is the phenomenon which has made all this curiosity and interest urgent and important—the emergence of the women's liberation movement in the West. Whatever be the extravagances of the literature and discussions pouring out from this movement, it has brought to the surface the issue of the role of men and women in society in general. It is questioning the traditional roles that have been assigned to the sexes based on biology and custom, nature and culture. It is challenging men and women to assess themselves again. It has certainly made people self-conscious about making stereotyped statements on the capabilities of women.

The movement may not be new in the sense that people of all ages have commented upon the power and energy of women, on the significance of the roles they can play. The same people have appealed from time to time for nations to tap the intelligence, the energies of women. Some may have said that even through the family and household, women's power can be harnessed. Others may have widened this sphere to embrace all activities. The general theme has been to deplore the tendency to relegate women to areas where they play no role in decision-making or where their dignity is undermined.

The women's liberation movement, however, has widened the sphere of these old messages. It has created an interest amongst all kinds of people all over the world to find out more about women and the roles they are playing. The number of books being written, commissions and committees being appointed to study the status of women, is a reflection of this interest.

But is it possible to define, to give content to the terms equality, liberation, status?

At first sight, it may seem simple enough to separate the areas of hard facts—say, statistics relating to economics, law, education

and so on—from the soft areas of judgement. But this simplicity is an illusion. Even in deciding what are the elements to be chosen to, say, establish equality with men or in deciding the criteria to be used in judging the data, value creeps in. For example, the formulation of goals for women in terms, say, of equality with men, is only one view. Another formulation could be—what goals would women set for themselves, irrespective of what the men have or want?

Which of these two formulations would be acceptable to any set of persons would depend on whether women identify themselves as a category in some ways different from the men—say, with different dispositions and interests—or not.

Among ardent feminists the basic biological difference is accepted, but doubt is cast whether this difference should be extended to aptitudes. The assumption that women are more naturally the tenders of home and children, is now challenged in the West—as home and children have often imprisoned women, beyond endurance. In their demand that men share or take over domestic responsibility there is a suggestion that there are no real differences in drives and dispositions.

On the other hand, some of those who are doing research in hormones and behaviour suggest that the physiological apparatus does influence aptitudes, the quality of emotional needs and expressions. Women have certain special structures because they create and deliver a complete organism—namely, a baby. This biological function of procreation of the race develops in her certain reflexes and aptitudes. Characteristics like softness and warmth of the female body may be playing a satisfying role for the infant. These features of the women's body are consequential to the hormonal milieu of the female. Sensory signals arising from suckling and physical contact with the baby, provide gratification and a sense of fulfilment. It is suggested that the patience and sense of achievement so obtained goes a long way to make her better adaptable to social stresses.

Liberation, another term in use, becomes very vague unless one postulates an objective. If child and home care are considered "lower" chores, then liberation for women would mean *not* having to do these. But if child and home care provide a source of joy and fulfilment—then liberation may have to be from other types of bondage, for example,—liberation from a constricting, male view of women.

Status, if seen as a derivative, the result of a pattern of relationships between men and women—a pattern composed of images they have of themselves and each other—certainly cannot be evaluated by quantifiable measures either. Status for one set of women may be in relation to what other women have—now or in the past; to others what men have, and to a third what attributes they think men would respect. Status really lies in the eyes of the beholder.

There is bound to be a great deal of difference of opinion between societies, between generations as well as probably within them in what is the preferred group of characteristics a woman should aspire for. It is doubtful whether the difference in this area can ever be finally resolved. It is a question of morals rather than facts.

The endeavour in this book of essays is to see if the Indian experience has anything specific to add to the discussion on the role of men and women in societies and on the issue of equality of men and women. Most of the authors are persons who have views and ideas for policy in the subjects they handle. Hence the book does not claim to be a document of applied research but a collection of reflections.

Since not only the selection of writers and topics but the inferences drawn from the essays might perhaps reflect my biases, it is best that these are revealed at this point.

I think imitating men is an unsatisfactory goal for women and such a tendency must be a *reaction* to a situation where women

feel ill-treated by men. Technological change—apart from religious and social attitudes—must be held primarily responsible for the unhappiness of women in the West. Motherhood has meant being house-bound; beauty has meant exploitation. But in as much as their rejection of traditional roles springs from the vulnerability it has implied, it is not, in my view, a sufficiently free choice.

If the goal is not only to improve physical conditions but also achieve a "status", a regard by others in the society which lends authority, power, then action, it seems to me, should be not in the direction of denying a separate identity but in removing obstacles, such as immobility, an optionless occupation of menial tasks, humiliation in terms of non-participation in decision-making and so on. Child care, being beautiful, being protectively handled and protecting in return, the extra touches of self-denial and self-neglect involved in child-rearing, all can in certain circumstances mould women to be "superior" to men—command the respect of men and children.

Merging into the population need not always be an advantage. Keeping one's colour can be a definite advantage when the colour confers privileges or denotes certain attributes that are well regarded or feared. The Negroes in America in their first bid towards equality with the majority of whites, sought to merge with them by in some ways pressing down their distinguishing features and imitating the whites. Now they assert their colour to gain equality. This assertion has brought to them more respect, in my view, than the earlier imitation.

It seems to me that it is recognition of the distinctive features of womanhood, an identification of its advantages, and the exploitation of those by women that will give them status.

It is also my view that the situation in India is not yet as much a class war as it is sometimes made out to be in some of the Western countries. The co-ordinates of the situation here are different. There has not been the particular kind of separation



of sexes and exploitation which engenders a reaction. However, there are many articulate women here too who would vehemently deny any favourable description of the condition of Indian women. They would reject the thesis that the tolerance, self-sacrifice, acceptance of roles by them have sustained a certain harmony and beauty in Indian life. They would point to the cost—namely, the health and freedom of the Indian women. They would point to the damage done to personality development by traditional society.

Accepting the validity of this view, I would still suggest that a sound understanding by men and women of the biological difference and its implications may provide a more enduring basis to any quest for liberation and equality than its denial.

I believe that in India, at least in the dominant traditional sector, there is a recognition of this difference and an adaptation of beliefs, institutions and practices to accommodate it. I think this has yielded qualitative advantages to Indian women—as indeed it has made for disadvantages. Therefore, the questions which seem important and urgent to me are: What are these beliefs, institutions and practices? Is there some inspiration here which can help avoid the imitative march towards equality which seems to dominate the women's movement in the Western countries? Is it possible to work out a way of life where the advantages are harnessed and the hindrances removed?

It is my hope that these essays collectively will give some hints towards answering the questions.

The volume consists of two parts. In Part I, the first five articles by Romila Thapar, Lakshmi Menon, Kamaladevi Chattopadhyay, Ashok Rudra and M. A. Sreenivasan scan the historical background, describe the kinds of experience women had in different eras in India's past — near and distant, try to account for the reason for variations, and then reflect on how these experiences might affect the role, the behaviour of Indian women today.

The next six articles by Andre Beteille, Veena Das, Margaret Kalakdina, Shyamala Pappu, Ester Boserup and Ashish Bose attempt a closer examination of the current patterns, highlight the most notable features in the life of Indian women today and point out areas for further study and reflection by policy makers.

- In Part II descriptions are presented of different groups of women. Verrier Elwin's essay on Tribal Women is taken from the 1958 edition as it is still the most sensitive and comprehensive study of the subject. The essay on Muslim Women shows the similarity of problems of women in India irrespective of religion as well as the effects of differences in religious and social practices. An attempt is made to take a close look at the poorer, more inarticulate women in rural as well as urban areas by Olivia Stokes, G. Morris Carstairs, Susan Mody and Sharayu Mhatra; while Imtiaz Ahmed, Kapila Vatsyayan and Mina Swaminathan present some of the achievements of Indian women in specific fields. Women from three professions monopolised by them—nursing, the monastic life and prostitution—are interviewed by Gita Aravamudan and Parvathi Aiyappan.

What emerges from the views and experiences collected in this volume is a troubling, complicated but challenging picture of social change in India and its consequence.

Indian civilisation seems to have given woman a place in society where she could exercise her ability, her judgement, without having to forfeit any of her essential femininity. Though historical events and ideas disfigured some of this structure, the 20th century as well as the breakthrough given by the freedom struggle removed some of the disabilities in one rapid sweep. Indian women could claim, at least *de jure*, to have some of the most advanced political and legal provisions. Technological change with its effects—urbanisation, emergence of nuclear families, the separation of men and women for work—is, however, changing the relationship between men and women more than all the historical onslaughts.



The picture of men stampeding to work far away from home, in fast trains—while the women cook and wash, tend the children and wait for their return, already covers a small part of India and might even become representative of it. Though the middle class women's plea may be for opportunity to work with men, for the woman working in the fields as an agricultural labourer, the dream is to give up the fields and tend the home primarily. The labouring woman then becomes the middle class woman, toiling at home for husband and children. She will possibly return again to work but under totally new social relationships.

Without the family or community as umbrella, without the traditional equation between men and women, without the old self-image of the women themselves, these women become vulnerable. Like their counterpart in the West their physiology becomes a hindrance, traditional beliefs another weight on their feet. These groups, subject to change, require legal protection, new types of assistance by the State and society.

Another phenomenon that is brought out is that while in other countries, especially amongst the economically advanced ones, women outlive men, in India men outlive women.

Could it be due to the neglect of women in India? Could the preference for the male child in Hindu life lead to a kind of homicide? Or could it be that in the developed countries males die off earlier than females because of the stress of earning a living and coping with family life? An overall look at demographic and related data shows that women are bearing the greater share of the burden of poverty, poverty whether measured in terms of scarce resources—food, clothing, shelter, medical care, education, and rest—or in terms of the lack of control over nature—famine, drought, floods, disease.

Another set of revelations relate to institutions, practices and their implications. In this analysis it is noticed that every asset has a liability—and hence once again the problem of inference and judgement has to be faced. For example, girls brought up

in Indian style—as less preferred to boys—learn to shoulder responsibility, to look after themselves and others, to manage the kitchen or younger children, or other circumstances whatever the constraints, and later to adapt themselves to new situations with no fuss. This preference for the male child, therefore, in a paradoxical way pushes the female child into being the physically as well as emotionally stronger person. Having to withstand discrimination, having to care for brothers, to bear responsibility lays the foundation for the strong wife and mother of the future. Men in contrast learn to depend on women—first mother and sister and later wife.

Motherhood is deified, not fatherhood—everything life-giving is a mother. This puts a value on being a mother, especially of sons. The son's relationship with the mother, it is said, is another phenomenon that enhances the position of the woman in a family—as well as develops in the men a regard, a worship for the mother, the women. On the other hand, motherhood may be worshipped, but at a cost to the woman. She pays for it with her life. Incidence of death among women in the reproductive age due to child-birth—at child birth or due to the physical strain of many pregnancies—is higher than among men in the comparable age bracket. A son may worship his mother but aggression by her over the daughters-in-law is the cost.

A relationship which plays a central role in enhancing or enslaving a woman is marriage. The act of marriage is not merely a legal, contractual arrangement amongst Hindus but a sacramental act. The various factors that conclude marriage, build into it ties which are permanent and, at least psychologically, unbreakable. As most girls are brought up to believe that marriage and motherhood are their destiny, the knowledge that she will get married—and marriage presumably within a known set of relationships—may give a sense of security. But this kind of security is generally not known to girls in societies where choice is free, and the man has to propose to a girl—in a sense, where the girl has to “arrange” her own marriage. However, the same arrangement can cause acute anguish and personality repression, especially amongst those who opt out of tradition, out of the Sita image.



It seems that women in the poorest sections of rural society toil, serve their men and children. Their concerns are primarily food, health of the family, the children and the men, the men's behaviour. Those in the equivalent level in an urban environment show the marks of poverty, disease and death. Their concerns are again behaviour of the men, but also income, opportunity—fear of stigma. Urban poverty and social change seems to make women vulnerable—most poignantly seen in the register on prostitutes.

However, from the rural environment there also emerges a picture of strong women enjoying each other's company, enjoying their roles, thoughtful in their reflections on life. Whether it is those from Guriama or the Tribal women, the Rajput women or the women from the landed gentry of the South, there seems a gusto, a temperament that suggests strength, a sense of equality if not superiority over men.

Just as these portraits give some reason for satisfaction, some evidence for claiming that there are valuable elements in Indian society which help develop women, a glimpse of the girl students of Delhi University warns against careless transformation—change without design or ideology. They reflect again the urban phenomenon—breakdown of tradition without a substitute ideology. The girls seem idle and colourless.

If it is argued that the acceptance of roles by Indian men and women—in the traditional sector—gives a certain dignity, a position to women in the society which is valuable, then countless arguments can be evoked from all disciplines to show that role-playing is a binding or unfree type of behavioural pattern. It thwarts personality development, limits horizons. Yet it is the non-acceptance of role-playing, the uncertainty of behaviour in changing societies that has broken down relationships. Whether it is between man and wife, or parents and child, it is assertion of individuality which has been as painful to the society as it is pleasure-giving to the individual.

Philosophically speaking, there is a case not only for permitting

this quest for freedom, but for allowing the destruction that such assertions can engineer. Those who support revolutions are unafraid of the chaos that precedes a new order. These issues cannot be settled easily—and certainly not at the philosophical level. But it does seem pertinent and, in my opinion, useful and urgent to consider the practical implications of certain prevailing and popular liberal ideals.

Observing and experiencing the social changes in the last decade, it seems to me that some of the social phenomena of the advanced western societies—alienation of child from parent, dissatisfaction of wife with husband—the general sense of social breakdown, is the logical consequence of the ideology of individualism. One trend that hints at the validity of this suggestion is the preference for community living of the younger people of some of the wealthier nations. Their attempt at imitating peasant society where man and woman share the daily activities of work and home, where women pool kitchen and child-rearing effort, makes for a blurring of individual identities.

Collectives, the state, worship of a leader have been some of the other ways of containing the difficulties of individual assertion. Problems have been encountered here too. It is suggested that these systems sometimes go too far in inhibiting individuality, that sometimes it requires force for achieving performance.

Is it possible to work out an ideology where individuality is not suppressed but neither is the social unit entirely neglected?

Obviously this debate cannot be adequately dealt with, within the confines of this book. The glimpses offered here are merely to illustrate the number of areas that have to be taken into consideration in trying to plan a pattern of social change.

However difficult or inappropriate it may be to prescribe goals, define terms like equality in any universalisable form, goals are being set, relationships being changed and policies formulated.

Hence, it seems necessary to throw into the debate more ideas on goals and relationships un-self-consciously.

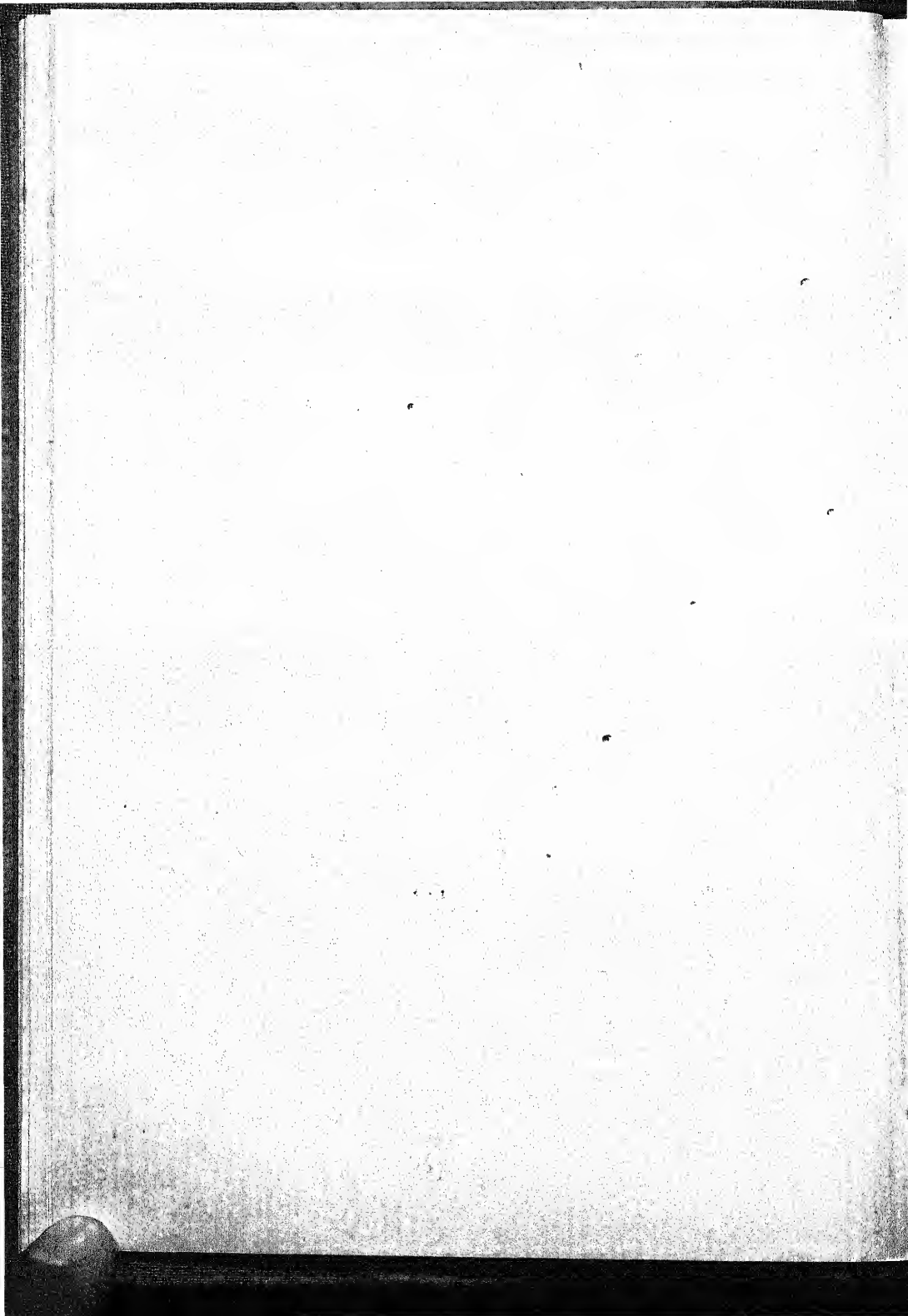
This volume, at least, shows that there is need for an ideology even in discussing women's roles in India. Without such an exercise in thought, a careful weighing of alternative paths, alternative visions of the future—change can efface the past, but lead only to a contingent future, unoriginal and imitative of other cultures. With foresight and relevant research, change in India can be harnessed for a future richer than the past, offering novel ideas to other societies engaged in the same endeavour.

*May 1974*

*Devaki Jain*

# Contents

U.S. AGRICULTURE  
LIBRARY





**Part I : Background**

- |   |   |                                 |    |
|---|---|---------------------------------|----|
| 1 | Looking Back in History                 | <i>Romila Thapar</i>            | 3  |
| 2 | Women and the National Movement         | <i>Lakshmi N. Menon</i>         | 17 |
| 3 | The Women's Movement—Then and Now       | <i>Kamaladevi Chattopadhyay</i> | 27 |
| 4 | Cultural and Religious Influences       | <i>Ashok Rudra</i>              | 37 |
| 5 | Panchakanya—An Age-old Benediction      | <i>M. A. Sreenivasan</i>        | 51 |
| 6 | The Position of women in Indian Society | <i>Andre Beteille</i>           | 59 |
| 7 | Marriage among the Hindus               | <i>Veena Das</i>                | 69 |
| 8 | The Upbringing of a Girl                | <i>Margaret Kalakdina</i>       | 87 |

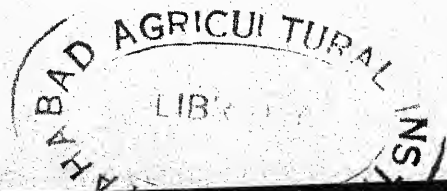
## Indian Women

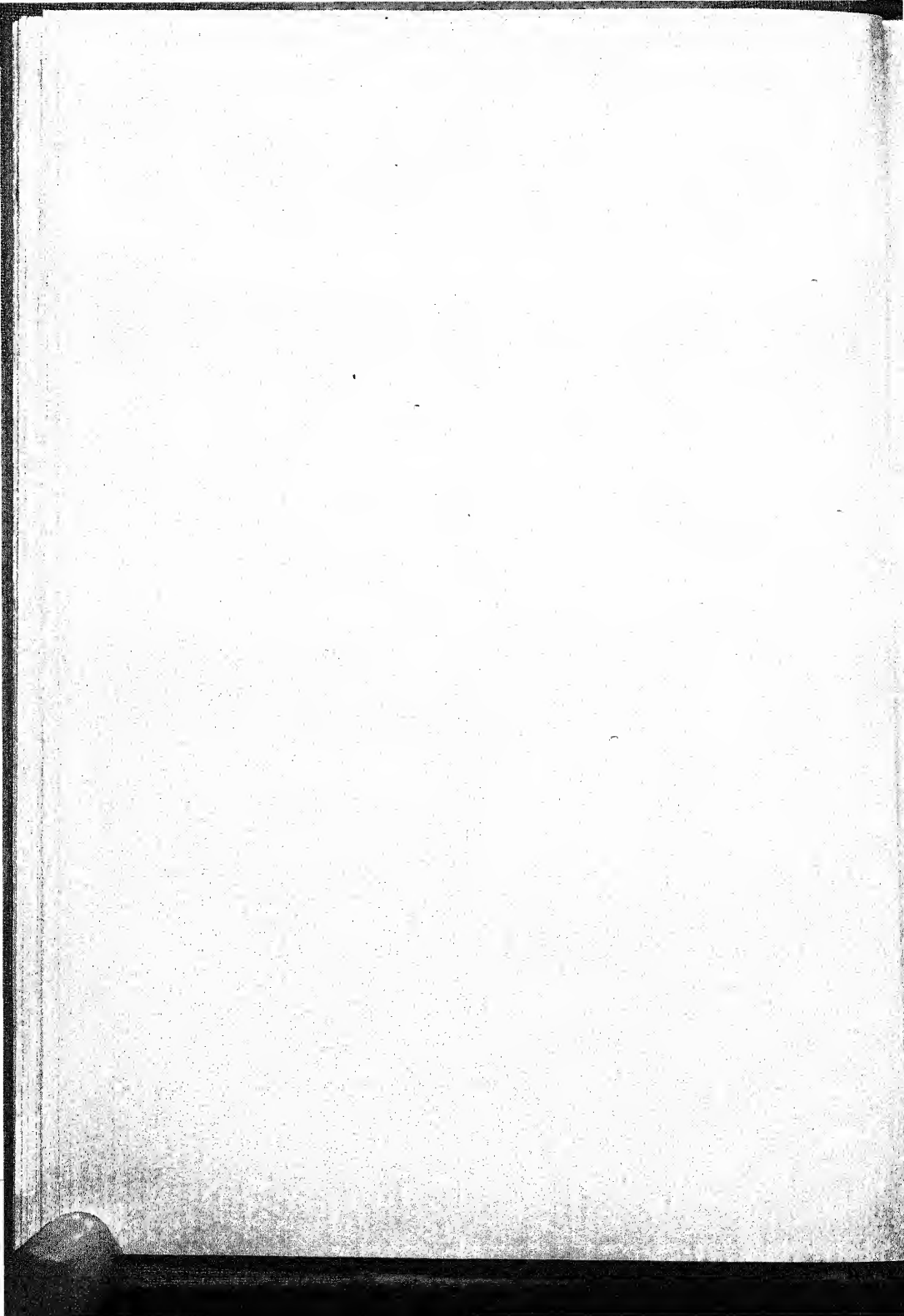
- 9 Women in the Labour Market *Ester Boserup* 99
- 10 Legal Provisions—An Assessment *Shyamala Pappu* 113
- 11 A Demographic Profile of Indian Women *Ashish Bose* 125

## Part II : Focus

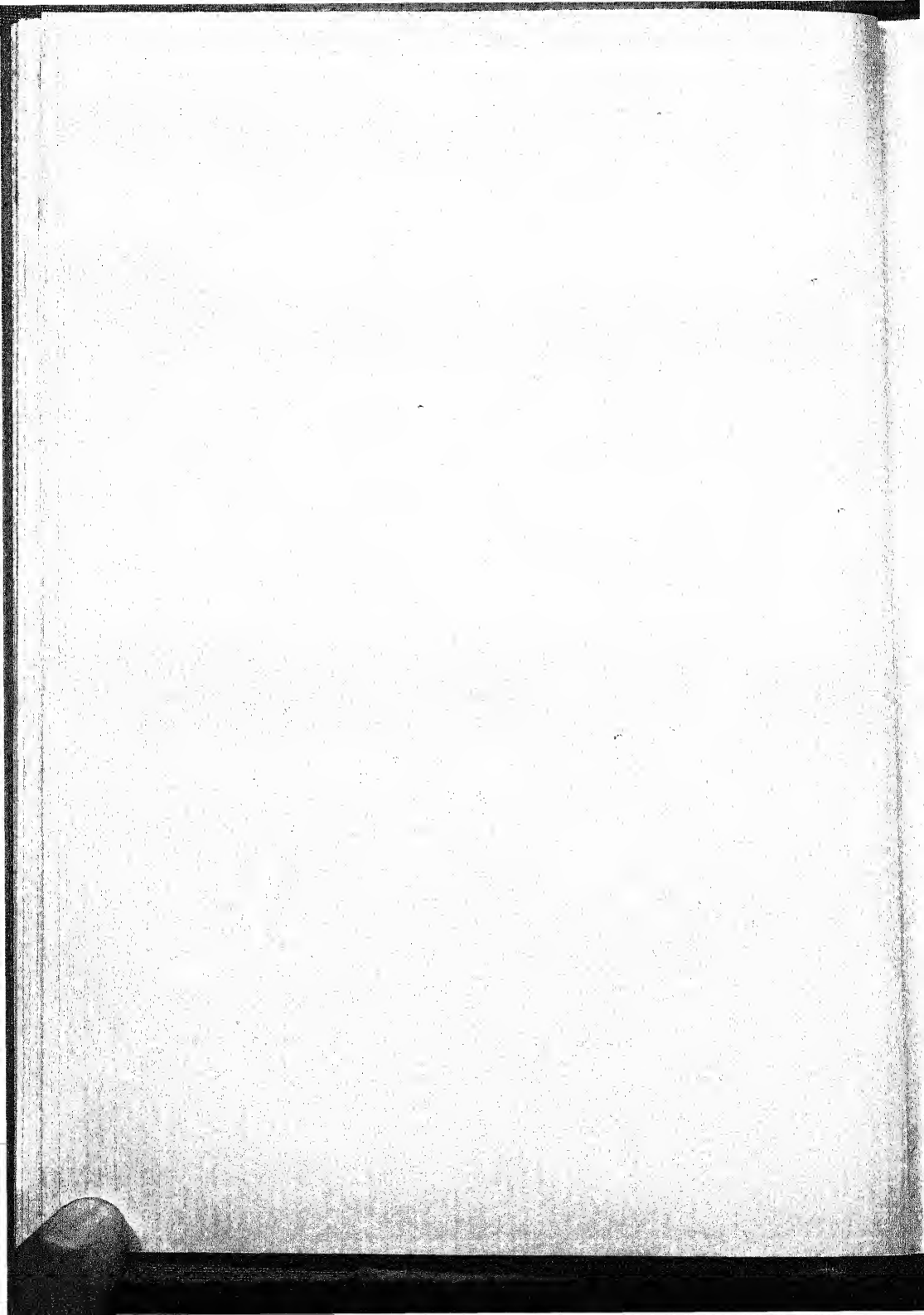
- 12 Muslim Women of India *Qurratulain Hyder* 187
- 13 Tribal Women *Verrier Elwin*  
(from 1958 Edition) 203
- 14 Women of Rural Bihar *Olivia Stokes* 215
- 15 Village Women of Rajasthan *G. Morris Carstairs* 229
- 16 Slum Women of Bombay *Susan Mody and Sharayu Mhatra* 237
- 17 Nurses and Nuns of Kerala *Gita Aravamudan* 253
- 18 Prostitutes — Notes from a Rescue Home *Parvathi Aiyappan* 263

- 19 Chellamma - An illustration of the  
multiple roles of traditional  
women *Mina Swaminathan 271*
  
- 20 Girl Students : Between School  
and Marriage -  
a Delhi sample *Renana Jhabvala and Pratima Sinha 283*
  
- 21 In the Performing Arts *Kapila Vatsyayan 291*
  
- 22 Women in Politics *Imtiaz Ahmed 301*





# PART ONE

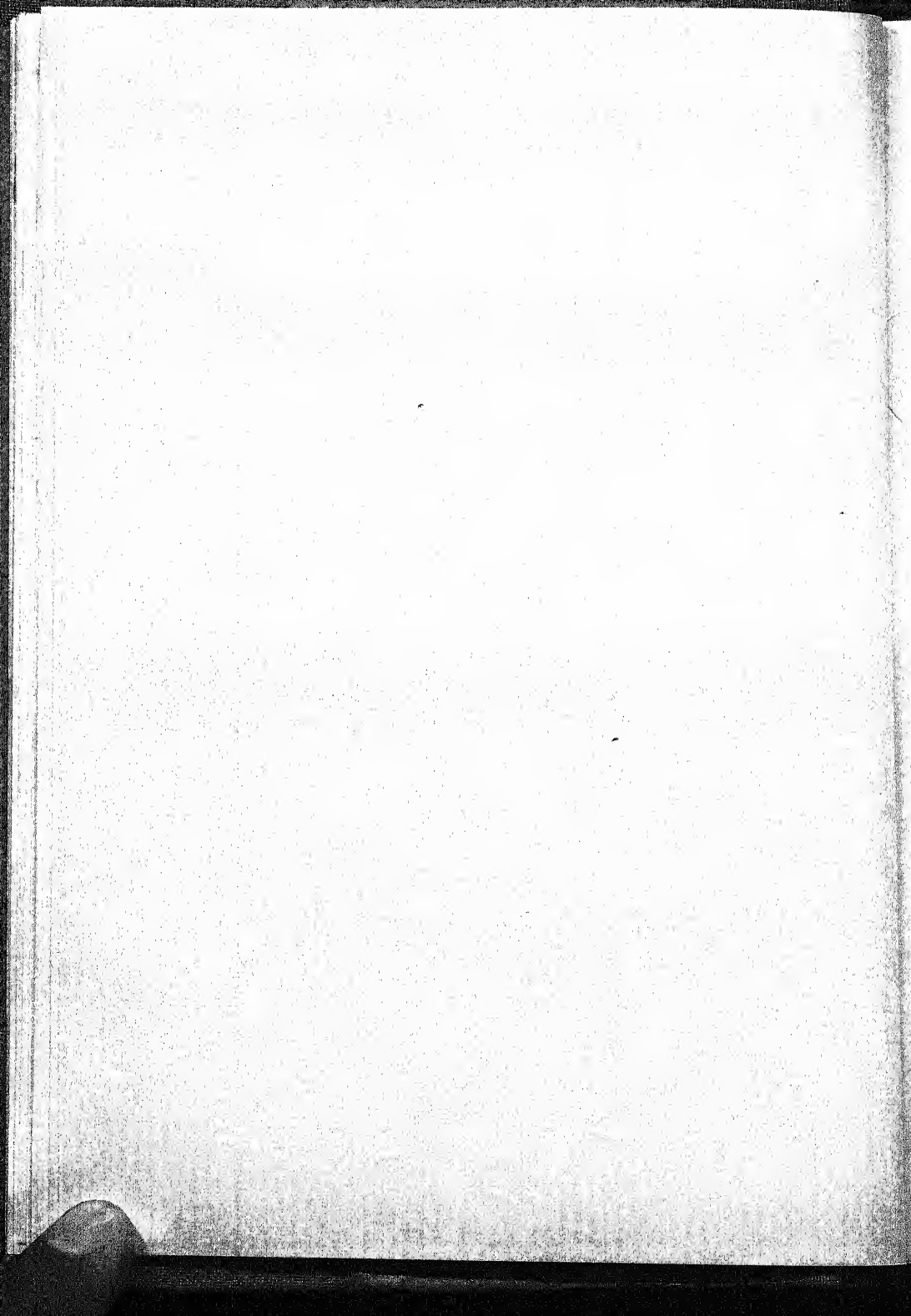


# Looking Back in History

Romila Thapar

Dr. (Miss) Romila Thapar (b. 1931) is Chairman, Centre for Historical Studies, Jawaharlal Nehru University, New Delhi. A specialist in Ancient Indian History, her publications include: *Ashoka and the Decline of the Mauryas*; *History of India*, etc.





To write about women today is unavoidably to write about 'the emancipation of women'—an ugly phrase, reminiscent of serfs and slaves. The growing reality of the self-expression of women so laboriously culled over the centuries from a variety of human institutions, becomes a focal point of discussion. But if the discussion is to be at all meaningful it has to follow up a number of tangents, not all of them as yet coherent or comprehensive. Some of these tangents have been made more pointed in the recent writings of the Women's Liberation movement, the latest phase of the 'emancipation of women'. The movement, through a variety of protests, has sensitised, as it were, the role of women in society at various levels, from the most banal to the most esoteric and has illumined areas of human and social relationships. The literature which emerges from this movement is significant not because it goes into the making of manifestos, but because it reveals a point of view which is being articulated for the first time to any considerable degree—the deliberate, conscious perspective of the woman, and this gives added legitimacy to the writing.<sup>1</sup>

Women's Lib does not have immediate relevance to the Indian social situation. It is the product of an urbanised middle-class with a large number of women trained in professions as a result of expanding educational opportunities whose professional skills are wasted by their having to limit themselves to domestic work. It relates to the crisis in the concept of domestic work being somehow inferior both in terms of human intelligence and the use of labour and energy.

Thus either the status of domestic work will have to be raised to bring it on par with other professional work, or else, through a highly mechanised system the energy and intelligence spent on cooking and cleaning will have to be drastically reduced. In either case, the participation of men in household chores will be a crucial factor. It also relates to the changing situation of the family as a component of society in a developed industrial system, where the woman ceases to be essentially only the procreator of children and the property of her husband. The significance of the movement to the Indian scene is that by radicalising the analysis of the role of women in society generally, it has introduced a number of fresh perspectives to our understanding of women and society.

Within the Indian sub-continent there have been infinite variations on the status of women diverging according to cultural milieu, family structure, class, caste, property rights and morals. Even the ancient erotic manuals of India have digressed at greater length on the capabilities and idiosyncrasies of Indian women, whereas the male remains comparatively uniform—perhaps for the obvious reason that these texts were written largely for the edification and education of the male<sup>2</sup>. The literature on erotica stresses the variation in female types—particularly the characteristics of women coming from different parts of the sub-continent. Traditional medical and quasi-medical concerns, on the other hand, centre on the debilities and weaknesses among men, impotence being a major obsession. In common belief it is the sexual and biological difference which is stressed as the basis for social differences. But often this is a rationalisation for quite other factors such as inheritance and property rights and family structure, which are the fundamental concern. The symbol of the woman in Indian culture has been a curious intermeshing of low legal status, ritual contempt, sophisticated sexual partnership and deification.

The role, status and position of women has been far from static, ranging from what is thought to have been a position of considerable authority and freedom to one of equally considerable

subservience. This freedom was characteristic of the first of the four great ages (*mahāyuga*), the Kṛta Yuga—the dawn of the time-cycle and the golden age. Echoes of it occur from later periods in the descriptions of the utopian lands and the stories about the gods. In the land of the Uttarakurus, the traditional ancestral homes of the 'pure', women were as free as the men<sup>3</sup>. The Madra women are described as being positively licentious<sup>4</sup>. Thus there was at least a consciousness that the subservient position of women had not been so since time immemorial.

The code sanctioned for the gods is invariably other than that sanctioned for men though it carries traces of the human condition. Thus even the Vedic gods such as Puṣān and Prajāpati, are known to have had incestuous relationships with either sisters, mothers or daughters<sup>5</sup>. It has been argued that these relationships are indications of an early promiscuous society where sexual taboos were minimal and the procreation of children a necessity. If this is so, then perhaps it reflects the insecurity of food-gathering tribes, where infant mortality rates were high and the women were primarily procreators and as such respected members of the tribe.

Indications of a change in status can be noticed in early texts referring to the origin of the notion of the state. The context is that of peasant societies, who having lived through a halcyon period of co-existence and peace, began to erupt as centres of violence and lawlessness with the stealing of each other's wives and the crop from each other's fields. Property and women, it is implied, are the source of trouble. To establish law and order, not only are the institutions of private property and marriage recognised, but a person is selected, or alternatively, requested to become the arbiter of law and thus maintain harmony. It is from this point on that the status of women begins to deteriorate as is evident from the narration in the texts (e.g. the *Digha Nikāya* of the Buddhist Canon and the *Mahābhārata*).<sup>6</sup>

A distinction must however be continually maintained between women in different social contexts in all periods of time. Unfortunately the early historical sources generally refer to elite groups—

the court, the aristocracy, the wealthy traders. The condition of other sections of society has by and large to be inferred from indirect references. The women of the aristocracy were regarded as gentle creatures, the mothers of future rulers. Marriage was frequently a disguise for a political alliance, and for those of lesser standing occasionally a means of mobility for the family. The great heroines of the past, the women of the epic and puranic stories, were either women in distress (*Sitā of the Rāmāyana*) to whom the norms would not apply, or else those who belonged to societies with a strong tribal impress (*Gandharī of the Mahābhārata*). The aristocratic women led a secluded life, well-protected and isolated from the seamy side of things. References to women from respectable homes moving about veiled go back to the early centuries A.D. (*Arthasāstra*)<sup>7</sup> and the purdah of Islam intensified the seclusion of women.

The city elite on the other hand were not so strict about the seclusion of their women. The women moved about unveiled, and are often depicted sitting happily on the balconies of their houses watching the festive processions parading through the street<sup>8</sup>. Those Buddhist monuments and shrines, which were built through the donations of wealthy merchants frequently show the donor together with his wife<sup>9</sup>. Literature emanating from urban society portrays these women as forceful and not lacking in personality, some of which is directed towards an enrichment of their own lives. The urbanity of the *Kāmasūtra* is after all not dependent on the individuality of the male alone.

The women of the artisans' families and those of the peasants' doubtless had a less relaxed life. Here the pressure was not so much from social mores as from the needs of economic survival where leisure was limited and apart from domestic work, the women participated in the professional work of the men. But lack of leisure did not impinge on what would appear to have been a more equal sharing with the men of the limited income. Ecological and geographical factors were probably more intrusive at this level. Inhospitable areas and insecure borderlands doubtless emboldened both men and women to more equitable

adjustments in status and rights. This is not to suggest, however, that the peasant woman, as compared with other women, is always a freer human being. The constraints on a peasant woman in a patriarchal village society are often both extreme and conservative, especially if the family happens to be somewhat better-off than most. Perhaps the most independent among peasant women were those who had a distinctive economic role, such as the ones with individual access to the local markets, where, as vendors and traders they had a stake in their independence—a situation not too dissimilar from the contemporary rural scene in parts of north-eastern India.

It is thus impossible to give a uniform picture of the status of women in any particular period. The problem remains with us today as we still have in every part of the country a variety of social groups—tribal, peasant and urban—functioning in diverse ecologies. Only broad levels of generalisation are permissible, such as, that the purpose of marriage was the furtherance of caste (*jāti*) relations, essentially a social and political concern, and, where it existed, marriage was aimed at the consolidation of property.

In the legal texts, however, in the *dharma-sāstra* and similar literature, the blanket term woman is used, irrespective of the social origins or status of any woman. It is interesting that whereas these texts take great care to classify men with a minutiae of distinctions, women are generally treated as a uniform category. Furthermore the status of women as a whole is clearly defined, for they are unambiguously equated with the *sūdras*.<sup>10</sup> Even the *Gītā* places women, *vaisyas* and *sūdras* in the same category and describes them all as being of sinful birth<sup>11</sup>. According to another text the punishment for killing either a woman or a *sūdra* is identical.<sup>12</sup> Perhaps the most gruelling of all is the treatment of the widow, which at times borders on the inhumane and this is particularly disconcerting, coming as it does, from the *sāstras* of a culture which laid so much stress on respecting and caring for the aged. The subservience of women is precisely summed up in the Manu Dharmasāstra where it is stated that a woman should





never be independent. As a daughter she is under the surveillance of her father, as a wife of her husband and as a widow of her son.<sup>13</sup>

Such attitudes to women reflect both contempt and fear. The latter doubtless derived from the fear of pollution, since women were regarded as impure on many occasions. The association of pollution with women, apart from the usual ritual reasons, would also suggest, at the psychological level, the fear of someone who plays such a central role in procreation. Socio-legal treatises, such as the *dharma-sāstras* are not always a description of reality; in fact, more often than not they are indicators of a social ideal-guides and manuals to perfect action, although the underlying assumptions on which the laws are based emanate from actual social conditions. This is particularly so in pre-modern societies where legal rights and obligations are not always very distinctly demarcated. To that extent, these texts cannot be taken too literally. Similarly, in Islamic law, it is interesting that the legal position of women is distinctly better as compared for instance to Hindu law, yet their actual condition was hardly better than that of other women.

Caste differentiation among women in these texts occurs in the context of the performance of rituals, where often the ritual varied according to the caste of the performer. The custom of becoming a *sati*, by the immolation of the wife on her husband's funeral pyre, is discussed at length and brahmin women are specifically precluded from performing this rite in most of the texts.<sup>14</sup> The custom increased in frequency in the period after the mid-first millennium A.D. and then too was more prevalent among those claiming *kṣatriya* status. Although never clearly stated it almost certainly, among other things, had to do with property rights and inheritance.

In the legal treatise of this same period, women came to be regarded as part of a man's property, particularly in those parts of the country where a combination of patrilineal society and private property was by now well-established as part of the elite culture.<sup>15</sup> This is best symbolised in the statement that a woman



could be given as a pledge, the interest being one-seventieth of her value, though how her value was to be computed is nowhere clearly stated.<sup>16</sup> Deprived as she was of the right to inheritance, her own right to property consisted of her *stridhana*, i.e. the wealth which she was given by her family at her marriage, which, although theoretically inviolable, nevertheless gave her little freedom, economic or otherwise.

The legal status was not irrevocable in practice, as is suggested by other types of evidence. Nevertheless, it is indicative of the social image. That it was not seriously questioned at the textual level would point to its tacit-acceptance by certain social groups, particularly those most concerned with both property and pollution. The low legal status of women was common to a number of 'classical' societies, pre-eminently the Roman, where the rationale seems to have derived from the emphasis on the patrilineal structure.

As a counterpoint to the legal texts, history provides evidence of alternative perspectives. These are, first of all, the rare but clear exceptions. Two of the more obvious come to mind: Gargi, a reputed scholar in an age when learning was closed to women because of pollution taboos; and Raziya, who ruled albeit briefly, at a court fiercely male-dominated by militaristic Turkish nobles. That such exceptions were possible would belie a too literal belief in legal status. Other nuances emerge from more subtle sources. There is the interplay of patrilineal and matrilineal groups which has been active for many centuries until recent years. To identify these as Aryan and non-Aryan respectively is perhaps simplistic and confusing, since these latter terms cannot be precisely defined. But family and social relationships did follow either of the two dominant forms or an intermingling of the two, and this is sometimes suggested even by contemporary family structures.<sup>17</sup> This in part accounts for the regional variations in the status (both implied and actual) of women in various parts of the country.

Perhaps the most involved facet is that of man and the female diety—the mother-goddess, the goddess of the fertility cult, the

deity which remains to this day the most widely worshipped in villages and towns. Through all its different manifestations, whether it be the crude images of the Harappa culture or the consorts of the great gods, both malevolent and benign, or the more esoteric *saktis* of the tantrics, the mother goddess is the dominant deity, for she is implicit even in the worship of the lingam.<sup>18</sup> Traditionally in India, the mother-goddess was worshipped in tribal and peasant societies and in early urban centres. The Rigvedic culture is perhaps the only major culture in which the mother-goddess is conspicuously absent. Being a fertility cult, it can be argued that its dominance is restricted to pre-industrial societies—the decline of the cult of the Virgin Mary in north-western Europe being a case in point. Did the worship of the mother-goddess strengthen the fear of woman symbolising the power of procreation or was it subconsciously a compensatory gesture? This dualism is also reflected in certain rituals where the presence of the woman is essential.

The traditional attitude to sex reflects a striking absence of the guilt complex arising from original sin as conceived in the Judaeo-Christian tradition. It was not until the impact of the Christian missionaries and Victorian mores that the notion of the guilt complex took root. The equation of freedom with licentiousness is often used as a brake to giving greater independence to women, where there is an automatic assumption that the moral standards for men and women should be different. The fetish that is made of virginity and pre-marital sexual relations is more often a rationalisation of the desire to keep women subservient than a genuine moral conviction. In the Hindu tradition sex is sinful only where it is socially illegitimate and the Buddhist tradition although carrying hints of puritanical morals never really converted the theory of sin into one of a guilt complex. Woman as mother was venerated but woman as an erotic being was not degraded. Far from being seen as sin, the sexual act was symbolic of creative energy. Such an attitude permitted the duality of approach to women. It is noticeable, however, that members of many of the tantric sects held liberal views on the status of women.

✓ Throughout Indian history there has been a stream of social consciousness urging and encouraging a liberalisation of attitudes to the status of women. The two major heterodox religions, Buddhism and Jainism, both supported greater freedom for women than did Brahmanism. ) The Buddha initially objected to instituting an order of nuns but was finally persuaded by his disciple Ananda. The order of nuns in Buddhism and Jainism provided an alternative vocation to those women who wished to disassociate themselves from the usual functions of women in society.

This trend of thinking was continued in what has come to be called the Bhakti movement—in its various forms during different periods. The need of the Bhakti movement in the Bhāgavata tradition was a liberalising concept of religion embedded in the idea of the individual's relationship with a personalised deity. This enfranchisement from both theology and ritual was extended to relationships among men and women. An early expression of *bhakti* in the teachings of the Alvars and Nayanmārs not only stressed the personal devotion of the individual to the deity of his choice, expressed in the easily comprehensible hymns composed in the most widely used language of the region (rather than in the more erudite Sanskrit) and divested of much complicated ritual, but also emphasised the right of women to *bhakti*, to their joining in congregational worship and to a generally freer life for them. This is also reflected in the early teachings of the Lingāyatas, in the preaching of the 'saints' of Maharashtra, to some degree in the teaching of Chaitanya in eastern India and to a considerable degree in the verses of the northern *bhakti* teachers, particularly Kabir and Nānak. Not surprisingly, it was the *bhakti* teaching which produced the women 'saints'—Āṇḍāl, Mirabai and Lalla.

The support for the heterodox religions and the *bhakti* movement came in the initial stages from similar groups of people; largely the urban traders, merchants and artisans and up to a point the more well-to-do peasantry. Royal patronage tended to be occasional, though the ladies of the court were often staunch

patrons of Buddhism and Jainism. The rulers tended to support these sects once they had become more established since, largely for political reasons, they had to be more judicious in their patronage to religious sects. The social composition of these sects was doubtless a further cause in their advocacy of a liberal attitude to the status of women.

The major impetus, in recent years, in bringing about a change in the attitude to women has come from the national movement for independence, a movement which had its inception in the nineteenth century and whose social aftermath continues to linger with us. Originally an essentially middle-class movement with its roots in various urban centres in the country, it was converted into a mass movement largely through the efforts of Mahatma Gandhi. In order to build a mass movement the slogan of freedom had to be extended to a number of 'depressed' groups—untouchables, peasants and workers and women. The participation of women in the national movement became a necessary part of the programme. This participation was also needed to mobilise entire families which gave added strength to the movement. The appeal to women *per se* was a major plank in Gandhi's policy and derived, perhaps marginally and subconsciously, from the earlier Jaina and *bhakti* ethic. Participation in the politics of the national movement was an act of patriotism and political life became a respectable vocation for a woman. This may in part account for the greater success of women politicians in ex-colonial countries as compared to the more industrialised countries of north-western Europe and the U.S.A. It may also account for the decrease of women politicians in the post-independence period in India.

Tied into the concept of nationalism was the debate on culture and society and the pendulum swung between what were regarded as the two poles of Tradition and Modernity: a debate which seems to have been intensified with independence. The 'burning questions' in this context during the earlier days were the age of consent to marriage, widow remarriage, property rights and education. Some advocated a return to tradition as the

only means of salvaging Indian society, but the definition of tradition remains extremely elusive. Others wanted either a social reform or a socially radical change of Indian society, which in a sense is as utopian as the first proposition. In addition, the demand for political reform also opened the pandora's box of social reform. Possibly, we have seen the culmination of the debate in the passing of the Hindu Code Bill in 1956, which in theory at least, provides both security and freedom to the Hindu woman, and may to that extent become the prototype of further changes in the civil code applicable to all Indian women, irrespective of their religion.

✓ Perhaps the greatest advantage of the participation of women in political nationalism was an indirect result. It brought women into the forefront of thought and action without their having to go through the agonies of a Sylvia Pankhurst. There is now a tacit acceptance of many more women in a variety of professions than would otherwise have been the case; though this can by no means be equated with equal opportunities for women. The test however has yet to come. With increasing industrialisation and expanding education, Indian society may also have to face a Women's Lib movement at one end of the spectrum, whilst providing the basic amenities by which women can at least claim their existing rights, at the other end.





References

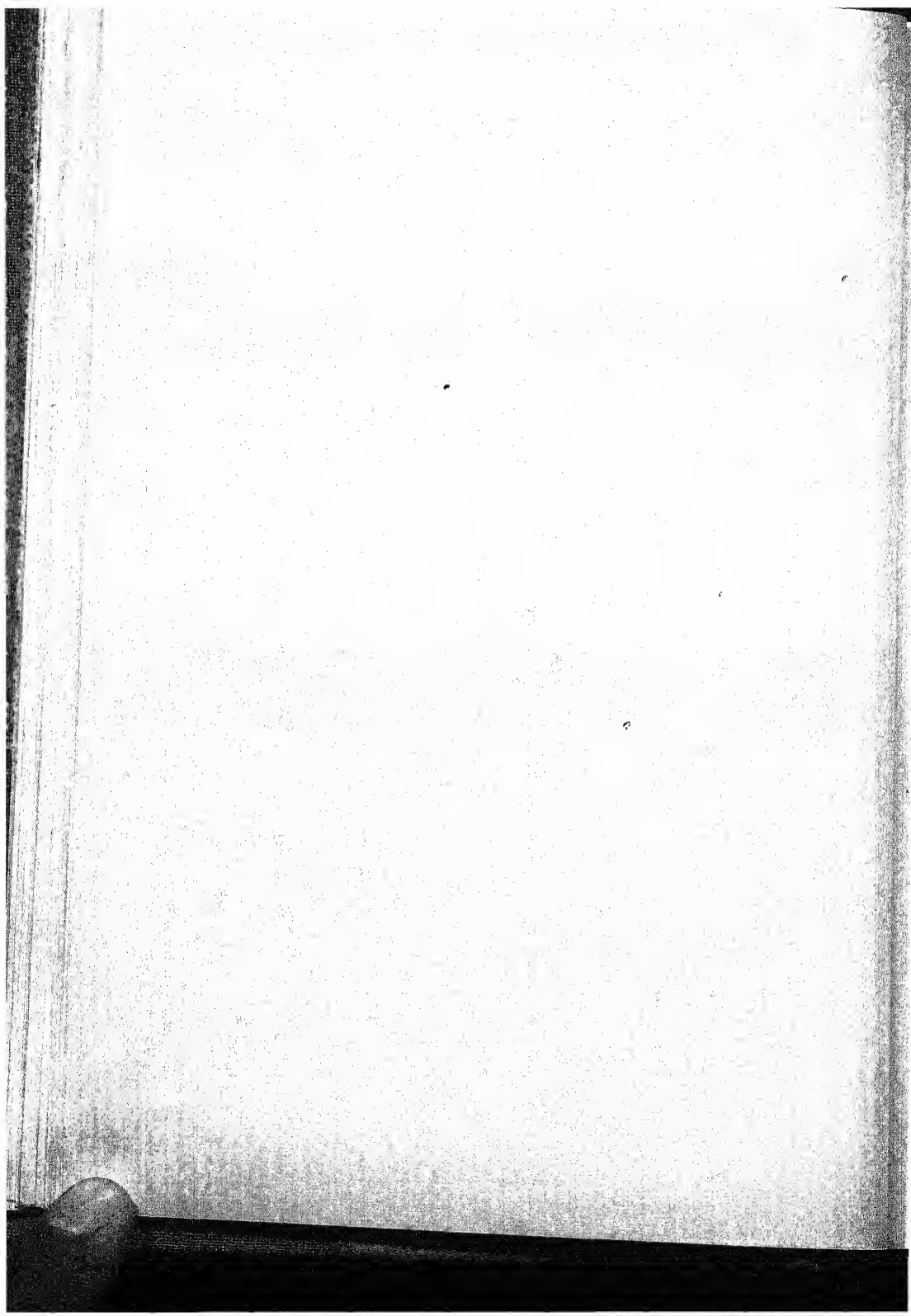
1. The writing which immediately comes to mind are books such as, 'The Female Eunuch' by Germaine Greer, the more academic *Sexual Politics* of Kate Millet and perhaps the most analytical of them all, Juliet Mitchell's *Woman's Estate*.
2. The best known of these is Vātsyāyana's *Kamasutra*. Others of lesser fame are the *Kokasāstra*, the *Anandarānga* etc.
3. *Satapatha Brāhmaṇa* III. 2.3.
4. *Mahābhārata*, Karṇa Parvan, 37
5. S. C. Sarkar, *Some Aspects of the Earliest Social History of India*
6. *Digha Nikāya* III. 93; *Mahābhārata*, Sānti Parvan, 67.
7. *Arthasāstra*, II. 23.
8. As depicted on sculptured panels from a variety of Buddhist and Hindu monuments.
9. As for example, in the Karle caves.
10. As for example in *Manu*, XI. 153.
11. *Bhāgvat-Gītā*, IX. 32.
12. The law-book of Parāśara, VI. 16.
13. *Manu*, IX. 3.
14. P. V. Kane, *History of Dharmasāstra*, Vol. II, p. 627.
15. R. S. Sharma, *Light on Early Indian Society and Economy*, p. 23 ff.
16. *Agni Purāṇa*, 253. 63-64.
17. This is discussed in Iravati Karve, *Kinship Organisation in India*, in both an historical and sociological context.
18. S. K. Dikshit, *The Mother Goddess*.

# Women and the National Movement

Lakshmi N. Menon

Mrs. Lakshmi N. Menon (b. 1899), Chairman of the Kasturba Gandhi National Memorial Trust, has long been associated with the U.N. Commission on the status of women, besides many women's organisations in India. She was Deputy Minister and Minister of State for External Affairs, Government of India.





✓ The movement for national freedom grows out of the frustrations, humiliations and injustices of an alien administration. In India, there were also other injustices and discriminations born of a social system based on rigid traditions and alien to modern ideas of liberty and equality. The differences of caste, the prevalence of untouchability, discriminations based on sex, were reinforced by the indifference of government towards social reform. The plea was that non-interference in religion and social customs of the people of India, however disagreeable and retrograde they be, was guaranteed in the Queen's Proclamation of 1857, when the British government replaced the East India Company. Therefore, the initiative for social reform should come from the people themselves.

This was not difficult. When Indians received Western education, it almost seemed that Macaulay's dream of creating brown sahebs was within realisation. They came into contact with the West, became imbued with the spirit of revolution in Europe and liberal thinking in England. Abroad they saw how democratic institutions worked and how rights were wrested from unwilling autocrats and enjoyed by the citizens.

It is not in vain that most, if not all, of our political leaders, were western-educated persons. They had their education in the universities of Oxford and Cambridge and London, ate dinners at the Inns of Court to be called to the Bar, and were drawn into the inescapable ferment of progressive radicalism of the 19th and early 20th centuries. The impact of western thought overwhelmed

them. They saw through western eyes, India's immemorial past, its glorious and chequered history, its remarkable contribution to religion, ethics and morality. Such a country, with its enviable heritage, whatever its present state, deserved to be free from external control and foreign domination.

It was hoped, not without reason, that freedom will bring in its wake a new India, rich and prosperous, devoid of all forms of social injustice. This might be a milkmaid's proverbial dream, but, then it is such dreams and hopes that inspire ordinary human beings to great deeds.

The national movement in India did not begin with the idea that India should be liberated from alien control and domination. The early 19th century social reform and educational programmes initiated by Raja Ram Mohan Roy, Vidyasagar, and the Brahmo Samaj dealt with definite social evils. The transformation of the movement for social reform to the demand for political independence, took some decades. It was given an economic base and content by Dr. Dadabhai Naoroji in his classical study "Poverty and un-British Rule in India". This book brought to light how Britain was responsible for India's poverty and economic backwardness.

The movement for political freedom did not even begin with the founding of the Indian National Congress in 1885. This organisation in its early years was something like an annual get-together of the affluent and the educated. While they were concerned for the welfare of the country, their activities were restricted to demands for small concessions; and they sought through well-phrased and polite resolutions the redress of grievances and pleaded for greater participation of Indians in the Services and administration. In the context of latter-day developments, these early attempts of the Congress may seem ineffectual. But then without taking the first step it is not possible to walk the mile.

The Partition of Bengal in 1905 turned our incipient nationalism

into a violent movement for freedom with terrorist proclivities. It was a reaction to the government's repressive policies towards patriots. India was hailed as Mother India; *Vande Mataram* became the song of the new movement. Violence was preached and practised as the only way of breaking the shackles of Mother India. Terrorism became dormant with the rectification of partition in 1911, but it was revived in the third and fourth decades of this century.

It was left to Gandhiji to wean the country from the gospel of violence. He gave ethical and moral content to an otherwise purely political struggle by repeatedly emphasising the importance of means. This called for harmony and tolerance, passive resistance and non-cooperation with injustice and evil, and elimination of violence and hatred.

Moderates like Gokhale, no less a patriot than any of his successors, argued passionately for education. Justice Ranade and his band of workers were equally concerned about cleansing the Indian society of its manifold evils and injustices to make the country fit for freedom. The slogan given by Tilak "Swaraj is my birthright" became an undeniable national demand for which preparation through education and social reform became imperative.

Women's participation in the national movement was practically nil, in the early years, but in helping with social reform their sympathy was expressed in deeds rather than in words. This is not to be wondered at, as women were still in the thralldom of ignorance and tradition and till they were educated and freed they could contribute but little towards national freedom. It is not surprising that one of our early revolutionaries—Bhilhaji Cama—had to work outside India, against immense odds to build public opinion in favour of India's freedom.

The first Indian woman to enter into active politics and live to see India attain freedom was Sarojini Naidu. She fulfilled the many concepts of political leadership in India. Hailing from a



family of scholars, daughter of a great scientist, a brilliant student, educated at Cambridge, a well-known poet, married outside her caste to an eminent doctor she became leader in her own right. The entry of a woman of such eminence into active politics was not only a great asset to the Congress but a real inspiration to the hesitant womanhood of India. The fact that she left home, husband and children to identify herself with the movement for freedom had a tremendous impact on women in determining their future participation in the national movement.

In the early decades of this century women still lived sheltered lives. Yet we see that many women like Sarala Devi Choudharani, Sarala Ray, Lady Abala Bose in Bengal, Vidyagouri Nilkanth and Sharadaben Mehta and Begum Hamid Ali of Gujarat, the Begum Mother of Bhopal and hosts of others, some known all over India and others respected in their own states like Sister Subbalakshmi and Dr. Muthulakshmi Reddy of Madras, and many others, their name is legion; were actively associated with educational and social work. Their sincere interest in the welfare of women has brought about a silent revolution and a good deal of the services have come to the women of India through the unrecorded efforts of these great women. Without their work and sacrifice political freedom by itself would not have been so effective.

The levels of women's involvement in the national movement depended largely on the methods of policies followed by the National Congress. We have seen that the latter half of the 19th century was marked by intense activity for social reform and expansion of education. Thus Sati was abolished, widow re-marriage was legalised and the Special Marriage Act was passed to legalise marriages contracted outside the pale of established religions. With the establishment of the Presidency colleges and universities, higher education came within the reach of women also. Early attempts of women to go for higher education and professional courses did not receive much encouragement. However, it must be said to the credit of these pioneers, that they demolished the bastilles of orthodoxy and lighted the path for

generations to come—opening new avenues for self-expression and achievement.

So also in the field of political struggle, few women were associated with the National Congress, initially. They attended the sessions as wives and visitors. It was so till Mrs. Naidu strode in as a distinguished participant. The first woman to be elected president was Annie Besant in 1917. Eight years after in 1925 Sarojini Naidu became its second woman president. They did not have any woman to succeed them till Indira Gandhi was elected president in 1959-60. Participation of women in policy-making political bodies has been limited. Whatever participation there was at the lower levels it was confined to the urban women. The politics of violence pursued by the terrorists had a few women. Pritilata Waddadar in men's clothes and Bina Das, both from Bengal, are well-known among the few.

It was left to Gandhiji to give direction, strength and inspiration to a vast all-embracing national movement which was to draw into its vortex women in large numbers. By identifying himself with the masses, with the disinherited and the forgotten millions, he stirred the depths of our national conscience as no leader has done before or ever since. With remarkable foresight and with the experience he gained in South Africa he assessed the strength inherent in women. He realised that the only way to rouse them from their traditional rôle of domesticity was to appeal to their sense of patriotism and awaken in them national consciousness and social responsibility.

Gandhiji's message offered to the women of India an opportunity to break away from the past with all its frustrations. What is more, Gandhiji by linking women's participation with economic rehabilitation and social reform gave the much desired content to their participation.

✓ Women, literate and illiterate, rural and urban swelled the ranks of the freedom fighters, took over positions of responsibility, courted imprisonment, were arrested in large numbers.



✓ Such a mass participation under Gandhiji's leadership gave women a sense of equality with men, an equality which was unheard of in the tradition-bound Indian society. Certainly, a new era has dawned for women with recognition of their competence, innate strength and capacity for sacrifice and dedicated work.

The present position of women is largely due to two factors; the leadership of Gandhiji and the work done by women's voluntary organisations like the Women's Indian Association headed by Annie Besant and the All-India Women's Conference led by eminent patriots and national workers like Mrs. Margaret Cousins, Kamaladevi Chattopadhyay, Muthulakshmi Reddy, Rani Lakshmi-bai Rajwade, Rajkumari Amrit Kaur, Rustomji Faridoonji, Begum Hamid Ali, followed by hosts of others, some of them still with us, who have given direction and strength to the liberation of women.

They had neither external assistance nor government support when they launched the organisation. Their perseverance and single-minded devotion have made it what it is today, the leading women's organisation. The organisation spearheaded the movement for equality of rights, equal inheritance laws and adult franchise. All these have universal acceptance now. Many women who are in public life today have had their training in voluntary organisations like the AIWC, YWCA, National Council of Women.

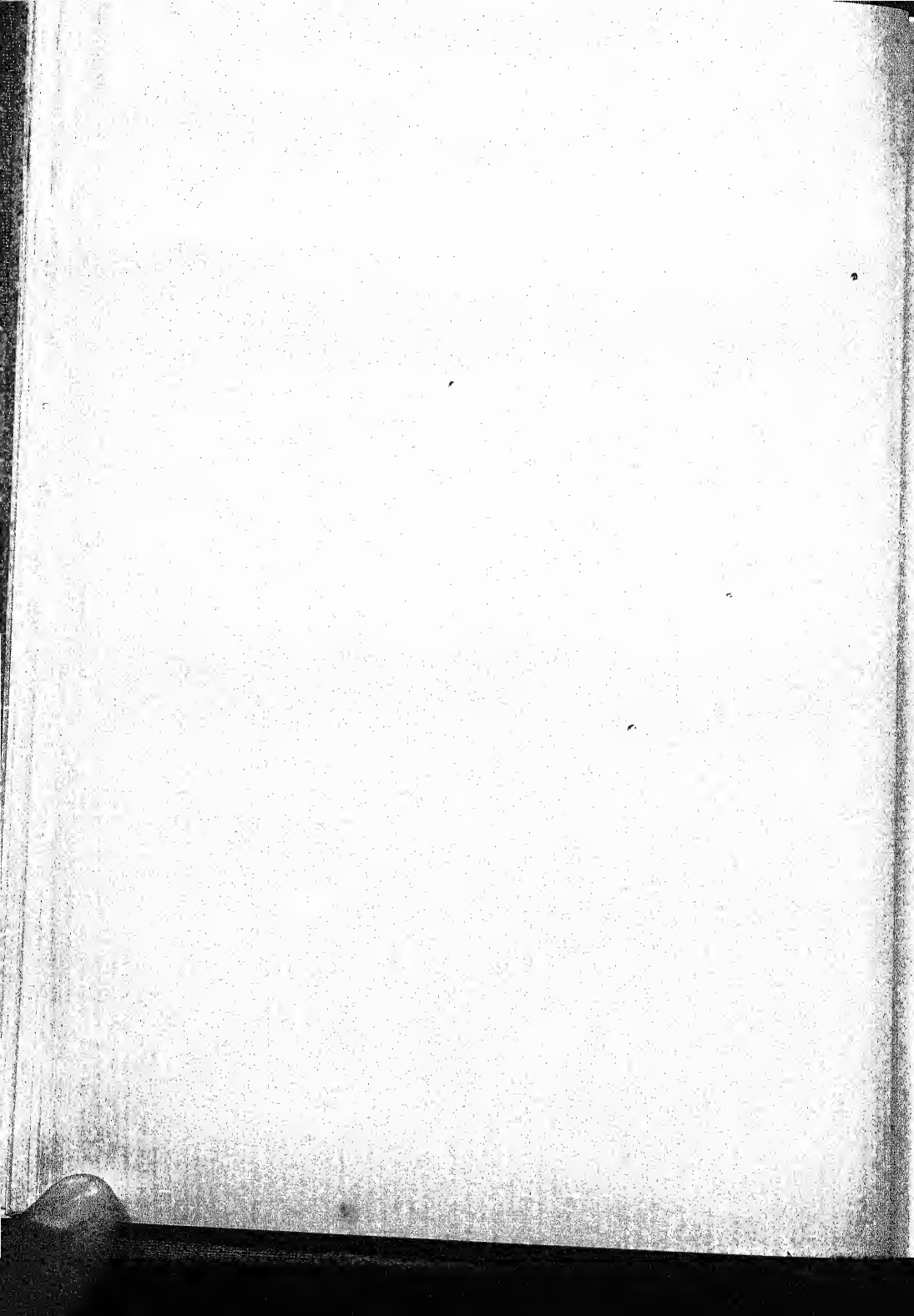
Today, therefore, more organisations in the forefront, like the Grameen Mahila Sangh, University Federation of Women—national and local, are making their distinctive contribution in specialised fields of their choice. While the greater part of their activities are confined to the urban areas, the Skipko Committee under the able leadership of Dhanvanti Rama Rao brings medical aid to rural women and children.

A special organisation to awaken and educate women in rural areas was the contribution of Gandhiji to the women's cause. He made women realise that the 80 per cent or more of Indian women living in rural India are a part of the responsibility of the educated. No programme of development can succeed, if



rural India is not awakened. So he created the Kasturba Gandhi National Trust to train workers for rural areas and bring the message of free India to the people in our villages. At local and village levels, women are contributing to national development. Today there is no activity, not even a demonstration without women. The women's movement is now national in every sense of the term and it is like salt in food—an indispensable part of India's normal life and activity.

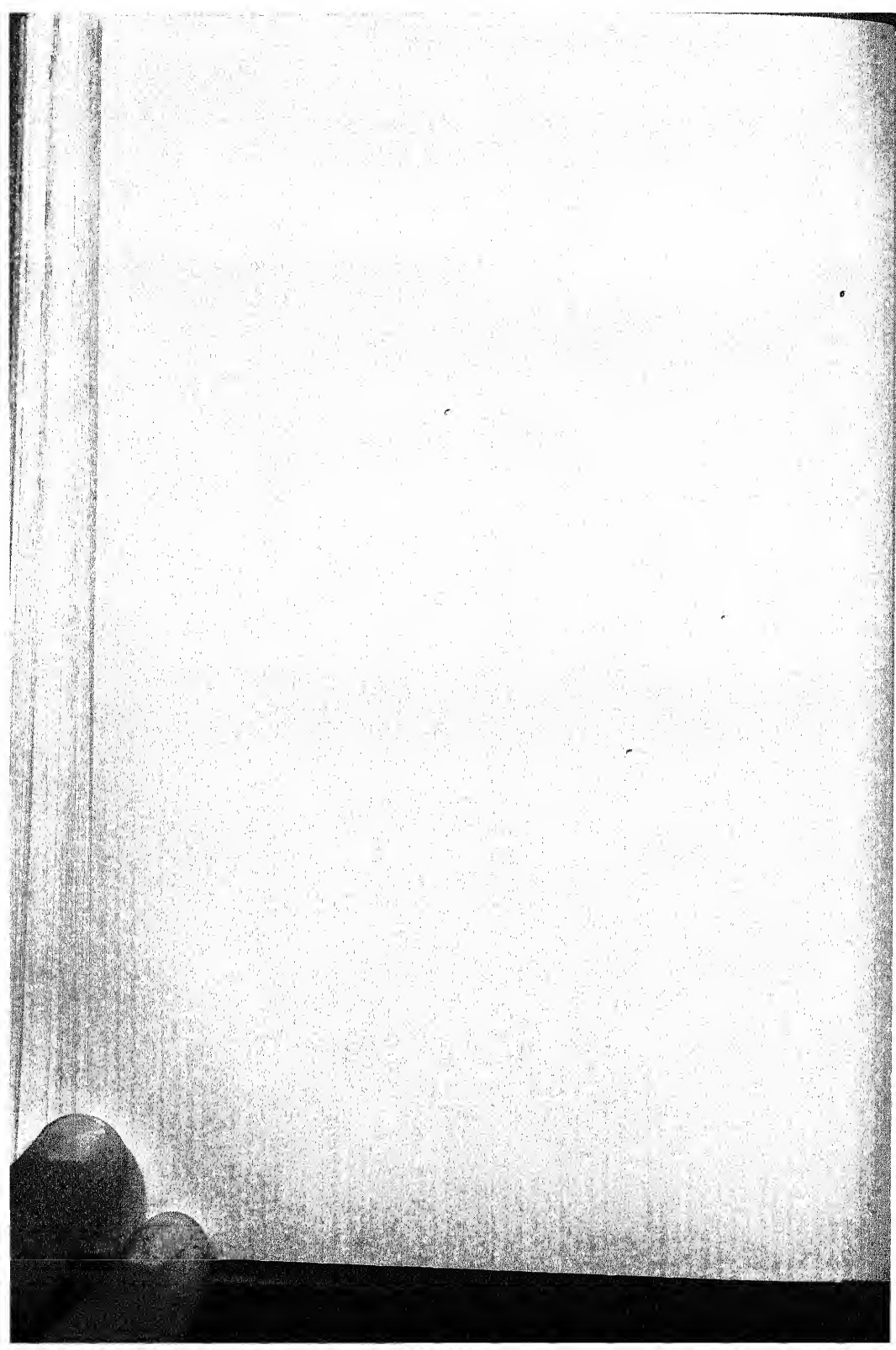
With increasing dependence on government grants and external aid, the old *elan* is fast disappearing from voluntary organisations. There is a lack of identity with the cause and selfless desire to work for national advancement. India's value system is changed beyond recognition. One does not hesitate to say that the future of the country can be assured only if the women recapture the qualities which have dominated the lives of Ahalyabai, Rani of Jhansi, Ramabai Ranade, Sarojini Naidu and Kasturba Gandhi, and many others who inspired women to pursue noble ideals, indifferent to consequence, and boldly and fearlessly work for the redemption of the motherland. )



# The Women's Movement— Then and Now

Kamaladevi Chattopadhyay

Mrs. Kamaladevi Chattopadhyay (b. 1903), Vice-President, World Crafts Council, was Chairman of the All-India Handicrafts Board. Her publications include: *Awakening of Indian Womanhood*; *Indian Handicrafts*, etc.



The initiative, courage and leadership women displayed in the political movement towards national independence or liberation from colonial rule assured them a ready and abiding place in India's new resurgent life. Today practically all doors are open to them, and women are seen filling a variety of posts and positions barring probably the army. The early fifties also saw the elimination of their legal disabilities and the adoption of the convention of equal pay for equal work for all. With this the women probably felt that they had indeed arrived. But tragically enough, with this also set in a stalemate which seems to have enveloped them like a heavy pall. It is as though gradually the vigour, drive and adventure had been shed. The majority lapsed back into the old routine. The ambitious ones only sought to reap what fruits they could out of the new opportunities. The reasons are many and complex.

There are not a few who say there has been no real women's movement in this country. What they have in mind is obviously a virulent feminist movement with a streak of the negative in it that perhaps made excessive dramatisation necessary, which was a feature of some of the movements in the west. There was a women's movement in India which began to take organisational form from the early part of this century, when new influences and fresh ideas began to flow in. It was a positive and broad based social force with a larger vision, not just a narrow circumscribed stream. It was in fact part of a great social upsurge for deep changes, which provided it with a healthy core and a rational demeanour. Society was not divided into two warring parties,

women versus men, rather into two segments, the liberal versus the conservative.

The emphasis here was definitely more on equal *opportunities* for women even while demanding equality under the law. It is of interest to note that the Indian women always asked for *adult* franchise, when demanding the right to vote. Even when concessions were offered to them such as enfranchising the *wives* of voters or reserving seats for women in elective bodies, they had firmly declined. It is perhaps also necessary to state here that the vote was not regarded as the only yard-stick of emancipation. Another equally happy feature of the movement was its non-communal, nay cosmopolitan, character. It embraced women of all communities and religions, both in its membership as well as leadership, always opposed sectarian issues such as communal electorates, and pursued larger problems of vital community interest. And thus a many pronged movement took shape.

It attached tremendous importance to education. The All-India Women's Conference in fact began as a crusader for more and better education, then found it necessary to spread out into other fields as family and community affairs are an integral whole that cannot be compartmentalised. The women demanded universal compulsory education at least for the primary to begin with, for all children not just for girls, while seeking certain facilities for girls and women teachers such as special hostels for the former and incentives for the latter. The Women's Conference went further. Most of its branches set up nursery and kindergarten classes which were very scarce and hardly known in those days. They set up middle, even secondary schools for girls in areas where girls were deterred from joining mixed schools.

Above all, the central body took a very wise and commendable step in setting up a college of Home Science, Lady Irwin College in Delhi, the first of its kind in the country and which it ran on its own through its own funds, as the government would neither recognise it as it was thought an outlandish venture, nor

## The Women's Movement—Then and Now

aid with finance. There was also the problem of finding trained teachers for the college as none were readily available. Teachers had even to be sent abroad for the required training. It became in course of time a great landmark in women's education.

A special feature of this period was setting up girls' hostels, especially for the working girls. It was not confined to the elite as is often supposed, but mainly for the working women. It also made on the spot studies of working women especially in plantations and mines through special study teams which led to and were instrumental in getting through appropriate welfare legislative measures, especially protective legislation where necessary.

The women naturally attached great importance to children. Various measures for improving the condition of the child were formulated which ultimately took the form of a children's charter. All this was decades before the birth of the UN and its championing the cause of children.

The problems thrown up by the World War II and its termination, launched the women into new projects. The widespread famine led to the birth of the Save the Children's Committee, a wing of the Women's Conference, which set up Homes for the care and education of the destitute children, some of which took permanent root. The large number of women thrown out of jobs induced the setting up of an employment bureau.

The most spectacular was the running of mobile health vans in remote rural areas where medical care was unknown or scarce. Under the slogan of "Keep the Vans Moving", they were made to serve hundreds of villages from one end of India to the other, a great boon to many remote neglected areas.

Another postwar project championed was the supply of quality milk at reasonable rates. The distress caused by milk scarcity had led the Women's Conference to make a special study



of the problem and produce a very telling pamphlet. Later a regular campaign was launched and a great deal of pressure brought on the new State Governments to provide adequate milk. Bombay led the way by responding and organising milk supplies through regular booths which other States soon followed. A worth-while project of far-reaching consequences was conducting of training camps for preparing cadres of social workers, for there were no such institutions then.

The biggest and widest campaign was, however, for a change in the laws. The foundation for this had already been laid by the adoption of the fundamental rights at Karachi in 1931 by the Indian National Congress which declared that in free India there would be no discrimination on grounds of sex. The principle had now been enshrined in the new Constitution. But it was a far harder task to bring the existing laws into conformity with it. Though women had been lobbying for appropriate legislative measures for decades, the total changes now called for saw them launch into a terrific breathless campaign throughout the country and intense lobbying within the portals of Parliament. The fairly easy passage of these enactments was an acknowledgment of the crucial role of the women in the freedom fight and the new India.

Let us now try to analyse some of the contributory factors that have led to the decline and extinction of a movement among the Indian women. It seems that the political leadership which had so long been denied power with prosperity, who had for decades been ruled by vigour generated by Gandhiji and an idealism which a long line of venerated leaders had inspired, now felt free to indulge their petty ambitions and often a thwarted greed. The emphasis quickly shifted from idealism to selfishness, as also from the group, community and party to the individual. It was more and more a question of each for himself rather than the nation or community. Many felt that recompense was due to them for what they had suffered or foregone in the past. There was thus a slowing down of that old missionary drive. A certain complacency settled on those who had provided the leadership in the past. The repeated warnings of leaders

like Gandhiji or Nehru that life for India had only just begun and in this delicate embryonic stage needed the greatest care and most sensitive handling, went unheeded. Gandhiji with his unerring intuition expanded and finalised the constructive programme to provide content and substance to the idea of a free country. But no one paid much attention to it. No one cared to ask whether the millions who were moved to participate in the great freedom battle, would automatically settle down as disciplined citizens, charged with a high civic sense. Whilst Nehru talked of the great new adventures, most others who were now the rulers of the country were content with a tidy income and a snug abode. Another unfortunate tendency was for all fields of activity to get politicised. Politics, its idiom, technique, values seemed to pervade all national affairs.

On the women the result was even more tragic. The vast concourse of women who had poured into the freedom arena, had slipped back into their old grooves. They now had the vote, a most powerful weapon in their hands. They also had several legal rights. But of what avail, for, they were hardly aware of their power and potential strength. The women leaders too had got settled in, though in new social grooves of power and position that independence had thrown up. They forged no links with the wide mass of women, who are only approached briefly at voting time to secure their ballot papers. So the common women at large remained and continue to remain to this day, quite ignorant of their precious rights or how to use them for their own or public advantage. Thus this human mass with its vast latent power which was once sought after and when harnessed moved the very earth, lies today stagnant and unused for social regeneration or reconstruction.

Where a state assumes the role of a welfare establishment, there is an increasing tendency for the administration to enter more and more areas of activity, assume greater initiative and slowly develop a monopolistic attitude. Has this been responsible for the undermining of that colossal constructive urge and daring initiative which marked the public life of pre-independence days?

## Indian Women

Slowly a feeling seems to have come over the people that little can be done without government help. These psychological trammels have also had an unhealthy, enfeebling effect on community activity. Yet in England where the Establishment claims to be paternal, individual initiative and community welfare activities are just as vigorous as in the pre-war days.

Gradually, voluntary effort and organisations lost their old mighty prestige and commanding position after independence as the authorities came to look with less favour on them. As some political chicanery also went on under the cloak of social welfare, private effort became more and more suspect, especially in the eyes of the Parliament.

These are significant symptoms of a dangerous malady in the body politic of a country which is wedded to democracy. Democracy has meaning and reality only where the people at large are sensitised to their rights, duties and obligations, and encouraged to exercise them.

We completely ignore the need for voters' *education* which must be distinguished from party propaganda which is freely poured out at election time. Every stimulus has also to be offered for their close participation in the local and national affairs from planning to implementation through various local development projects. Above all the crucial test of a democratic society, lies in the imaginativeness of the citizens, the bold adventure of its own independent leadership, and the success they show. In pre-independence days nearly 75% of the educational institutions and hospitals were provided by the people themselves through their own effort. When we proudly acclaim India as one of the largest democracies, we simply count the heads and the ballot papers cast, reducing an institution we wish to respect, to arithmetical figures, not conscious active human minds.

Barring exceptional cases and occasions, women in public life tend to pattern on men and their ways. It seems that in the new India after 1947, while the young got busy qualifying for and

## The Women's Movement—Then and Now

pursuing professional careers which were opening before them with fair amount of ease, the elders sought security with all its creature comforts and assured public positions. Under the circumstances championing of needy causes seemed too much of a hazard and got neglected.

There are other reasons too for this lack of social sensitivity, a major one amongst them being the warped kind of education imparted to growing minds. Usually learning is taken as the gateway to a job, its merit being judged by the monetary return accruing therefrom. For, the importance of a professional is evaluated by the "Success" achieved, which invariably is in terms of affluence. Lip homage apart, it is not measured in terms of its ability to meet social challenges, or its sharpening of social awareness and acceptance of the wider social obligations. The larger functions of professions to embrace the citizens' fundamental rights and duties are never stressed in the imparting of education, nor the obligation to scrutinise, assess and strive to enhance the moral quality of human life. The professionals seem content to remain prisoners in their professional sanctum. So much for the young professionals. Neither does education encourage independent thinking to enable one to sift and sort out the nostrums that are fashionable and the popular ideologies which pour out from all the mass media, and realise that the validity or correctness of a proposition is not determined by the size of those who propagate or accept it.

Women, as family members or citizens, cannot be isolated from the entire society. The many needs and demands such as adequate facilities in housing, education, water, electricity, transport and the like apply to all. Also the need for clean air, food, administration and a hundred other factors, in none of which the women's voice is heard any more, because of the ignorance of the masses and the callous indifference of the classes. That the women have not promoted even a powerful consumer movement, a territory so close to them, on their own in a country like India, is proof enough of a deadly complacency. The oppressive problem of price rise is thereby used as a political baton by

## Indian Women

opposition parties, not as an essential civil need by conscious citizens.

There are other vital issues that touch women even more, like dowry. It is socially a most degrading institution and economically hazardous, making a mockery of both law and human decency. Nevertheless today there is no movement even to stifle it, leave alone exterminate it. Here is an open and consistent violation of a law by all classes and at all levels. Again, child marriages are performed galore and the very Act for which women once fought, is nullified with impunity. Yet the women remain silent.

Similarly women who once showed deep concern over the fate of children and compiled a charter of their rights, seem now to have forgotten the most sensitive and vulnerable section on which rests the future of this nation, the children, comprising nearly 40 per cent of the population, a majority of whom remain undernourished. Nor is any account taken of the large proportion of unwanted children born to parents due to latter's ignorance, negligence or sheer irresponsibility, adding to the burden of poverty and the ranks of the destitute and unemployed.

Is this just a low tide in the usual ebb and flow of the human stream? And will the tide rise again to promising heights launching a fresh flow of powerful volume? Let us not forget however, that the human tide is stirred into motion by human initiative and not by an invisible spring. Will the woman's hand raise the tide again to a crest?

# Cultural and Religious Influences

Ashok Rudra

Dr. Ashok Rudra (b. 1930) is Professor of Economics, Visva-bharati University, Santiniketan. A specialist in economic statistics and economics of planning, he had earlier worked in Delhi and Bombay Universities.





✓ The woman of modern India is an enigma. How has she come to be what she is—given the conditioning she has received from her cultural and social environment down the ages?

✓ The modern Indian woman is often an object of admiration by people of the rest of the world for the role she plays in the country's public life as well as for certain qualities that she seems to possess in greater measure than women of other cultures: a certain poise, a certain balance, a certain grace going with no mean measure of competence. ✓

✓ We would argue in the course of this article that this personality of the Indian woman could not have been the product of her social and cultural environment alone. The environment has been so unfavourable to her that if it were left to that alone to determine her personality she would have become a non-person with a deformed, embittered, retarded and delinquent mental make-up. We would formulate a hypothesis, namely that the formative influence of Indian women has had two opposing poles: one a certain concept of the woman of flesh and blood that has emerged out of the evolution of the elitist culture of the Brahminical tradition, and the other a certain religious world view in which the Female principle occupies a position of central importance, sometimes dominating it.

✓ The role Indian women play and the position they enjoy in the present-day India would appear as enigmatic if one were to try to understand the phenomenon solely in terms of the history of social

values. The enigma would dissolve, so we suggest, if we should look above—from the society of women to the society of goddesses.

✓ Let us, however, clarify, at the very outset, what Indian woman we are thinking of when we talk of the "Indian woman" of modern India. With all the different social groups based on tribe, language, religion, caste etc. and the stratifications based on economic classes cutting across them, and the further divisions brought about by different degrees of Westernisation, what woman do we have in mind? Could we say anything whatsoever that would hold equally good for the Santal day labourer, the Gujarati housewife, the Tamil office-going girl and the convent-educated, party-giving, executive wife from nowhere? It is obviously our assumption that there is such a common denominator of personality traits and behavioural patterns under all these diversities. ✓

Corresponding to this common denominator we are hypothesising the existence of a matrix of connections between the many different cultures and sub-cultures across the different socio-anthropological groups at any given time as well as over time which matrix is the resultant of a compounding of social philosophy with religious thought. This matrix has taken shape slowly but stably over time, in a dialectical inter-action of an evolving social theory with the developing cults of Vishnu and Siva, but more importantly that of Devi and the various esoteric cults.

Let us take for granted the basic data: that Indian society has all along been (like all, or almost all, developed societies in the modern world) a male-dominated society, where the woman's place has been primarily confined to the home, her role limited to procreation, upbringing of children, and catering for the needs of men-folk by way of creature comforts. There might have been exceptions in some tribal groups or other communities, but they have hardly affected the country's ethos. Also, there is no difficulty in our accepting that things have not been the same during all periods, that women's position was considerably higher during the Vedic period than during later periods; but once again it does not affect the general picture, for during no historical period

did women enjoy equal position or status with men. This provides a basis for comparison with other societies, to all of which the above characterisation largely applies.

When one starts making the comparison between the role and position of women in modern India and that in the countries of the West, which are supposed to be so much more advanced, generally as well as particularly in the matter of emancipation of women, one cannot but be struck with certain unexpected contrasts.

Consider, for instance, women's role in politics and administration. The part that has been played by women in the Freedom Struggle and in the politics and administration of post-independence India has been more important than that played by them in most countries of the West. It is not just a matter of Indira Gandhi or Sarojini Naidu or Vijayalakshmi Pandit—individual cases, however remarkable, can always be swept aside as exceptions. What cannot be swept aside as a matter of exception is the tolerance extended by men in India to working under the leadership, guidance, or even orders of women.

It has been observed by students of the Western social scene that men as well as women in those countries would find it quite inconceivable to be governed, represented or politically led by women. If this be treated as no more than a matter of opinion, the solid fact remains that far from being elected or appointed to the highest offices of party or government, women in the countries of Western Europe had to fight street battles even to acquire the right to vote; and that right was not won in many countries until after the Second World War. There has been no woman President or Prime Minister in any one of these countries, nor has there been any significant participation of women in the higher ranks of administration. By contrast, women in India have not only reached the highest positions of power; have not only got equal political and civil rights as men without having to fight for them; they have been increasingly joining the higher ranks of administration and the various other public services and acquitting themselves with credit.

## Indian Women

Indian woman's participation in the economic life of the country is perhaps not very important, but it is no less important than in the Western countries. Like everywhere else, working women in India are to be found predominantly among the lowest of occupations. In the service and professional sectors the participation rate for women in proportionate terms may indeed be higher in the Western countries but that is due mainly to certain non-significant occupations being kept exclusively for women in those countries e.g. the professions of waitresses, secretaries, receptionists, etc. But when it comes to more challenging jobs, whether that be of lawyers or engineers or aviation pilots, the participation rate of women in India is probably no less important than in those countries.

What is of greater consequence than the rates is the eagerness and even passion with which Indian girls aspire after these occupations in the teeth of the most formidable obstacles. This is to be contrasted with the very poor utilisation women in the West make of the much greater opportunities that are open to them. A related phenomenon is the remarkable earnestness and seriousness of purpose girl students in Indian universities demonstrate, often exceeding that of their male class-mates; a phenomenon noticed in other countries also.

Of course, it may be said, and quite rightly, that women who go in for higher education, who take to professions or take up politics, constitute a microscopic minority; they can make no difference to the fact that the life of the overwhelming majority of women continues to be beset with socially imposed disabilities and indignities and deprived of opportunities. But a minority phenomenon is not the same thing as an insignificant or an exceptional phenomenon: it can be and in this particular case it is of crucial and fundamental significance, given that the minority concerned constitutes the leadership elite of the society.

What in the country's heritage could have prepared the ground for this admirable performance by the women of modern India and the equally admirable tolerance exhibited by the men

of her times? It is difficult to trace this to anything in the country's inheritance of social values. Thus, the important part played by women in the country's politics, administration and the higher professions stands out in stark contrast to the poor estimate that has always been made of women's capabilities in these matters. Thus, Buddha gave the following reasons why women ought not to be entrusted with responsibilities: "Women are soon angered, Ananda, women are full of passion, Ananda, women are envious, Ananda, women are stupid. That is the reason, Ananda, that is the cause, why women have no place in public assemblies, do not carry on business and do not earn their living by any professions." ("Sullavaga, X.1.6"). In one of the Jataka stories, the Bodhi Satta is made to say, "Infamous is the land which owns a woman's sway and rule, and infamous are the men who yield themselves to women's domination".

According to the Mahabharata (Shanti Parva) the following categories of persons are to be excluded from the place where a king holds any consultations: "dwarfs, humpbacked persons, lean men, lame and blind men, idiots, eunuchs and women". Women thus were lumped together with the retarded and the deformed. (This, when treated as at all human—most often women were treated as objects and lumped together with other items of property—villages, gold and cows!) Manu, Shukra and Chanakya, the ancient lawgivers, confirm this barring of women from any responsibilities. Let alone being considered worthy of any positions of power in society, women were not even considered fit to be witnesses. Manu ruled them out because "their understanding is apt to waver". Yajnyavalkya and Vasistha did the same for considering woman as "lies incarnate".

But religious attitudes probably spring from much deeper regions of the human psyche than social values; and such is the complexity of the Hindu mind that while systematically nurturing these crude ideas about women's incapacities, it at the same time peopled the heavenly abodes with goddesses with totally different qualities. Mother goddesses might have held sway over the minds of men in many ancient civilisations, but they lost their



importance in all the developed religions excepting Brahminism. In Islam, Judaism and Christianity, the supreme godhead is a father figure. Mother Mary probably represents a left-over of the Mother cult, but in an extremely weakened form.

In Hinduism, however, goddesses either dominate or at least play as important a part as male gods. In the Sakti cult the supreme divine power is conceived of as a woman, either as the benign and radiant Durga, distributing bounties; or as the formidable Chandi, killing Asuras; or as the dark, terrible, blood-thirsty, naked ogress -Kali- adorned with garlands of severed heads and arms, standing on the prostrate figure of Siva. This last mentioned posture suggests, as clearly as any such symbolism can ever do, the dominance of the Female principle over the Male principle. This dominance may not be there in the Vaishnavite and Saivite lines of religious thought and practice. Lakshmi and Parvati may be consorts of Vishnu and Siva with not a great deal of independent roles. But at the philosophical level, Prakriti is a complementary principle to that of Purusha on an equal footing. This equality, or even supremacy, enjoyed by the Female principle in the religious thought of the country is probably what lies at the bottom of men's acceptance of women as leaders in this country. If on repeated occasions the male gods all combined could not manage to save the world from the destruction caused by Asuras, and the job had to be entrusted to some Chandi or Chamundi it should not be surprising that men, steeped in this tradition, would not hesitate to entrust the defence of the country to a woman.

The same dialectic seems to have operated in the moulding of the Indian woman's personality in general. We have talked about the thirst for learning that Indian girl students seem to have. What could have encouraged this particular aspiration in women and the liberalism in men in this respect? Was not the idea of even school education for female children fiercely opposed by the conservative leaders of society as late as the nineteenth century? Prior to that, was it not centuries after centuries of dark and dense ignorance in which women of all classes were kept steeped?

Of course, one is wont to take the celebrated names of Gargis and Maitreyis as indicator of the access women had to higher education during the Vedic age. One can also point out that the darkness was illumined at places by the dazzling light of the resplendent Vasantasenas and other brilliant Nayikas of Sanskrit poetry and drama. But surely these examples only go to make the point that women were denied any opportunity for accomplishments within the sphere of their natural lives; they could acquire them only at the cost of leaving their homes, to become either sanyasins or courtesans!

If this is the thesis, we can take as anti-thesis the fact that the deification of learning has taken the form of the graceful Saraswati. How could scholars down the ages have sought the blessings of a female divine personality for success in their scholarly pursuits and yet believe that women were incapable of intellectual accomplishments?

We have begun the essay by noting the fact that Indian women are prized for their grace and charm, their balance and poise. But what could be the cultural roots of this personality? The life that women have lived hardly provided the soil for such flowering. India is the country where widows were burnt. Women have known hardships in all societies, in all civilisations. But surely nowhere else could the inequity of the treatment of women have surpassed that in India. It is not just that the birth of a male child has always been and still is hailed with joy, whereas that of a female child is considered to be a family misfortune. It is not just that there was child marriage and polygamy and restricted property rights and scope of exploitation by male relatives all round and the searing tyranny of the mother-in-law. Not only that while men could exercise a lot of sexual freedom, it was denied to women more totally than perhaps in any other civilised society.

Even this life of torture and all these restrictions on actions and movements, which often drove women to gruesome modes of suicide, does not add up to the full measure of the woman's lot. Far more terrible than all these social practices has been the

## Indian Women

environment of ideas in which women have had to live. The restrictions and the disabilities on women have been imposed on the basis of a rationalised philosophy of woman that is indeed vile and vicious. As is well-known, there have been different Dharmas for people with different vocations: the Brahmins had a different Dharma from the Kshatriyas, the businessman from a professional thief; but women had only one Dharma—that of Pativrata. For a woman there is only one god—the husband, in whose selection she has no voice. She has only one duty—unquestioning obedience to her husband, unlimited service to him, however low he may be morally or however unfair his demands.

A case of the Sati ideal much cited by the different Puranas is that of the wife of a leper who lovingly carried her husband in her arms to a brothel at his command. In the Mahabharata, a reluctant queen is persuaded by her husband to submit herself to the sexual services of an appointed man following the Niyoga custom by quoting the following maxim from the Vedas:

“A woman must do whatever her husband asks her to do, whether that be in accordance with Dharma or opposed to it.”

This emphasis on woman's total subservience to men has been justified in terms of a view of women's weaknesses that is truly mean and despicable. The Brahmin law-makers made a veritable catalogue of the alleged vices of women that really speaks very ill of the mind that thought of them. Consider the following observations, which, for all their extravagance, are quite typical:

1. “Women are neither friends nor foes. They perpetually crave for ever new men. They desire any well-dressed male they see; but in order to obtain what they want they make a show of chastity. . . . In public women are very modest. But when they get their beloved in private they make as if to devour them. . . . They bestow more affection on men who satisfy them sexually than on their own children.” (Devi Bhagavat).

2. "Oh, King! Do you not know that women's love, like that of wolves, is never genuine? That is why men of the world ought never to trust women and robbers". (Urvashi to Pururava, in *Devi Bhagavat*).
3. "Women remain chaste only as long as they are not in a deserted place and do not get the chance to be acquainted with any man. That is why it is necessary that respectable women should be always guarded by friends". (Arundhati, in *Siva Purana*).
4. "Women, even when they are of good family, beautiful and married, do not hesitate to transgress morals. . . . At the first opportunity they leave wealthy and good-looking husbands to share adulterous bed with other men. . . . Men desirous of adulterous sex have only to approach them with just a few words of flattery and they immediately get infatuated by them. . . ." (Apsara Pancha Chura to Narada, in *Mahabharata, Anusasana Parva*).
5. "With opportunity and secrecy and the right wooer, all women will go wrong. Aye, failing with others, with a cripple even"—(Buddha, quoted in the *Milindapanha*).
6. "Women constantly suck the blood of men like leaches. . . . That very woman whom man considers his beloved robs him of his manhood through sexual indulgence and of his mind, his wealth and all his possessions. Hence, is there any greater robber than a woman"? (*Devi Bhagavat*).

Some of these observations are so ignoble that one could expect them only from some unfortunate persons who have known no ordinary family women, not even ordinary prostitutes (who, by and large, are honest traders in the commodity they sell), but have drawn their knowledge exclusively from the society of the lowest pimps. But alas! these venomous oozings have taken place from the minds of men who have been the spiritual leaders of the society!

## Indian Women

Nor is such characterisation of women a matter of exception: quotations like the above can be taken out of our ancient holy literature in their hundreds; while any contrary sentiments granting a minimum of decency to women are encountered only rarely.

Women of India had to keep their sanity, their balance, their dignity and their self-respect even while treating as god men those who thought of them so hideously. Their task was not made easier by the other aspects of ambivalence which marks so deeply the Hindu concept of the holy. On the one hand chastity is picked up as the supreme virtue of women, who are treated as congenitally incapable of attaining that virtue and therefore treated with contempt; yet, at the same time, the Brahminic mind spins out the lurid details of the lascivious adventures of Radha and her companions and this literature is made a staple food for the nourishment of women's mind. Similar comments may be made about the erotic temple sculptures adorning the outside of Hindu temples and the fact that the one common denominator of all the concepts of holiness that belong to the inside of the temples has been the concept of sex being evil.

However miraculous, modern Indian woman seems to have survived all this. She seems to have acquired a balanced personality that keeps an equal distance from the two poles of asceticism and excess indulgence, continence and debauchery, that seems to bedevil the Brahminic attitude towards life.

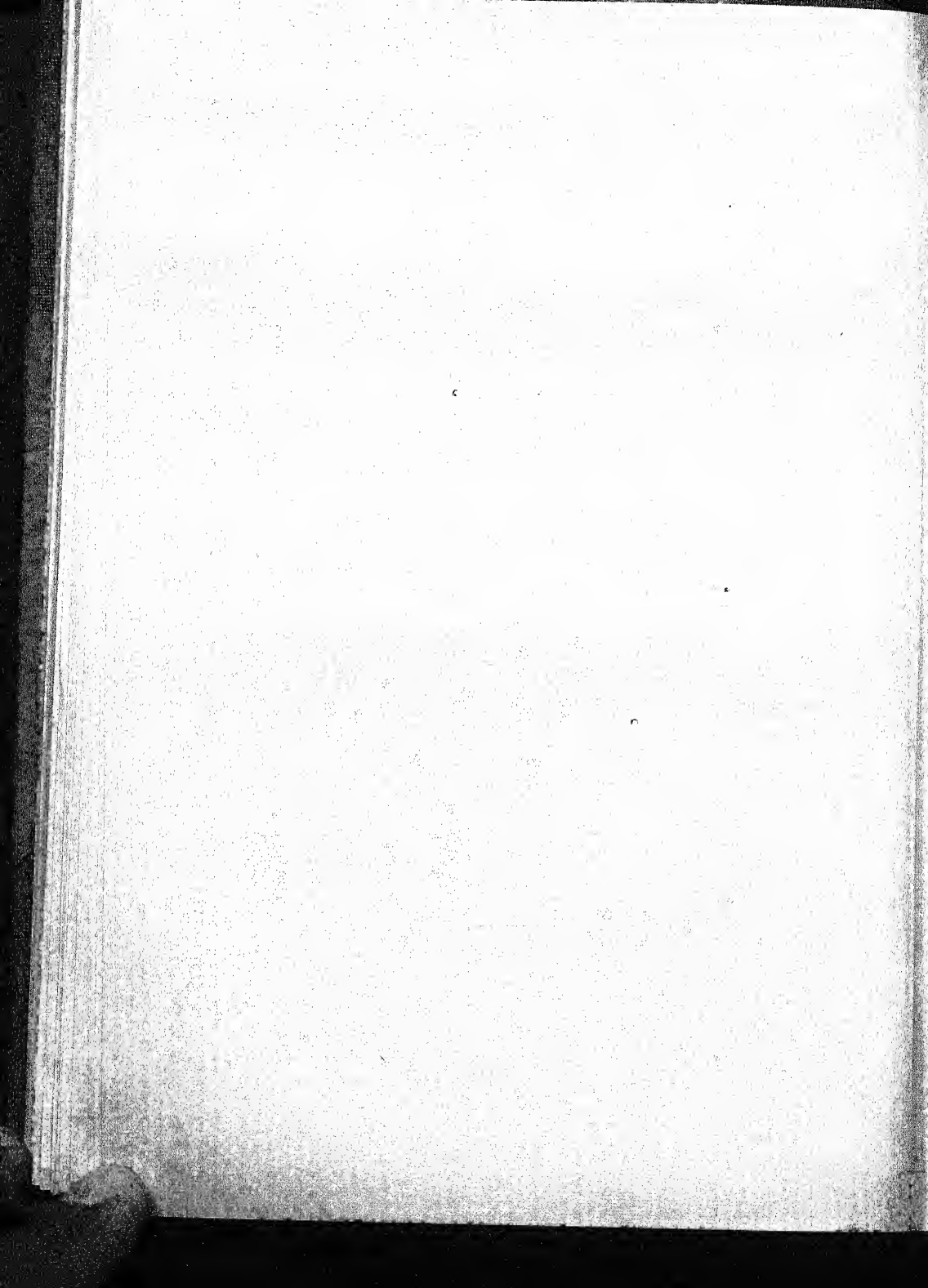
This emergence of the Indian woman, like lotus out of the mire, has to be treated as a gift of the goddesses of the country. The Hindu mind, which is inconsistent about many matters, has been inconsistent also about its attitude towards women. The same mind that produced the infamous catalogue of the supposed vices and weaknesses of women also created the goddesses of the country, and with what love and what respect have they been shaped! It is a remarkable fact that while most of the gods have been portrayed as morally lax, given to various sexual delinquencies, there is not a single goddess that has been



ascribed any of the vices that have been listed as being inherent to feminine nature. Not only the lecherous Indra, but most other minor gods—Varuna, Surya, the Asvinis—and even such a supreme god as Siva, behaved with precious little restraint over their lust. But what a striking contrast is presented by the goddesses Lakshmi, Saraswati and Parvati and the earlier Vedic deities like Usha, or even such minor characters as Sachi, wife of the wretched Indra. Nowhere in all the endless tales and anecdotes about them are they shown to behave with even a fraction of the misdemeanour that is exhibited by the gods. The goddesses, other than those of the Sakti cult, have been vested with remarkably charming personalities: full of grace and dignity, luminous with the glow of restraint, and yet not life-denying, but shining in the fullness of life. It is with this richness of personality that the goddesses seem to have blessed the Indian women.

It is not then surprising that men who are as deeply religious as they are in India and who have concentrated their veneration on the female personalities of Lakshmi and Saraswati and Durga and Kali would allow a feminist revolution in modern India to take place without really offering any serious opposition to it. It is a remarkable fact of history that the legal bottom has been knocked out of the institutional machinery of torture, exploitation and oppression of women that was fabricated and kept in place over thousands of years with hardly any organised social forces in the country fighting to retain them. Indian workers get the same wages, irrespective of sex, and this is not so in many advanced Western countries. Laws relating to marriage, divorce, abortion, inheritance etc. are at least as enlightened in India as, if not more, those of the citadels of liberalism in the West. Of course, the social reality may fall far short of the legislative provisions. But we have been discussing attitudes and values, and from that point of view the male-dominated society itself reforming its institutional framework in this voluntary fashion is indeed very remarkable.





# Panchakanya— An Age-old Benediction

M. A. Sreenivasan

M. A. Sreenivasan (b. 1897), administrator and industrialist, was in the Mysore civil service and served as Minister in Mysore and Dewan of Gwalior State. He has contributed articles to many journals and periodicals.



“Ahalya, Sita, Draupadi, Tara, Mandodari.”

They were the five names my mother always intoned while, with her right forefinger dipped in sesame oil, she pressed five neat round dots on the floor in front of the small mat on which my little daughter Lakshmi sat cross-legged, before she was given her Friday oil bath. “Panchakanya”,<sup>1</sup> she then said, raising her voice, and drawing the finger across the five dots, she repeated “Chiranjeevi, Chiranjeevi”,<sup>2</sup> as she wiped the oil on the child’s hair and forehead. That invariably, was the prelude to the bath, the invocation and the benediction.

For Gopu, her grandson, it was different. His turn came on Saturdays and the names intoned were seven.<sup>3</sup>

Ahalya, Sita, Draupadi, Tara, Mandodari . . . What names to invoke, names of great women, each of different hue. How well they anticipate,—or did they inspire—Manu the lawgiver’s dictum:—

“Let the names of women be good to pronounce—sweet, simple, pleasant and appropriate; let them terminate in long vowels and resemble words of benediction.”

The prayers of a people, their rituals, the gods and goddesses they invoke, the blessings they seek are a reflection of their ideals and their way of life. A prayer may ask for daily bread, another for annihilation of the infidel. Yet another prayer, sublime,

impersonal, may seek nothing more—or nothing less—than to be vivified and illumined by the radiance of eternity, as in the Gayatri.<sup>4</sup>

Now let us take the five names my mother invoked, the benediction she chanted. Who were they? What ideals did they inspire? What culture did they reflect?

There is no saint among them; and but for a single exception no goddess. They were, all of them, devoted wives and mothers. All sought and received the grace of the Saviour, and their lives were full of significance.

Ahalya, the first woman created by Brahma, was the devoted wife of the sage Gautama. The great god Indra was so madly infatuated with her beauty that he descended to the hermitage and, taking the exact form of Gautama, deceived and seduced her when the sage was out for his morning bath in the Ganga. When came back to the hermitage, Gautama discovered Indra, who had lingered too long. Burning with fury, before Ahalya could say a word, the sage pronounced upon her a dreadful curse—that she be turned into stone. Ahalya, shattered and distraught, told him how she had been duped, and begged for mercy. Unable to take back the curse, the sage told her that only the touch of Sri Rama's foot would end the curse; and he consoled her with the prediction that this would surely happen. And so indeed it did.

Who does not know Sita, the paragon of wifely virtue and devotion?

The Ramayana is replete with descriptions of her beauty, her graciousness, her selfless love and devotion to Sri Rama, her suffering and sacrifice. There is a gem in Kalidasa's *Raghuvamsa*, which I must not fail to quote here:—

"Sita followed the footsteps of Sri Rama in the forest," says Kalidasa "even as Smriti (the Epics and Puranas) faithfully followed Sruti (the Vedas)".<sup>5</sup>

Draupadi is a name to conjure with. Her story touches many an aspect of Indian life and tradition, from the institution of Swayamvara (the bride choosing her husband-to-be from among a number of assembled young men), and the sanctity of mother's instruction, to a formula in polyandry. The five Pandava brothers are in exile living in the guise of Brahmins, in Ekachakra. They hear of the Swayamvara arranged for the marriage of the lovely Draupadi, and go to it unrecognised. Arjuna's matchless skill in archery wins for him the contest for the hand of Draupadi. The brothers hurry back home and tell Kunti: "Mother, we have secured our *bhiksha* (alms) for the day." As usual, their mother Kunti tells them: "Share it among the five of you."

Those were their mother's words and they must be honoured.

As they always did, when faced with a knotty problem, the brothers sought the advice of sage Narada. Narada rules that Draupadi take each brother as her husband for one year; should there be any breach of the rule, the guilty brother should journey far away on a long purificatory pilgrimage—which Arjuna had later to undertake.

Then there is the story of Draupadi's 'Vastrapaharanam'—stripping her of her garment.

The wicked Kauravas, sworn enemies of the Pandavas, plan to insult and humiliate the brothers, and put Draupadi to shame. Duryodhana's brother Dusshasana drags her by the hair to a crowded hall where he tries to strip her naked in the sight of all present. Draupadi who was clad in a single garment, utters a prayer to Sri Krishna.<sup>6</sup> As Dusshasana tears each sari away, another sari appears under it, till after tearing at a thousand saris, he sinks exhausted, and Draupadi emerges triumphant, to the astonishment and humiliation of the Kauravas.

Tara and Mandodari, again, are great characters from the Ramayana.



Tara was the devoted wife of the brave and valiant Vali who fell to the arrow of Sri Rama. Tara, who had the vision of Sri Rama as a Supreme Being, vainly tried to dissuade her husband from opposing him. Likewise, Queen Mandodari, consort of the mighty King Ravana pleaded with her husband to return the captive Sita to her husband. "Sita cannot excel me. What has she that I have not?" she asked her husband, in true womanly style. But all her questioning and pleadings went in vain.

These, then, are the Panchakanyas. What a colourful variety of examples they represent! They are neither saints nor virgins. None of them is heavenly. All have "a touch of the earth", as Tennyson said, "the low sun makes the colour". And all are wives and mothers. For, the ideal of Indian womanhood is the mother, the one being in creation, lowly or high-placed, poor or rich that, though rooted on earth, is godlike in her capacity for unbounded love and devotion with no thought of any return or recompense.

The sculptures in our temples, in Halebid or Belur, Konarak or Khajuraho are, in the main, not of maidens or virgins but of full-breasted women, "*Ghanakucha Dwandvaika bhushaamani*" as the poet Kulashekara sang of the goddess Rukmini. No marriage ceremony is complete without the prayer for offspring:

"Garbham dehi Sineevali  
Garbham dehi Saraswati"<sup>7</sup>.

and the blessing given by the assembled priests and elders to the young bride was "May you have ten children, and your husband be like the eleventh".<sup>8</sup>

The concept of the Mother Goddess has permeated India's culture and tradition from the earliest Vedic hymns, through the great epics and Puranas, to the present day. Applauding her victory over the demon Mahishasura—which incidentally, earned her the title of Mahishasura-mardani,—the grateful gods thus sing her praise, in the *Markandeya Purana*:

“O Goddess, You are the Intellect (Saraswati) which knows the essence of all sciences; You are Durga, the barque that safely takes us across the stormy sea of existence; You are Lakshmi, enshrined in the heart of Vishnu; You are Gauri, dwelling in the body of Siva.”<sup>9</sup>

## Indian Women

### References

1. Five Women.
2. Live Long.
3. "Aswaththama, Bali, Vyasa, Hanuman, Vibhisana, Krupa, Parasurama."
4. Tat Savitar Varennyam Bhargodevasya Dhimahi Dhiyoyonaha Prachodayath.
5. "Srutherivakyam Smrithiranvagacchath".
6. "Shankha chakra gadha pane dwarka nilay-aachyutha Govinda pundarikaksha Rakshamam Shrangatham".  
It is interesting to note that this prayer is recited daily at the conclusion of Sandhyavandanams.
7. "Grant Conception, O Moon, O Saraswathi".  
—(Yajurveda)
8. "Dashasyam Putranadhehi Pathimekadasam kridhi".  
—(Yajurveda)
9. Medhāsīdevi Vidithākhila Shāstharasārā  
Durgāsi durga Bhavasāgara Nowrasangha  
Shri Kaitabhari Hrudayaika Kruthādhivāsa  
Gowri thevameva Shashi mowli krutha prathishta.

# The Position of Women in Indian Society

Andre Beteille

Andre Beteille (b. 1934) is Professor of Sociology, Delhi University. He was Jawaharlal Nehru fellow in 1968-70. His publications include *Caste, Class and Power*; *Castes: Old and New*, and *Social Inequality* (Editor)





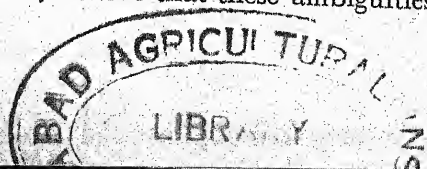
## The Position of Women in Indian Society

An eminent British anthropologist wrote not long ago that, while much was known about the position of women in primitive societies, there was very little scientific material available about their position in British society. It is much the same in regard to India. With a few notable exceptions, Indian sociologists have not devoted much serious attention to the systematic study of the position of women in their own society.

There is no dearth of discussion on what may be called the women's question in India. But, in the absence of systematic studies, this discussion often leads to opposite conclusions, and, indeed, it often starts from opposite assumptions about the position of women in society. Some argue that women enjoy a very high status in India and point to the number of distinguished women in high public office. Others maintain that the lot of Indian women is very hard, and a representation was made not very long ago to the Backward Classes Commission that women, as a whole, should be treated as a Backward Class in this country.

There are equally sharp differences of opinion about the changes taking place in the position of women in India. Some regard these changes as profound and pervasive; they point to the increasing participation of women in public life and to the changes introduced in their legal status. Others maintain that the position of women has changed very little and that Indian society continues by and large to be a male-dominated society.

I do not, for a moment, believe that these ambiguities can be





resolved in the course of a brief discussion. At the same time, no *proper* solution can be found unless we view these questions in their *proper* sociological perspective. Before we are able to say anything meaningful about the position of women in a society we must know something about the structure of that society. The position of women can change in a significant way only when this structure itself undergoes change.

What does it mean to view the position of women in India in a sociological perspective? It means first of all to break Indian society down into its basic structural divisions and to examine the place assigned to women in each one of them. The confusion that we find in discussions about Indian women often arises from our failure to take sufficiently into account the internal differentiation present in Indian society. The position of women is not the same among Hindus and Muslims, in the different regions of the country, and, most particularly, among the different social strata.

Secondly, the sociological perspective requires us to pay attention to the position of women not merely as it is supposed to be in principle, but especially as it actually is in practice. Here again, much confusion is created by both traditionalists and modernists. The former construct an idealised picture of women in traditional India from selected classical texts and, comparing this with her actual position in recent times, find the present less satisfactory than the past. The latter point to the many freedoms granted in principle, to women since independence and contrast these with the restrictions from which they actually suffered in the past. The sociological perspective urges caution against such comparisons, and demands that we compare facts with facts, and ideals with ideals.

Thirdly, our perspective requires us to avoid hasty evaluative judgements on the position of women in the past or present, or in this or that stratum of society. Those who write on the women's question generally come from a particular stratum of society, and are likely to be guided, consciously or unconsciously, by the moral

code of that stratum. We must remember that there is nothing final or absolute about this code. We cannot talk reasonably about the position of women in a particular section of society unless we view it in relation to its own moral code. Any evaluation we may wish to make will have to be made after and not before an examination of the values of the people concerned.

An analysis of any important aspect of Indian social life will have to start with a consideration of regional differences. The regions differ from each other both in their geographical features and in their historical development. Corresponding to these factors there are differences between them in material and non-material culture. To take one example, the systems of kinship and marriage are generally different in the Dravidian-speaking areas in South India as compared to the Indo-Aryan-speaking areas in North India. To take another, the role of women in agriculture is generally different in the paddy-producing areas in the east and south from their role in the wheat-producing areas in the north.

There are differences in the extent to which women are allowed freedom of movement in the different regions of the country. As someone who had grown up in cities in North India, I expected, when I went to do field work in a South Indian village, to find social life—particularly among the women—to be governed by a rigidly orthodox code. But I soon discovered that it is possible to combine a high degree of orthodoxy in ritual life with a certain freedom of movement among women. Women in South Indian villages enjoy greater freedom of movement than their counterparts in North India.

The segregation of women is, of course, closely associated with certain religious beliefs and practices. We can, therefore, expect to find important differences in this regard between the different religious groups. In general, segregation is practised to a greater extent among Muslims than among Hindus; this seems to be more an aspect of the Islamic cultural tradition than of Islamic religious beliefs. At the other end, women appear to enjoy

more freedom among Christians and Parsis than among Hindus.

Early marriage for girls, so common in Indian society, has at least some connection with traditional Hindu values and norms. Early marriage and early motherhood, apart from having important demographic consequences, also hinder the full participation of women in certain important fields of social and cultural life. There are significant differences between the different religious groups in the age at marriage for women, and one would expect corresponding differences in their domestic roles. It appears that social legislation has not had a very significant effect in raising the age at marriage, giving us a good example of the divergence between law and custom, which is so common in all human societies.

The division into regional and religious groups does not, of course, exhaust the range of cultural pluralism encountered in India. In the same region and within the same religious group one might find a variety of social customs. Thus in Kerala, the Nairs and Nambudiris followed very different customs even when they lived as neighbours and were bound by the closest social ties. The Nairs were matrilineal and matrilocal whereas the Nambudiris were patrilineal and patrilocal. The rights enjoyed by Nair women were in many ways superior to those of their Nambudiri sisters.

While it is true that women enjoyed more freedom among the Nairs than among most communities of comparable status in India, it must not be thought that women have necessarily a dominant position in matrilineal societies. In practically all societies, whether patrilineal or matrilineal, women have, in fact, a lower status than men. In matrilineal societies property is transmitted through women, but this only means that it generally passes from mother's brother to sister's son. In most such cases the woman, instead of being under the control of her husband, is under her brother's control. Neither matriliney nor polyandry (where a single woman is at the same time married to several men) is a guarantee of the supremacy of women.

## The Position of Women in Indian Society

The customs of the over 30 million tribal people living in different parts of the country have certain distinctive features. Many observers have commented on the freedom from restraint that characterises much of their social life. Men and women participate freely and on equal terms in song and dance, and in other forms of collective entertainment. However, here also the influence of Hinduism (and to some extent of Christianity) has introduced restrictions which, as in most such cases, affect the sexes unequally. Thus, one encounters tendencies towards a lowering of the age at marriage, the ban on widow remarriage, and other restrictions considered desirable by non-tribal people.

Perhaps the most conspicuous variations in the position of women are the ones we find between the different strata. Indian society is highly stratified, and the marks of stratification are visible in practically every sphere of life. Any analysis of the place of women in Indian society will have to take into account the fact that their role in social life in the upper strata is quite different from their role in the lower strata. Differences of this kind are to be found in every complex society, but the peculiarly rigid character of social stratification in India makes them more conspicuous here.

The most readily visible feature of stratification in Indian society is its division into a number of castes which are hierarchically graded. Brahmins, Cultivators, Artisans and Harijans were not only assigned different ranks, but there were many differences in their customs which were sanctioned by traditional rules. Among the most important of these rules were the ones restricting marriage between members of different castes. In addition to the general rule of endogamy which required individuals to marry within their own caste, there was also the rule of hypergamy according to which, under certain conditions, men of a higher caste could marry women of a lower caste or subcaste. Underlying these rules was the value placed on the purity of women which was the more jealously protected the higher the caste of the woman.

During the last hundred years, several castes and communities have attempted a kind of upward social movement which has been described as Sanskritisation. This is a process by which members of lower castes seek to improve their status in society by adopting the customs of the upper castes. This is often associated with important changes in the position of women, particularly at the middle levels of the caste hierarchy. The age at marriage tends to be lowered, widow remarriage is given up, the dowry goes up and women are discouraged from going out to work, all this being done in imitation of the traditional customs of the upper castes. In this way, at least in the rural areas—where the vast majority of our women live—certain kinds of upward social mobility lead to a restriction rather than an enlargement of the freedom of women.

Although the institution of caste is a characteristically Hindu phenomenon, divisions corresponding to castes are found also among other religious groups such as Muslims and Christians in India. In the case of the Muslims, the pattern of life among the high-status Ashraf groups is quite different from the life of women belonging to functional castes such as Julaha or Kalal. It would be misleading to talk about *purdah* among Muslim women in general, without taking these differences into account. Similarly, in a state like Kerala, which has a large Christian population, there are vast differences in the position of women between the Old and the New Christians.

In addition to the differences of caste, there are also important economic differences which divide the people of India. Even where the distinctions of caste are weak, those between rich and poor or between workers and non-workers remain. In traditional Indian society the most important economic differences were very closely associated with distinctions of caste. India is still largely an agrarian society, and if we are to understand the position of women in it we must examine their place in the different agrarian strata.

In the minds of most liberal-minded people the emancipation



of women is closely associated with their right to work. But there is also another side to the picture. In agrarian societies work is more often regarded as a hardship than as a privilege. If this applies to men, it applies even more to women. It is not true that women in India have always been confined to their homes. In rural India a substantial number of them work in the fields as agricultural labourers, and their work is invariably of the most onerous and arduous kind.

The Census of India provides figures representing the proportion of cultivators and of agricultural labourers in the total agricultural work force. These figures show that women constitute a large though varying proportion of agricultural labourers in the different parts of the country. In general, their proportion is higher in the paddy-producing areas of East and South India than in the wheat-producing areas of the North. In some of the most fertile rice-growing districts of South India women actually outnumber men among the agricultural labourers. There are various reasons for this, but it should be noted that wet paddy cultivation is a particularly difficult and unpleasant occupation, and it goes without saying that women are paid less for their work than men.

This is the context, in which we have to examine the stigma which attaches to groups whose women customarily work as agricultural labourers. Working as an agricultural labourer in a paddy field is very different from working in an office as a secretary or a receptionist, and it is only natural that the two types of work should be differently evaluated in a society whose members are so keenly preoccupied with status. It is understandable too that among agriculturists a community which seeks to raise its social status should try first and foremost to ensure that its women do not work at jobs which are ill-paid and universally regarded as demeaning.

It follows from what has been said that although some changes may be taking place in the position of women in India, these changes cannot be of major significance unless the conditions



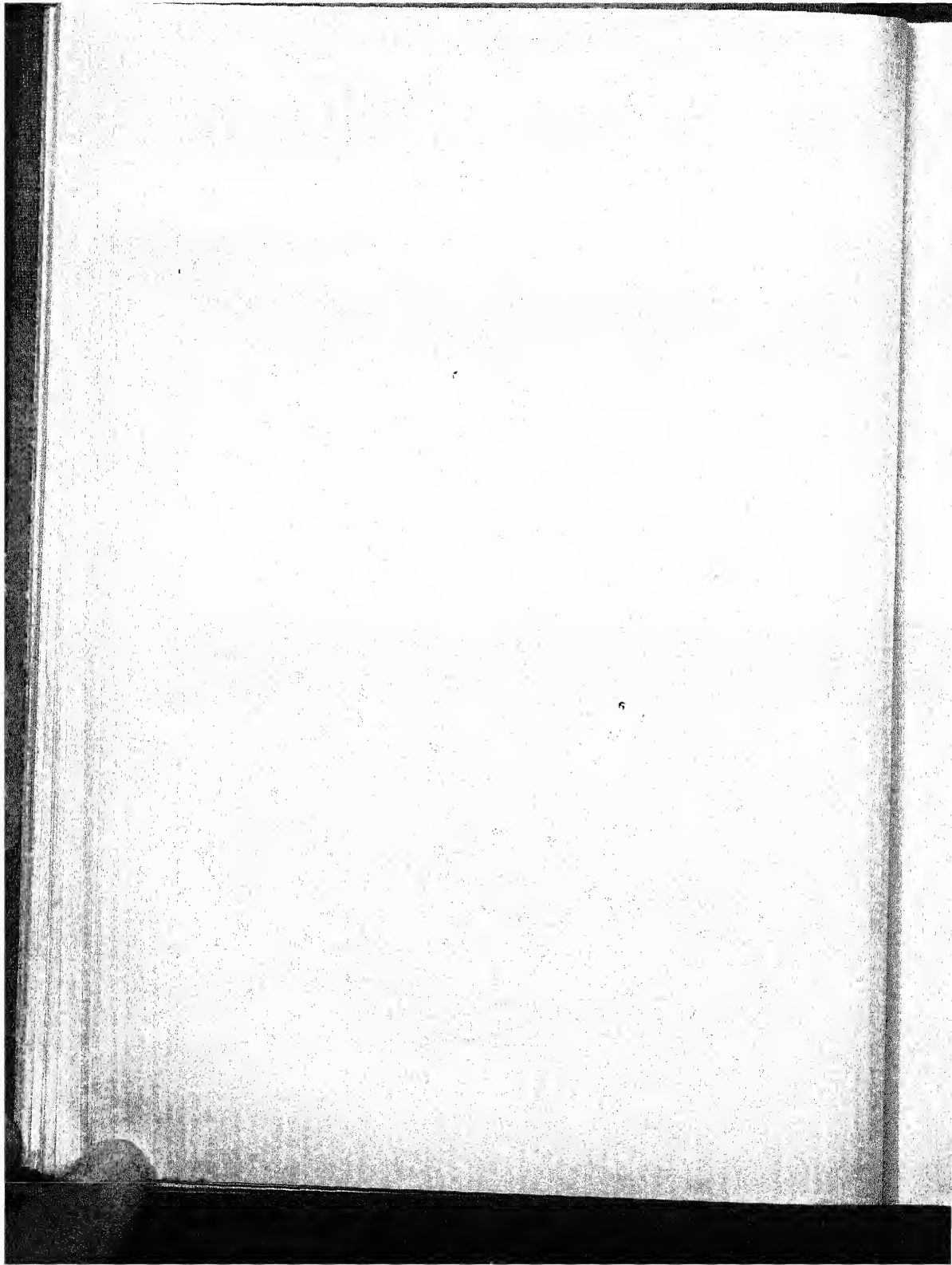
of work in agriculture (and in industry) are themselves radically changed. It is easy to be beguiled by lists of eminent women in the different walks of public life, but the basic social and economic conditions under which women live in the countryside have altered very little. Women work in the fields when they have to, and, when they do not, they are married away at a very early age much as they were in the past.

# Marriage among the Hindus

Veena Das

Veena Das (b. 1945), Reader in Sociology, Delhi University, has published a number of research papers in professional journals.





It is often assumed by the believers in economic determinism that the low status of women can be directly attributed to the constraints placed on them by their biological functions which do not allow them to participate in the productive activities of the economy to the same extent as men.

The argument runs as follows: Because of the fact that women are physically less strong than men, the latter have to perform the more arduous tasks in the economy. Further, a woman needs male protection during her child-bearing and child-rearing years and this dependence on men is responsible for the unequal control over physical and other resources that women have when compared to men.

It is not so much that the argument is wrong as that it is incomplete. For instance, among the hunting and food-gathering tribes, who are the surviving examples of the most primitive form of economy that we know of—the division of labour between the sexes is such that women gather food and men do the hunting. The actual contribution that women make to the total food resources of the group is greater than the contribution of the men and yet hunting is considered to be more prestigious than food-gathering. Obviously a purely utilitarian explanation does not explain the differential assessment of food-gathering and hunting in these societies.

Similarly, the woman's contribution to the economy in matrilineal societies is not significantly higher than her contribution

among the patrilineal groups but we find that the birth of a female child is greeted with much more enthusiasm and joy among the former. Thus to argue in purely utilitarian terms is to oversimplify the problem and can give the misleading impression that in some magical way the status of women will improve if they are given greater chances of making substantial contributions to the economic life.

I propose to take a different set of variables—viz., the norms of marriage and kinship among the Hindus and show the close correlation between these and the norms regulating the position of women. I do not wish to argue that the institutions of kinship and marriage are the main causal factors in determining the status of women but to show the interrelation between the two. Indeed, I think it is misleading to cast our explanation in terms of a cause-effect framework. We should rather look at the problem in terms of a set of variables such as relations between the sexes, structure of kinship groups, marital norms, division of labour between the sexes, control over domestic and extra-domestic resources by men and women, and the rights, duties, privileges and disabilities of women, which are so closely interrelated that a change in one variable would lead to change in others, but none of which can be given the status of a causal factor.

The notion that the honour of men rests in their women and can be violated by their conduct is an extremely common one in India. This leads to a direct control by men over the sexual and marital norms relating to women. Thus marriage is not considered as primarily an affair of the boy and the girl who are getting married but as an event which involves the entire kin groups of both spouses. It may be used for strengthening already existing relationships or for creating new alliances; but in any case the decision to marry a particular person rarely rests with a boy or a girl. In fact, it is important to remember that the idea of marriages based on romantic love is a recent one in human history. Even in the West this was not an accepted norm of marriage till the last century. Accordingly, we shall view the institution of marriage as a means by which alliances can be created

or strengthened between two or more groups such as families, clans, and royal houses.

The simplest form of such alliances is where a woman is directly exchanged for another woman. Given the universality of the rules of prohibition applicable to incest within the nuclear family, it is essential for men to look for their wives outside the family. The easiest way in which a man can secure a wife for himself is by giving his sister in marriage to another man and getting the other man's sister for his own wife. This is sometimes institutionalised in a way that two groups continue to exchange their women over generations. The high-caste Hindus usually do not approve of this custom and there are various proverbs in the different regional languages expressing disapproval of this form of marriage. It is called 'kunda-munda sambandham' by the Tamil Brahmins, meaning 'ball-ball marriage', and in Punjabi it is called 'atta-satta' which is a denunciatory way of referring to exchange. It seems that the high castes do not approve of this form of marriage as it conflicts with the Sanskritic ideal of the girl being given as a gift in marriage without accepting anything in return.

On the contrary direct exchange is considered a desirable form of marriage among lower castes, semi-Hinduised tribes, as also among the inhabitants of regions like the Himachal, which have not come completely under the influence of the Sanskritic Brahmins. In general, among these groups the sexual and marital norms relating to women are not as harsh as among the high-caste Hindus. Women are allowed greater freedom of movement. The girl's parents do not have to pay a huge dowry for her marriage and, in fact, it is the groom who has to give a 'bride-price' to the girl's parents. Similarly, divorce is easier and widow-remarriage has always been permitted. These customs are now changing rapidly as these groups are taking on the styles of life of the higher castes.

However, till recently it was only among the high caste Hindus that the gift of a virgin daughter was considered as an act of religious merit, the husband was ideally regarded as



a deity, divorce and widow-remarriage were considered to be morally repugnant and it was the duty of the kin of a woman to protect her purity and through her the purity of the entire group. This whole complex of ideas which is associated in the popular mind with the entire Hindu population was, in fact, found only among high-caste Hindus. It follows that among the lower castes, neither bride-price nor exchange-marriage is in basic contradiction with their other ideas. "You sell your daughters", say their high-caste neighbours to which the followers of the custom retort—"We do not accept our wives in charity". In addition, the groups among which exchange-marriage is practised point out that it provides a built-in check against harassment by the girl's in-laws. If a man does not treat his wife well, then he can expect his sister to be ill-treated in turn. This also ensures that the systematic status difference between the wife-giving and wife-receiving family, that is typically found among the higher castes and often results in humiliating inferiority for the bride's kin, does not have scope for development.

The higher castes do not believe in direct exchange of women but a careful analysis of their marital institutions shows that they may give their daughter and expect in return either political patronage or intangibles like status and prestige. The groups which best exemplify this are the princely castes of Rajputs. The Rajputs are a numerically large category, and have a very wide spatial spread so that it is much more meaningful to think of them as a generic category rather than a group with well-defined boundaries. In such a large category of people differences in terms of status, wealth and power, are bound to be marked. The Rajputs, for instance, are divided into well-defined clans and lineages which are ranked. Thus the princely clans rank higher than the commoner clans and among the former the lineages of eldest sons rank higher than that of the younger ones. This is because of the rule of primogeniture by which the eldest son succeeds to the throne (or the headmanship etc.). Thus, in the political capitals, the dominant lineages were those of the eldest sons and since a ruler was likely to be suspicious of his younger brothers who would be contenders for the throne in the event of

his death without an heir, he would usually try to disperse them far away from the capital, into the provinces. As a consequence, in addition to status differentiation on the basis of lines of descent, the Rajputs also developed marked territorial gradations with the most blue-blooded Rajputs concentrated in the political capitals of Rajasthan.

The system of marriage among the princely groups described here is consistent with their political systems. Their marriage rules are described as hypergamous, by which we mean that a girl of a lower section can marry a boy of a higher section but not *vice-versa*. It is interesting to see the returns which the parents of the girl and the boy expect from such a system. To the girl's parents such a marriage is advantageous because they can use the fact of their alliance with a higher section to gain more prestige *vis-a-vis* those people of their own section who cannot boast of such alliances. But obviously the girl's parents must be ready to bear the social costs of such a marriage, or else it would be difficult to persuade the boy and his parents to consent to a match with a girl of a lower section. It seems that there are two factors which may induce the boy's parents to go in for such a match—one is the political support of the girl's group and the second is money.

As already indicated, the rule of primogeniture meant that only the eldest son could succeed to his father's position but the younger brother qualified if the eldest brother was to die without a son. In such a system one is bound to be suspicious of one's nearest patrilineal relatives. On the other hand, since marriages within the clan were forbidden, one's affinal relatives could be counted upon for support as they could not contend for the throne. Thus a man may be motivated to contract an alliance with a group which has lower prestige but which is powerful. Then he can expect political support and the bride's parents may expect to rise slowly in the status hierarchy by the prestigious alliance. There are dramatic instances of such status-climbing even in recent history where girls belonging to the royal families of doubtful antecedents have been married into princely families



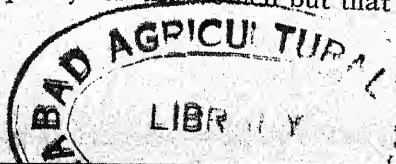
of Rajasthan, and these alliances have helped the girl's parents to establish their claims for Rajput status.

Another means by which a boy may be persuaded to marry a girl of a lower section is by the inducement of a huge dowry. One suspects that among the lower rungs of the Rajputs and Jats, the dowry played an extremely important role in marriage negotiations. The women in this system are like pawns, to be played carefully in the whole game of status building. Because the girl belonged to a lower group, her incorporation into the husband's group was a very slow and painful process. She would be constantly reminded of her low status, the 'small' amount of the dowry and would be under constant pressure to get presents of a higher and higher value from her parents. The husband was very conscious of his higher status and would take every opportunity to make this abundantly clear, especially on visits to the natal family of his wife. The extent to which considerations of the girl's happiness could be completely ignored is demonstrated by a case in which a royal family belonging to the south which was trying to establish its Rajput status married its girls to a princely family of Rajasthan despite the fact that the girls could not even speak the language of their husbands.

Two further implications of the system are worth considering here. The highest group in the system would be left with a surplus of girls as only a limited number could be absorbed within the group if its men were to also accept wives from the lower group. In a system in which giving a daughter in marriage to a man of a different group is an implicit admission of the higher status of that group—the highest groups are left with the cruel choice of either forcing their women to remain unmarried or committing female infanticide. This is what leads one to suspect that in a hypergamous system the groups at the apex may have been the ones to resort to female infanticide. The problem of the surplus males among the lowest groups was more easily resolved by allowing them to marry outside the caste into tribal groups, such as the Kolis of Gujarat.

My second conjecture is that high rates of female suicide might also be associated with hypergamy, though not exclusively with it. In very general terms one can state that in patrilineal systems, the crucial variable which determines the position of a woman within the system is the degree of her incorporation into the husband's group. The greater the ease and effectiveness with which she is incorporated into the husband's kin group, the greater the chances that whatever the formal rules, her actual position in the group is not a completely subservient one. Now in the system that I have been describing, a woman was forced to live among people who explicitly regarded her and her natal family as belonging to a lower group. She would be constantly reminded of this factor and would be pressurised to extract more money from her already hard-pressed parents. Not until her own sons reached marriageable age would she be in a position to consider herself as belonging to her conjugal group. Suicide, in such cases, must seem an attractive way out of an intolerable position. The high rate of female suicide in regions like Saurashtra where hypergamy has been known to be prevalent and the fact that this is usually attributed to the oppression of in-laws lends initial support to my conjecture.

In contrast to the large groups with clear status differentiation that we have described, there are the small, exclusive castes like the Brahmins. The Brahmin castes are not numerically preponderant and sometimes they may consist of not more than 150 families, as the Nandi Brahmins of Gujarat. As can be expected, the notions of purity and pollution are much stronger among the Brahmins than among Rajputs and Jats who are more concerned with ideas of honour and shame. Given the small size of the group, status differentiation within the group is not very marked so that we do not find women being treated as pawns for establishing prestigious alliances. Nevertheless, women play a very vital role in the protection of the ritual purity of the group. The anthropologist Nur Yalman has argued that women are literally seen as points of entrance, as 'gateways' of the caste group. If men of ritually low status are to get access to them, then it is not only the purity of the women but that of the whole



caste group that is threatened. In very simple terms, the position can be stated as follows: Among these castes, the ritual status of the women can be considered as invariable. If they mate with men of higher status then the children will have a ritual status higher than that of their mothers. If they cohabit with men of the same ritual status then the children have the same ritual status as the parents and if men of lower ritual status mate with them then descendants will be born whose status will be lower than that of the mother. Thus for the protection of the ritual purity of the group it is vitally necessary to guard the sexuality of the women but not that of the men. It is only necessary that a man should be *married* to a woman of the same ritual status but it is not necessary for the men to abstain from sexual relations with women of lower castes. Two institutional complexes can be immediately discerned from the above propositions.

The first relates to the practice of pre-puberty marriage, the worshipping of the husband as the deity which is emphasised in the wedding-ritual itself and following from this a complete ban on divorce and widow-remarriage with glorification of such practices as the *sati*. Since the main threat to the purity of the group comes from the sexuality of women, the group must ensure that the women must be protected from men of ritually undesirable status who might pollute them. This is achieved by marrying the women to men of ritually correct status before they have reached the child-bearing age and thus transferring the problem of their sexuality to their spouses. Similarly, after the husband's death the woman is made completely unattractive sexually by such customs as shaving of head, and giving up of all ornaments and adornments.

Where pre-puberty marriages are not possible we find the practice of 'mock-marriages' by which the woman is at least symbolically married off to a ritually correct object. In this context, one should mention the Nambudiri women, a majority of whom were not allowed to marry. The Nambudiris were a very small and exclusive Brahmin group of Kerala. In order to keep the priesthood exclusive and for ensuring that property was not



partitioned between brothers, the Nambudiris only allowed the eldest brother to marry. The younger brothers could not marry but they were allowed to have mistresses from the neighbouring Nayar castes who were matrilineal. The Nambudiris achieved the aim of protecting their women's sexuality not by pre-puberty marriages, but by completely removing them from circulation and hence any possible polluting contacts. The Nambudiri women are the only Brahmin women of the South who had to observe strict purdah and who could not move out of the house without covering their faces with palmleaf umbrellas. So strict were the constraints on their freedom of movement that even in her own wedding ceremony a Nambudiri woman was substituted by a Nayar girl in those parts of the ritual that necessitated her movement outside the women's part of the house.

The second institutional complex relates to the custom of women of lower ritual status being allowed to cohabit, actually or symbolically with the men of better ritual status. We are all familiar with stories of gods descending on the earth to give seed to devout women in Hindu mythology. At the empirical level, the force of this idea is demonstrated in the institutions of temple prostitution, Kulin hypergamy, and the Nambudiri-Nair relationship. In the marriage ceremonies of several non-Brahmin castes, the bride is required to be symbolically deflowered by a Brahmin. The Kulin Brahmins of Bengal were in such demand as grooms for non-Kulin Brahmin girls, that a Kulin Brahmin would be married to a number of girls spread over various villages. He had no obligation to his wife or children. It was quite possible for a girl never to see her husband after the wedding night. The girl might have seen her husband only once but she was expected to follow the strict ritual routine of the widow on his death. Since the age difference between a Kulin Brahmin and his wives could be very great, the girls often became widows at a comparatively young age. The sad plight of such child-widows who never had a chance to develop a meaningful relationship with their husbands and yet who were expected to lead an impoverished existence in mourning for the husband, has been the subject of a vast corpus of Bengali literature. The legislative reforms, at



least in this field have been successful and though age at marriage has not gone up, the extreme hardships caused by Kulin hypergamy have nearly disappeared.

The relationship between Nambudiri men and Nayar women also derives from the great value placed upon good seed and hence upon men of higher ritual status in the caste system. As is well known, the Nairs are matrilineal, and have the institution of what is known as 'visiting husbands'. The domestic unit among Nairs is composed of brothers, sisters and sisters' children. A Nair woman can enter into a number of sexual alliances either with men of her own sub-caste or men of higher Nayar sub-castes and most preferably with Nambudiri men. The Nambudiris only allow the eldest brother to marry, but freely enter into sexual relations with Nair women; however, they protect their own 'purity' by not accepting any food from their mistresses. Incidentally, the acceptance of food from a low-caste mistress has very severe consequences as the man is treated as being polluted internally; but cohabitation only results in external pollution and is cleansed by a simple bath. Thus the same caste ideology of purity, which places such stringent taboos on the Nambudiri women, gives practically a free hand to the sexuality of Nambudiri men.

Let us now consider certain other types of marital institutions and see their impact upon the position of women. Among many groups in South India, marriage is prescribed or preferred between certain relatives. Among the Tamil Brahmins a girl is allowed to marry a younger brother of her mother, and among most South Indian castes the marriage of a boy with his mother's brother's daughter, or father's sister's daughter is allowed. It is to be noted that marriage with any type of relatives is not allowed. For instance, while the mother's brother's daughter may be a possible spouse for a boy, he would not be allowed to marry his mother's sister's daughter. Indeed, such a marriage would be considered incestuous.

While uncle-niece marriage was probably never generally practised because of demographic factors, marriage between the

types of cousins described above had greater numerical incidence. In addition, villages in South India are not exogamous, permitting marriages to take place within the village. In effect, marriage-networks in the South do not spread very far and after her marriage the girl does not have to move in among complete strangers. Many people think that this provided for better adjustment by the girl to her parents-in-law. Also, the prospects of marriage for a girl who was destitute or who was not very good-looking were not entirely bleak. Her mother's brother or father's sister would be under a positive obligation to arrange her marriage with his/her own son. An anthropologist, who has worked in the South, once related this instance to me. A girl's mother had died and the girl was not considered pretty by local standards. Her mother's brother arranged a marriage between his own son and her, and narrating this he told the anthropologist, "She is so dark that no stranger will be willing to marry her."

Against the advantage of marrying into a known family and a familiar locality so that the girl is not suddenly placed in an entirely new and unfamiliar environment, must be weighed the disadvantage that some psychologists have pointed out—viz., the possibility that sexual adjustment is difficult when the husband and wife have known each other since childhood. According to this argument, the familiarity which makes for easy familial adjustment also makes it difficult for a man to experience the same erotic excitement as he would for an unfamiliar woman. This argument, of course, presupposes that cousins will know each other before, which may not be necessarily true. Further, the very fact that the cross-cousins are regarded as potential spouses probably inhibits free interaction between them even when they meet. It seems necessary to test these notions on the basis of empirical data as intuitive reasoning can be quite misleading.

Whereas in the South marriage is a means of reinforcing an already existing relationship, in the North it is used primarily for establishing new relationships. When a marriage negotiation is finalised, people say, "We have contracted a *rishta*—a relationship." There is a ban on marriages between any blood-relatives,

and the South Indian practice of cross-cousin or uncle-niece marriage would be regarded as incestuous in the North. In addition to the ban, marriages within the village are not allowed. On an average, the marriage network of the higher castes like the Rajputs would spread approximately thirty miles around the village. For lower castes like Chamars, the marriage network would not be quite so wide, being limited to 15-20 miles around the village. This means that after marriage the girl not only goes to live among people with whom she is totally unfamiliar but she also goes to a completely new place. In addition, visits from her relatives are not encouraged. Customarily, the girl's senior relatives were not allowed to accept food or water from any household in her conjugal village. Thus the bride leads a very isolated life in the first few years of her married life.

Given the low age of marriage, this experience of being uprooted from her natal home and her natal village is a very traumatic one. A clue to the trials of a new bride in the strange environment of her conjugal home can be had from the folk songs of this region. The bride's nostalgia for her father's house and the hostility which she faces from her mother-in-law and sister-in-law is the repeated theme of folk songs sung on the occasion of a marriage. Madan, an anthropologist who has worked among the Kashmiri Pandits, relates how a man's newly married wife and his sister had a fight. The man scrupulously avoided taking any sides, for which he was severely reprimanded. He was told that he could not remain indifferent in a fight between his own 'blood' (i. e. the sister) and a 'stranger' (i. e. his wife). This example clearly brings out the marginal position of the wife in her conjugal house though as a woman grew older and had her own sons, she could expect her position to improve.

Though monogamy is the ideal of marriage among the Hindus, plural marriages are not unknown. Under certain circumstances, even the scriptures allow a man to take more than one wife, and the most important of these is the inability of the wife to bear a son. So strong is the notion of a male heir who alone can perform the vital *shraddha* rituals for his ancestors, embedded in the

Hindu ethos that it is not uncommon for women who have no children or who have only daughters to be driven away by their husbands. Even otherwise, among certain sections of the Hindus, as among the Paharis, a man could have more than one wife. However, the status of the latter wives was usually lower than the status of the first wife. This is demonstrated by the fact that the marriage ritual for taking a second wife is much simpler than for the first wife. For instance, in parts of Gujarat a second marriage could be finalised simply by exchange of garlands by the groom and the bride.

Among some groups a significant difference in status is found between the children of the first wife and the children of secondary wives. There is evidence to show that among some South Indian groups like the *Nngudi* Vellalas or the *Pramalai* Kallars, a great deal of emphasis was placed on the first marriage of a man which was always required to be contracted with a woman of the same caste. However, subsequent wives and concubines could be taken from lower castes. This was never approved, but the children of these secondary wives and concubines were accommodated within the caste though their lines of descent were given lower status. Here again we find the system much more tolerant of lapses in the sexual and marital norms relating to men. Similar lapses on the part of women would be punished by nothing less than death or excommunication from the caste.

In this context, mention must be made of the custom of levirate marriage among some castes like the Jats in Haryana and Punjab. Among these castes, if a woman was widowed when she was comparatively young then she would be married to her husband's younger brother. The custom was known as 'chadar dalna'—'to cover with a sheet'. It has been argued that since Jats were landed castes, this custom kept the land undivided within the family. This, of course, assumes that a widow would exercise control over her husband's share of the property, which seems to be highly unlikely. Be that as it may, this custom often meant that a widow was subsequently married to a man much younger than herself. Incidentally, this is not an obsolete

custom which is demonstrated by the fact that in the rehabilitation of the war-widows in the recent war with Pakistan, it was found that many of the widows belonging to Haryana and Punjab were being forced to stay on with their parents-in-law till their husbands' younger brothers grew up to a marriageable age. The pathos of such a widow has been beautifully depicted in Bedi's "Ek Chadar Maili Si" though cynics may argue that this is kinder than customs like *sati*, or the usual disabilities forced on a widow among the Brahmin castes.

Polyandry or the custom<sup>6</sup> of a woman having more than one husband, though not very common, is found among some sections of the Hindus. Again, some regions in Himachal have groups among which fraternal polyandry is practised. Sometimes a woman, like the mythical Draupadi, may be married to a group of brothers or she may be married to only one man but other brothers may have sexual access to her. This practice also is supposed to be conducive to keeping the property of the brothers undivided. Some writers have postulated an association between polyandry and female-infanticide, which would artificially alter the natural male/female ratio of the region. It certainly seems unlikely that the male/female ratio could naturally be such as to allow one wife for three or four men.

There are several variations in the marital institutions of the Hindus. Unfortunately, those who have looked at the problems of women have taken the Brahminical ideals of marriage as valid for the entire Hindu society. I have not attempted here to describe other variants, such as marriage among the matrilineal groups and the tribal peoples. However, I believe I have provided a general perspective in which the marital institutions of Hindus may be viewed.

One question which arises often in the context of a discussion on the marital norms of the Hindus is the question of the control which a man or a woman exercises over the choice of his or her spouse. In popular journals, the relative advantages and disadvantages of what are quaintly described as "love marriages"



vs. "arranged marriages" are subject of intense debate and discussion. It is not my intention to contribute anything to this debate. However, I would like to point out that the nature of marriage as an institution in India is significantly different from the nature of marriage as an institution in most Western cultures.

One of the ways in which the cultural meanings attached to kinship and marital institutions may be analysed is through the study of kinship terminology. It is significant that in the English language, for instance, the relatives by marriage are "relatives-in-law". This means that the relationship with them is, at the conceptual level, a "legal" relationship only. This is opposed to "relatives by blood", who are conceived as naturally related. Despite the many variations in the kinship terminologies of the different regions in India, I believe that it would be difficult to find such a contrast between "blood-relatives" and "relatives-in-marriage".

Everywhere in India (with the exception of matrilineal groups like the Nairs) marriage creates ties for a bride which are as binding on her as the ties of blood. After getting married she becomes incorporated into the husband's group. The terms for wife, such as *ardhangini*, *sahdharmini*, emphasise her non-duality with the husband. The son-in-law has a special position in his wife's household where he is treated as a privileged guest. Among some castes of U. P., even the term of reference for a son-in-law is *mehman*, guest. Thus the quality of affinal relations among the Hindus, regardless of region and caste, is quite different from the quality of affinal relations in the West.

I am not proposing that in Western countries affinal relatives may not feel close bond with each other. However, I would like to emphasise that whereas a girl in the West has a choice in this matter, a girl in India is obliged to love and honour her husband's relatives in much the same way as she is obliged to love and honour her own parents. She may, in fact, do neither—but that is a different matter.



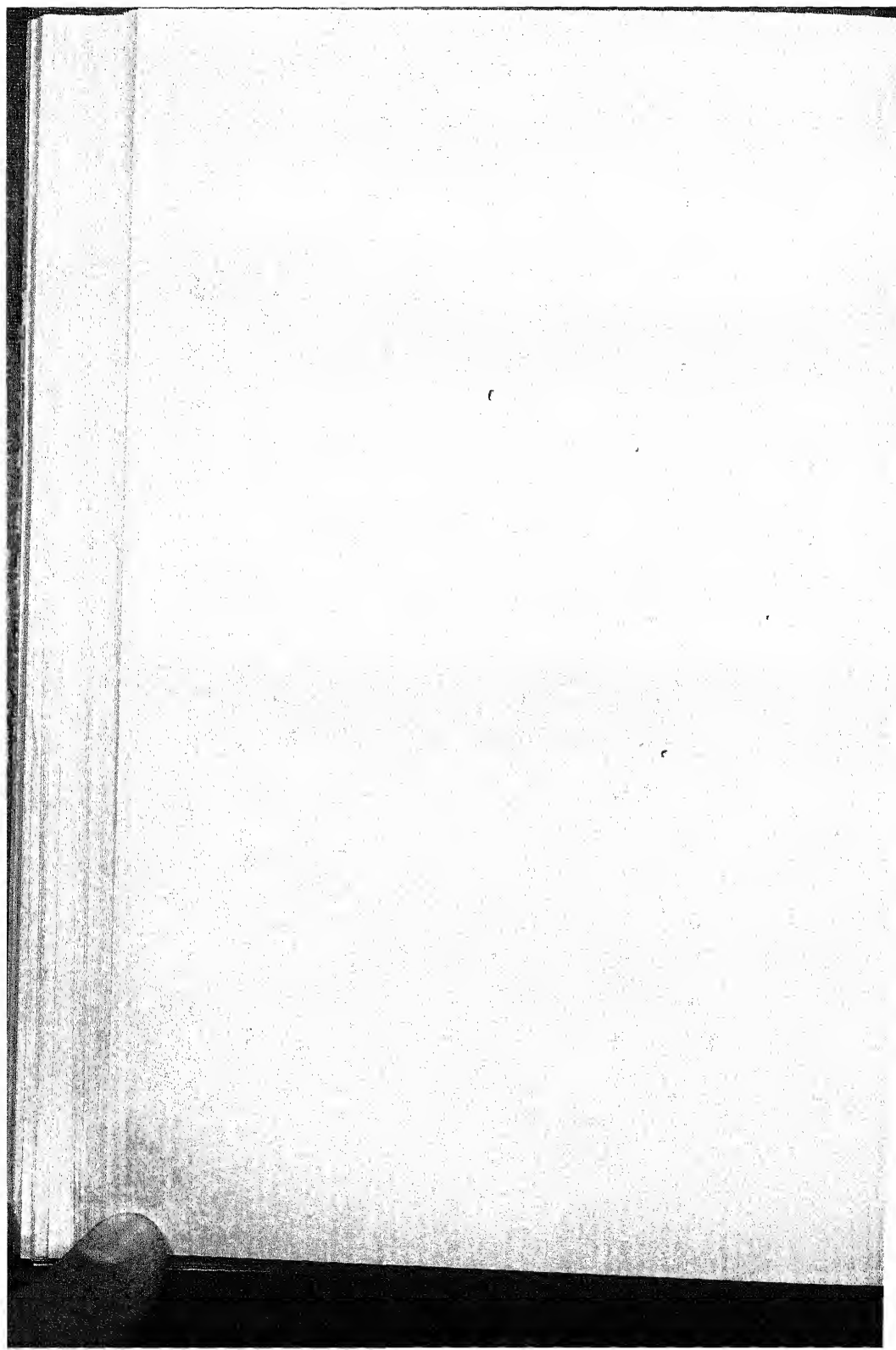
To end on a personal note: is the idea of marriage based on free choice and enduring romantic love such an unmixed blessing? Where it is incumbent on the husband and the wife to keep alive the same romantic interest in each other, which first brought them together, a tremendous pressure is generated on the girl to keep herself attractive "to prevent the other woman from happening"—as an oft-quoted advertisement says. In such a culture the fear of age and of growing old can assume neurotic proportions. One can scan any of the women's magazines of these countries to see the kinds of arguments that the producers of such varied items as iron-pills, tooth-pastes, corsets, and sundry others use. All these arguments appeal to the desire of women to remain young, attractive and pleasing to their husbands. If the average life-expectancy of women is seventy, and from the age of twelve to fifty she has to appear physically attractive to the opposite sex, the mental pressures generated on women must be indeed tremendous. It is not surprising that the Women's Lib has made the image of woman as a sex-symbol a principal target of attack.

Here, in India, the reformers are trying to fight for more opportunities for women to be educated, to be allowed to exercise choice in all matters relating to livelihood, marriage, and to exercise control over their own fertility. But to take up the Western woman as model of imitation may create many more problems than it will solve.

# The Upbringing of a Girl

Margaret Kalakdina

Mrs. Margaret Kalakdina (b. 1930), Reader at the Central Institute of Research and Training in Public Cooperation, Delhi, has published articles and papers in Indian and foreign periodicals. Her monograph on child-care is in press.



The young in India are many, accounting for almost 48 per cent of the population, and the number threatens to increase in proportion to the adult population. What is ironic is that the proportionate increase is greater in groups which can least afford it, the under-privileged, where the large family is common. These groups are mostly the low-income groups in urban areas and the vast majority in the rural areas.

It is extremely difficult to describe the Indian pattern of child upbringing in model terms, as there are wide variations both ecologically and socially. How the mother in a tribal area brings up her child is very different from the way an urban middle class mother brings up her child. Nevertheless, a common trend is discernible; modified in some, and emphasised in others, ranging from the very traditional in remote rural areas to the very modern in the highly urbanised metropolitan areas.

What is the impact that this upbringing has on the child, the kind of adult he is likely to be, and the kind of problems he will face in his expected roles as a responsible adult? Since the early years of upbringing are empirically known to be critical for later personality development, upbringing will be discussed mainly in the context of the constraints and reinforcements that the family, and more especially the mother brings to bear upon the child, particularly the female child. An attempt will be made to describe with scant data and abundant hypotheses her projected roles as mother and daughter.

First of all, the mother's interaction with her young child is mainly physical care and physical closeness. Amongst the majority of Indians, economic constraints make the mother's world a tedious work-a-day one. Children are included in almost all adult situations. Consequently, the child's early awareness of the world around him is that basic necessities are hard to come by and that this is a normal expectation. What is important here is that learning from such situations is incidental and casual. The seeming acceptance of economic hardships is construed by some experts as leading to apathy in adulthood. Furthermore, mothers are by and large illiterate, and hence the pattern of upbringing tends to be traditional and non-scientific. The result of this is the approach-avoidance system in child care, where cause and consequence of certain aspects of care are attributed to the supernatural. If a child falls ill the cause is attributed to the malignancy of the 'evil eye', and rituals are performed to remove it. If a child recovers from illness the consequence is attributed to the benevolence of the godhead, as in smallpox, where the deity of destruction 'Kali Maata' is propitiated. Often, in order to avoid the influence of the 'evil eye', black strings or beads are worn or black spots are deliberately applied on the face; the intent being that black is disfiguring to the envious eye. So strong is the hold, that such practices continue to be carried over into the daughter generation of child upbringing, even in educated groups, in spite of the knowledge of the germ theory of disease. However, since the uneducated, rural-based women are in greater majority, it may be safe to state that child upbringing is mainly articulated within inter-generational traditional patterns of oral communication which, if for nothing else, continue to persist because of tried and known security in previous generations.

The birth of the female is traditionally less favoured than that of the male. Being born a boy is itself a privilege. Investment in the upbringing of a girl is relatively less; as the major goal being marriage, she is looked upon as a transitory member of the family in contrast to the boy. He is the transmitter of the family name to future generations, the one to propitiate the family manes and occupies the significant role in conducting family

rites. Consequently, the girl is inducted into house keeping and child care roles early. If older, she is told she is a model for the younger siblings under her care, which pattern often begins as early as five and six years in agricultural families. Frequently she assumes the role of small mother 'chhoti ma', the rewarder and punisher of behaviour of those under her care. She is discouraged from showing aggressive modes of behaviour, and the feminine model of grace, modesty and self-effacement is frequently reinforced. Since in most strata of society she is hardly expected to contribute to the economic status of the family, she is usually regarded as a liability, to be married off well and as early as possible. With the boy, there is greater indulgence and less severity in the upbringing process. The mother's status increases with the birth of a boy. The developmental stages of the boy are marked with many more ceremonies than that of the girl. Parents, especially the mother, are indulgent towards the boy as he is an investment for old age. This, in turn, creates in him a greater bond of emotional dependency which is reflected in his conflicting ties between wife and mother in his adult life. What does this difference in upbringing do to the female child?

The early induction of the female child gives her a reality orientation to the roles demanded of her during the life span. Consequently, she goes through the roles of a disciplined daughter, a submissive daughter-in-law, a sacrificing mother, and a dominant mother-in-law. Perhaps one might suggest that her role as a daughter-in-law is the most difficult, calling for adjustment to unfamiliar expectations of a new family. Nevertheless, the certainty of the sequential roles and the temporary phases give her the ability to accept the vagaries of these periods. Perhaps the expectations of the powerful roles of mother and mother-in-law sustain her through the submissive phases of daughter and daughter-in-law.

A second attribute arising out of differential upbringing is the protective caring given to the female child, mainly through prohibitions. When the young girl reaches puberty, she is restricted in movement outside the environs of her house, unless escorted. These restrictions limit communication with the outside world.



## Indian Women

The weight of participation in family decisions is minimal, unless she happens to reach the age and status of mother, mother-in-law or grandmother.

A third attribute that seems strongly imbued in the female child is the resilience to meeting the many demands of the family. Consequently, a more emotional involvement develops in day to day requirements than is true of the male, especially in relation to food and health maintenance. As a mother she is more concerned with events which bring immediate satisfaction, like preparing and serving meals, than with events of deferred gratification, like encouraging children to expand their general knowledge. She is more than likely to deprive herself vis-a-vis the comfort and convenience of her family. Perhaps this develops in her calm strength in crises in the family, or perhaps the suppression builds up a self-image of self-persecution. In any case, willingly or resentfully, the mother is the major self-effacer in the family.

A fourth attribute is that eventually the female child is the repository of transmitting and maintaining rituals and rites in the family. As the female head of the house, whether in the role of the mother, mother-in-law or grandmother, the woman initiates and maintains ritualistic behaviour concerning the developmental stages of the child. For instance, the naming ceremony '*namakaranam*', the first feeding with solid food '*annaprasana*' and the first tonsure '*mundana*'. Consequently, women are found to adhere more scrupulously to the non-verbalised but very salient norms of socio-religious behaviour. We see the reflection of this behaviour in the children of even modernised families, who participate scrupulously in religious ceremonies when occasion demands, and yet very easily turn to discotheques and liberalised dating patterns without much apparent conflict. Sanction of liberalised behaviour is more true of the male child in our society in comparison with the female—a kind of double standard prevailing.

A fifth attribute is the reinforced nurturant behaviour of the female child towards the male. 'Mothering' is inculcated at an early age, and is enhanced by the existence of many mother surrogates

in the extended family. Thus, modelling of behaviour in imitation of the many females around gives the girl the opportunity to practise various types of sanctioned female behaviour.

Another salient attribute is the deferential learning inculcated in the young. Children soon learn that the locus of power is in the father—the disciplinarian, that the mother can be more easily persuaded to give in to demands either willingly or in irritation, or better still that the maternal or paternal grandmother is likely to be more indulgent than the mother. Now the female child is more subject to this interactive process than the male child, both in terms of quantity of interaction and exposure to a wide-ranging quality in interaction, so that she is more easily habituated to variations, gaining perhaps a better sense of empathy in this process than the boy. In this closed circuit of interrelationships, where often the orbit is the kinship group, perhaps the female is more easily dominated by the family ego than by the individual ego. By this very reasoning, the female child is a far more dependent individual than is the male child. While both sexes receive closer physical proximity, late weaning and indulgent toilet training, it is far more for the desired male child than the female. This brings about in adulthood a timidity and hesitation for decision. Some evidence does exist that in male adults there are low levels of constructive aggressiveness and motivation to achieve. We may hypothesise that this is perhaps more strongly evident in females, bringing about a predominantly negative self-image in contrast to the male. Such types of ambivalent behaviour, where parental approval is sought for in decision-making, exists in selection of jobs and marriage partners for both the sexes, more so for the female. This deference to authority is plainly visible in the highly stratified hierarchical systems prevailing in our bureaucracy. Whether this sense of subservience to age, authority and status builds up an apathetic individual where girls learn to suffer in silence, or whether it provokes acts of intolerance when constraints are removed, is a matter for consideration. Certainly signs of this are seen in college-going youth who are exposed to the world of academic freedom on one hand and the world of family constraints on the other. If



the female is educated, this may heighten the effect of role conflict.

Thus we see that differential treatment in the general pattern of upbringing for the two sexes constrains the sphere of activity of the girl and yet at the same time gives clarity to her role perception in terms of femininity, a pragmatic approach to problems encountered, self-effacement, resilience in dealing with vicissitudes and in being the transmitter of socio-religious norms.

What are the elements of this profile? It is said in the Sastras:

There is no shelter like the mother  
There is no refuge like her  
There is no defence better than her  
There could be no one dearer than her.

More than one Dharmasastra writer has declared that the father is a hundred times more venerable than the teacher; but the mother is a thousand times more venerable than the father. This symbolism of the mother figure as the teacher of bravery, sacrifice and morality is coincidental with the abstract concept of all-embracing motherhood, Mother Earth,—‘Dharti Maata’, Mother Country—‘Bharat Maata’, Mother of Destruction—‘Kali Maata’ and such like symbolism. Traditionally, therefore, the image of motherhood is upheld. In real life, it is paradoxical that the mother is the silent toiler, and the assimilator of major family crises. Perhaps this imagery, though fast disappearing, offers a model which gives her the ability to withstand change to a greater extent than the man.

The constraining contemporary forces on the development of the young woman are mainly economic and social. The more traditional the set-up, the greater the influence of these forces. In the latter milieu she is illiterate, circumscribed by the family and its caring, and little opportunity for self-development. Per-

haps the supportive force that projects her image as nurturant is the historical religious significance of motherhood. And certainly the accelerated forces for development of her potential are education and job opportunities. Therefore, those women who are or have become enlightened mothers are mainly from the elite groups. This fact is borne out by those women who have achieved leadership positions in our country, combining feminine strength and feminine docility. This dualism apparently is the adaptability to traditional inner-directed pressures on one hand and modernising stresses on the other, without behaviour symptomatic of schizophrenia. Modernisation accelerates the change in the structure and relationships of the family. It goes with the appearance of nuclear families, and with increased utilisation of technology.

What does movement towards modernisation do to the child upbringing pattern? The disintegration of the joint family places the responsibility of house keeping and child care solely on the woman; man, still being traditional, may assist minimally in such tasks. If the woman is working, whether to augment income as is frequently the case, or for self-satisfaction as is infrequently the case, anxiety builds up and the threshold for tolerance of former leisurely patterns of child care is lessened. Consequently, children become unwitting victims of inconsistent child care. Increasing anxiety and guilt in the working women brings about confusion in role performance. While the system of living in the extended family minimises the sense of insecurity, it suppresses individual development and independence. Whereas, increase in nuclear families increases the sense of insecurity, it gives opportunity for individual development. The educated daughter-in-law resists submissive roles; the school-going daughter is more sophisticated than her less literate mother. The woman of today must meet the challenge of equipping herself in scientific knowledge of child care, and of being able to accomplish competently both household tasks and child care in the face of increasing opportunities for jobs outside the home. What will this new woman be like?

In this analysis we must look to extra-familial institutions and

the assistance they can give to mothers. The country is geared towards modernisation, in different spheres at different rates. The institutions of health, education, welfare, and the availability of consumer goods, are spread over the country, although very thinly over rural areas. The impact and assimilation of the benefits of such institutions are more responsively received by the young rather than by the parent generation.

With increasing competitiveness in schools, parents, especially from the middle class, press the child to achieve, whereas the child is taught in the home to share and to consider others before oneself. This is likely to bring about conflict in terms of the discontinuity between home and school norms. With disparity in educational levels children believe that they are culturally more advanced than their parents, thus widening the gulf between parent and child and more so in the uneducated groups. In turn, the unprepared mother is expected to undertake the preparation of her children for self-reliance, responsibility taking, for creativity, for motivation to achieve and for the value of a technological era. This is a relatively unknown process. How will she relate modernising institutional practices to her relatively conservative practices; what is her self-image in this changing milieu?

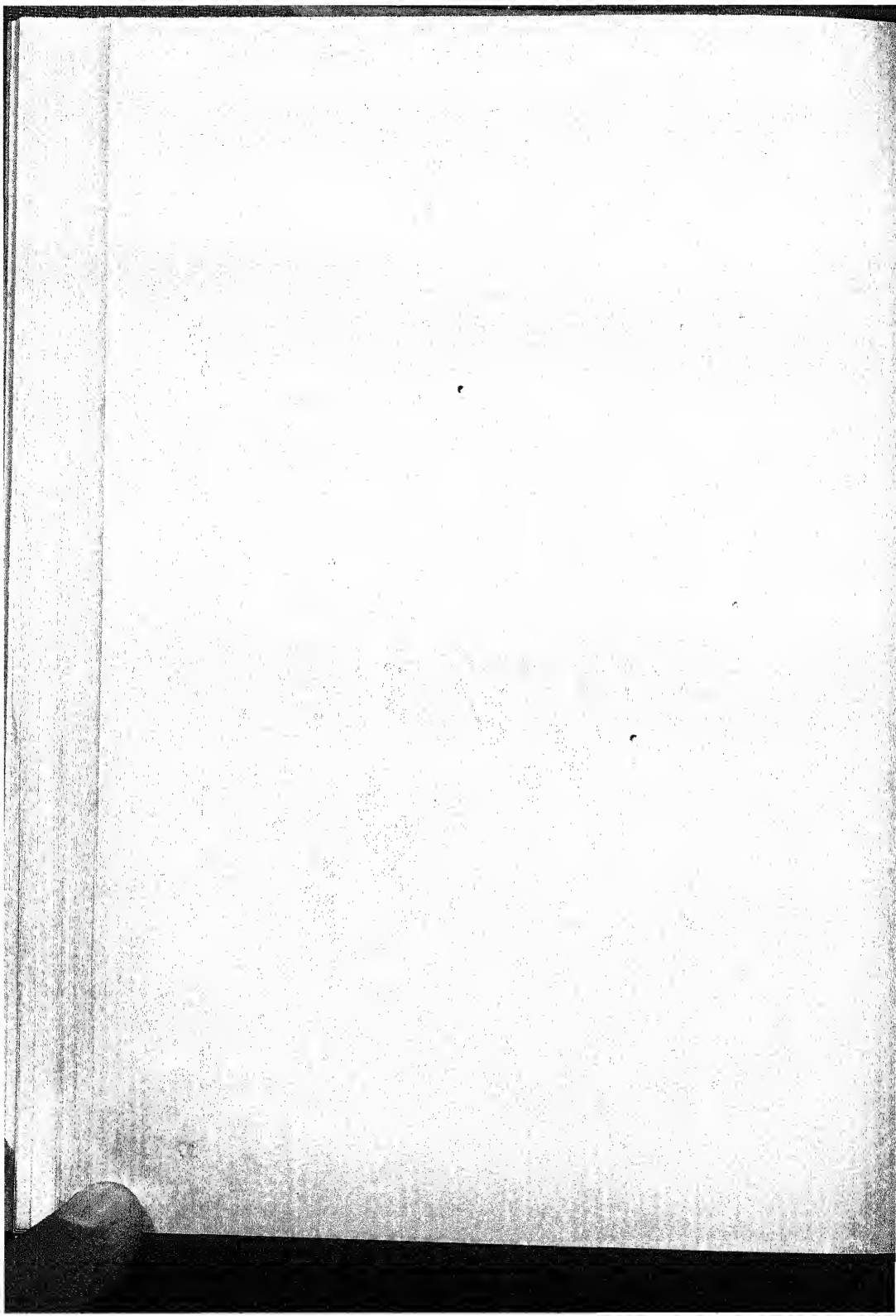
To answer these questions is perhaps too premature. To hypothesise is perhaps permissible. The traditional mother from one succeeding generation to another will probably become less traditional. Extra-family institutions such as health care, increased knowledge in nutrition, and understanding of family planning and education, the availability of non-agricultural occupations have been empirically identified as modernising influences. Without these means, the hiatus between the mother's practices in child upbringing and the scientific practices of these modernising influences will perhaps increase. Secondly, the degree of impact of these influences differs from different sections of society in various geographical and ecological strata. The urbanised are more exposed to them than those in rural areas, the upper elite more exposed than the underprivileged. The impact, however, will be felt in some measure and at some rate in all families.



Caught in the throes of her traditionalistic orientation, the un-read woman is unready for modernisation. Perhaps she prefers the security of traditionally known methods. Perhaps she is seeking refuge in the historical symbolism of motherhood. Will she be able to retain her mystic femininity with her pragmatic approach to the realities of the situation? Will she reconcile herself to the fact that modernisation is more available to her children than to herself, will she shed the dependent submissive role and attempt competition in her society not as a representative of her sex, but as a human being? If the mother is to have an undistorted image of herself as the main socialiser, she must be assisted to find the bridge between traditional and modern modes of upbringing.

In this task of assistance, institutional strategies should be evolved to support the mother and not supplant her. We would suggest here, firstly, assistance in maintaining the joint family ethic so that the sense of familialism pervades the ever growing nuclear families, which might be threatened by isolationism. Secondly, we would suggest the need to bring about continuity between home and school norms of upbringing, or at least accelerated communication about these norms between them. Thirdly, we suggest that whatever the modernising institutions, they should guide the mother in her skills to bring up a child who will be achievement-oriented and innovative, minimising the unwanted outcomes of an over-aggressiveness, which loses contact with human concern. Fourthly, it is suggested that in this process of assistance, over-institutionalisation of the critical functions of the mother, such as emotional care, should be guarded against.

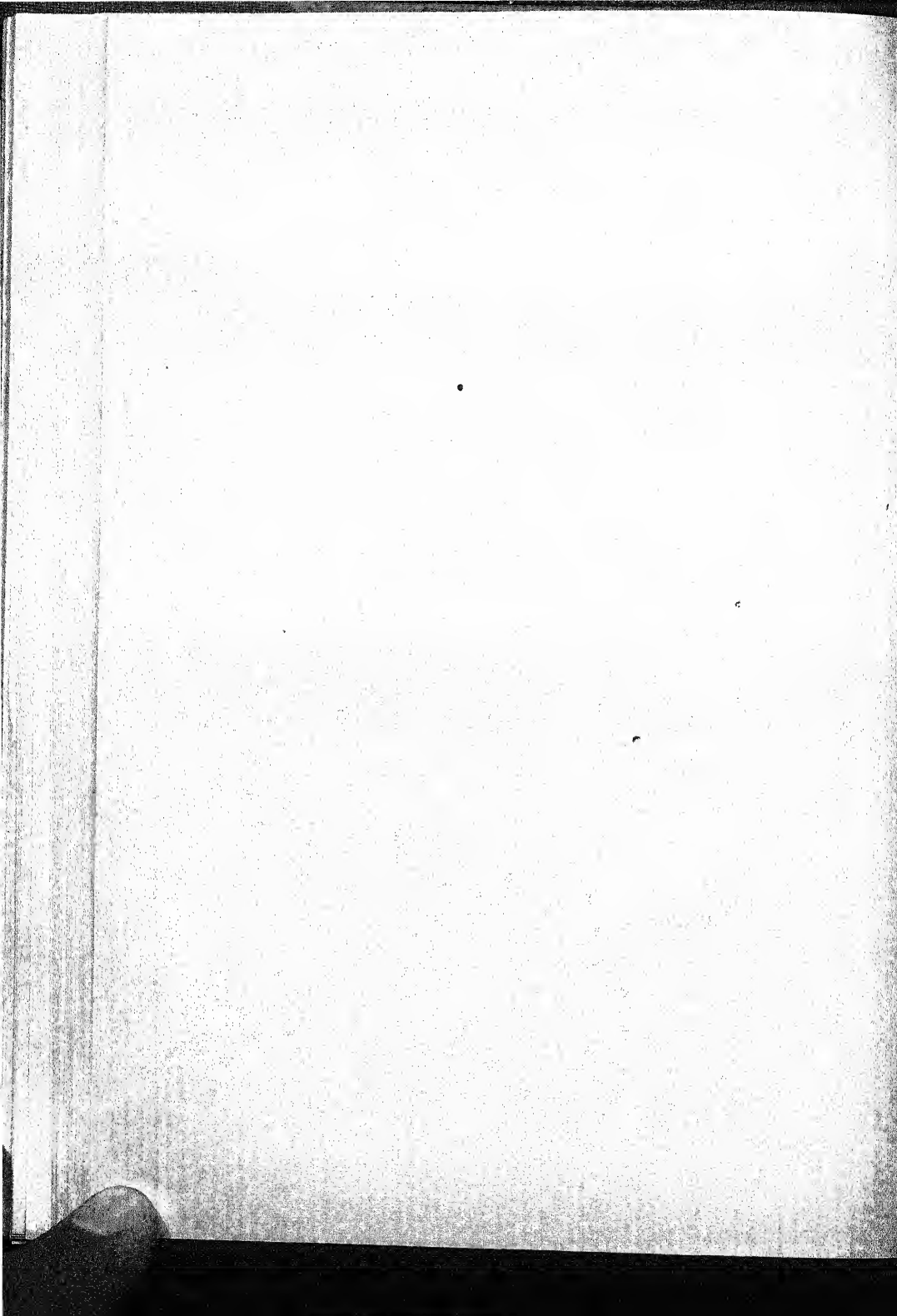




# Women in the Labour Market

Ester Boserup

Ester Boserup (b. 1910) is a freelance writer and consultant on development problems. A member of the U.N. committee on Development Planning, her publications include *Woman's Role in Economic Development*.



It is a characteristic feature of labour markets all over the world that certain jobs are performed only by men, while others are performed only by women. In most societies there are some works which may be done by both men and women, but this is somewhat exceptional. The general rule is that a particular operation is either a male or a female task. This is true of virtually all agricultural tasks and it is equally true of a great majority of the jobs in urban industries and service establishments.

This division of labour according to sex is often explained as a natural result of physiological and psychic differences between men and women. But apart from the obvious case of child-bearing, there are extremely few convincing examples of sex division of labour being truly explainable in terms of natural differences between men and women. This is apparent when the sex pattern of work in different parts of the world are compared: in different human communities, quite different tasks are labelled as male and female work.

To be an independent farmer is a male task in India and in Europe, but in many other regions it is a normal occupation for a woman to farm on own account and perform all the manual labour needed on a plot of land without any male assistance. In African agriculture, more hours of work are performed by women than by men, and these women own and sell the crops they have produced in local markets. (A similar system exists in some Indian tribes, and in some other Asian countries). Likewise, Indian and African sex patterns are quite different in market trade and other

## Indian Women

retail trade. In many African countries most retail trade is in female hands. Here again, there is a similarity between Africa and tribal peoples in India. Among tribal peoples there are female "tradesmen" like in Africa, while the typical Hindu pattern with male tradesmen is a characteristic not only of India but of North Africa and many other parts of the world.

But if men in India perform a number of tasks, like that of farmer and tradesmen, which women are doing in other countries, we also see differences where it is Indian women who undertake work which is performed by men in other parts of the world. For instance, very few countries have a parallel to the women in the building trade, who are such a characteristic feature of the Indian scene. While women in most countries outside India would think it an unsuitable occupation to be an assistant to a male brick-layer, men in most European countries would find it an unsuitable occupation to be a typist and stenographer, as is customary for men in India. In other words, the idea that the specialisation of the labour market in male and female tasks is related to natural differences between the sexes is proved wrong, when we make a comparison between labour markets in different parts of the world. If it was true that the specialisation was rooted in physiological and psychic differences between the sexes, we should expect to find that the same tasks were male or female all over the world. Clearly, the key to understanding these patterns is in the field of culture rather than in human physiology or anatomy.

### **The Division of Labour within the Family**

If the specialisation in the labour market in male and female tasks is unrelated to special physical or psychic differences between the sexes, why then do we find a sharp division of labour between men and women in all countries in the world.

In order to understand the division of labour in the labour market, it is necessary to consider the division of labour within the family in primitive communities with subsistence production.

Even in the most primitive society, the members of a family use a multitude of different products: They eat many types of food, use jars, pots and baskets for storing, preparation and transport of the food, they use many different tools as well as clothing and dwellings. They have also many services to perform: to prepare the food, to clean the dwelling, to take care of the sick, to bury the dead, to play music and dance at tribal feasts, etc. This means that young people have much to learn before they are able to care for themselves, and that much time used on teaching and instruction of the next generation can be saved, if men teach the boys half the tasks, while women teach the girls the other half of the tasks.

However, within intermarrying groups, it is necessary that all boys are taught to perform the *same* tasks, and that all girls are taught *all* the tasks which boys are not taught. Otherwise, the system cannot work. It must be avoided that in a married couple both can spin, but none of them knows how to weave.

Thus, in a community where each family produces all the goods and services consumed by that family, the sharp distinction between male and female tasks is a necessary result of the simple fact that families are formed by the union of men and women. When the fathers teach their sons to perform half the jobs and the mothers teach their daughters to perform the other half of the jobs, everybody needs to teach and learn half as much as would be necessary without such a rigid division of labour between men and women. It is customary in all primitive communities to ridicule and despise men who perform female tasks and women who perform male tasks, and this custom can be seen as a social sanction by which the sex division of labour is enforced and perpetuated.

This obedient attitude to economic sex roles is preserved in all higher civilisations, where boys and girls are taught, both in their homes and in schools, that decency requires them to stick to the type of work which are traditionally male and female jobs in the society to which they belong. This ingrained custom



dates back to a distant primitive past where it had an obvious productive function, as mentioned above.

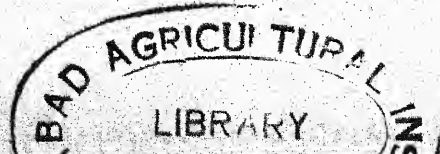
It is worth noting that only within groups who intermarry is it necessary that the same tasks should be male or female in all families. In fact, in a given local community female and male tasks can be seen to vary widely as between exogamic ethnic groups. And there is here a kind of cumulative effect: When human groups with different division of labour between the sexes are living close together, the different customs contribute to create a lack of sympathy and a disinclination to intermarriage among them. Intermarriage is then seen not primarily as unpractical, but as undesirable in itself, because people with different customs are ridiculed and despised. This attitude contributes to preserve rules of exogamy and to preserve a certain amount of hostility among ethnic groups living in the same region, even in cases where their members have come to work closely together within a modern labour market.

The rationale of a sharp division of tasks in either male or female gradually disappears as economic development moves some tasks out from the home and transforms them into specialized occupations. But the idea that men and women should avoid doing work which by custom belongs to the domain of the other sex is so firmly rooted in the national culture in all countries that male occupations usually continue to be male and female occupations continue to be female also after such activities have been moved from the home to specialised workshops, service establishments or modern industries. In India, where spinning and weaving for own use were suitable jobs for men, textile industries have mainly male workers, but in Europe where home spinning and weaving were female occupations, men regard spinning and weaving as proper for women only, and all textile industries are "female industries" with few, if any, male workers, except for supervisory work, repair of machines, etc. Some Indian textile industries started with recruitment of large numbers of women, because their first owners were Europeans or under European cultural influence.

Economic development does not only move certain activities away from the household to specialised workshops and industries. It affects also the amount of work done in the home. Some activities which used to be subsistence production become a source of money income as larger quantities are produced for sale. For instance, some crops become cash crops and some home crafts and services may be performed for other households in the local community. Such changes must necessarily interfere with the customary divisions of labour within the family. If the cash cropping or the craft which is now performed for sale was hitherto produced by men (or women as the case may be), the work load will now tend to get heavier and they may need help from the other sex in some operations.

In such cases, men or women may agree to undertake new tasks and change the traditional division of labour, but relatively often they refuse to do work which is not considered appropriate for their sex. The result may be that men (or women) accept a disproportionate share of the work load, or else that the introduction of the new money earning activity is given up or retarded because of the prejudice concerning sex roles in production. Many attempts to foster agricultural development have failed because men refused to weed a crop, which women had no time to weed. Or the introduction of cash crops was retarded because women refused to help with a new crop and insisted on cultivating only the usual food crops, which were considered proper work for women. Such refusal to change traditional sex roles in the labour market occur not only in India but in all parts of the world. African men are often unwilling to cultivate food crops as cash crops, because food production is supposed to be a female task, and men in many parts of Latin America are unwilling to engage in commercial poultry production because it is traditionally a female task.

However, tradition alone does not prevent or delay a change of sex roles in the process of economic development. In addition there is the employer's interest in maintaining a sharp line of demarcation between male and female tasks, since this enables him



to have the work reserved for women done more cheaply. In some countries, women are paid less than men for equal work, but in countries where this is not allowed a situation of *de facto* unequal pay can be maintained by classifying particular tasks as female and placing these tasks in a lower wage category than male tasks, which require a similar degree of qualification. The interest of the employers and the prejudices of the employees against a change of sex roles tend to reinforce each other, and, therefore, the sharp distinction between 'male' and 'female' kinds of work encounters little resistance either in developing or in industrialised countries. It is only in recent years that discussion has begun in some industrialised countries about the need to change this ancient custom in order to obtain more flexibility and more equality in the labour market.

### **The Hierarchy of Work between Men and Women**

In the labour markets of industrialised countries, the sharp distinction between 'male' and 'female' tasks goes together with a hierarchical ordering so that women perform the least qualified jobs which require supervision, while nearly all more qualified jobs, and the supervisory jobs, are filled by men. This feature is not, like the distinction between male and female jobs, an inheritance from the division of work within the families in a distant past. Quite the opposite, in primitive family production we never find such a hierarchical division of labour with men as supervisors and women as supervised. Also in primitive family production there is a hierarchy of supervisors and supervised, but the distinction is not by sex, but by age. Older men supervise the young men, and older women supervise the young women. Older men and women have different tasks, but each of them works independently, without supervision, and all the young and less experienced are supervised by older persons of their own sex. Thus there is no hierarchy between men and women in the performance of productive work within the household, even though in other walks of life women may be under control by the men.

This age-determined hierarchy of work continues to prevail in

domestic work, for instance in India, where young women are supervised first by their mothers and, at a later stage, by their mothers-in-law. By contrast in the modern Indian labour market, the European custom of men as supervisors and women as supervised is introduced in step with the entrance of Indian women into employment in the modern sector, except, of course, in fields like schools for girls, where the whole staff is female.

It is pertinent to ask, at what stage in economic development a change takes place from an age-hierarchy to a sex-hierarchy in the labour market. In agriculture it seems to happen when the plough and plough animals are introduced. At this stage men usually leave hand labour to women, while they themselves perform the operations with the animals. As regards non-agricultural activities, the decisive moment when the change takes place seems to be when productive activities move from the premises where the family is living to a specialised workshop or shop. As long as an activity is carried out as a home industry located in the dwelling of the family, women usually continue to work independently, if the activity is traditionally a female occupation. But when the production or service is established in special premises, married women with children tend to drop out, because it becomes more difficult to combine job and family obligations.

When this happens, only young women are available for this kind of employment, and these inexperienced workers are now—like the young boys—trained and supervised by the older men. These may be inclined to be more careful with the training of the boys, since the girls are expected to work only a short span of years on the job. Thus, a new pattern for the division of labour gradually emerges: older men supervise young men and young women, while the older women stay at home with the children. This stage is intermediate between the original age-hierarchy and the modern sex-hierarchy in the labour market. The young girls are likely to accept this division of labour, partly because it is customary that older people supervise younger people and partly because the young girls often consider their relatively short visit

24288

in the labour market as somewhat transitory and unimportant compared to their later role as wives and mothers.

In India and other countries of old civilisation, where specialised crafts were developed already in ancient times, it is considered normal and 'natural' that independent business and supervision of labour is the preserve of men. But not so in countries which never developed specialised groups of craftsmen and traders, but passed directly from the stage of family production for subsistence to the purchase of imported products from foreign tradesmen. In such countries women continue to be independent producers, and large numbers of women earn their living by crafts, trade, and services performed on own account. In many countries in Africa, South East Asia and Latin America the number of women working as independent producers is much higher than the number of female wage earners. By contrast, in Europe and other countries with an older urban tradition there are few women among independent producers and large numbers among the wage and salary earners.

### **From Family Education to Vocational Training**

The transfer of production from the home to specialised premises is not the only explanation for the change in women's status in the labour market by which they became the subordinates of male supervisors. Another factor explaining the deterioration of the female role in the labour market is the inferior position of girls and young women in the educational system in general and especially in the vocational training system.

School education is prestigious in all countries where only a part of the population is literate. It is, therefore, a serious handicap to women that they have less school education than men. In those income groups where more boys than girls visit schools, the boy comes to look down upon the girl who stays at home under the instruction of her illiterate mother, while the boy enjoys the prestige of being an 'educated' person. In the old times when neither boys nor girls went to school, ignorance and superstition was



a characteristic of both sexes, and the girls had less reason to feel inferior than many of them have today, when male school-leavers can regard themselves as the representatives of new enlightenment, while their illiterate sisters remain in the old universe of superstition and ignorance.

A school teaches the pupils more than to read and write. It also teaches how to organise one's thinking and how to express one's ideas clearly and logically. Persons who went to school have an advantage in a discussion over persons who have not been to school, just as a person with many years of schooling has an advantage in oral disputes over persons who dropped out of school at an early stage. Since the average girl visits school for a shorter span of years than the average boy, and since more girls than boys never go to school, the school system contributes to create and uphold the idea that men are spiritually and intellectually superior to women. This, in turn makes women inclined to accept being treated as inferior in the labour market, even in cases where the vocational qualifications of men and women are similar. It thus becomes acceptable to women and natural to men that the latter should hold the supervisory and well-paid jobs and the former the jobs as assistants at low pay.

In communities where girls receive an education and training which makes them feel inferior to men in the labour market, it is inevitable that young women who enter the labour market will suffer from a deep feeling of insecurity and insufficiency. It is not surprising, therefore, that they seek security by sticking to certain jobs and occupations, which are traditionally regarded as 'female' in the society to which they belong, while only a small minority want to enter into open competition with men in the fields which are considered as unsuitable or at least unusual for women. Therefore, the crowding of women in certain occupations would seem to be primarily due to their own desire to be employed in supposedly 'feminine' professions while men's wariness of accepting women in the 'masculine' occupations may be a less important factor.



When women feel that they are inferior to men in the traditional male occupations, they are inclined to seek compensation by claiming special competence and superiority to men in a small number of occupations, which are related to the traditional female role. Teaching of children in primary schools is an important example of this: In some countries in Europe, primary schools prefer to have children taught by persons of both sexes, while in other countries, mainly American, the agreed assumption is that 'by nature' women are better teachers for young children than men. This prejudice against men as teachers at pre-school and primary levels is likely to have the effect that teaching at these levels attracts many able women, but few able men. And this skewed selection of applicants, in turn, provides a spurious confirmation of the prejudice. This kind of solution in special fields, combined with better vocational training of men than of women and a basic belief in male superiority in the labour market at large must inevitably reinforce the conviction about the innate differences in the abilities of the two sexes.

The gap in formal school education between boys and girls is now narrowing in most countries, including India. But in the field of vocational training the gap appears to be widening, since more and more young men receive vocational training in school and in the job, while few girls in developing countries get any vocational training, except for the small numbers who visit the university. A vicious circle is developing: ordinary girls are supposed to need no special training because anyway they are thought to be eligible only for jobs which require little qualification; and without any vocational training they can take only jobs which require no particular qualifications.

In many cases young women attempt to escape from this vicious circle by keeping away from the labour market and doing only domestic work in their own home. The result is that we get a perpetuation of the traditional pattern of one-earner, poor families with many children instead of the desired shift to a pattern of two-earner, less poor families with few children.

The absence of female vocational training is both an effect and a cause of high birth rates: The increase of the labour force resulting from high birth rates improves their competitive position in the labour market. And untrained women marry earlier and get more children than vocationally trained and working women. This vicious circle cannot be broken by a retreat of women from training and work, but only by speeding up economic development, so that both male and female youth can be absorbed in the labour market.



# Legal Provisions—An Assessment

Shyamala Pappu

Mrs. Shyamala Pappu (b. 1933), Senior Advocate, Supreme Court of India, is presently Senior Central Government Counsel, the first woman to hold this post. She has been practising law since 1955.



The law relating to women in India requires drastic alterations. Though there has been considerable legislation in regard to women during the post-constitution era, in reality the position of women today is not very different from the pre-constitution days. The equality clause in the Constitution has made little or no impact on the social and economic life of women in India. A woman continues to be a dependent—economically, socially and even psychologically. Her status is that of a daughter, wife or mother and she seldom feels an individual in her own right. Legislation enacted during the last two decades is out of reach for most women because, by and large, they have neither the mental awareness nor the financial resources to take advantage of these beneficent provisions.

It is a great pity indeed that even though the Constitution recognises the fact that women have been subjugated for long by being denied basic rights and has provided for the enactment of special laws to improve their position no concrete steps have been taken by the Indian legislature in this direction so far. It may be noted in this context that in admission to state-owned and state-aided educational institutions imparting technical and other vocational education and in practically all appointments under the state, reservation has been provided for in favour of Scheduled Castes, Scheduled Tribes and other backward classes by means of legislative and executive measures but the claims of women have been singularly overlooked.

Hindu Law, as it existed, when the Constitution came into





force, imposed various disabilities on women. A woman had only limited interest in the property she held. This meant that she could not exercise the full rights which a male owner could; for instance, she could not alienate property except for certain enumerated reasons called legal necessities. She could not be a coparcener and seek partition of the joint family estate. She was not legally competent to make an adoption—her consent was not required in an adoption made by her husband—and a widow could adopt only with the authority and direction given by her deceased husband. A testamentary appointment made by her husband could defeat a widow's right as guardian of minor children. She could not appoint a guardian by testament. An illegitimate daughter had no claim against the putative father even to maintenance, whereas among the Shudras, an illegitimate son was admitted to a share in the putative father's property.

These disabilities were sought to be removed by the enactment in 1955-56 of laws relating to marriage and divorce, succession, adoption, minority and guardianship.

### **Marriage and Divorce**

However, many of these laws require improvement. For example, one that calls for immediate attention is the law relating to divorce. Law recognises sacramental marriage, marriage before the Registrar of Marriages and any other form of marriage recognised by customary law. When it comes to divorce, this law is not so simple. The Hindus are granted divorce on certain limited grounds which are generally hard to prove, but, significantly, divorce by mutual consent is not one of the grounds mentioned. Likewise, the Christians have to allege and prove adultery in order to establish a matrimonial offence before divorce can be granted under the Indian Divorce Act. The Parsis have to get the approval of ten assessors chosen from their community who pronounce on the divorce proceedings. Muslim males obtain a divorce by the mere utterance of certain words in succession whereas women have to establish certain enumerated grounds. Strangely,

in none of these laws (except in the Special Marriage Act, 1954) is there any mention of divorce by mutual consent. Consenting spouses, generally, resort to change of religion and create a ground for divorce.

It is imperative that this deplorable state of the law be rectified and provision be made for divorce by mutual consent. If mutuality be the basis of marriage, law should enable the parties to separate when the mutuality ceases.

It may be noted that under Section 29(2) of the Hindu Marriage Act, any right recognised by customary law or conferred by any special enactment is specifically saved and preserved. By this provision, the Nair Regulations which provide for the execution of a registered instrument of divorce get preserved and divorce can be granted without the intervention of the court by the mere execution of a registered document. Further, under the laws applicable to the Bunts of South Kanara, divorce can be had by the unilateral act of one party filing a petition in the court. As said earlier, all these are good laws even today by virtue of 29(2) of the Hindu Marriage Act.

In this state of the law where some sections of the population are entitled to larger rights, is it not fit and proper that the legislature amend and codify the law and make it of uniform application to all? It is submitted in this context that when the Hindu Marriage Act of 1955 providing for divorce for the first time came to be enacted, the framers of the Act forgot that the Indian law of divorce has always been a liberal one and it was not necessary to import Anglo-Saxon notions of rigidity into it.

### **The Unmarried Mother**

In some Western countries, with the emergence of women as socially and economically independent beings, there is a demand for recognising an unmarried mother and her child as a family unit. In recent seminars held in various regions of the world, this problem was kept in sharp focus. A draft resolution was

introduced in the twenty-fourth session of the U.N. Commission on the Status of Women. This resolution recommended that maternal affiliation be recognised as a consequence of the factum of birth, and further, that the unmarried mother be granted full rights and privileges granted by the law to a parent. In most of the socialist countries, the right of the unmarried mother is recognised and safeguarded under the Constitution itself.

Sooner or later the Indian legislature will also have to attend to the problem of the unmarried mother. There are, for instance, victims of rape or other unfortunate circumstances or of hostile aggression as in Bangladesh and the problem of rehabilitating these victims becomes a social reality. Many of them are driven to a life of prostitution because society refuses to accept them. If legislative protection is given to the rights of the unmarried mother, she can be saved from this eventuality and ensured a respectable place in society.

The problem of the unmarried mother is understood when we look at a few sections of the Indian Penal Code. Section 309 of the I.P.C. provides that any attempt to commit suicide is punishable with simple imprisonment for a term which may extend to one year or with fine or with both.

To liberalise abortion laws and thereby reduce the rigour of the Indian Penal Code which makes any termination of pregnancy a punishable offence, the Medical Termination of Pregnancy Act was passed recently. But this Act does not improve the position because it provides for termination of pregnancy only on limited medical grounds. To illustrate, the Act permits termination of pregnancy by a registered medical practitioner if it is of a duration of twelve weeks provided, however, that the said registered practitioner is of the opinion, in good faith, that the continuance of pregnancy would involve risk to the life of the pregnant woman or "grave injury" to her mental or physical health or where there is a "substantial risk" of the child being born with physical or mental abnormalities "so as to be seriously handicapped". The Act requires two registered medical practitioners

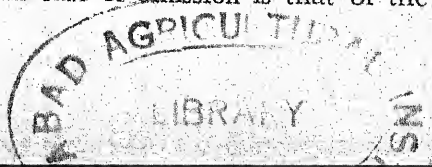
to opine similarly in good faith before a pregnancy of a duration longer than twelve weeks can be terminated.

This requirement is very difficult to fulfil because many registered medical practitioners would hesitate to issue the requisite certificate for fear that it may be debated in courts that the practitioner concerned had not formed the necessary opinion or that the said opinion, when formed was not *bonafide*. Again, the concept of "grave injury" to the mental or physical health of the pregnant woman is such a nebulous concept that a registered practitioner may well hesitate to take the responsibility of sustaining the opinion in a court of law. Worse still, while the pregnant woman is still busy trying to find a medical practitioner who would be willing to certify that her pregnancy is terminable, she may cross the twelve-week period, inviting the necessity of producing two such certificates. It is suggested that this requirement should be dropped. The Act should provide that if a couple is desirous that the next child should not be born for reasons, economic or otherwise, they should have the right to approach the first available medical practitioner and to have the pregnancy terminated.

Another good reason for doing away with the medical certificate under the Act would be the fact that registered medical practitioners are not easily available in rural areas where the Act is most needed. Also such a requirement may lead to abuse in the hands of those who may be so inclined.

Another serious weakness of the Act is that it does not consider the implications of poverty. For example, rape or failure of contraceptive are permissible reasons, because they cause injury to the mental health of the victim. But malnutrition, which plagues a majority of Indian women and which gets exaggerated with frequent child-bearing is not a good enough reason. Nor is the straight-forward economic reason of not being able to afford another mouth to feed.

The most important case of omission is that of the unmarried



## Indian Women

mother about whom there is not a whisper in the Act. It goes without saying that it is in such a case that the consequences of child-birth are most serious. Looking at the object of the Act, it is hard to understand how an unmarried woman is not entitled to the same protection as a married woman. The distinction made does not seem to have any rational nexus to the object sought to be achieved and one wonders if such an enactment cannot be held to violate the constitutional guarantee of equality provided under article 14 of the Constitution. In a similar situation, the U. S. Supreme Court struck down a similar classification on the ground that it was opposed to the equal protection clause of the Constitution (Eisenstadt Vs. Baird, 1972).

Even abandonment of a child is punishable under Section 317 of the Indian Penal Code which provides that any intentional abandonment of a child is punishable with imprisonment of either description for seven years or with fine or with both.

### **Problem of Illegitimate Children**

Faced with this state of the law, the Indian Parliament took its step towards solving the problem of illegitimate children when it enacted in Section 20(2) of the Hindu Adoptions and Maintenance Act, 1956, that: "A legitimate, or illegitimate child may claim maintenance from his or her father or mother so long as the child is a minor."

This brought uniformity among Hindus in this branch of the law. The old law recognised the rights of illegitimate sons only among Shudras and there was no law for the maintenance of illegitimate daughters. They could, however, claim maintenance from the putative father under Section 488 of the Criminal Procedure Code. In such a proceeding, the maximum amount that can be awarded by way of maintenance is Rs. 500 and therefore, this section provides only very limited relief.

Another revolutionary step has been taken by the Indian Parliament in introducing the Adoption of Children Bill, 1972,



which provides for parents of illegitimate children to adopt their own child. Section 4 as it stands today, allows the mother or father of an illegitimate child alone or jointly to adopt such a child whether or not they have completed the age of 21 years or are older than the child by 21 years.

Under the Hindu Adoptions and Maintenance Act, 1956, it was an essential requirement that the difference in age between the adopting parent and the adopted child be at least 21 years in the event of a man wanting to adopt a girl, and *vice versa*, hence the second clause was necessary.

### **Common Civil Code**

The Adoption of Children Bill, has further been made applicable to all citizens, irrespective of their being Hindus, Muslims, Parsis or Christians. This step is a tremendous stride in the promulgation of a common civil code which is a crying need of the day. A common code of personal laws applicable to all alike will be easy of understanding and implementation.

It may be worthwhile for the government to appoint a high-powered committee to study all personal laws and suggest steps towards the enactment of a common civil code for all in India.

### **Muslim Law**

Hindu women have been dealt with at length because it is they who suffered disabilities primarily and it is their personal law that has undergone legislative changes. They, incidentally, are the majority community in India.

As far as Muslim women are concerned, they have a right of inheritance and this law remains unchanged even today. Under Muslim law, however, the right of divorce is easily available to males but the same is denied to women with the same degree of ease even though marriage is characterised as a contract and not



## Indian Women

a sacrament. The legislatures at the centre and the states in India have made practically no changes in the personal laws of the Muslims so far.

The Christian, Parsi and Jewish women are governed by the Indian Succession Act as they have no personal laws like the Hindus and Muslims. Under this law, women can succeed to property and suffer no disabilities regarding property rights. They, like all other women in India, need reform in regard to the law relating to divorce.

Notwithstanding these laws, what measures are necessary to make women free and equal in the true sense of the word?

The State should make special laws enabling women to have compulsory free education. This is imperative because the education of girls is usually subordinated to that of boys on account of tradition. It may be noticed that such a provision would be permissible under Article 15(3) of the Constitution, which enables the legislature to make special provisions for the advancement of women.

Women ought to be given preference in matters of appointment on the ground that they are socially and economically backward in the same way that the Scheduled Castes and Scheduled Tribes are given preference. In every appointment under the state at least ten per cent of the posts should be reserved for women for at least an initial period of 25 years.

Equal wages for equal work should be ensured in all employment—whether it is under the state or otherwise.

Free legal aid and advice should be made available to women on a priority basis. Without such aid, their rights already granted would remain unasserted due to ignorance and lack of funds. Several illustrations can be given to show the importance of this service.

For example, an Indian woman whose husband had sued her for divorce from Nevada (U.S.A.) failed to reply to the bill of summons within the time prescribed because she could not afford counsel to contest the case. The result was that divorce was granted with no provision for maintenance of herself and her minor son. In this case, the husband had misrepresented to the court that there were no dependents and the court proceeded on that basis, there having been no opposition from the wife.

In another case, the brothers of a woman from Punjab had sold the property inherited from their father, after fraudulently getting her thumb impression. Years later she realised that she had rights of inheritance under the Hindu Succession Act, but had not been given her share. Ignorance of the legal provisions had prevented her from asserting her rights.

### Family Courts

The establishment of family courts is yet another aspect which will have to be taken in hand immediately by the legislature. In some Western countries there are special courts for adjudication of matrimonial matters. It is suggested that such courts with exclusive matrimonial jurisdiction be established immediately. These courts will render justice speedier and also ensure privacy which is necessary in such matters.

The need for such courts can hardly be over-emphasised when it is noticed that in the normal course a divorce proceeding takes anywhere from five to ten years. (In a recent case, the man was 60 and the woman 54 by the time they concluded the proceedings in the Supreme Court, the litigation having commenced 20 years earlier). Even after this lapse of time the court may not grant divorce in view of the restricted grounds available to parties. It is, therefore, suggested that the latest trend in England be followed in India as well, namely, that if the court comes to the conclusion that the marriage has broken down irretrievably, divorce ought to be granted.

### **Future Legislation**

Once the legislative reforms mentioned above are effected and women are able to emerge as socially and economically independent beings, reform will have to be undertaken to amend and codify the law of marriage and divorce to enable the parties to marry at will and to separate at will; to establish family courts to enable speedy and effective justice in matrimonial matters; to enact uniform laws of maintenance to enable the economically weaker of the partners to be maintained; and to provide for the woman to be the natural guardian of her child. Today the law recognises the father as the natural guardian because the mother is economically dependent and is in no position to look after the child on her own. Once economic independence comes, this position will have to change.

# A Demographic Profile

## Ashish Bose

Ashish Bose (b. 1930), Professor and Head of the Demographic Research Centre, Institute of Economic Growth, Delhi, is the founder-Secretary of the Indian Association for the Study of Population. He has published many books and research papers.



In perhaps the earliest book on the population problem of India published in the twentieth century, Annie Besant draws attention to the statistics on child widows, the terrible death toll of women between 15 and 30 and the illiteracy of the country. She commends the book "to the thoughtful study of the young politician and to the library table of the older politician as the most valuable and handy book of reference."<sup>1</sup>

In spite of the progress we have made ever since that book was published sixty years ago, the issues raised by Annie Besant, like early marriage, the high mortality rate of women and massive illiteracy, still continue to haunt India. Some of these questions will be briefly discussed here.

### **The Neglect of Females?**

The first problem which strikes the demographer is the question of the declining sex ratio (females per thousand males) in India over the decades.

India is the second biggest country in the world in terms of population. This is true of the female population also. In 1971 the female population of India was 264 million—much more than the total population of USSR or the USA. But unlike in the USSR, USA and most western countries and also Japan, the male population of India exceeds the female population. In 1971 there were 930 females per one thousand males. In 1901 the sex ratio was 972.



The male population has always grown faster than the female population since 1901, except in the 1941-51 decade which was affected by the partition of India. During this decade the male and female population grew more or less at the same rate.

Between 1911 and 1921 there was an actual decrease in the population of India because of the influenza epidemic of 1918. But the overall figure conceals the fact that during this decade there was a negligible increase in the male population and a decrease in the female population. Mortality was specially high among the adults and more particularly among adult females, the disease being generally fatal to women in pregnancy. As the report on the 1921 Census points out, "the high mortality among women may have been due to the fact that in addition to the ordinary tasks of the house, on them fell the duty of nursing the others even when themselves ill. The figures show that the excess mortality between ages 20 and 40 amounted in some cases to nearly four times the mean."<sup>2</sup>

Apart from the calamities like epidemic influenza, there must be other factors which explain the declining sex ratio over the last several decades. Various hypotheses have been put forward to explain this phenomenon, like the higher under-enumeration of females in the Indian census, the higher mortality rate of females, the marked preference for sons, the neglect of girl babies, the general neglect of women at all ages, the adverse impact of frequent and excessive child-bearing on the health of women—especially those in the reproductive age group, and the higher incidence of certain diseases in women.

All over the world more boys are born than girls, and this is true of India also. But in the developed countries, more boys die than girls, or in other words, the survival rate is higher among females and so also the expectation of life at birth. In India more boys are born than girls but more girls die than boys and the expectation of life at birth is lower for females than for males.

The figures for the registered birth rates and death rates are

not as reliable as the figures yielded by the Sample Registration System (SRS). According to SRS data for rural areas of 12 States of India as a whole, the infant mortality rate for females was 148 per thousand live births compared to 132 for males. The neo-natal mortality rate, according to SRS data of 1969, was 74 per thousand for males and 76 for females, while post neo-natal mortality rate was 59 for males and 72 for females.

But the evidence from SRS data is conflicting when one considers individual States. In some States the male mortality rates were higher than those for the females. For example, in the rural areas of Uttar Pradesh the female infant mortality rate was higher than that of male, but in urban areas the male infant mortality rate was higher than the female. In Punjab the female infant mortality rate was higher than the male both in rural and urban areas.

The explanation which seems to have received general acceptance is this—that though over the last several decades, there has been a reduction in the mortality rate due to the progress in the field of public health, the control of widespread epidemics like cholera, plague, small-pox, malaria, and the application of modern medicines, the reduction in mortality has been greater in the case of males than in the case of females. This is generally attributed to differential improvement in health conditions.

Though in the absence of adequate and reliable data it is not possible to arrive at any firm conclusion on the causes of the decline in sex ratio, or the differential improvements in health conditions, these phenomena are a serious cause for concern and seem to suggest that neglect of women in India is a persistent phenomenon.

### **Literacy and Education**

The Education Commission (1964-66) in its report asserts that one of the most distinctive characteristics of life in modern India

has been the phenomenal development in the education of women. It points out that at the beginning of the nineteenth century, there was hardly any provision for the formal education of girls. Even at the opening of the present century, not much progress had been made. In 1901 the percentage of literacy amongst women was only 0.8. The number of girls enrolled for every one hundred boys was only 12 at the primary stage and four at the secondary. The total enrolment in higher education was only 264 (which included 76 girls studying in medical colleges and 11 in colleges of education).

In 1950-51 there were 39 girls for every one hundred boys in classes I-V. The estimated figure for 1965-66 is 55 girls per one hundred boys. In the case of enrolment in classes VI-VIII, the ratio has gone up from 21 in 1950-51 to 35 in 1965-66, while in the case of enrolment in classes IX-XI, the ratio has gone up from 15 in 1950-51 to 26 in 1965-66.

The Education Commission report points out that "education in mixed schools is being more accepted at the lower primary stage where 85 per cent of the girls enrolled are in mixed schools and at the higher primary stage where the proportion is 78 per cent. But there is still a considerable resistance to it at the secondary stage where only 40 per cent of the girls enrolled are in mixed schools. These resistances, however, are softening down to some extent at the university stage."<sup>3</sup>

One of the dismal features revealed by the 1971 Census, however, is the extremely low literacy rate. It was 18.7 per cent for females, 39.5 per cent for males and 29.5 per cent for the total population. The highest literacy rate for females (37.4 per cent) was in the age group 10-14, while the highest literacy rate for males (63 per cent) was in the age group 15-19. This shows the higher incidence of literacy in the younger generation. However, a sensitive index of literacy is the female literacy rate in rural areas. The rural female literacy rate in India is only 13.2 per cent, while the urban female literacy rate is 42.3. Kerala has the highest literacy rate both in rural and urban areas, while Rajas-

than has the lowest literacy rate both in urban and rural areas. A detailed analysis based on the district data reveals that out of the 352 districts in India, in 83 districts the female literacy rate in the rural areas is less than 5 per cent and there are another 113 districts where the female literacy rate is between 5 and 10 per cent. Of the 83 districts belonging to the first category, 64 belong to the States of Uttar Pradesh, Rajasthan, Bihar and Madhya Pradesh. Of the 113 districts belonging to the latter category, Uttar Pradesh, Bihar, Madhya Pradesh and Andhra Pradesh account for 73 districts.<sup>4</sup>

Among the total female literates, 40 per cent have no educational level (they are really semi-literates), 7.8 per cent are matriculates while only 1.4 per cent are graduates and above. The great majority of the Indian women and men are illiterate and semi-literate and an insignificant fraction of the population is educated. The image of the Indian women created by some women holding high position in some sophisticated spheres is only the image of a small elite group of women.

### Marriage and Family

According to unofficial estimates based on census data, the average age at marriage of females was 13.2 years during the 1901-11 decade. It increased to 16.1 years during 1951-61. According to the latest estimates, based on 1 per cent sample tables for 1971 Census, the average age at marriage has further gone up to 17.2 years during 1961-71. In 1961, 17.2 per cent of the female population aged 10 years and above was unmarried. In 1971 the comparable figure was 22.0 per cent. In the rural areas 15.8 per cent of the females aged 10 years and above were unmarried in 1961 while in the urban areas the comparable figure was 24.2 per cent. In 1971 the proportion of unmarried increased to 20.2 per cent in rural areas and 29.2 per cent in urban areas.

It is difficult to measure the incidence of child marriage. The 1961 and 1971 Censuses did not tabulate data by marital

status for the age group 0-9. An indirect evidence of child marriage is furnished by the data for the age group 10-14. In 1971, in rural India 13.6 per cent of the girls in the age group 10-14 were married and 0.1 per cent were widows, while in urban India 3.9 per cent were married and the number of widows was negligible. Less than 2 per cent of the women in the age group 25-29 and less than 1 per cent in the age group 30-34 were unmarried in the rural areas. The figures also show that 2 per cent of the women in the age group 25-29 and 4 per cent of the women in the age group 30-34 were widows in the rural areas. In 1961 the comparable figures were 3 per cent for the age group 25-29 and 6.6 per cent for the age group 30-34. This indicates that the incidence of widowhood has come down. Nevertheless, early marriage and early widowhood still persist in rural areas though the incidence of both these is on the decline.

### Fertility

The fertility of Indian women continues to be high. The estimated birth rate in India for the 1941-51 decade was 39.9 per thousand while for the 1951-61 decade it was 41.7 per thousand. The slight increase may be due to statistical factors but the important point to note is that for the last 20 to 30 years the birth rate has been around 40 per thousand.

According to the Sample Registration data, in 1970 the birth rate was 37.0 in India. It was 38.8 in rural areas and 29.7 in urban areas. According to the SRS data, in 1969 in rural India as a whole, the average number of children per mother in the age group 40-44 was 6.4. The practice of family planning is far from universal. In recent years the family planning movement has made some progress but according to the Family Planning Department, in 1971 only 13.2 per cent of all couples in the reproductive age group in India were "protected" by one or other method of family planning. The figure for protected couples varies from 0.7 per cent in NEFA (Arunachal Pradesh) to 23.7 per cent in Punjab.



Broadly speaking, States like Uttar Pradesh, Bihar, Madhya Pradesh and Rajasthan which have very low literacy levels as well as a high proportion of rural population, have the lowest acceptance rate of family planning. However, there are exceptions. For example, Orissa has a fairly good record of family planning which is close to the record of Kerala which has the highest literacy level. But surprisingly, even in the almost exclusively urban territories of Delhi and Chandigarh, the acceptance rate is far from high. This explains, to a considerable extent, the absence, of any marked rural-urban differential in the fertility pattern of Indian women.

Recent SRS data, however, indicate a lower birth rate in urban areas compared to the rural. In 1972 the urban birth rate in India was 30.5 per thousand compared to 38.4 in rural areas.

It is possible that better health facilities in urban areas tend to reduce pregnancy wastage leading to a higher *live* birth rate in urban areas. But it is difficult to come to any firm conclusion because the evidence is conflicting.

### **Women at Work**

According to the 1971 Census, there were 31 million women workers in India, out of which 28 million were in rural areas and 3 million in urban areas. In rural areas the great majority of women workers (87 per cent) were engaged in agriculture and less than 2 per cent were engaged in manufacturing industries other than household industries. In the urban areas the service sector claimed the largest percentage of women workers (38 per cent) followed by agricultural labour (17.5 per cent), while manufacturing industries other than household industries accounted for about 13 per cent of the female work-force.

In rural India as a whole, 13 per cent of the women were in the work-force while in urban India the comparable figure was less than 7 per cent. Unlike in western countries, even in the biggest cities the participation rate for women does not exceed



9 per cent. In western countries the service sector is generally "manned" by women. Of late, in several Asian cities women are being increasingly employed in the service sector but women continue to play a minor role in the urban work-force in India. The norms of social status of women and notions of social respectability condition the employment of women, especially married women, in non-household industries and the service sector. Conservative families have little hesitation in allowing women to work as teachers and doctors but would hesitate to see women working as shop assistants and office girls. However, there is some evidence that under the impact of economic necessity and also due to the gradual process of modernisation, the attitude towards such work is less rigid at least in the urban areas. But it is difficult to say if the attitudes are changing in the rural areas.

In his monograph on "Women in the Working Force in India", Professor D. R. Gadgil comments:

"One of the most persistent aspects of Indian socio-economic structure that has been impressed on me through a study of the results of socio-economic surveys is the usual close correspondence between economic position and traditional social ranking in Indian rural society. Ability to keep away from manual work has been an important distinguishing sign of socio-economic status among us. Therefore, non-participation of women in any work and particularly manual work outdoors is everywhere considered as value. It is clear, however, that the practical force of this value differs widely from region to region and that the difference is apparently associated with the socio-political and cultural history of each region. For example, even in Maharashtra the stratum that considers itself as at top in rural society shows clear signs even today of the prejudice against field work by women. But the total quantitative effect of this is small."<sup>5</sup>

According to the census, the non-workers were divided into a number of categories. In the case of women, household duty was

recorded as the main activity of 51 per cent of the total number of non-working women. In the age group 15-59 household duty was recorded as the main activity of 73.5 per cent of the women in that age group. In the rural areas 73 per cent of the women in the age group 15-59 reported household duties as their main activity while in the urban areas the comparable figure was 75 per cent. Thus the incidence of household duties as the *main* activity was a little higher in the urban areas compared to the rural areas. However, in the age group 15-59, the higher participation of women in studies and the lower marriage rate account for the lower incidence of household duties in urban areas compared to the rural.

More than 89 per cent of the women workers are illiterate, according to the 1971 census.

### **Women in Politics**

The sex breakdown of the members of Parliament (Lok Sabha) from 1952 onwards for each of the five general elections indicates that the number of women M.P.s was the highest in 1962 while it was the lowest in 1952. The number came down in the 1971 mid-term general election, namely, 22 women and 496 men. The participation of women in politics is not therefore as widespread as it is often made out to be.

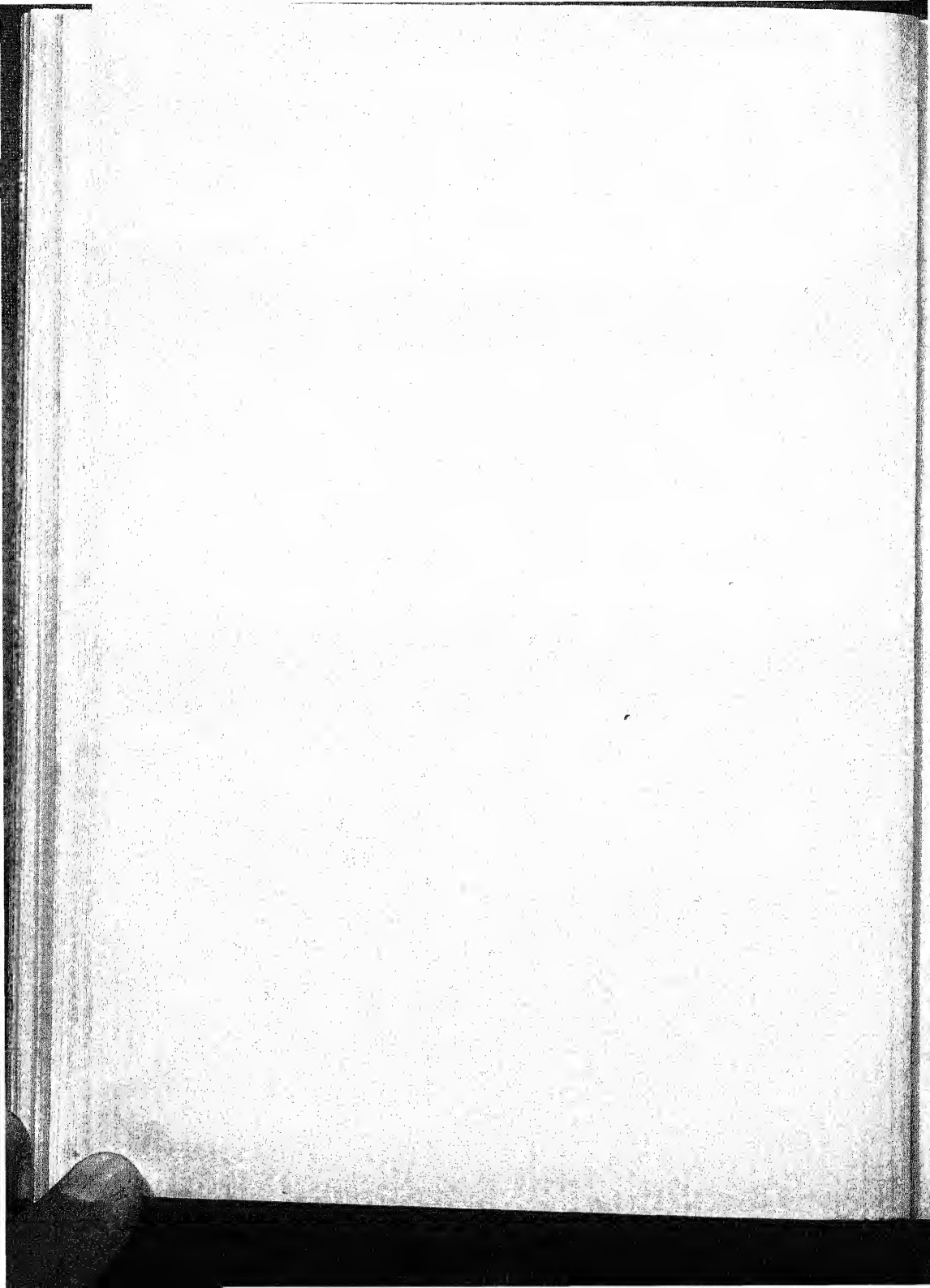
Though the proportion of women who vote is less than that of men throughout the period, participation in elections by women has increased at a faster rate than that of men.

**References**

1. M. Subbaraya Kamath, *Census of India—An Analysis and Criticism*, Theosophical Publishing House, Madras, 1914, (Foreword by Annie Besant).
2. Extracts from All India Report 1921, reproduced in *Census of India 1951, Volume I, Part I-B*, p. 289.
3. Report of the Education Commission (1964-66). *Education and National Development*, Government of India, New Delhi, p. 136.
4. O. P. Sharma, "Regional Variation in Rural Female Literacy, 1971". Paper submitted to the seminar on "First Results of the 1971 Census" organised by the Indian Association for the Study of Population and the Institute of Economic Growth, Delhi, November 1971.
5. D. R. Gadgil: *Women in the Working Force in India*, Asia Publishing House, Bombay, 1965, p. 7.

## Statistical Appendix

The computational work was done by Miss Jatinder Bhatia, Research Analyst, Demographic Research Centre, Institute of Economic Growth, Delhi.



## A Demographic Profile

### List of Tables

#### Table No.

- 1 Growth of female population in India, 1901-71
- 2 Decennial growth rates of population by sex, 1901-71
- 3 Sex ratio in the States of India, 1971
- 4 Sex ratio in cities with population of over one million, 1971
- 5 Sex ratio in selected countries
- 6 Expectation of life at different ages for males and females, India, 1951-60
- 7 Infant mortality rates for selected states (SRS), 1969
- 8 Age-specific death rates, Rural India, 1969
- 9 Age distribution of population, 1971
- 10 Mean age at marriage, 1901-1961
- 11 Mean age at marriage, India, 1961-71
- 12 Number of districts in each state where the average age at marriage of females was below 15 years in 1961
- 13 Number of districts in each state where the average age at marriage of females was below 20 years in 1961
- 14 Percentage distribution of female population aged 10 years and above by marital status: 1961 and 1971
- 15 Percentage distribution of female population by age, marital status and residence, 1971
- 16 Average number of children born alive to current mothers by age groups, India, (Rural), 1969
- 17 Per cent of live births by live birth order, India (Rural), 1969
- 18 Percentage of couples protected by states upto 1971-72
- 19 Literacy rates by age-groups, India, 1971
- 20 Female literacy rates in rural and urban areas, States, 1971
- 21 Distribution of literates by educational levels, India, 1971
- 22 Education of girls, India, 1950-1965



## Indian Women

- 23 Enrolment in primary education, India, 1950-1965
- 24 Enrolment in secondary education, India, 1950-1965
- 25 Distribution of women workers into nine industrial categories, India, 1971
- 26 Working force participation rates by age and sex, India, 1971
- 27 Female working force participation rates in cities with population of over one million, 1971
- 28 Percentage distribution of workers according to educational levels, India, 1971
- 29 Occupational classification of selected categories of workers, India, 1971
- 30 Non-working women classified by main activity, India, 1971
- 31 Percentage of women reporting household duties as main activity, India, 1971
- 32 Migration streams, India, 1971
- 33 Distance and migration, India, 1971
- 34 Sex ratio of migrants by distance, India, 1971
- 35 Sex ratio of migrants by type of migration, India, 1971
- 36 Male-female disparities in regard to selected demographic characteristics, India, 1971
- 37 Sex break-up of Members of Parliament from 1952 to 1971
- 38 Percentage of votes cast by men and women electorates, 1957-71, Lok Sabha Election
- 39 Percentage of votes cast by men and women electorates in States, Lok Sabha Election, 1971

**Table 1: Growth of Female population in India, 1901-71**

Year	Total population (millions)	Female population	Females per 1,000 males
1901	238	117	972
1911	252	124	964
1921	251	123	955
1931	279	136	950
1941	319	155	945
1951	361	175	946
1961	439	213	941
1971	548	264	930

*Table 1.* The female population of India which was 117 million in 1901 increased to 264 million in 1971. During this period, the total population increased from 238 million to 548 million. During the seven decades 1901-1971, the male population increased by a little over 130 per cent while the female population increased by about 126 per cent. The differential rates of growth of the male and female population brought about a continuous decline in the sex ratio of the population. As seen in Table 1, the sex ratio which was 972 in 1901, declined to 964 in 1911, 955 in 1921, 950 in 1931, 945 in 1941, improved slightly and became 946 in 1951 and then continued its decline again and was 941 in 1961 and 930 in 1971. Thus during the last seven decades, there has been a decline of 42 per thousand in the sex ratio.

**Table 2: Decennial growth rates of population by sex, 1901-1971**

Year	Total	Males	Females
1901-11	5.73	6.28	5.40
1911-21	-0.30	0.13	-0.75
1921-31	11.00	11.18	10.59
1931-41	14.23	14.52	13.92
1941-51	13.31	13.34	13.49
1951-61	21.64	21.97	21.29
1961-71	24.80	25.52	24.03

*Table 2.* In this table, we present the decennial growth rates of population by sex for each of the last seven decades. It will be observed that in every decade (except 1941-51), the male population increased much faster than the female population. It may be recalled that figures for the 1951 Census were influenced by the partition of India in 1947 and widespread disturbances. It may also be noted that during the 1911-21 decade, the total population of India (adjusted to the present territory of India) decreased by 0.3 per cent. But the sex breakdown shows that the decrease was confined to females only; the male population in fact registered a small increase of 0.13 per cent while the female population decreased by 0.75 per cent.

**Table 2: Decennial growth rates of population by sex, 1901-1971**

Year	Total	Males	Females
1901-11	5.73	6.28	5.40
1911-21	-0.30	0.13	-0.75
1921-31	11.00	11.18	10.59
1931-41	14.23	14.52	13.92
1941-51	13.31	13.34	13.49
1951-61	21.64	21.97	21.29
1961-71	24.80	25.52	24.03

*Table 2.* In this table, we present the decennial growth rates of population by sex for each of the last seven decades. It will be observed that in every decade (except 1941-51), the male population increased much faster than the female population. It may be recalled that figures for the 1951 Census were influenced by the partition of India in 1947 and widespread disturbances. It may also be noted that during the 1911-21 decade, the total population of India (adjusted to the present territory of India) decreased by 0.3 per cent. But the sex breakdown shows that the decrease was confined to females only; the male population in fact registered a small increase of 0.13 per cent while the female population decreased by 0.75 per cent.

**Table 3: Sex Ratio in the States of India, 1971**  
(Females per 1,000 Males)

State	Sex Ratio
Andhra Pradesh	977
Assam	897
Bihar	954
Gujarat	934
Haryana	867
Himachal Pradesh	958
Jammu & Kashmir	878
Kerala	1,016
Madhya Pradesh	941
Maharashtra	930
Manipur	980
Meghalaya	942
Mysore	957
Nagaland	871
Orissa	988
Punjab	865
Rajasthan	911
Tamil Nadu	978
Tripura	943
Uttar Pradesh	879
West Bengal	891
<i>Union Territories</i>	
Andaman and Nicobar Islands	644
Arunachal Pradesh	861
Chandigarh	749
Dadra and Nagar Haveli	1,007
Delhi	801
Goa, Daman and Diu	989
Lakshdweep	978
Pondicherry	989

*Table 3.* Interestingly enough, except in the State of Kerala and Union Territory of Dadra and Nagar Haveli, the sex ratio was below 1,000 in all States and Union Territories of India. The lowest sex ratio among the States of India was recorded in 1971 in Punjab, where it was 865 per thousand, and among the Union Territories, the lowest sex ratio was in Andaman & Nicobar Islands where it was 644, while the highest sex ratio was recorded in Kerala where it was 1,016 and among the Union Territories, Dadra and Nagar Haveli recorded 1,007.

**Table 4: Sex ratio in cities with population of over one million, 1971**

(Females per 1000 Males)

City	Sex Ratio
Calcutta Urban Agglomeration	698
Calcutta (M. Corp.)	636
Greater Bombay (M. Corp.)	716
Delhi Urban Agglomeration	798
Delhi (M. Corp.)	806
Madras Urban Agglomeration	903
Madras (M. Corp.)	904
Hyderabad Urban Agglomeration	917
Hyderabad (M. Corp.)	928
Ahmedabad Urban Agglomeration	830
Ahmedabad (M. Corp.)	833
Bangalore Urban Agglomeration	874 •
Bangalore City Corporation and Trust Board Area (C)	877
Kanpur City Urban Agglomeration	762
Kanpur (M. Corp.)	769
Poona Urban Agglomeration	361
Poona (M. Corp.)	885

*Table 4.* In this table, we give the sex ratio in nine biggest cities of India. Of course all these figures are affected not so much by sex differentials in mortality as by migration. It is well-known that migration to the cities in India is predominantly adult male migration. This is reflected in the figures in this table. Calcutta Municipal Corporation had the lowest sex ratio, namely, 636 females per thousand males. Indian cities continue to be predominantly male unlike many western cities which are predominantly female.



**Table 5: Sex ratio in selected countries**

(Females per 1,000 Males)

Country	Sex Ratio
U. S. A. (1970)	1,054
Argentina (1970)	1,014
Brazil (1970)	1,011
China (1953)	930
Indonesia (1971)	1,018
Iran (1966)	932
Japan (1970)	1,037
Pakistan (1961)	900
Philippines (1970)	1,010
Czechoslovakia (1970)	1,053
Hungary (1970)	1,064
Italy (1961)	1,063
Poland (1970)	1,058
Spain (1970)	1,049
U. K. (1971)	1,060
Australia (1971)	988
U. S. S. R. (1970)	1,170

*Table 5.* In this table we give the sex ratio in a few selected countries for the sake of comparison. It will be observed that in countries like USA, UK, USSR and Japan and also in Philippines and Indonesia, the sex ratio is well over 1,000.

**Table 6: Expectation of life at different ages for males and females, India, 1951-60**

Age	Expectation of Life	
	Males	Females
At birth	41.89	40.55
1	48.42	46.02
2	48.92	46.75
3	49.11	47.12
4	49.03	47.19
5	48.72	47.01
10	45.21	43.78
15	40.99	39.61
20	36.99	35.63
25	32.98	31.60
30	29.03	27.86
35	25.33	24.89
40	22.07	22.37
45	19.15	19.91
50	15.45	17.46
60	11.77	12.98
70	8.07	9.28

*Table 6.* In this table we present data on the expectation of life at birth, and at different ages for males and females separately. It will be observed that only from age 40 onwards, the expectation of life of females is slightly higher than that of males. But at all ages below 40, the expectation of life is higher for males than for females.

According to the latest Census estimates, the expectation of life at birth was 47.1 years for males and 45.6 years for females during 1961-70.

**Table 7: Infant mortality rates for selected States (SRS), 1969**

State	Rural		Urban	
	Males	Females	Males	Females
Andhra Pradesh	131.7	126.0	—	—
Assam	154.2	104.4	110.7	92.4
Gujarat	153.2	177.8	—	—
Haryana	82.9	76.1	—	—
Jammu & Kashmir	106.3	98.9	79.1	40.5
Kerala	64.8	48.5	—	—
Maharashtra	101.0	113.4	—	—
Mysore	114.5	104.4	60.1	54.4
Punjab	80.9	115.9	70.3	86.7
Rajasthan	167.6	170.2	97.0	84.2
Tamil Nadu	115.0	109.8	—	—
Uttar Pradesh	153.9	205.9	119.0	99.7
Estimates for all the 12 states	132.3	148.1	—	—

*Table 7.* The sample registration data collected by the office of the Registrar General for different States of India, give conflicting evidence on differentials in rural and urban infant mortality rates. In the largest State of India, Uttar Pradesh, the female infant mortality rate in rural areas is as high as 206. In other words, one out of every five children born dies within one year of age in rural Uttar Pradesh. The lowest incidence of infant mortality in rural areas was in the State of Kerala, where it was only 48 per thousand live births.

# Indian Women

**Table 8: Age-specific death rates,† Rural India, 1969**

Age-Group	Males	Females
0-4	58.3	70.2
5-9	5.8	7.4
10-14	3.0	2.7
5-14	4.5	5.3
15-19	2.1	4.2
20-24	3.9	5.5
25-29	3.7	5.5
30-34	4.1	6.4
35-39	6.5	6.1
40-44	8.5	7.6
45-49	13.2	9.4
15-49	5.3	6.1
50-54	18.7	16.2
55-59	28.3	20.2
60-64	44.0	38.7
65-69	59.9	52.2
70+	123.0	119.5
Total	18.2	20.1

† Age-specific death rate: Number of deaths in a year in any specified age group per 1,000 persons in that age group.

*Table 8.* This table gives the death rates for rural India as a whole for males and females in different age groups based on sample registration data of the Registrar General. It will be seen that for the age group 5-14 as a whole, the female death rate is 5.3 per thousand compared to 4.5 for males. It will be seen that in the youngest age group 0-4, while the male death rate is 58 per thousand, the female death rate is 70 per thousand; whereas in the oldest age group 70 and above, the male death rate is 123 per thousand, while the female death is 120 per thousand. In the five yearly age groups from 0-4 to 30-34, the female death rates are higher than male, except in the age group 10-14, while in the age groups 35-39 and above the male death rates are higher than female. However, the overall position is that in rural India in 1969 there were 18 deaths per thousand for males and 20 deaths per thousand for females.

**Table 9: Age distribution of population, 1971**

(Percentages)

Age-groups	Males	Females	Total
0-14	41.9	42.2	42.0
15-19	8.9	8.4	8.7
20-24	7.6	8.2	7.9
25-29	7.2	7.8	7.4
30-39	12.5	12.6	12.6
40-49	9.7	9.0	9.3
50-59	6.3	5.8	6.1
60+	5.9	6.0	6.0
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0

*Table 9.* In this table, we give the age distribution of the male and female population in 1971. It will be observed that 42 per cent of India's population is below 14. In the case of males, it is 41.9 per cent and in the case of females 42.2 per cent. Only 6 per cent of India's population is above 60: it is 5.9 per cent in the case of males, 6.0 per cent in the case of females.

Table 10: Mean age at marriage: 1901-1961

Decade	Males	Females
1901-11	20.2	13.2
1911-21	20.5	13.6
1921-31	18.4	12.6
1931-41	20.2	15.0
1941-51	19.8	15.4
1951-61	21.4	16.1
1961-71	22.2	17.2

*Table 10.* The 1971 Census asked a direct question on age at marriage of all currently married women for the first time in the history of census operations in India. The relevant data are not yet available. However, estimates on the average age at marriage have been made on the basis of the marital status distribution and the age distribution. According to these estimates, the average age at marriage for males has increased from 20.2 years during the 1901-11 decade, to 22.2 years during 1961-71. In the case of females, the comparable figures are 13.2 years during 1901-11 and 17.2 years during 1961-71. In other words, during these seven decades, the average age at marriage has gone up by two years in the case of males and by four years in the case of females.



**Table 11: Mean age at marriage, India, 1961-71\***

	Males	Females
Rural	21.6	16.7
Urban	24.3	19.2
Total	22.2	17.2

\* Provisional. Based on 1 per cent sample tables, 1971 Census.

*Table 11.* On the basis of the provisional figures, we observe that the mean age at marriage of females is higher by 2.5 years in the urban areas as compared to the rural. In the case of males, it is higher by 2.7 years in urban areas as compared to the rural.

In rural areas the mean age at marriage for males is higher than that of females by 4.9 years and, surprisingly, the difference is even higher in the urban areas, namely, 5.1 year, though the rural-urban differences are small. In other words, the gap between mean ages of husband and wife is roughly of the same order, namely, 5 years, both in rural and urban areas of India.

## Indian Women

**Table 12: Number of districts in each state where the average age at marriage of females was below 15 years in 1961**

States	Total Number of districts	No. of districts with average age at marriage of females below 15	Per cent of total No. of districts
Madhya Pradesh	43	33	77
Bihar	17	12	71
Rajasthan	26	17	65
Uttar Pradesh	54	26	48
Andhra Pradesh	20	7	35
West Bengal	16	5	31
Maharashtra	26	8	31
Mysore	19	3	16
INDIA	318	112	35

*Table 12.* A detailed analysis of the district-wise figures indicates that in more than one-third of the total number of districts in India in 1961, the average age at marriage of females was below 15 years. Most of these districts are in the States of Madhya Pradesh, Bihar, Rajasthan and Uttar Pradesh.

**Table 13: Number of districts in each State where the average age at marriage of females was below 20 years in 1961**

State	Total No. of districts	No. of districts where the average age at marriage of females was below 20 yrs.	Per cent of total no. of districts
Andhra Pradesh	20	20	100
Bihar	17	17	100
Gujarat	17	17	100
Maharashtra	26	26	100
Madhya Pradesh	43	43	100
Mysore	19	19	100
Orissa	13	13	100
Rajasthan	26	26	100
Uttar Pradesh	54	54	100
Punjab	19	18	95
West Bengal	16	15	94
Madras	13	12	92
Jammu & Kashmir	9	8	89
Assam	11	7	64
Kerala	9	3	33
INDIA	318	303	95

*Table 13.* The district-wise estimates also reveal that in 95 per cent districts in India the average age at marriage of females was below 20 years in 1961.

## Indian Women

**Table 14: Percentage distribution of female population aged 10 years and above by marital status : 1961 and 1971**

Marital Status	Year	Rural	Urban	Total
Unmarried	1961	15.8	24.2	17.2
	1971	20.2	29.2	22.0
Married	1961	67.5	61.1	66.5
	1971	66.3	59.3	64.9
Widowed	1961	15.8	14.0	15.5
	1971	12.9	11.0	12.5
Divorced/Separated	1961	0.8	0.6	0.7
	1971	0.5	0.4	0.5
Unspecified status	1961	0.1	0.1	0.1
	1971	0.1	0.1	0.1

*Table 14.* There is some indirect evidence, however, that the age at marriage is going up judged by the proportion of unmarried at a point of time. A comparison of the figures of the percentage distribution of female population aged 10 years and above by marital status in 1961-71 is given in Table 12. It will be seen that 17.2 per cent of the females were unmarried in 1961 compared to 22.0 per cent in 1971. This resulted in a decrease in the percentage of married women. The relevant figures are 66.5 per cent in 1961 and 64.9 per cent in 1971. A general improvement in the expectation of life and a greater incidence of widow re-marriages might have resulted in a decrease in the proportion of widowhood. The percentage of widows decreased from 15.5 per cent in 1961 to 12.5 per cent in 1971. The census figures on divorced and separated women may not be particularly reliable but there is a trend towards a decrease in the incidence of divorce and separation as judged by the figures for 1961 and 1971. However, the figures are rather insignificant compared to the total female population. But interestingly enough, both in rural areas and in urban areas, there is a decline in the incidence of divorce and separation judged by the number of females who were reported as divorced or separated at a point of time during the censuses of 1961 and 1971. As figures on the number of marriages are not available, it is not possible to work out the divorce rate on the basis of number of marriages.

Table 15: Percentage distribution of female population by age, marital status and residence, 1971

Age group	Total Rural Urban	Never married	Married	Widowed	Divorced and separated	Un- specified
0-9	Total	100.00	-	-	-	-
	Rural	100.00	-	-	-	-
	Urban	100.00	-	-	-	-
10-14	Total	88.1	11.7	0.1	-	0.1
	Rural	86.2	13.6	0.1	-	0.1
	Urban	95.8	3.9	-	-	0.3
15-19	Total	42.9	56.3	0.3	0.4	0.1
	Rural	36.9	62.2	0.4	0.4	0.1
	Urban	63.8	35.6	0.2	0.2	0.2
20-24	Total	9.1	89.4	0.9	0.6	-
	Rural	6.2	92.1	1.0	0.7	-
	Urban	19.1	79.7	0.7	0.4	0.1
25-29	Total	1.9	95.6	1.9	0.6	-
	Rural	1.3	96.1	1.9	0.7	-
	Urban	4.5	93.5	1.5	0.5	-
30-34	Total	0.9	94.5	3.9	0.7	-
	Rural	0.6	94.6	4.1	0.7	-
	Urban	1.9	94.1	3.5	0.5	-
35-39	Total	0.6	91.7	7.0	0.7	-
	Rural	0.4	91.7	7.2	0.7	-
	Urban	1.1	92.1	6.2	0.6	-
40-44	Total	0.6	84.5	14.2	0.7	-
	Rural	0.5	84.5	14.3	0.7	0.1
	Urban	1.0	84.9	13.5	0.5	-
45-49	Total	0.4	78.5	20.4	0.7	-
	Rural	0.3	78.7	20.3	0.7	-
	Urban	0.9	77.7	20.9	0.4	0.1

(Contd.)

# Indian Women

**Table 15: (Contd.)**

Age Group	Total Rural Urban	Never married	Married	Widowed	Divorced and separated	Un- specified
50-54	Total	0.4	62.5	36.5	0.5	0.1
	Rural	0.4	62.8	36.3	0.5	-
	Urban	0.8	60.9	37.7	0.5	0.1
55-59	Total	0.4	58.1	41.1	0.4	-
	Rural	0.3	58.7	40.5	0.4	0.1
	Urban	0.6	55.1	43.7	0.5	0.1
60-64	Total	0.3	36.7	62.5	0.4	0.1
	Rural	0.3	37.1	62.2	0.4	-
	Urban	0.6	34.9	64.0	0.4	0.1
65-69	Total	0.4	34.7	64.5	0.3	0.1
	Rural	0.4	35.1	64.1	0.3	0.1
	Urban	0.7	32.6	66.3	0.3	0.1
70+	Total	0.5	19.5	79.6	0.3	0.1
	Rural	0.5	19.8	79.4	0.2	0.1
	Urban	0.9	18.4	80.2	0.3	0.2
All ages	Total	45.2	45.6	8.8	0.3	0.1
	Rural	44.3	46.3	9.0	0.4	-
	Urban	48.8	42.9	8.0	0.2	0.1

*Table 15.* In this table we present the marital distribution of the female population in five-year age groups for rural and urban areas separately. It will be observed that in the age group 10-14, 13.6 per cent of the girls were reported to be married in rural areas and 3.9 per cent in the urban areas. Obviously, this is in contravention of the Child Marriage Restraint Act under which the minimum legal age at marriage for females is 15 years. The age group 25-29 reveals the highest percentage of married females in rural areas, namely, 96.1 per cent, whereas in the case of urban areas, it is the next age group i.e. 30-34 years which records the highest percentage of married females, namely, 94.1 per cent. In the age group 60-64, 62.5 per cent of the females are widowed while in the age group 65-69, 64.5 per cent are widowed. In the female population aged 70 and over, almost 80 per cent of the female population is widowed.



**Table 16: Average number of children  
born alive to current mothers  
by age groups, India (Rural), 1969**

Age Group	Average number of children
15-19	1.3
20-24	2.1
25-29	3.5
30-34	4.8
35-39	5.8
40-44	6.4

*Table 16.* The data on registered births and deaths are highly defective in India and it is not possible to draw any conclusion on the basis of these figures. One has therefore to rely on actuarial estimates and survey data. According to the sample registration data collected by the Office of the Registrar General, in rural areas of India the average number of children born to mothers in the age group 40-44 was 6.4. This indicates the high fertility pattern in rural India. The available evidence also suggests that there are not large differentials in rural and urban fertility in India and this results in an overall high fertility pattern.

**Table 17: Per cent of live births by live birth order, India (Rural), 1969**

Birth Order	Per Cent live births
All orders	100.0
1st	20.5
2nd	18.1
3rd	16.4
4th	14.5
5th	11.6
6th	8.2
7th	5.3
8th	2.8
9th	1.5
10th	1.1

*Table 17.* Data on order of births (i. e. the sequence in which the live births have occurred) reveal an interesting pattern. Of all the births which took place in rural India in 1969, according to SRS data, 20.5 per cent belong to the first order, 18.1 per cent to the second order and 16.4 per cent to the third order. That is to say, the first three births account for 55 per cent of the total births in rural India. The fertility level could be substantially brought down, therefore, if family size was restricted to three live births. The concept of "improvident maternity" was introduced for the first time in India by the Census Commissioner of India for the 1951 Census.

Table 18: Percentage of couples protected by states upto 1971-72

Sl. State/Union No. Territory		Estimated No. of tar- get couples in the reproduc- tive age group in 1971 (*000)	India (%)	No. of couples currently protected due to								All methods No.	%
				Sterilisation		IUCD		C.C. users		All methods			
				No.	%	No.	%	No.	%	No.	%		
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12		
1. Andhra													
Pradesh		8,071	8.23	1,041,105	12.9	58,339	0.7	62,455	0.8	1,161,899	14.4		
2. Assam		2,303	2.35	104,740	4.5	39,192	1.7	6,354	0.3	150,786	6.3		
3. Bihar		10,713	10.92	529,689	4.9	113,862	1.1	28,880	0.3	672,431	6.3		
4. Gujarat		4,692	4.78	708,346	15.1	46,923	1.0	93,991	2.0	849,260	18.1		
5. Haryana		1,595	1.63	135,976	8.5	88,426	5.5	76,390	4.8	300,792	18.8		
6. Himachal Pradesh		640	0.65	37,498	5.9	14,017	2.2	3,196	0.5	54,711	8.6		
7. Jammu & Kashmir		863	0.88	46,865	5.4	20,414	2.4	3,827	0.4	71,106	8.2		
8. Kerala		3,107	3.17	483,073	15.5	88,152	2.8	8,870	0.3	580,095	18.6		
9. Madhya Pradesh		8,000	8.16	662,171	8.2	118,514	1.5	70,497	0.9	851,182	10.6		
10. Maharashtra		9,154	9.33	15,18,489	16.6	72,623	0.8	166,245	1.8	1,757,957	19.2		
11. Mysore		5,027	5.12	390,395	7.8	67,187	1.3	43,764	0.9	501,346	10.0		

(Contd.)

(Contd.)

Table 18: (Contd.)

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
12.	Orissa	4,146	4.23	502,162	12.1	126,208	3.0	73,189	1.8	701,559	16.9
13.	Punjab	2,156	2.20	210,681	9.8	147,220	6.0	152,057	7.1	509,958	23.7
14.	Rajasthan	4,810	4.90	194,099	4.0	54,313	1.1	44,983	0.9	293,345	6.0
15.	Tamil Nadu	7,316	7.46	992,520	13.5	99,688	1.4	87,525	1.2	12,79,733	16.1
16.	Uttar Pradesh	16,512	16.83	711,782	4.3	266,883	1.6	94,909	0.6	1,073,574	6.5
17.	West Bengal	7,333	7.48	589,059	8.0	66,179	0.9	55,346	0.8	710,584	9.7
18.	Meghalaya	152	0.15	488	0.3	427	0.3	722	0.5	1,637	1.1
19.	Nagaland	70	0.07	238	0.3	50	0.1	—	—	288	0.4
20.	Manipur	163	0.17	1,670	1.0	3,646	2.2	915	0.6	6,231	3.8
21.	Tripura	277	0.28	12,865	4.7	646	0.2	1453	0.5	14,964	5.4
22.	A. & N. Islands	17	0.02	721	4.3	200	1.2	279	1.6	1,200	7.1
23.	Arunachal Pradesh										
24.	(NEFA)	49	0.05	84	0.2	272	0.5	—	—	356	0.7
25.	Chandigarh	41	0.04	2,249	5.5	1,869	4.6	3,593	8.7	7,711	18.8
26.	D. & N. Haveli	14	0.01	300	2.2	13	0.1	160	1.1	473	3.4
27.	Delhi	651	0.66	57,126	8.8	23,493	3.6	117,477	18.0	198,096	30.4
28.	Goa, Daman & Diu	124	0.13	8,609	6.9	1,471	1.2	2,878	2.3	12,958	10.4
29.	Lakshdweep	6	0.01	91	1.5	18	0.3	105	1.8	214	3.6
30.	Pondicherry	85	0.09	9,448	11.1	6,194	7.3	997	1.2	16,639	19.6

(Contd.)

Table 18: (Contd.)

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
30.	Central Govt. Institutions	—	—	151,197	—	25,079	—	108,549	—	204,825	—
31.	Commercial distribution of	—	—	—	—	—	—	924,306	—	9,24,306	—
	ALL INDIA	98,087	100.00	9,103,736	9.3	1,551,518	1.6	2,234,462	2.3	12,889,716	13.2

Target couples—Number of married females in the age group 15-44 years.

The number of couples currently protected by sterilisations is obtained from the total sterilisations since the inception after allowing attrition due to mortality and ageing at the rate of 2.5% in the initial year and 5% each year thereafter. In case of IUCD insertions, besides ageing and mortality attrition due to pregnancy, removals and expulsions also have to be allowed for. As a practical working approximation attrition rate is taken to be at the rate of 1.25% in the initial month and 2.5% each month thereafter. The conventional contraceptives have no carry-over effect and protection lasts only during the period of use. Therefore, in case of conventional contraceptives the number of equal C.C. users as such have been taken.

*Table 18.* There has been considerable progress in the field of family planning in recent years on account of the initiative taken by the Ministry of Health and Family Planning. But the overall situation continues to be unsatisfactory. In States like Punjab, Haryana, Maharashtra and Gujarat, a higher level of performance has been achieved, while in Bihar, Madhya Pradesh, Rajasthan and Uttar Pradesh, the success is far from impressive.

Table 19: Literacy rates by age-groups, India, 1971

Age-groups	Males	Females	Total
5-9	26.7	18.5	22.8
10-14	60.3	37.4	49.7
15-19	63.0	36.9	50.8
20-24	59.8	27.9	43.8
25-34	49.3	18.8	33.9
35+	37.0	10.4	24.5
Total	39.5	18.7	29.5

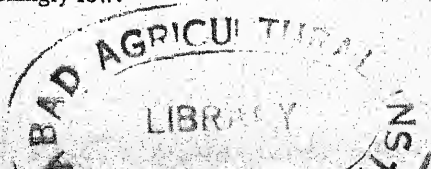
Table 19. The literacy rate in India continues to be low both for males and females. The literacy rate was 39.5 per cent for males and 18.7 per cent for females in 1971.



**Table 20: Female literacy rates in rural and urban areas, States, 1971**

States	Rural	Urban	Total
All India	13.2	42.3	18.7
Andhra Pradesh	10.9	36.3	15.8
Assam	16.5	50.9	19.3
Bihar	6.4	31.9	8.7
Gujarat	17.2	44.8	24.8
Haryana	9.2	41.5	14.9
Himachal Pradesh	18.2	52.2	20.2
Jammu & Kashmir	5.0	28.4	9.3
Kerala	53.1	60.6	54.3
Madhya Pradesh	6.1	37.0	10.9
Maharashtra	17.8	47.3	26.4
Manipur	16.4	40.4	19.5
Meghalaya	18.9	59.7	24.6
Mysore	14.5	41.6	21.0
Nagaland	16.4	49.5	18.7
Orissa	12.1	36.1	13.9
Punjab	19.9	45.4	25.9
Rajasthan	4.0	29.7	8.5
Tamil Nadu	19.0	45.4	26.9
Tripura	17.3	55.0	21.2
Uttar Pradesh	7.0	34.4	10.7
West Bengal	15.0	47.8	22.4

*Table 20.* The female literacy rate is the highest in Kerala: 53.1 per cent in rural areas and 60.6 per cent in urban areas, while it is the lowest in Rajasthan where it is 4 per cent in rural areas and 29.7 per cent in urban areas. In the large States of Uttar Pradesh, Bihar, Madhya Pradesh and Rajasthan, the female literacy rates are shockingly low.



**Table 21: Distribution of literates by educational levels, India, 1971**

Educational level	Total	Males	Females
Total literates	100.0	100.0	100.0
Literates without educational levels	36.9	35.4	40.3
Literates with educational levels	63.1	64.6	59.7
Primary	31.5	30.5	34.2
Middle	18.0	18.8	16.0
Matriculation or higher-secondary	11.0	12.3	7.8
Non-tech. diploma or certificate not equal to degree	0.1	0.1	0.1
Technical diploma or certificate not equal to degree	0.3	0.3	0.2
Graduates and above	2.2	2.6	1.4

*Table 21.* In this table we give the distribution of literates by educational level in 1971. This table shows that 15.3 per cent of the male literates were matriculate and above while in the case of females the comparable figure was 9.5 per cent. The educated classes defined as matriculate and above constitute less than 10 per cent of the literate female population.

Table 22: Education of girls, India, 1950-1965

	1950-51	1955-56	1960-61	1965-66 (estimated)
1. Enrolment of girls in classes I-V				
(1) Total enrolment (in 000's)	5,385	7,639	11,401	18,145
(2) No. of girls for every 100 boys enrolled	39	44	48	55
(3) Percentage of girls in schools for boys	74.8	79.2	82.1	85.0
2. Enrolment of girls in classes VI-VIII				
(1) Total enrolment (in 000's)	534	867	1,630	2,839
(2) No. of girls for every 100 boys enrolled	21	25	32	35
(3) Percentage of girls in schools for boys	26.7	51.8	68.9	78.0
3. Enrolment of girls in classes IX-XI				
(1) Total enrolment (in 000's)	163	320	541	1,069
(2) No. of girls for every 100 boys enrolled	15	21	23	26
(3) Percentage of girls in schools	21.0	29.7	36.4	40.0
4. Enrolment of girls at the University stage (General Education)				
(1) Total enrolment (in 000's)	40	84	150	271
(2) No. of girls for every 100 boys enrolled	14	17	23	24
(3) Percentage of girls in boys' institutions	56.0	53.1	50.2	48.2
5. Enrolment of girls in vocational courses (School Standard)				
(1) Total enrolment (in 000's)	41	66	86	120
(2) No. of girls for every 100 boys enrolled	28	31	25	23
6. Enrolment of girls in professional courses (Collegiate Standard)				
(1) Total enrolment (in 000's)	5	9	26	50
(2) No. of girls for every 100 boys enrolled	5	7	11	14

Table 22. In this table we present figures for the progress of education of girls, according to enrolment in various classes. There has been a steady progress in the enrolment of girls in classes at all levels and the gap between boys and girls is decreasing.

**Table 23: Enrolment in primary education, India, 1950-1965**

Stage/Years	Enrolment as percentage of population in the corresponding age-groups		
	Boys	Girls	Total
<b>I-IV</b>			
1950-51	55.0	20.1	37.8
1955-56	59.5	25.0	42.6
1960-61	74.0	35.0	54.8
1965-66	90.2	47.6	69.2
<b>V-VII</b>			
1950-51	20.8	4.6	13.0
1955-56	25.6	6.9	16.5
1960-61	35.5	12.5	24.3
1965-66	49.9	20.7	35.6

*Table 23.* In this table we observe that in 1950-51, only 20 per cent of the girls in primary education age group were enrolled in schools. This figure shot up to 48 per cent in 1965-66. In the case of classes V to VII, the enrolment ratio for girls shot up from 5 per cent in 1950-51 to about 21 per cent in 1965-66.

**Table 24: Enrolment in secondary education, India, 1950-1965**

Stage/Years	Enrolment as percentage of population in the corresponding age-groups		
	Boys	Girls	Total
<b>Classes VIII-X</b>			
1950-51	10.9	1.8	6.5
1955-56	14.9	3.3	9.3
1960-61	20.4	5.4	13.1
1965-66	28.7	9.1	19.1
<b>Classes XI-XII</b>			
1950-51	3.3	0.5	1.9
1955-56	5.2	0.9	3.1
1960-61	8.0	1.6	4.9
1965-66	11.5	2.3	7.0

*Table 24.* This table shows a similar progress in the case of VIII to X classes and also XI to XII classes.

# Indian Women

**Table 25: Distribution of women workers into nine industrial categories, India, 1971**

(Figures in Thousands)

Industrial categories	Rural		Urban		Total	
	Total	% of total	Total	% of total	Total	% of total
I Cultivators	9,127	32.6	139	4.2	9,266	29.6
II Agricultural labourers	15,211	54.4	584	17.5	15,795	50.4
III Livestock, forestry, fishing, hunting and plantations, orchards and allied activities	715	2.6	68	2.0	783	2.5
IV Mining and quarrying	91	0.3	33	1.0	124	0.4
V Manufacturing, processing, servicing and repairs						
a. Household industry	999	3.6	332	10.0	1,331	4.3
b. Other than household industry	436	1.6	429	12.9	865	2.8
VI Construction	107	0.4	96	2.9	203	0.6
VII Trade and commerce	282	1.0	274	8.2	556	1.8
VIII Transport, storage and communication	39	0.1	1.7	3.2	146	0.5
IX Other services	959	3.4	1,270	38.1	2,229	7.1
Total Workers	27,966	100.0	3,332	100.0	31,298	100.0

*Table 25.* In this table we present data on the distribution of women workers into nine industrial categories. It will be seen that only 2.8 per cent of the women workers are engaged in manufacturing industries of the modern type, whereas 4.3 per cent are engaged in household industry. The great majority of women are engaged in cultivation.



**Table 26: Working force participation rates by age and sex, India, 1971**

Age Group	Rural India		Urban India		All India	
	Males	Females	Males	Females	Males	Females
All ages	53.4	13.1	48.8	6.6	52.5	11.8
0-14	7.5	2.9	2.7	0.8	6.6	2.5
15-19	62.1	18.3	33.1	5.4	55.2	15.4
20-24	86.3	20.2	67.4	9.4	81.2	17.8
25-29	95.3	21.7	90.5	11.6	94.1	19.7
30-39	97.5	23.4	95.4	13.0	97.1	21.4
40-49	97.5	24.1	95.1	14.4	97.1	22.3
50-59	95.4	20.7	87.8	12.6	94.0	19.3
60+	77.4	11.3	55.3	6.4	73.7	10.4

The working force participation rate indicates the number of workers in each age group compared to the total population in that age group multiplied by 100.

*Table 26.* This table gives working force participation rates in different age groups for males and females separately. Taking all ages together, we find that women workers constitute only 12 per cent of all women. But the census definition of "worker" does not adequately reflect the work done by women.

## Indian Women

**Table 27: Female working force participation rates in cities with population of over one million, 1971**

Million plus cities	No. of female workers	Female working force participation rates*
Hyderabad	70,771	8.2
Ahmedabad	35,819	5.0
Greater Bombay	208,676	8.4
Bangalore	63,197	8.2
Madras	78,429	6.7
Kanpur	20,435	3.7
Calcutta	137,024	4.7
Delhi	82,657	5.1

\*The number of female workers for every 100 females.

*Table 27.* This table shows that even in the biggest cities in India, namely, cities with population of over one million, the female participation rates are very low. For example, in Greater Bombay, only 8.4 per cent of the female population is in the working force.

**Table 28: Percentage distribution of workers according to educational levels, India, 1971**

Educational levels	Rural		Urban	
	Males	Females	Males	Females
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Illiterate	65.0	92.1	32.0	65.9
Literate (without educational level)	12.4	3.2	11.5	5.0
Primary	12.8	3.0	18.4	6.3
Middle	6.1	0.9	15.3	4.6
Matriculation or Higher Secondary	3.0	0.5	16.7	11.3
Non-technical diploma or certificate not equal to degree	0.1	0.1	0.2	0.2
Technical diploma or certificate not equal to degree	0.1	0.1	0.4	0.8
Graduate degree other than technical degree			3.4	2.7
Post-graduate degree other than technical degree	0.5	0.1	1.1	1.5
Technical degree or diploma equal to degree or post-graduate degree			1.0	1.7

*Table 28.* This table presents the distribution of male and female workers according to different educational levels. In rural areas, over 92 per cent of female workers are illiterate while in urban areas, 66 per cent of the female workers are illiterate. The comparable figures for males are 65 per cent in rural areas and 32 per cent in urban areas.



**Table 29: Occupational classification of selected categories of workers, India, 1971**

Occupations	Males	Females
Engineering Technicians	2,02,600	2,500
Air Craft and Ships Officers	11,300	300
Life Scientists	200	100
Physicians & Surgeons	3,37,600	23,800
Economists and Related Workers	1,900	100
Social Scientists and Related Workers	1,06,200	16,000
Jurists	1,47,900	1,700
Elected and Legislative Officers	17,100	500
Administrative and Executive Officers	4,38,500	55,000
Working Proprietors, Directors and Managers		
Whole-Sale and Retail Trade	2,31,800	5,300
Village Officers	2,77,000	3,000
Typists	88,600	25,200
Domestic Servants	3,47,600	2,30,000
Money-lenders, Pawn Brokers	49,700	900

*Note:* Based on 1 per cent sample tabulation, Census of India, 1971.

*Table 29.* This table gives the number of male and female workers in a number of selected categories based on 1 per cent tabulation of the Census of India, 1971. For obvious reasons the whole range of occupational categories could not be presented in this table which gives only the glimpses of different types of occupations and the sex composition in these occupations. In view of the problems of sample errors, etc., these figures should be treated as indicative of the pattern rather than as definitive figures.

**Table 30: Non-working women classified by main activity, India, 1971**  
(Figures in Thousands)

Main activity	No. of females	% of total
Full time students	20,664	8.9
Household duties	1,18,404	51.0
Dependents and infants	91,722	39.5
Retired, rentiers and persons of independent means	477	0.2
Beggars, vagrants etc.	275	0.1
Inmates of penal, mental and Charitable institutions	37	N
Others	526	0.2
Total	2,32,075	100.0

N = Negligible

*Table 30.* In this table we give the distribution of non-working women by type of activity. It will be seen that 51 per cent of the women reported household duties as their main activity. This table does not take into account the age groups. This is done in the next table.

**Table 31: Percentage of women reporting household duties as main activity, India, 1971**

Age group	Rural	Urban	Total
15-19	66.8	49.0	62.8
20-24	76.5	78.6	77.0
25-29	76.8	84.8	78.5
30-39	75.6	84.5	77.2
40-49	73.1	80.8	74.5
50-59	66.9	69.8	67.4
Total (15-59)	73.1	75.0	73.5

*Table 31.* This table gives the percentage of women reporting household duties as their main activity in different age groups. In the age group 15-59, 73 per cent of the women in rural areas and 75 per cent of the women in urban areas reported household duties as their main activity.



**Table 32: Migration streams, India, 1971**

Migration type	Total	Percentages	
		Males	Females
Rural to rural	70.8	52.7	78.6
Urban to rural	5.5	7.6	4.6
Rural to urban	13.9	23.4	9.8
Urban to urban	9.8	16.3	7.0
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0

*Table 32.* This table shows the volume of different migration streams: rural to rural, urban to rural, rural to urban and urban to urban. In India, it is quite common for women in rural areas to marry outside their village and this results in a large stream of "marriage migration". This is confirmed by this table which shows that 79 per cent of the females moved from one rural area to another rural area. The urban to urban female migration is only 7 per cent of the total migrants, while rural to urban migration accounts for only 10 per cent of the total migration. Urban to rural migration is the least important form of migration and accounts for only 4.6 per cent of the total migration.

**Table 33: Distance and migration, India, 1971**

Migration type	Total	Percentages	
		Males	Females
Short distance	67.4	54.9	72.8
Medium distance	21.5	26.6	19.4
Long distance	11.1	18.5	7.8
Total	100.0	100.0	100.0

*Table 33.* In this table we present data on migration by distance. In the case of females, 73 per cent of the migration is short-distance migration, 19 per cent is medium-distance and 8 per cent is long-distance.

**Table 34: Sex ratio of migrants by distance, India, 1971**

Migration type	Females per 1,000 males
Short distance	3,063
Medium distance	1,682
Long distance	980
Total	2,310

*Table 34.* This table gives the sex ratio of migrants by distance. Short-distance migration is predominantly female: there are 3,063 female migrants per 1,000 male migrants. In the case of medium distance, the sex ratio still continues to be favourable for women: there are 1,682 females for 1,000 males. But in the case of long distance, the sex ratio drops: there are 980 females per 1,000 males.

**Table 35: Sex ratio of migrants by type of migration, India, 1971**

Migration streams	Sex ratio
Rural to rural	3,447
Urban to rural	1,398
Rural to urban	963
Urban to urban	990
Total	2,310

*Table 35.* In this table we give the sex ratio of migrants for the four migration streams just discussed. In the case of rural to urban migrants, there are 963 females per 1,000 males compared to 3,447 females per 1,000 males in the case of rural to rural migrants. As already noted rural to rural female migration is basically "marriage migration."

**Table 36: Male-Female disparities in regard to selected demographic characteristics, India, 1971**

Sl. No.	Particulars	Females per 1,000 males
1.	Total population	930
2.	Rural	949
	Urban	858
3.	Religious community	
	Hindus	930
	Muslims	922
	Christians	986
	Sikhs	859
	Buddhists	962
	Jains	940
4.	Literate and educated	474
	Illiterate	1,342
5.	Age-group	
	0-4	969
	5-9	935
	10-14	887
	15-19	883
	20-24	1,008
	25-29	1,027
	30-34	990
	35-39	916
	40-44	882
	45-49	839
	50-54	847
	55-59	867
	60-64	923
	65-69	916
	70+	960
6.	Educational level	
	Middle	371
	Matriculation or Higher Secondary	277
	Non-technical diploma and certificate	327
	Technical Diploma or certificate	335
	Graduate and above	246

(Contd.)

# Indian Women

**Table 36: (Contd.)**

Sl. No.	Particulars	Females per 1,000 males
7.	Marital status	
	Total population	930
	Never married	762
	Married	1,024
	Widowed	2,772
	Divorced or separated	1,630
	Unspecified status	328
8.	Workers	
	Total	210
	Cultivators	135
	Agricultural labourers	498
	Livestock, forestry, fishing, hunting and plantations, orchards, and allied activity	232
	Mining and quarrying	155
	Manufacturing, processing, servicing and repairs	
	(a) Household industry	265
	(b) Other than household industry	88
	Construction	101
	Trade and commerce	59
	Transport, storage and communication	34
	Other services	165
	Non-workers	1,726
9.	Non-workers according to main activity	
	Full-time students	480
	Household duties	6,745
	Dependents and infants	1,084
	Retired, rentiers and persons of independent means	356
	Beggars, vagrants etc.	587
	Inmates of penal, mental and charitable institutions	254
	Others	190

*Table 36.* This table gives a summary picture of selected demographic characteristics, bringing out the disparities between females and males.



**Table 37: Sex break-up of Members of Parliament from 1952 to 1971**

Lok Sabha Election Year	Member of Parliament		
	Total	Males	Females
1952	489	471	18
1957	494	468	26
1962	494	462	32
1967	520	490	30
1971	518	496	22

*Table 37.* This table gives a breakdown of Members of Parliament by sex from 1952 to 1971. The peak period for female participation in Parliament was in 1962 when there were 32 female members out of a total of 494 members. In 1971 there were only 22 female MPs out of a total of 518.

## Indian Women

**Table 38: Percentage of votes cast by men and women electorates, India, 1957-71, Lok Sabha Election**

Year	Males	Females
1957	55.8	38.8
1962	62.1	46.6
1967	66.7	55.5
1971	61.0	49.2

*Table 38.* This table gives the proportion of votes cast to the total electorate in the different elections of India to the Lok Sabha. The male participation rates are higher than the female in all years. However, there is a trend towards reduction in the disparities, except for the 1971 election.

**Table 39: Percentage of votes cast by men and women  
electorates in States, Lok Sabha Election, 1971**

States	% of votes cast to the electorates	
	Males	Females
Andhra Pradesh	64.4	54.7
Assam	58.4	41.6
Bihar	60.0	37.0
Gujarat	60.6	50.2
Haryana	67.8	60.5
Himachal Pradesh	48.4	33.4
Jammu & Kashmir	67.6	46.6
Kerala	65.8	63.3
Madhya Pradesh	58.2	37.6
Maharashtra	63.5	56.1
Mysore	61.7	52.7
Nagaland	56.8	50.4
Orissa	51.8	33.7
Punjab	63.4	55.9
Rajasthan	60.1	47.5
Tamil Nadu	74.5	69.2
Uttar Pradesh	52.2	38.8
West Bengal	64.8	58.7
Andaman Nicobar Islands	69.7	72.3
Chandigarh	62.8	63.1
Delhi	66.8	63.3
Dadra Nagar Haveli	71.5	68.1
Goa, Daman and Diu	57.0	54.9
Manipur	53.4	43.6
Pondicherry	71.9	68.3
Tripura	65.0	55.9
Total	61.0	49.2

*Table 39.* This table gives the percentage of votes cast for males and females separately in different States in the 1971 Lok Sabha election. The highest percentage of female voters among the States of India was in Tamil Nadu, followed by Kerala while the lowest percentage of female voters was in Himachal Pradesh, followed by Orissa. In Chandigarh and also in Andaman and Nicobar Islands the female participation was higher than that of males.

## Indian Women

### Sources of Data

Tables 1-4:

Computed from *Census of India*, 1971

Table 5:

United Nations, *Demographic Year Book*, 1971

Tables 6-8:

Office of the Registrar General *Sample Registration System*, Analytical Series No. 2, 1972

Table 9:

Computed from *Census of India*, 1971

Table 10:

S. N. Agarwala, *Age at Marriage in India*, Kitab Mahal, 1962.

Tables 11-13:

Goyal, R. P., *Recent Changes in Mean Age at Marriage in India, 1961-71*, Institute of Economic Growth, Delhi, 1974.

Tables 14-15:

Computed from *Census of India*, 1971

Tables 16-17:

SRS Data, *op. cit.*

Table 18:

Family Planning Department, Government of India, *Programme Information, 1971-72*

Tables 19-21:

Computed from *Census of India*, 1971

Tables 22-24:

*Report of the Education Commission, 1964-66*, Government of India

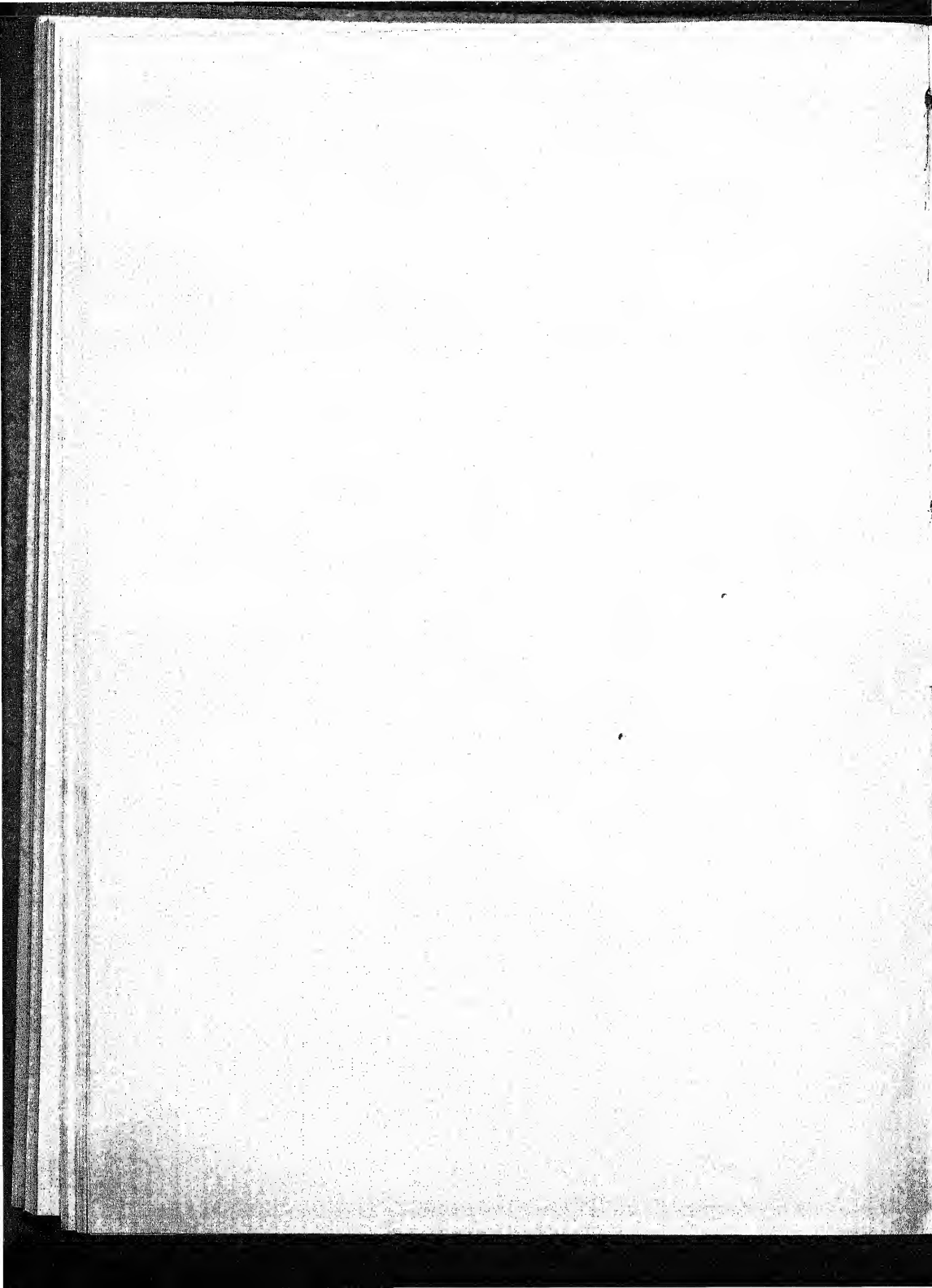
Tables 25-36

Computed from *Census of India*, 1971

Tables 37-39

*Reports of the General Elections, Volume-II*, 1957, 1962, 1967, 1971, Election Commission, Government of India.

## PART TWO

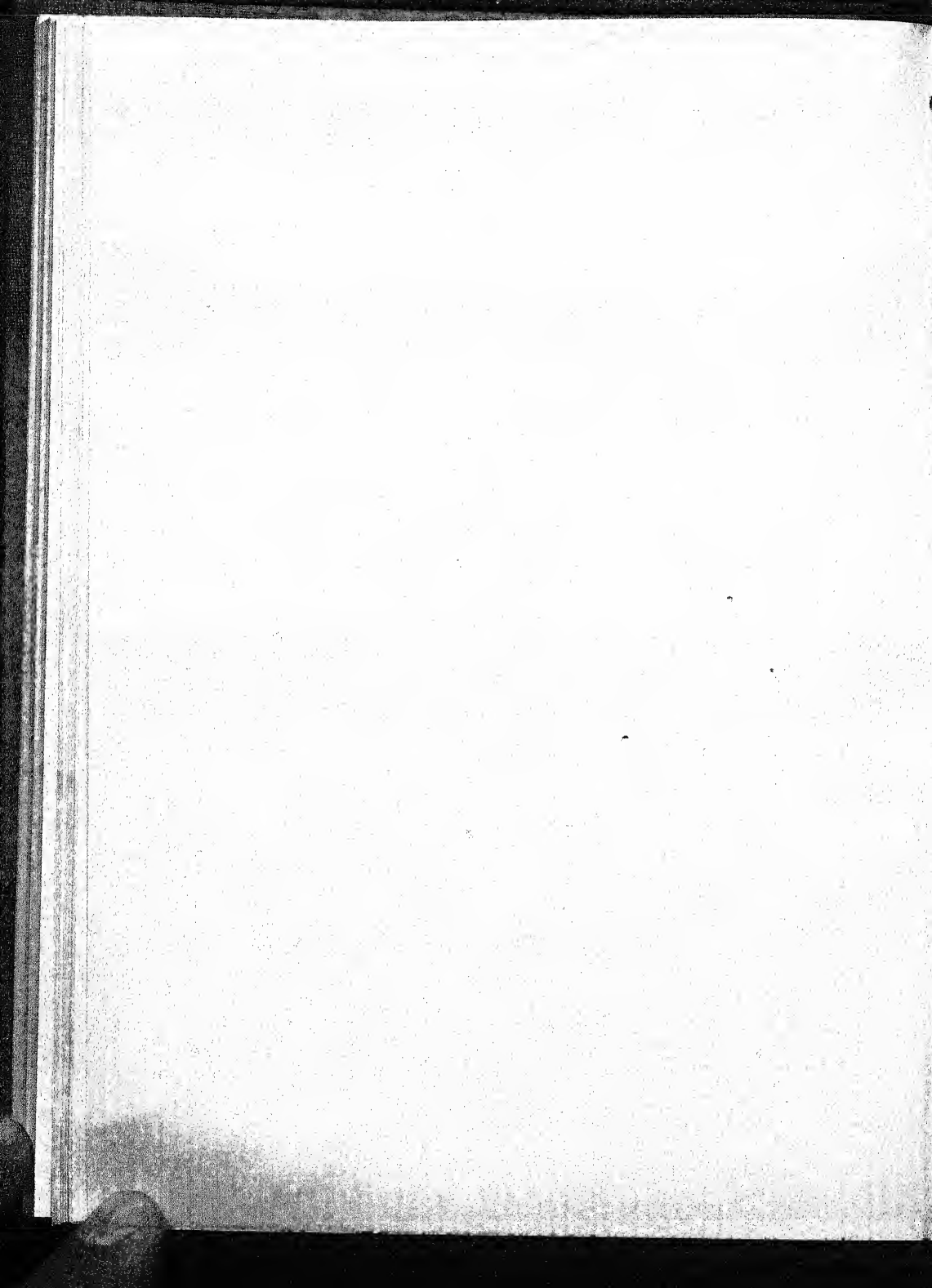




# Muslim Women of India

Qurratulain Hyder

Miss Qurratulain Hyder, now on the editorial staff of the *Illustrated Weekly of India*, is a writer in Urdu and English. She won the Sahitya Akademi award for Urdu in 1967 and Soviet Land Nehru award for translation in 1969.



The situation of Muslim women in India cannot be discussed without taking into account their legalist religion and the Middle-Eastern ethos combined with that of India which have moulded their values and traditions. While the Muslim Personal Law has safeguarded their legal rights and independent status within the family, the custom of *purdah* has hampered their social progress. Therefore, before going into the role Muslim women have played through history, some comparatively unpublished facts must be borne in mind.

First, the Muslim Personal Law granted women some important rights which distinguished them from the women of other religious communities. *The exercise or the deprivation of these rights has depended alternately on the particular socio-political conditions obtaining in different periods and different countries.* New-born daughters were customarily buried alive in Arabia at the time the Prophet began his mission. The status and respect he gave to women transformed the basic character of the medieval society. Arab fathers began proudly to call themselves the "Father of Salma", "the Father of Hafza", etc. Polygamy and concubinage flourished from China to Africa. Islamic Law restricted polygamy and made it conditional. The freeing of slave women was declared an act of piety and children born of concubines were given legal rights. Children of slave parents reached the highest positions in society and even founded ruling dynasties. Slavery was not, however, abolished as it was part of the economic system of the time. (It continued in America till the last century.)

Islam gave women certain privileges which at the time (sixth and seventh centuries) women did not possess anywhere in the world, nor did they acquire them in the non-Islamic world till 1918. Women of the West acquired some of these rights after much agitation only in modern times. For instance, while in most other societies marriage was a sacrament and a lifelong, indissoluble bond, the Quran revolutionised the entire concept of marriage and made it a civil contract which could be terminated by either party; civil marriage and divorce courts were introduced in the West more than thirteen hundred years later. In accordance with the Quranic Law, a woman inherits and owns property and retains her legal identity and individuality even after her marriage. In the words of Lord Coke, an eminent British jurist, "Man and wife in law are one person. And man is that person. Not so in Islam."

The second point to remember is that the new religion spread to a large number of countries of Asia, Africa, Europe and Russia. Diverse social and racial customs and traditions were assimilated into the new Islamic polity. But the fundamental tenets of the Quran and the Traditions of the Prophet were strictly followed by all Muslims whether they belonged to Siberia or China, Spain or Yugoslavia.

Thirdly, Law, though uniform in its basic injunctions, came to be elaborated later by five major Schools. Some of the Quranic injunctions regarding women were interpreted or codified in a way which became disadvantageous to women. Male chauvinism is not a new phenomenon.

Women's position in different times reflected socio-political conditions. During the Middle Ages when Islamic civilization reached its zenith, women went to war as nurses, soldiers and even commanders. They taught at the universities and became renowned musicians and poets, and a long list of names could be provided of women who so distinguished themselves.

Simultaneous with the academic and scientific achievements

of the age, certain sociological changes occurred which had a far-reaching effect on the Arab-Persian-Spanish Muslim society. The Caliphate adopted the grand style of the ancient Persian monarchy. The desert simplicity and egalitarianism of early Islam were replaced by a love for splendour and luxuries.

With the growth of commerce, and the acquisition of foreign markets, a new class of haves and have nots came into being. Society was divided into the ruling elite, the war lords, merchant princes, the professional classes (artists, jurists, doctors, teachers) and petty traders, artisans, slaves and farmers. Slavery flourished once again and women came to be bought and sold in the market place.

Under the Ommayad Caliph Walid II (eighth century A.D.) the Arab ruling class acquired a taste for opulence and licentiousness of Roman proportions. As courtesans and local and foreign dancing girls flocked to Baghdad the respectable citizens began to segregate their women. The difference between the professional entertainer and the respectable housewife laid the foundations of the system of *pardah*. The harem system was also introduced by Caliph Walid II who also copied the ancient Byzantine custom of employing eunuchs in the royal households. Female seclusion had also been in vogue in the royal palaces of ancient Imperial Iran. As the once democratically appointed caliphate became more like an hereditary office, the Iranian royal customs were adopted with great zeal.

However, under enlightened rulers women continued to enjoy greater freedom. Ommayad Spain produced many remarkable women who taught at Granada, Seville and Cordova at the time when the rest of Europe was engulfed in intellectual darkness.

In Abbasid Baghdad women presided over literary salons and musical soirees, conducted orchestras and worked as jurists. Abbasid princesses received foreign envoys and took part in statecraft. Women lectured on history and *belles lettres* at the University of Baghdad.

In 1258 the Tartar invasions destroyed Baghdad, ravaged the Muslim world and put an end to one of the most brilliant epochs in human history. In Spain the eight hundred-year-old Muslim rule ended in 1492.

However, the Tartars embraced the religion of the peoples they had conquered. Their women had always enjoyed the freedom of the Steppes. After embracing Islam, the Central Asian peoples produced many able women who ruled, albeit for short periods, in Trans-Oxiana, Iran and India. In 1236 Razia, daughter of Sultan Shamsuddin Altamash, ascended the throne of Delhi in accordance with her father's wishes. She styled herself Sultan and ruled over India from Sind to Bengal. She was a woman of extraordinary intelligence and ability. Her Council of Ministers hated being ruled by a mere woman, and she was killed in 1240, while personally quelling a rebellion near Delhi. Sultan Razia was woman born much ahead of her time.

As pointed out earlier, religious principles, environment, racial characteristics and social customs have determined the norms of the multi-racial Muslim society. In India the Muslims—mostly Turks, Persians and Afghans in the North and Arabs in the South—adopted many local customs. The majority of the converts retained many of their old traditions. The ruling class mingled socially with the Rajput aristocracy and adopted some Rajput customs.

Divorce and widow remarriage were alien to medieval Hindu society. Thus, while in the Middle East the women continued to divorce and remarry with great ease, the adage "A woman enters her lord and master's house in a bridal palanquin and leaves it only on the bier" became the unwritten law among the well-to-do Muslims. At the same time the custom of *purdah* was adopted by affluent Hindus.

For the rich and for the middle classes the veil became a hall-mark of respectability. The women of Muslim farmers, artisans and labourers have never observed *purdah* either in



India or in the Muslim lands. The poor do not need a status symbol.

In an age of general illiteracy higher education was confined to the upper classes. The majority of Indian Muslim girls were taught the rudiments of religion. They were also taught to read the Quran. They received primary education in *Maktabas* where they studied with boys up to the age of nine. After that they were shut up within the four walls of the house and married off as soon as they attained the age of puberty. Some were taught by women teachers at home.

Because of their privileged position the princesses and noblewomen continued to make their mark in politics as well as in literature. Gulbadan Begum, Humayun's sister, is the famous author of her brother's biography, the *Humayunama*. Akbar the Great appointed Mahim Anka, his Turkish nurse, as the joint Prime Minister of India. Male historians refer to this period as Akbar's "Petticoat Government". Nurjehan ruled India as the Co-regent of her husband, Emperor Jehangir.

Most of the women who ruled as queens or took part in statecraft have been dismissed by male historians as "crafty intriguers of the harem". Even Habba Khatoon, the fiery nationalist poet of Kashmir who defied Akbar's expansionist policies, and the Deccan's Chand Sultana, who led her troops into battle to defend her kingdom against Akbar's invading armies, are not given their due in books of history.

Many Mughal princesses were excellent poets and writers. During the flowering of Sufism a large number of women mystics rose in most Muslim countries and came to be known for their learning and piety. They held discourses with men sufis and preached to the masses. Till today the tombs of women sufi saints in India draw crowds of devotees — both Hindus and Muslims.

Throughout history, notable personalities have been products

of their times. The turbulent eighteenth century threw up a number of military adventuresses and palace politicians.

In a decadent feudal age women usually made their mark when they gained power over men as charmers and entertainers. The courtesans and royal mistresses of France, the geishas of Japan, the "dancing girls" of India—all managed to exercise their influence in the royal courts. In the eighteenth century, during the break-up of the Mughal Empire, a number of "nautch girls" wielded political power.

The position of women deteriorated with the general decline of the East. When the Europeans began their "civilising mission" in India they only saw Hindu women as the victims of the custom of *suttee* and Muslim women as faceless members of the potentates' harems. Begum Hazrat Mahal of Oudh was the last of the breed of able queens and generals. The queen led her kingdom's army into battle during the revolt of 1857. Even after she was defeated she defied Queen Victoria's famous Proclamation and issued a counter Proclamation in which she asked a pertinent question: What had the administration of justice to do with a people's religion?

The defeat of the 1857 uprising had a traumatic effect on the Indian Muslims particularly in areas of the North. The final loss of political power in kingdom like Oudh stunned and embittered them to the extent that they began to hate the new order. The acquisition of English education was declared anti-national and even an act of impiety. Moreover, during the heyday of missionary activities the question of sending Muslim girls to the newly established government and mission schools simply did not arise. The orthodox ulema's hold became stronger. Even the great reformer, Sir Syed Ahmed Khan, who opened the M. A. O. College at Aligarh in 1875, did not advocate the establishment of girls' schools.

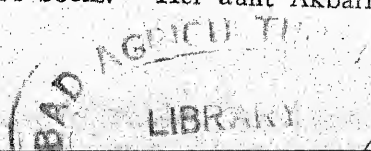
Still, the leaders and reformers did realise the importance of women's education. Many enlightened aristocrats and men of the

professions engaged Eurasian or English governesses to teach their daughters at home. Exactly the same kind of development was taking place in Egypt, Iran, Turkey and other countries where the national leaders had started giving a modern education to their womenfolk. In their turn, these semi-Westernised upper-class, *purdah*-observing young women of India and the Middle East opened girls' schools in which they employed aged male teachers or they themselves taught. Because of the social eminence enjoyed by their parents and husbands these pioneers were in a better position to withstand social pressure or opposition mounted by the mullahs and the orthodox.

At the turn of the century the Muslim women of India entered national and literary life, almost with a bang. *Purdah* set them apart from other women of India, so they had to wage the war of liberation from inside the courtyard. In their demands for equality with men they were also equipped with the Muslim Personal Law. They only had to say: "Let us have the rights granted to us by the Quran and the Prophet." Not unexpectedly, they had to face stiff opposition from conservative men.

The Khojas and the Bohras—the mercantile communities of coastal India—were among the first to send their daughters to schools. The feudal North was the last to allow women modern education.

In 1896 Shamsul Ulema Maulvi Mumtaz Ali started from Lahore the epoch-making weekly journal for women, *Tehzib Niswan*. It was edited by his wife, Mohammedi Begum. From its very first issues it attracted a surprisingly large number of women writers. In 1908 the Maulana and his wife started the weekly *Phool* for children. It was edited by my mother, Nazar Sajjad Hyder, then a *purdah*-observing teenager who had been educated at home by European governesses. As Miss Nazrul Baqar, she also began to publish fiery articles in leading Urdu magazines and newspapers. She wrote reformist novels which came to be avidly and almost reverently read by a fast-growing female readership. She also wrote a number of children's books. Her aunt Akbari Begum's



reformist novel *Goodar-ka-Lal* (1907) was even included in the girls' dowries at the time of marriage. The publishers of *Phool* created an excellent body of children's literature, most of which were not mere translation or Indianised versions of European fairy tales.

### **All this happened more than 65 years ago**

The contributors of *Tehzib Niswan*, living in the remote districts of the country, ardently wrote against the dowry system, superstitions, useless customs and expensive ceremonies. *These problems were shared by all Indian women.* The readers and contributors of the journal also consisted of some Urdu-speaking Hindu women, including women of the Nehru family.

The Muslim woman's awakening was truly remarkable. In 1907 Zubeida Khatoon Sherwania, a *pardah*-observing aristocrat of Aligarh, was writing mature, forceful poetry in which she evinced an amazing grasp of national and international politics. A Muslim woman barrister was practising at the Punjab High Court. Some women novelists had become best-sellers.

Literature and journalism soon became the domain of the Muslim women of India. As Urdu was the language of culture, even for some Muslim families of Bengal, it provided a forum for women to air their views.

The Muslim woman's penchant for writing had something to do with the Islamic culture in which the greatest importance was attached to precise written history, didactic and mystic poetry and *belles lettres*. Many women could read the Quran, often by rote, even if they could not read anything else. And they had always been acquainted with poetry.

It was during this period that Sir Syed Ahmed Khan's friend and colleague, the poet Maulana Altaf Hussain Hali, rose as the champion of women. At the 1905 session of the All-India Muslim Educational Conference, he read out his powerful and stirring poem "*Chup ki Daad*" which has now become a classic. In this poem

he poignantly addressed the women of India and paid a moving tribute to their virtue, compassion and forbearance and the injustices they suffered in dignified silence at the hands of men. This poem created a sensation and became the Charter of Women Rights.

In 1906 Sheikh Mohammed Abdullah, a young lawyer and former student of Sir Syed, opened the first English school for Muslim women in India. The Sheikh and his remarkable wife faced tremendous opposition even from the old-fashioned Hindu gentry of Aligarh. The Sheikh, however, went ahead and obtained the co-operation of Sarojini Naidu, Begum Abbas Tyebji, Lady Abdullah Suhrawardy, Lady Shafi, Nazar Sajjad Hyder, and Zehra and Ataya Fyzee. What was more, he received the patronage of Nawab Sultan Jehan Begum of Bhopal. The Begum was one of the most remarkable women produced by modern India. Three generations of Queens—mother, grandmother and great-grandmother—had ably reigned as the Ruling Chiefs of the State. Sultan Jehan Begum was an enlightened ruler and had the rare distinction of being appointed Chancellor of an Indian University. She served from 1920 to 1930 as the Chancellor of Aligarh Muslim University and provided leadership to men and women alike.

In 1908 Sheikh Abdullah also started the monthly journal *Khatoon* which advocated the abolition of *pardah*. During the same year Allama Rashidul Khairi began publishing the famous *Ismat* from Delhi. Rashidul Khairi was also a prolific writer who depicted the Muslim woman's problem and sufferings in his novel. Like *Tehzib Niswan*, *Ismat* also became a national institution. More magazines came out from different cities. Women now had a powerful press of their own.

Aligarh Muslim University, as well as the Nizam's Government, gave scholarships to women graduates to study in England. A number of English trained young women began working as lecturers, school inspectresses and doctors. Upper-class women continued to provide the leadership.



## Indian Women

In politics the names of 'Ammanbi', mother of the Ali Brothers, and the Gandhian worker Bibi Amtul Salaam, became household words. The Muslim women of India were also greatly inspired by the modernised women of Kemalist Turkey. At home they were great admirers of Sarojini Naidu, called "Bulbul-i-Hind", the Nightingale of India.

A number of schools and colleges were opened across the country. The All-India Muslim Ladies Conference became active in the educational sphere. By the 1920s a considerable number of women had come out of *purdah*. Justice Karamat Hussain, a great benefactor of women, opened the Muslim Girls High School (now college) at Lucknow and the Crosswaith College at Allahabad

During the 1930s many women of the younger generation joined left-wing parties. Dr. Rashid Jehan was one of the co-authors of the explosive Urdu book *Angare*, banned by the Government of India in 1933.

During the late thirties Ismat Chughtai rose as a fire-eating writer of modern Urdu fiction. The romantic, polite woman novelist was soon replaced by the rebellious "social realist".

In 1936, Hijab Imtiaz Ali, the famous Urdu writer, also became the first woman pilot in India.

Women continue to enjoy their traditional eminence in Urdu literature. From the time the first woman novelist published her work during the 1880s, down to this day Muslim women have written thousands of novels. The number of short story writers has been legion. It is significant that the popular novels published in the various Indian languages today are not very different in style or content from the fiction churned out by women writers of Urdu of the earlier, less enlightened eras!

These women writers have the advantage of possessing a natural command over a highly expressive, sophisticated and lyrical language. The feminine style and diction known as Begmati Urdu,



or the language of the Begums, lent itself exceptionally well to literary forms.

Nevertheless, social reforms and educational activities remained confined to the urban middle classes. It is true that women succeeded in their agitation against the custom in Punjab where the Muslims traditionally followed the Hindu Law of inheritance and denied their daughters the one-third share in property as commanded by the Muslim Shariat. Also, *as a result of women's agitation the Shariat Act was passed in 1939, which safeguarded the women's right to obtain divorce.*

All Eastern society has been family-oriented. Within the joint family the mother and the senior female relatives usually exercise authority at least in domestic matters. Since marriage between cousins is allowed in Islam, Muslims usually marry within the family circle. Thus a daughter-in-law's position becomes doubly secure. In case of marital friction the entire family exerts pressure on behalf of the girl. The parents-in-law must look after her because she is also a blood relative. The husband must pay her the dower (fixed by law at the time of marriage) during her lifetime. She can realise it from his assets after his death. After her marriage she retains interest in her father's family and automatically inherits half her brothers' share in property.

Still, the picture is sometimes not as rosy as it seems. Despite the passage in 1939 of the Muslim Marriages Act, the stranglehold of social traditions, the inevitable vagaries of human nature, family troubles can create problems when it comes to women seeking divorce. Quite thoughtlessly, many Muslims do not stipulate conditions for a divorce in the *Nikahnama* or the marriage contract. Eventually, the woman suffers in case she wants to leave her husband.

Although the reform of Muslim Personal Law has now become an obvious political issue, the fact remains that some of the antiquated by-laws must be modified and discarded within the framework of the five major Schools of the Shariat.

## Indian Women

The period of the Second World War coincided with rapid social change and Westernisation amongst the well-to-do. More women took part in politics. During the 1940s burqa-clad women came out in the streets shouting slogans for or against the demand for Pakistan.

With the Partition the Indian Muslims suffered a heavy setback. Most of the enlightened middle classes migrated to Pakistan. The abolition of Zamindari impoverished the old, aristocratic families that remained in India. Peasants, artisans and the lower middle classes, which now form the bulk of the Muslim population, were deprived of educated leadership. They also suffered from severe demoralisation and economic impoverishment and insecurity for a variety of political and socio-economic reasons.

During the last few years, however, a number of visible changes have occurred in Muslim society.

A new middle class is slowly emerging, made up mostly of business men. School and college education has become a routine affair even for lower-middle class girls. Daughters of clerks, peons and even cooks have become graduates. It is significant that amongst the Muslims of Maharashtra, Gujarat and South India who belong to prosperous mercantile communities and are more forward-looking than the Muslims of the feudal North, higher education for women has become almost commonplace. In Bombay alone the Muslims run a network of girls' high schools where, because of heavy attendance, classes are run in morning and evening shifts. In Madras Mr. Bashir Ahmed Sayeed and his wife have opened a girls' college which is one of the finest in India. The Muslim Girls' College, Aligarh, has expanded beyond all the dreams of its founders.

Muslims have had to face a peculiar problem after Partition. During the first two decades, most eligible bachelors migrated to Pakistan in search of employment. The parents of college-educated girls found it difficult either to get husbands or jobs for

their daughters. In recent years the situation has eased considerably. A large number of girls have also become lecturers, college principals, and office workers. Independent India has also produced some Muslim women who have distinguished themselves as scholars, educationists, barristers and lawyers, artists, musicians, etc. There is an eminent eye surgeon, a well-known Indo-Anglian novelist, stage directors and documentary film producers, a host of social workers and a number of national champions in badminton, table tennis, cycling, etc.

Women's emancipation continues to be class-oriented in all communities in India. Among the Muslims, too, girls of affluent Westernised families have become air-hostesses, fashion models, beauticians, boutique-owners, etc. For the middle and the lower class girls the only opening continues to be the ill-paid, overcrowded teaching profession. Leadership has not yet emerged from the under-privileged class. Deputy ministers, women attending the U.N. sessions or leading cultural delegations to foreign countries and holding high posts, still belong to the social elite.

The rural and the urban poor continue to live their traditional, often miserable lives. For instance, the *chiken* workers of Lucknow remain ruthlessly exploited by the middlemen. For the peasant women, workers in the cottage industries, millhands, housewives living in the slums, life is as dismal as ever. And yet, the poorest of Muslim women retain a certain pride and independence, which is quite remarkable.

Muslim women are as modern and as backward as their counterparts in the various income groups in other communities. This is a fact generally ignored or overlooked by our mass media while discussing the "Muslim Question". The various economic and sociological problems of the Muslim community cannot be isolated from the problems of the general backwardness and poverty of the Indian masses. Unfortunately, of late, an image and a stereotype has been created of the "backward Muslim community".

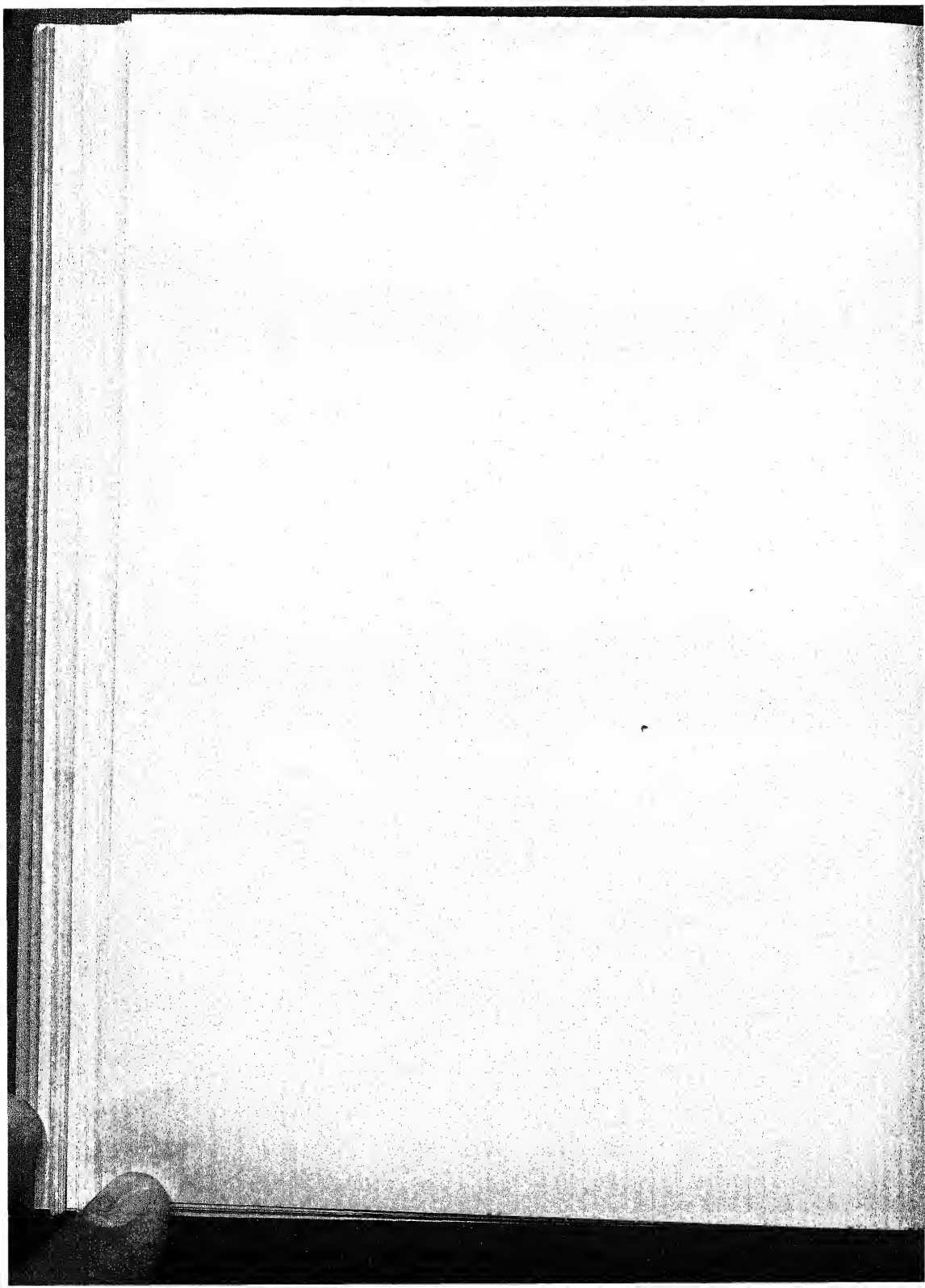
True progress and emancipation for the majority of Indian women—Hindu and Muslim alike—will come only with the country's overall progress and prosperity.

# Tribal Women

## Verrier Elwin

Dr. Verrier Elwin (1902-1964), Anthropologist and man of letters. Born in England, but spent most of his adult life in India. Lived and worked among the Indian tribes. Author of many books including: *Folk Songs of Chhatisgarh* (1946); *The Tribal Art of Middle India* (1951); *Tribal Myths of Orissa* (1953); and *The Tribal World of Verrier Elwin*.

This essay is taken from the volume *Women of India* published by the Division in 1958.





The most important thing about the tribal woman is that she is—a woman. I stress this because there is sometimes a tendency to regard the tribal people as though they were something altogether apart from ourselves, almost as if they were of a different species. It is important, therefore, to emphasise that the tribal woman is, in herself, exactly the same as any other woman, with the same passions, loves and fears, the same devotion to the home, to husband and children, the same faults and the same virtues. •

Even her functions are often the same. A remarkable statement on the position of women in a semi-Hinduised tribal society was recorded from a Pardhan priest of Madhya Pradesh by Shamrao Hivale and reproduced in his excellent account of that tribe, the Pardhans of the Upper Narbada Valley.

“In the course of a single day, a woman appears in many different forms. When she comes out of the house early in the morning with an empty pot on her head, she is a sight of ill-omen. Anyone starting on a journey or going for a betrothal decides not to travel on that day if he sees her, for in this form her name is Khaparadhari, an evil spirit carrying a broken bit of earthenware. But within a few minutes the woman returns with a pot full of water and now she is Mata Kalsahin, the best and most auspicious of goddesses. The Pardhan who sees her then is ready to worship her. He throws a pice into the pot and goes on his tour full of hope and with a singing heart.

"The woman reaches the house and begins to sweep the kitchen. . . . Now she is the goddess Bahiri-Batoran, who removes cholera from the village. But when she comes out to sweep the courtyard and the lane in front of her house, she sinks into a common sweeper-woman. In a moment, however, she changes again, for she goes into the cowshed and becomes Mata Lakshmi, the goddess of wealth and good fortune.

"Now it is time to serve the family with food and again her nature changes and she becomes Mata Anna-Kuari, the goddess of grain.

"In the evening she has to light the lamps in the house and now she is Mata Dia-Motin, the goddess who shines like a pearl. This done, she feeds her child and gently fans him to sleep and as she does this she becomes Mata Chawar-Motin."

This could have been written, with suitable variations, of peasant women all over the world.

Where the tribal woman differs from her more sophisticated sisters is in the kind of life she lives, her position in society and the inevitable influence that this has had on the way she behaves.

### Hard Life

The life of most of the tribal people in India is very hard. The majority of them live in mountainous and forest country. Until recently the normal amenities of modern life have been almost entirely denied to them. There have been few hospitals, no midwives, no child-guidance or family planning clinics, no creches for a busy mother to leave her child. In most tribal societies, the women not only do the work of the home, they also do a great deal of the work in the fields. In a Naga village in Assam, for example, a woman's life was in the past unbelievably arduous. With most of the menfolk organised for war, there fell on her the heavy burden of work in the jhums (clearings) on the steep slopes of hills often a long distance from the home. Her life was

shadowed by anxiety for her husband, sons and brothers and by fear for herself and children who might at any time be attacked by raiders in search of human heads. When she returned in the evening, she might have to climb down 500 to 1,000 feet to the nearest water-point, for most Naga villages are perched on the tops of hills. There was the food to cook, the rice-beer to brew, the grain to husk, the children to nurse and a husband to console and cheer. She was always busy, and when there was no work in the fields she busied herself with her loom, on which she wove beautiful and durable cloth.

In other frontier areas of Assam there was not the same danger from head-hunting, but in some parts the women were exposed to fear of kidnapping raids. They might be carried off into slavery; they were subjected to cruel punishments. The burden of fear has now been lifted by the advance of the administration, but the burden of arduous work remains.

It has been and it generally still is a hard life, but it is a full life and a happy one. There is the village community, a living organism, and the home so dearly loved. There are the mountains and the rivers winding among them. There are the treasures of the wind and sky and sun. There is beauty on every side—and these people love beauty very much.

It is on the whole a free life. It is impossible, of course, to generalise about a kind of people who number more than 20 million, but generally speaking the tribal woman enjoys a high and honourable place in society and goes proudly free about the countryside. She can speak her mind and often has considerable influence on village affairs. The wives and daughters of the great Wancho and Konyak Chiefs, for example, have many privileges, not least that of performing the ceremonial tattoo, often a successful raid or, today, some ritual substitute for it.

### Right of Divorce

The tribal woman is not, generally, subjected to early child-

bearing. She is married when she is mature, and if her marriage is a failure (which it seldom is) she has the right of divorce. The lamentable restrictions of widowhood do not await her. Should her husband die, she is allowed, even enjoined, to remarry; and in many tribes she may inherit property. In the matrilineal societies of the Khasi and Garo Hills, and in the South, she has indeed a dominant position both for property and family affairs.

This freedom is not absolute. There are taboos on women at certain times, and there are things that they must not do. During menstruation and pregnancy there are many rules, based on magical ideas, which severely restrict their movements. Some tribal communities have complicated systems of relationships which govern matrimonial alliances, and while some allow boys and girls to marry for love at their own choice, others insist on arranged marriages, which can be as unsatisfactory as in any other part of the world.

But by and large the tribal woman has a wide freedom, which she seldom abuses. She can go to a bazaar, even by herself. She can visit her friends. She can dance and sing, especially before marriage, as she pleases. She can laugh and joke with men without reproach. Her freedom becomes naturally somewhat restricted after marriage, but even then she can be herself.

Alongwith her freedom and independence, another striking quality of the tribal woman is her courage. As I have said, she has a hard life to face. The very high rate of infant mortality means that she may see some of her babies die at once and other children grow thin and wretched until they suffer an early death. She feels the loss of her children just as much as any woman of the cities. She herself may have to face appalling pain and constant sickness. She may have to make long journeys over the most difficult mountains and through forests haunted by wild animals. In the days of inter-village wars she had to move about a countryside where at any moment she might be killed or kidnapped.

Yet these women faced all these difficulties and dangers, with little to help and support them, with the utmost courage. I remember a Gond woman, whose baby had been dragged into the jungle by a leopard, picking up an axe and attacking the ferocious animal single-handed, thereby saving the life of her child. I have seen women stand up to the even more dreaded antagonist, the police official of pre-independence days, and rout him with a mixture of wit and abuse. One of the bravest women I have known who was also one of the most beautiful was a Pardhan who showed her courage in another field. Her name was Satula and she was a leper. She was of a beauty so exquisite that the whole of Pardhan manhood was at her feet. She could have left her husband and married a young and well-to-do youth at any moment and no one would have condemned her. Yet she stayed with the old man, tending him devotedly, bathing his sores, bearing his continual grumbling and abuse, without complaint, without annoyance. When he died and set her free, she married a younger man with whom she had long been in love. But she was, as I have said, a leper and she herself died soon afterwards, but before her terrible disease had made much inroad on her beauty.

The tribal woman is indeed in many ways the equal, if not the rival, of the tribal man.

But this equality is modified by a curious inconsistency. Writing of the Uraons of Bihar, Mr. W. G. Archer observes that in the social organisation of this attractive and progressive tribe, "the principles of succession are male, the method of government is male, the salient offices are male. The men are by convention and tradition the social superiors of the women. But if this is the convention, it is only partly the fact. In Uraon villages, the actual relation is one of equality. It is as equals that the men and women dance, it is as equals that a wife and a husband order their family affairs and it is as equals that they work and live together. There is thus a stress between the formal structure of tribal life and the actual feelings and emotions which thrust upon it."



## Indian Women

### Land of Women

This stress may be observed throughout tribal India, and some interesting techniques have been devised to resolve it. For example, the women of some tribes have created the mythological fantasy of the Land of Women, a happy country which does not include a single man among its inhabitants—it is ruled by women and only girl-children are allowed to live. The women there conceive when the wind blows them and, it is said, they manage their affairs with great success and in the greatest happiness. Should any man by chance be so unfortunate as to enter their territory the women make him prisoner, sometimes turning him into a goat or a cat, and he has to work for them as their slave.

This legend is very old and there have been many attempts to locate this remarkable country. In Central India it is supposed to be in Assam, in Assam it is believed to be somewhere in Tibet. But whatever its geographical location there can be little doubt that it exists in every feminine heart.

A similar means by which tribal women compensate for all the wrongs they suffer from men is the custom which was called in Madhya Pradesh the *Stiria-Raj*, the *Regimen of Women*. From time to time, at regular intervals a woman would have a number of dreams revealing that the normal course of society had been reversed and that women were now to rule. She would then one day, inspired by a force stronger than herself, get up in the morning and put on male attire. She would tie a turban round her head and take a sword in her hand. Thus attired, she would go out and call on the other women of her village to accompany her. They would dress and arm themselves in the same style and then would go in procession first round their own village and then to all the villages in the neighbourhood. This band of women had the right to beat any man they could capture and take away any property they fancied from their menfolk. A man who was captured had to buy his freedom by the gift of a chicken or a pig. It often happened that as the band of women



went on their way they would excite the women of other places and a sort of chain-reaction would be started which might spread across hundreds of villages.

I have already quoted Mr. W. G. Archer on the psychological need which this fulfils. He goes on to describe the *women's hunt* among the Uraons and Mundas, which seems to have originated in a myth describing how a number of Uraon women dressed as men routed a Raja and his army which invaded their country.

"The myth shows that although the men may rule, it is the women who are also men. In its reliance on the success of a simple trick, it expresses Uraon pleasure in native cleverness and under this typically Uraon cover it mildly pokes fun at male incompetence. The balance is, therefore, righted. The women are recognised to be the equals of the men.

"The hunt, with its brusque reversal of roles, has the same effect. It demonstrates that the country is as much the women's as the men's. For a single exciting day it downs all masculine dominance. It gives the women a new boldness and, finally, through the element of transvestism, it clinches the excitement with a slightly sexual tinge. The women in the act of becoming men feel themselves profoundly female. As a result of this expression in playful pantomime, female resentment at male control is neutralised. The feelings, which if permanently repressed might cause danger, are dispersed. The women in the act of asserting their rights realise from their gawky actions that the claim is unreal; and in peals of laughter the stress is dissolved. The importance of the *women's hunt* is that, through simple symbolism, the tribe keeps its balance."

Another technique whereby woman asserts her position in a number of tribes ranging from Orissa to the North-East Frontier Agency is the institution of the priestess. This exists in its most fully developed form among the Saoras of Orissa, where in every

village will be found one or more women who are dedicated to the task of divination and the spiritual treatment of illness. Among the Saoras these women are known as Kuranbois and they have a most important part to play in tribal society.

### Marriage with Spirit

A girl is initiated into her sacred duties by a series of dreams, in the course of which she believes that she is married to a tutelary spirit in the unseen world. This marriage does not usually bar her from marriage in this world, but it means a great deal to her and she believes that she can have spirit-children from her unseen but very real husband. Not only does he give her these children but he 'possesses' her from time to time and by his inspiration assists her in all the work she has to do. These Kuranbois are in great demand by the sick and they go to them, sit by them and try to discover what evil spirit or ghost is causing the disease. Once they have discovered this, they suggest to the male priest the sacrifices that are required.

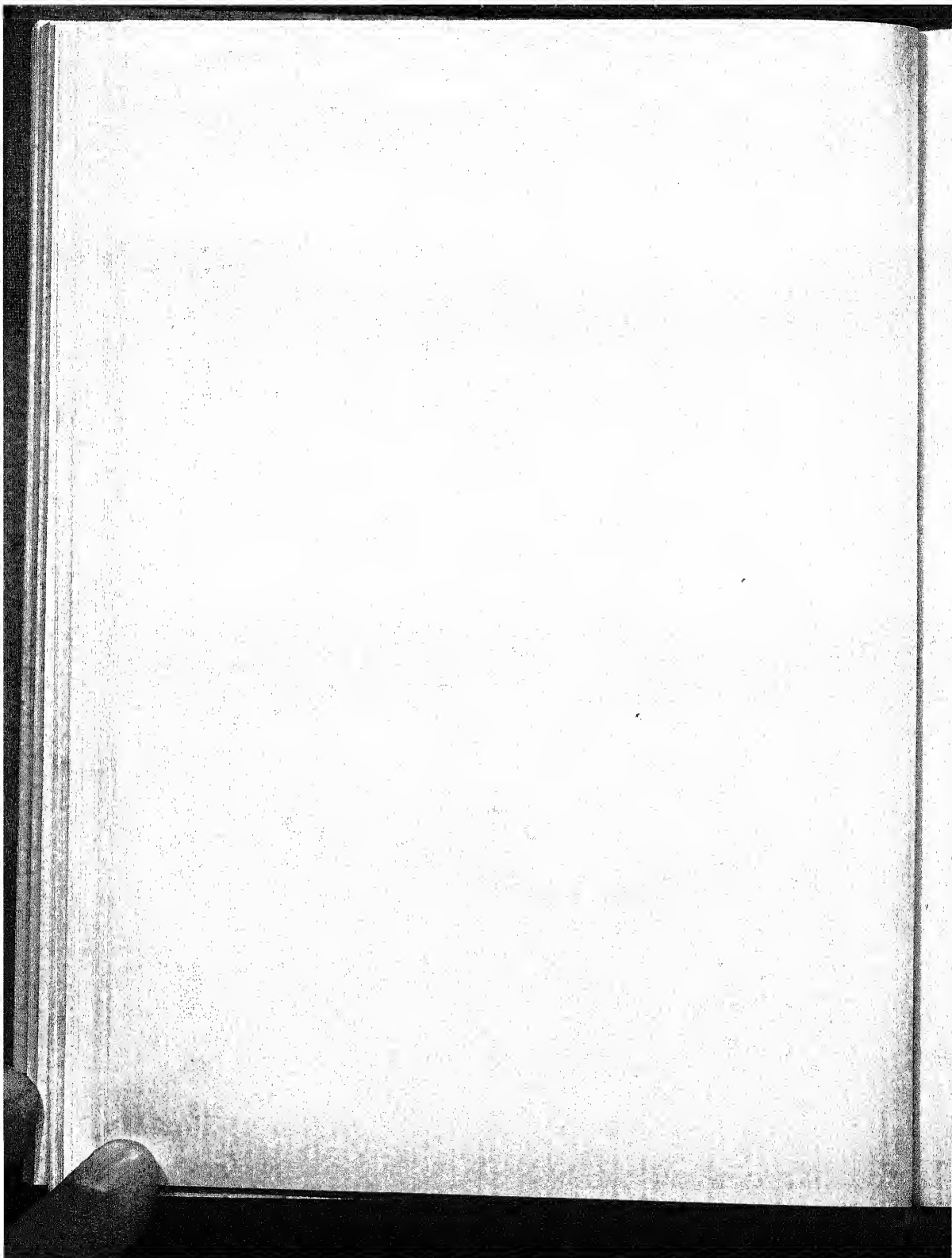
A similar institution exists among some Abor groups in the North-East Frontier Agency, and throughout tribal India certain women are capable of 'inspiration': they fall into a trance and prophesy.

Here in fact is a body of women dedicated to public service and fulfilling that dedication with grace and energy. Here are women, believed to be vitally in touch with supernatural forces, on whom one can rely, who respond to the needs of the sick and have professional thoroughness and affectionate concern, for the priestess really does care about her patients and the happiness and well-being of the community.

The trial priestess is indeed an impressive and honourable figure. She lives a dedicated life on the boundary between this life and the next. The mysterious other-world is more real to her than the coarse realities of earth. She establishes in the eyes of her fellows the priority of spiritual things. To the sick and lonely she

is nurse and friend, guide and analyst. To those whose lives are broken by tragedy she is often an angel of strength and consolation.

There are many other topics which may be considered, for even one woman can provide a life-time of study for a man. But what I have written here will suffice to illustrate the important place which women hold in tribal society. Protected by their innocence and their fidelity they move freely about the hills. They have an important role in festivity and funeral; they can more than hold their own with their men; they are free and self-reliant, respected and loved by their menfolk and adored by their children. Their life is full, interesting and satisfied.



# Women of Rural Bihar

## Olivia Stokes

Miss Olivia Stokes (b. 1951) was educated at schools in New York and Helsinki and at Yale University. She spent two years in India (1971-73), working among Harijan children in the jungles of Bihar.

there was no rain for the paddy, which also meant no work from the landlords. Many families were living on one meal a day consisting of weeds collected from the fields and boiled as a vegetable.

There are certain differences between the Harijan and upper caste Hindu women which are immediately apparent. In order to survive, the Harijan men and women alike must work hard from morning till night. Husband and wife become a team, sharing the work in the fields and sharing the household chores. As a result the women have no time to hide in inner courtyards, but are open and expressive, joking and mixing more freely. But what do these women feel about themselves and their work? How do they psychologically cope with their living situations and what values do they draw from them? In what areas of their lives do they find fulfilment, and where do they find frustration? How much freedom do they feel they are allowed by their family and community in their daily lives? What do they see as the primary restrictions on their freedom? Do they simply accept their present living conditions as 'what has to be,' or do they connect it to a concept of social injustice? As these questions are highly introspective by nature, I tried to approach the subject through the natural flow of a conversation between friends and avoided the stiffness of a formal interview. I believe that the women's answers to these questions paint a picture that is typical of many areas of rural India where the forces of social mobility have not yet come into full play.

### **Soherey Devi**

The first time I entered the one room hut of Soherey Devi, I found only two children, aged about two and three, lying on a *chauki*, quietly sobbing in the mud-walled darkness. Both parents were out. No one knew where. The room, about 7 x 15 feet, was empty except for the one *chauki* and a few eating utensils.

A subsequent visit found Soherey plastering her walls with round cakes of cow dung to be dried and used for fuel.



Just after their marriage arrangements were made, she explained, her husband's parents died. Her husband has no brothers, and so he himself went to fetch Soherey from her father's home to celebrate the *ruksadi*.

Soherey's day begins at 4 o'clock, "First," she said, "I must wash the pots and sweep. Then I go to collect wood and cow dung for fuel and grass for the bullock. If there is food I cook a mid-day meal. If not, I just sit or sleep. It is easier just to sleep. Then I do not grow anxious when my children cry because they are hungry. In the afternoon I must go again to collect grass for the bullocks, and then if there is food I prepare the evening meal. If I am needed I work in the fields too. I must plant the paddy, spread the fertilizer, turn over the earth around the maize, and help in the harvest." She used to work for the landlord as well. But now with the children and no one but her to look after them she had to give it up.

Though men tackle the heavier jobs, she feels that the women do more work. But she has no complaint. "If I don't work then my children will die. My children only get food when I work."

Her husband sometimes goes to Gaya (about 15 miles away) to work as a mason's helper. The last time he went for ten days and all he brought back was an undershirt for each of the children. She felt bitter about this.

She feels that simple foods suit her family best, and she is more concerned with filling their hungry stomachs than feeding them nutritious foods. If they fall ill she calls the Ojha. For a headache she grinds the leaves of the neem trees the Forest Commission has planted and applies them to her forehead.

Would she like to learn to read and write? "No, now it would be a waste of time for me to study. What can I learn? It is better for me to spend my time working in the fields or earning some money to feed my family."

In the evenings she often joins the other village women to sit and talk. "They talk about how there is no rain, and how without water for our fields we shall all starve. Mostly they gossip and complain about their mothers-in-law and sisters-in-law. But I don't have any, and so I keep quiet."

She has no special friends. She says, "To have special friends only brings difficulties. If I have a good friend then she comes and asks for things. If I refuse because I don't have anything to give, then she will think I am cheating her and will start a quarrel."

She spoke highly of her husband. He is always ready to help her in her work, and he always consults her before making any important decisions.

"Does he drink?" I asked.

"If there is money in the house, then he drinks. If there is no money, he doesn't."

"What do you think about his drinking?"

"It is good. Then he is happy. He sings and he jokes with me."

### Monita

"I was married once, before I came to Guriama," Monita confided one day. "I lived with my first husband in Medanpur. Then my husband died, leaving me with two small sons. After his death his family did not treat me well. They would not give me enough food to eat, nor buy me clothes to wear. What else could I do, but to return to my father's home? I wanted to take care of my two sons, but I was forced to leave them behind. My brother was visiting Guriama, and there he met Sidheshwar Bhagat (who was a widower with one married daughter). My brother arranged for our marriage, and then I came here to live."

Yes, it is better that I am here, but I am sad that I do not see my sons who are still living in my first husband's home. I did not want to leave my husband's home or to remarry, but I was poor and had no choice."

### Rukmini

Rukmini is the *dai*, the village midwife. The village midwife is by tradition the wife of the *Mochi*, the leatherworker, and is a member of the Harijan group. As there is not enough work for all the wives of leatherworkers to practise midwifery, only certain ones are authorised. Well over a hundred years ago the exclusive right to practise midwifery in the Guriama area was given to Rukmini's husband's family by the caste panchayat. The right to practise as well as the necessary knowledge is passed down from mother-in-law to daughter-in-law. The area of Guriama is divided into eight *tolas*, each *tola* containing 50 families. Rukmini has taken four *tolas* as her working area, and the daughter of her husband's brother has taken the other four. When Rukmini grows too old to practise, her daughters-in-law, assuming they all want to practise midwifery, will divide her four *tolas* among themselves as one would divide land. At present her daughters-in-law are learning the trade by observing when she makes a delivery. This is how she learned from her own mother-in-law.

Rukmini delivers the babies of Harijans and Brahmins, Hindus and Muslims at a rate of four or five babies a month. "I go to the home of the woman as soon as the pains start," she explained, "and I stay until the baby is born." First I massage the woman with oil. Then if there is any difficulty with the birth I gently pull the baby out. I cut the cord and bind it with thread. I clean the mucus from the baby's mouth so that it can breathe, and I wash the mother. Then I must massage the mother's stomach and bind it tightly in cloth to push it back into shape." Rukmini is highly confident of her skill. She claims that only four babies a year die in childbirth and not a single mother.

Her fee for a boy baby is four annas, 2½ Kg. Kachcha grain, one old sari, and one old blouse. Female babies cost half the price. "But these charges are much too little," she complains. "Often I must stay with a woman all day and all night, and I don't even get proper food. Now there is a strike in my case. (The Panchayat of her caste is trying to set higher fees for both the *mochi* and the *dai*). I am also having much difficulty with the *mukhia* (the village headman, farmer). I have delivered ten babies for his family, and now he refuses to give me a single weight of grain. 'I have already paid enough money to your husband for his services as a *mochi*,' he says, 'and since I am serving the village, the village should give me free services in return.' What he speaks are lies. I worked hard for him and I should be paid. When I went again at harvest time to get payment, he threatened to ask for the services of another midwife. How can he do that?

"Why, my right as the only midwife in these four *tolas* is just like the right to own land, and no one can steal these *tolas* from me."

She feels that now she is too old to learn to read or write, but had she learned when she was younger it would have helped her in her present work. "Then I would bring medicines from Gaya and serve the village as a nurse."

I asked if she was familiar with Family Planning. She had not heard of it, but she said, "So many women come to me and touch my feet, begging for a medicine which will stop them from having more children. I do not know of any such medicine, but it would be wonderful if there was one. If a woman does not have any children then I massage her stomach in such a way that children will come. If I am successful, the woman is very happy. She pays me extra and gives a new sari... I know how to make children come, but not how to stop them."

Rukmini is proud of her strong position in the household. "I keep all the family's money myself," she said. After consulting

her husband she deposes her son to do the marketing. She sees two reasons for her influence. "My husband and I have a good relationship, and so he wants to consult me about everything. Also I am earning money and grain for the family and so my opinion must carry weight." She thinks that the other women of the village do not have as much freedom as she has. She said, "I have more power and less hesitation to speak than other women. If I don't get paid enough I go and fight for what is due to me, and I will argue with men as well. The other women suffer from a sense of inferiority, because they are not earning. They are frightened to speak and to make decisions."

"Are you treated with equal respect in every house to which you are called?" I asked.

"No, in the landlord's house I am ordered about and treated like a servant. But in the poor family's house I am treated well and respected."

"Do the other village women speak badly of you because you talk to men and spend the night in other people's houses?"

"No, for they know that I do it because it is my work. The village women all praise me. They say that I have a good nature because I am always laughing and smiling."

### **Bedimia**

Bedimia is a very clever, forceful woman in her mid-forties with whom I held many interesting conversations.

Until they received Bhoodan land her husband was a *kamia*, an attached servant, working for the landlord in return for his father's marriage expenses. Bedimia feels that the landlord greatly exploited him. She says he did not give him sufficient food and used to abuse him. She still feels bitter. When food is short she sometimes goes for a day or two to work in the landlord's fields, but she does not like it. "What is the point of working

## Indian Women

all day in the fields of the landlord for a little grain," she says, "when I should be eating the grain out of my own fields?"

Her husband, bent by years of service to the landlord, is a weak and timid man. Bedimia has always played the leading role in the household and has in fact handled the family business matters with shrewdness. It is she who bargains with the money-lender, and it is she who secured the Bhoodan land while her husband's younger brothers were away in Calcutta, thus preventing them from receiving a share.

I once asked Bedimia to describe the 'ideal wife'.

"She is willing to work both in the house and outside in the fields," she replied. "She feeds people well, and she doesn't start any arguments in the home or among the neighbours."

"What is the difference between your life and the life of a high caste woman?" I asked.

"In the higher castes the women have no work. They bring in labourers to grind the grains and spices, to bring the water, and to do the washing. They never go out to work in the fields. And so they spend their days fighting with each other and with their jealousies they cause the breakup of the joint family."

"Then whose life is better, hers or yours?"

"We are poor and hungry. Our life is worse because we are always anxious and can never rest. They have food and need never worry, and so for them it is better. But they fight with each other and that is bad."

"If you were to get rich would you then spend your life as you say a high caste woman does?"

"No, the 'duty' of the upper caste woman as decided by God is just to sit, and so they sit. But we are Bhuniya, and God planned



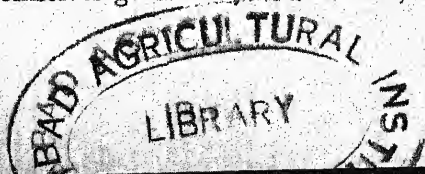
our caste differently. Our 'duty' is to work, and so if you make us rich we will not sit. We shall continue to go out for work and shall try to become still richer."

### The Mukhia's Mother

The old woman crossed her eyes and sat perplexed for a moment, as though she had never been asked such an obvious, yet confounding question. "The reason we must live under *purdah*," she then replied, "is to protect us from the gossip of the lower caste women." The younger women all let out a sigh of relief that such an easy answer had been found. As I looked about the tiny courtyard with its great wooden gate and ten adjoining rooms, I saw that they were indeed well protected. None but the unmarried are permitted to leave the outer gate, and very few outside visitors enter in.

The old woman is the *mukhia's* mother and, as I quickly realised, is the queen of the inner court. In that tiny space four generations of women must play out the entire drama of their lives. "But once or twice a year we are taken to Gaya in a curtained carrier," one of the younger women, perhaps sensing my reaction, quickly added. "And in Gaya we are free to lift the *purdah* and may even visit the bazaar so long as we do not mix or speak to anyone. No one knows us there, so there is no danger or gossip." These women belong to the household of the very wealthy and powerful *mukhia* of Guriama, a Bhumihaar Brahmin with a land-holding of 600 acres.

She plays a major role in the management of the entire household. "I, my husband, and our eldest son together decide on the management of the land, the giving of loans, the marketing, marriages, and all other matters," she proudly told me. She also acts as a liaison between the women of the household and the men. If the women need something for themselves or the children, if one of them is sick, or should they have any other difficulty, they go to the old mother who reports the case to the men. The women would never themselves go directly to the men, nor would



the old mother ever discuss family business affairs in front of them. "This is exactly how things ought to work," and the younger women all agreed.

When I asked the old mother how she got along with her many daughters-in-law, she let out a tirade of good-natured complaints against the 'lazy bunch'. "They never want to work, to cook food, or to watch their own children," she complained. "I have to do everything while they spend the entire morning from 6 a.m. to noon bathing and oiling themselves, combing their hair, making up their faces, and trying to look beautiful."

In fact the women have no work other than to watch the children and cook the food. One servant comes to sweep, another to bring the water and wash the dishes, and still another to grind the spices and prepare the vegetables for cooking. The laundry is sent to the *dhobi*.

The *mukhia's* daughter-in-law has been educated up to the tenth class. She is the only woman in the family to have received an education and is proud of it. "A girl must be educated in order to find a good match these days," she claimed. "And an education helps her to look after her children's studies, to know more about the ways of society, and to improve the social status of her family." Apart from education she thought that the essential qualities of the good wife were that she knows how to speak and behave properly, and that she should be good looking. (The latter had never occurred to any of the low caste women.)

While the *mukhia's* mother and his daughter-in-law spoke with reserve, the other women would do no more than blush, or nod in approval of their comments. Unlike the lower caste women, all of them appeared shy and embarrassed by my questions.

### Anvaunisa

When I went to visit Anvaunisa, a Muslim woman of about thirty, I found her seated in her kitchen with a group of other

women. The old Muslim widow, Rahimun Khatun, had her grandson sucking at her breast. She obviously had no milk. It was just to soothe the child, as in the West we might use a dummy. Then Rahimun began to playfully scold the young women. She told me that they always leave her with their babies while they go off to massage their husbands and enjoy themselves. She suggested that I warn Anvaunisa to stay away from her husband as she was having too many children.

Anvaunisa's husband works in Calcutta, and she has visited him there several times. She wants very much to live there permanently with her husband. However, it is very expensive, and it would be difficult to find housing and food for her family. To find work is nearly impossible. She had thought of working as a maid servant, but her husband does not approve of her washing someone else's dishes or cooking someone else's food.

She was fascinated by the life of the city. She described how free the women were, how they wore whatever they pleased, and some wore only pants and tight-fitting blouses! And not only that; they married according to their own liking, which she thought was wonderful. Then she nudged me in the ribs and said that some waited until they had a boy inside them and then married. "I cannot afford expensive entertainment such as the cinema," she said, "but I enjoy what is free." I like just to walk down the big streets and see all the different kinds of vehicles. I visit the zoo, the parks and the fountains. Once I even went for a boat ride on the lake. In the city the women are free to do as they like. I would like that freedom. There is much to be enjoyed in Calcutta, but you need money. Calcutta was not made for poor people. I could leave the *dehati* fashion and adopt the city fashion, but it needs money." She pointed out that Calcutta had already changed her style of dress. She used to wear only long-sleeved blouses, but now she is wearing short-sleeved ones.

When she visited Calcutta she stayed in the house of her husband's employer. She never saw the house where her husband lives, but she knows that it is only a tiny mud hut with one

room which he shared with seven other men.

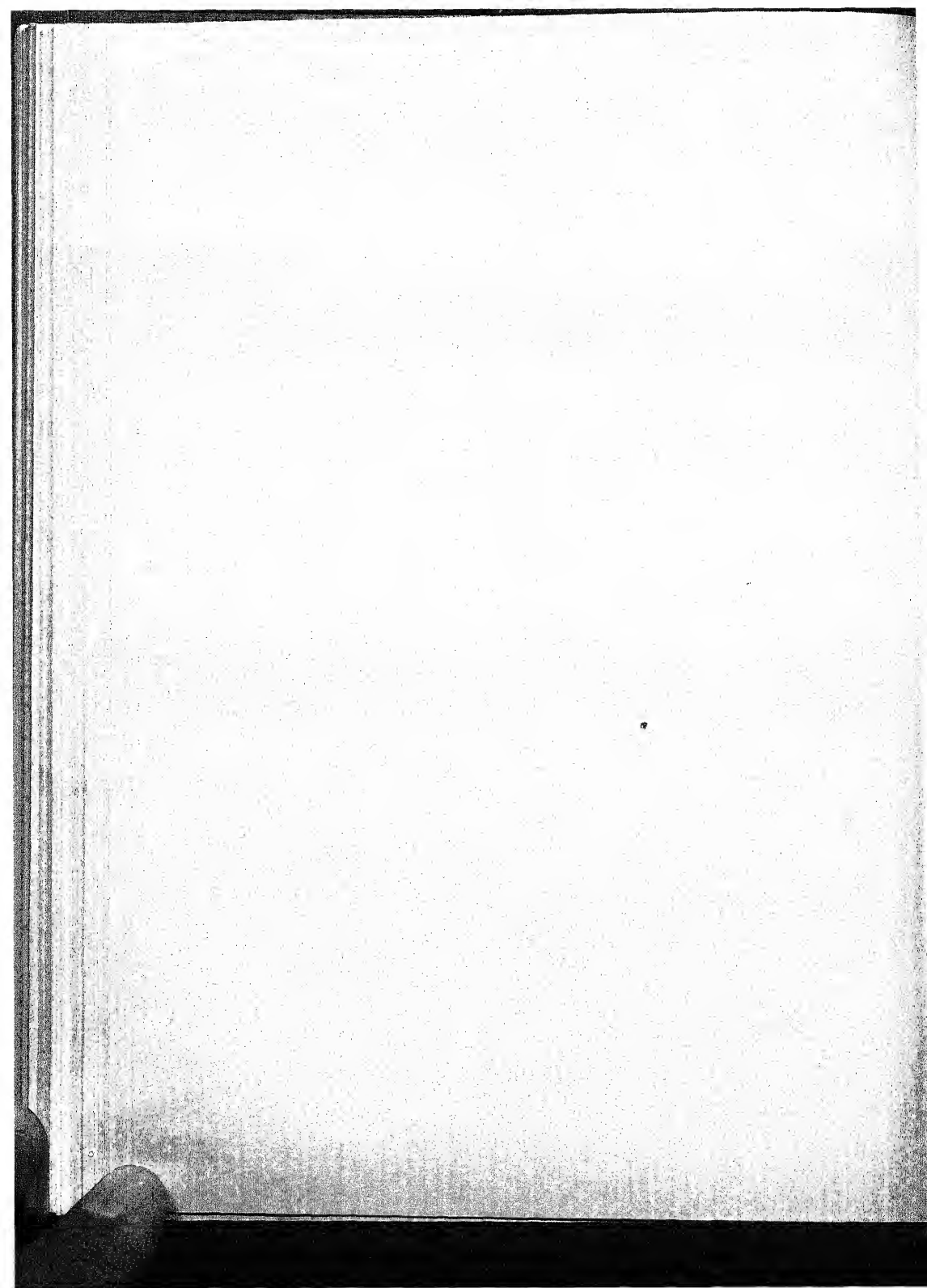
The women interviewed have all expressed quite different ideas on their living environment, but there are several notes which ring clearly throughout. The women feel helpless to improve their present living conditions, but are not passively resigned to accept them wholly either. They are in fact often very perceptive in their understanding of the social evils which surround them. They have a yearning for freedom, a will to express themselves, to find fulfilment through their work.

The creative and productive potential of these women is a resource which should not be allowed to be wasted.

# Village Women of Rajasthan

G. Morris Carstairs

G. Morris Carstairs (b. 1916), Professor of Psychiatry, University of Edinburgh, has published *The Twice-Born* and *This Island Now*.





In January 1950, I visited a number of localities in Marwar, Ajmer-Merwara and Mewar, seeking a small village inhabited predominantly by Rajputs, where I could settle down for some time in order to study the people, carry out personality tests and observe the upbringing of children. My search ended in a hamlet, or *baria*, called Sujarupa, in the northern extremity of Mewar State. This hamlet of twenty-five mud and stone-walled houses, roofed with home-made tiles, became my home for the next six months, and I gradually came to know each of its households fairly well.

It was not long before I discovered that my hosts were not true Rajputs, as they had at first assured me, but instead were "make-believe Rajputs". That is, they were a section of the Rawat community, found over many parts of Rajasthan, who had collectively decided to come up in the world by adopting many Rajput customs, while trying to divest themselves of some former Rawat practices (such as widow remarriage, and the eating of buffalo-meat). For my purpose, having stumbled upon a community in transition, was quite advantageous, because they were more self-consciously aware of many aspects of "correct behaviour" than might have been the case with a more stable community, wedded to age-old unquestioned rules of behaviour.

Frequently, I encountered instances where the Rawats' process of "Sanskritisation" of their old customs was still imperfect. For example, these "Rawat-Rajputs" were now all farmers, although their forefathers of only a few generations earlier had been bow-

and-arrow warriors, like their neighbours, the Bhils and Minas of the Aravali Hills. In keeping with their Rajput identification, the Rawat men no longer used bows and arrows, but carried a sword; and yet during their funerary ceremonies after a death one found that symbolic bows and arrows were used to ward off dangerous spirits. Again, I found that several of the older men had taken widows as their first or second wives, though the practice was now formally abjured.

The womenfolk, like the men, tried to model their behaviour on that of the Rajputs, but with only imperfect success. This was doubly helpful, because it drew attention to their lapses from Rajput norms and because if they had been strict in their observance of *purdah*, my inquiries would have been correspondingly more restricted. As it was, many weeks had to pass before the women of Sujarupa became bold enough to talk freely when a group of them were alone with me. At first, whenever I encountered them, they would hide their faces under their head-clothes, or turn aside, while their voices (which had been strident enough a moment earlier) would fall to a barely audible whisper.

Gradually, the young women belonging to Sujarupa village itself began to leave their faces uncovered in my presence, a sign that they were coming to regard me as one of the community of village men and hence related to their family of origin, before whose male members a daughter of the family does not need to observe such restrictions. In time, even the older women and the young brides who had come to Sujarupa to live with their husbands' families, also began to treat me as a familiar "in-law".

The contrasting behaviour of these two groups became still more evident during the last three months of my stay, following the weddings of two of our young people, Moti Singh and Dakhu, son and daughter of Hama Singh, to a sister and brother belonging to the village of Togi, twenty miles away. Both Moti Singh and Dakhu were good informants, sharing with me the excitements of anticipation of their weddings which were, needless to say, major events in our village in that spring of 1950.

Dakhu, who was barely 16 and a spirited tomboy, carried out the ceremonials preceding her wedding in a somewhat rebellious fashion; more than once I heard her rebuked for interjecting a bawdy remark or one of the obscenities which frequently peppered the villagers' conversation, into a ritual intended to propitiate the guardian spirits of the village. Later, on her frequent return visits to Sujarupa, she taught me the significance of the familiar saying: "gaon men *chori*, pargaon men *ladi*". As a young bride (*ladi*) in a village which was still a strange place to her, she was often homesick for her home village, and for her carefree life as a girl-child (*chori*) of her extended family.

Until this time, which was half-way through my stay in Sujarupa, I had been impressed by the apparent submissiveness, if not actual servitude, of our village women. Every morning, before sunrise, I would wake to the sound of heavy grindstones as the women of each house ground wheat or millet for the day's chapatis. All day, I would see them busy, not only with the housework, and the care of children, but also in the fields, helping their men; and yet whenever I called at one of their huts, it was always the man of the house with whom I spoke, while his wife bustled about in a silence which was broken only by an occasional whisper, or an expressive—and usually negative—click of the tongue.

Even in the early months, several of my male informants warned me that their women could be quite strongminded beneath their submissive demeanour, and that they were very good at getting their own way. This was one of the many hints of an underlying tension between the sexes; another was the prevailing obsession with female witchcraft, which was much more prevalent than the occasional fear of sorcery employed by a male rival or enemy. At first, I found it almost inconceivable that these meek, seemingly unassertive women could be seen as powerful agents of the supernatural; but on 7 March, 1950, I witnessed a scene which revealed them in a rather different light.

On that evening, I had returned from Togi village after having

travelled there with the *barat* and taken part in the first two days of Moti Singh's wedding festivities. Most of the able-bodied men of Sujarupa were still there, although four older ones had remained behind, as had all the women. The moon was nearly full, a time at which children often played noisy games far into the night; but this time it was a noise of women's voices which aroused my curiosity. The time was between 10 and 11 p.m. On leaving my hut to investigate, I found a company of about twenty women and girls assembled in the lane outside Hama Singh's house; the bride-to-be, Dakhu, was also among them. One of them beat a rhythm on a brass tray, while the others sang obviously ribald parodies of formal wedding songs.

A mock wedding was being enacted, with one young woman dressed as the groom, carrying a sword. She was the more conspicuous because her white *angarkhi* and *dhoti* contrasted with the dark red *ghagras* and *ornas* worn by all the other women except one, also dressed in man's clothes. At first I took this to be Pitha Singh, the oldest man in Sujarupa, and a crotchety old fellow, with an explosively violent temper; but later I recognised that it was Uma, wife of Hari Singh and mother of Dakhu, who was performing a parody of this gruff mannerism. Other women, not in men's clothes, parodied the parts of the officiating Brahmin, the barber and the *dhobi* as the mock wedding proceeded, punctuated by fits of laughter.

Three men of the village joined me as spectators. Udha Singh said to me: "Their husbands are away, that is why they are playing games and having fun. Last night they played many games; now they will do some dances, and there will be a lot of fun."

When the "wedding" was over, the two in men's clothes changed into their normal costume, and after a good deal of chatter they all formed a ring, with Puran Singh's wife in the centre, dancing to the rhythm of a tune which the others sang in chorus. This was quite unlike the demure, formal, heavily-veiled dances which we had seen on previous evenings, when the menfolk were at home—proper "pre-wedding" dances, appropriate

to the season, which the men and boys liked to watch, while pretending to take no interest. Here, Puran Singh's wife freely showed her face and danced with great vigour, with sweeping gestures of her arms. She carried a rag doll, sometimes nursing it, sometimes waving it in her extended arms, sometimes putting it to one breast, and then the other. The theme of her dance was eloquent enough: an outpouring of a mother's resentment at her enslavement to her male child. At the climax of each long, chanted verse, she would sing to the other women "Who shall I give him to?" and they would suggest, in turn "To aunt, to uncle, to grandmother" and so on, at which she would throw the doll violently away, only to have it retrieved and thrust back into her hands, to begin the dance again. At a pause after several such verses, I heard women whisper and giggle, and though I caught the word "Sahib" and sure enough, when she asked again "Who shall I give him to?" the chorus came: "Give him to the Sahib" and the rag doll came flying in my direction.

Another dance followed, in which two young women mimicked the gestures of *darzies* (tailors) sitting at their work, and then another in which the dancers swung their arms round and round, to represent a spinning wheel, and then one in which the dancers imitated pouter pigeons. Next, a "sweeper-dance" was proposed, and someone brought a hand-broom; but one of the older women said: "No, this isn't the time to be sweeping". So they gossiped for a while, and then struck up another dancing song. They were still at it at midnight, when I returned to sleep, still hilarious, noisy and full of animation.

Next day, the wedding party returned from Togi, and the women of Sujarupa resumed their normal demure behaviour; but I felt that I had been shown a glimpse of a quite different side of their nature, one rarely given free expression. What struck me particularly, in recollection, was that this midnight spree had been one in which all the women had joined, from the young unmarried girls of the village to the old grandmothers. This was, therefore, an expression of feelings which all the women shared, although they could seldom be so openly declared.





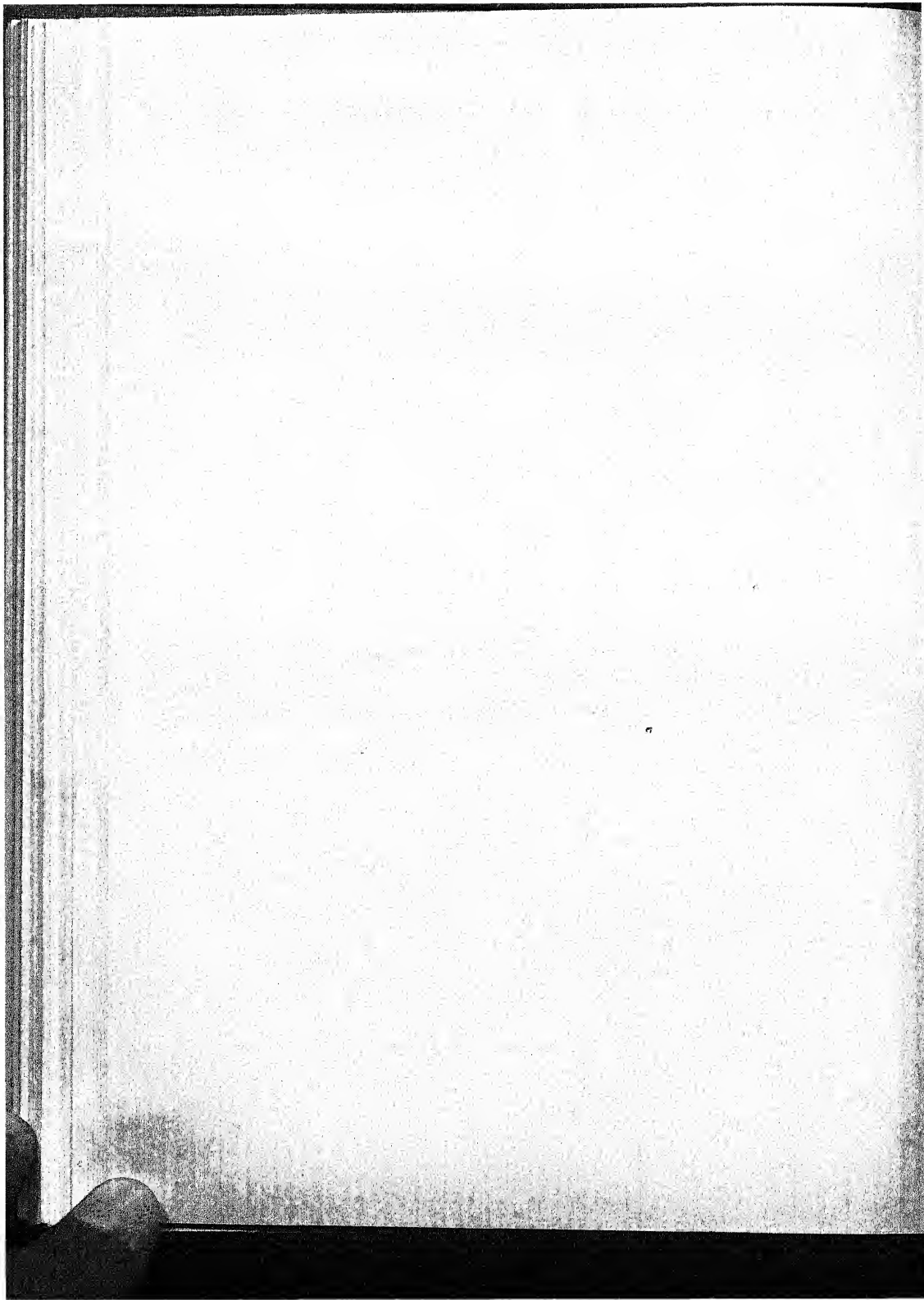


# Slum Women of Bombay

Susan N. Mody  
and  
Sharayu Mhatre

Susan N. Mody (b. 1949), teacher of Primary School English, Anjuman-i-Islam school for Girls, Bombay, was born and educated in the U.S. She has done educational work among women and children in the slums.

Miss Sharayu Mhatre (b. 1942) is a research assistant in the Department of Sociology, Bombay University, working on *Social change in 19th century Maharashtra* for a doctoral degree.



The women interviewed in this study live in one of the sprawling Bombay slums which seem an inevitable part of urbanisation in India and are so familiar to urban dwellers. The slum to which these women belong is mostly inhabited by Maharahshtrians; 53 per cent are Hindus, 16 per cent Muslims, 8 per cent Christians and 23 per cent neo-Buddhists. (The neo-Buddhists in Maharashtra belong to the Mahar caste. The members of this caste are untouchables, who followed Dr B. R. Ambedkar in a mass conversion to the Buddhist religion.) They represent different ages and communities.

There are approximately 750 women to every 1,000 men in this slum. The majority of these women are in the age group 35-55. Literacy is almost nil for the women over 35, whereas in the 5-14 age group, 47.2 per cent are literate. In the 15-24 age group, 39.5 per cent and in the 25-35 age group, 29.5 per cent are literate. Only 12.3 per cent of the female population is employed. Of the age group 15-54, only 18 per cent are employed.

<i>Type of work</i>	<i>Percentage distribution of the working women</i>	<i>Average income in rupees</i>
Semi-skilled	20	80
Unskilled	30	62
Domestic	27.5	27
Petty Shopkeeping	15	28
Miscellaneous	7.5	25

### Janabai

Janabai gives her age as 45. Though she appears much older, her tiny frame is erect and strong. Each of her arms bears two dozen green bangles and is covered with tattoos in decorative geometrical patterns. She refers to these as the only thing she will carry with her into death.

A neo-Buddhist, she was born in a village in Satara District, Maharashtra. She first came to Bombay as a child with her family but returned to the village when the family decided that their land offered a more secure income than urban employment. She never took part in the actual tilling of the land, but spent her time in the home. She was one of eleven children, but only three survived—Janabai and two older brothers. She never went to school. She says she would have liked to, but in those days girls were not sent to school.

Her marriage was arranged when she was about 12 years old. Her husband, a farmer of the same religion, paid a bride-price of Rs. 60. They remained in the village, Janabai giving birth to two sons. They left the village about twenty-five years ago because of an incident in which her husband, returning from the fields one day, stepped on a snake, which bit his chappal. He wound the snake around his umbrella and threw it into a nearby tree. The legend goes that a snake, once harmed, remembers the injury and seeks revenge. A month later they were disturbed in the house by the 'noises of a cock'. The neighbours said the snake had come to take the revenge, and Janabai advised her husband to leave the village to escape the snake. They decided to come to Bombay, and settled in the slum, where the husband's mother and brother were living. After one year, they moved into the room where they are now living.

They did not have to pay any 'pugree' for their room, which is about 8 feet by 10 feet, with an enclosed verandah of about 4 feet by 6 feet. The interior room, which is used as a kitchen-cum-washing area, is dark and sparsely furnished with one small

barred window close to the ceiling. The verandah, slightly more cheerful as it receives the daylight from a large front window, contains a small bed, a sewing machine which belongs to the community at large, several photographs, including large ones of Nehru and John Kennedy, and Janabai's eldest son's Wireman Apprentice certificate. They paid Rs. 600 to have water and electricity installed inside the house.

Janabai's children are almost all grown up now. In addition to the two sons born in the village, she has three sons and three daughters. One son died in infancy. The three daughters are all married and live separately. All three were sent to school. Janabai's eldest son, who is the only child to have completed the S.S.C. is also married and has one child. He and his family live with Janabai and her husband, as do the four unmarried sons. The youngest son, aged 14, is still in school; the other three have all left school, but have not found jobs. One son suffers from epilepsy and is under treatment.

The eldest son and Janabai's husband provide the family income. She says both work for a transport company which deducts Rs. 200 monthly from their salaries and supplies the family with provisions. Janabai manages the rest of the income, pays the rent (Rs. 10 per month), and runs the household. Most of her time is occupied with cooking, cleaning, washing, and looking after the ten hens she keeps for eggs and breeding. Although she sold vegetables in the market at one time, she now feels tied to the house as her daughter-in-law 'cannot cope' with the work on her own. This daughter-in-law, who was married to Janabai's eldest son at the age of eighteen, comes from Janabai's village and studied there upto seventh standard. Now she rarely goes out and seems to be entirely in the background in the household. Neighbours say she is often beaten by her husband. He has a mistress in a nearby tenement and thus neglects his wife even further.

Janabai is worried about her husband's health. He has been short-tempered and hard of hearing lately. She thinks something is wrong with his head. He has been taking shock treatment at a

local hospital, which seems to help, but the family must bear the expense. They fear retrenchment if they apply for medical assistance from the employer; the company does not know of this illness.

Janabai's social life consists of a visit to her married daughter in Colaba once a month, and the occasional community function. She does not see films, but listens to the radio for news and music. She returns to her village once every 4 or 5 years.

Although she feels it is necessary for women to work outside the home to meet the rising cost of living, the problem of caring for the children remains unsolved.

One of Janabai's sons is supposed to be the re-incarnation of her husband's father, as he was born at the same time that the old man died. They must, therefore, treat him with special respect. If she should beat him, her arms ache until she begs his forgiveness. He will be married soon, and Janabai is looking forward to the arrival of her new daughter-in-law to free her from the household. She wants to return to selling vegetables in the market place.

### Shevanti

Shevanti is twenty-two. A Hindu of the Dakshini caste, she is attractive and animated and has an air of self-assurance about her, voicing her opinion with conviction. Originally employed as a domestic servant, she found this type of work distasteful and left it. While looking for another job, she did various kinds of handiwork—embroidered handkerchiefs, woven table-mats, and so forth, to get an income. After more than a year of unemployment, she found her present job in a ready-made garments factory. She earns Rs. 100 per month.

Shevanti was born in a village in Satara District, Maharashtra. Her mother, with the mother's brother, was a joint owner of some land. Because of friction between them, Shevanti's family came to Bombay. Shevanti was five years old at that time. She says her



father was in the military and the family stayed in army housing at Colaba for some time. Later, they moved to Sion, and recently to the slum where they purchased a room for Rs. 1,100.

The room is about 10 feet by 10 feet and is sub-divided to provide a separate area, which is rented out to another family. Shevanti's newly married brother, sister-in-law and sister also live with Shevanti and her parents. A long shelf holds tins of grain and foodstuffs, and in one corner there is a makeshift table with some books on it. The family paid Rs. 13 for an electric connection. They have no water tap, however, and must pay 25 p for every *ghada* of water brought from outside. They use a public latrine.

Shevanti never went to school, but has taught herself to read and write Marathi. She also speaks fluent Hindi, unlike most of the women in the area. She regrets not having had any formal education because it restricts her employment opportunities.

When Shevanti was twelve, a marriage was arranged for her with a Hindu boy of the same caste. He was a matriculate and lived in Bombay. According to tradition, Shevanti returned to her parents' home after five days with the husband. Her brother intervened at this point to encourage her not to return to her husband, who was, he said, shiftless and a good-for-nothing. The parents were persuaded that the marriage had been a mistake and a divorce was obtained after a year. Today, Shevanti is accepted as any unmarried girl; not many people know of the marriage. However, the neighbours criticise her for remaining single. Shevanti defends her position by saying that she supports herself and is not a financial burden on anyone. She is not concerned about getting married, but says she would consider marriage if she knew a suitable man.

Shevanti works from 7 a.m. to 6.30 p.m., six days a week. Her mother, younger sister and sister-in-law manage the household work, but Shevanti makes many of the decisions. She spends half her salary on provisions and sets half aside for other expenses. Her brother also works in a nearby factory. Her father has now

retired. At present her mother has a temporary job in Kuwait as a domestic servant. Shevanti says she is well paid.

Shevanti spends her free time visiting friends and doing handiwork. She is eager to join a local badminton club, but this would mean getting home as late as at 10 o'clock in the night. The neighbours would talk about her, she says. She rarely sees films because she does not like them. She reads Marathi newspapers and borrows magazines from a local library. She enjoys listening to the radio, especially to Marathi dramas, but rarely gets her choice of programmes.

Poverty is responsible for the parents' inability to provide for their children, she says. She thinks that the parents must be educated to be able to make correct decisions for their children.

Shevanti says that women must work outside the home, not only because it is necessary to provide extra income, but also to avoid being dependent on anyone else. She is proud to be self-supporting, and thinks that the only way to combat the rising cost of living is for each individual to seek employment. Shevanti's chief ambition is to organise embroidery classes to teach other women 'a marketable skill'.

### Lucy

Lucy is a twenty-seven-year old widow, a Roman Catholic, who lives with her four children and a man in a room in the slum. The room is 8 feet by 10 feet with a tin roof. The walls have turned black from the kerosene fumes from the primus stove. In one corner of the room, there is a wall about two feet high which encloses an area of 2 feet by 2 feet. This is the *mori* which is used for bathing and cleaning utensils. A clothes line hangs between two walls. On this are hung the washed clothes. There is an iron bed in one corner. A broken-down wooden cupboard stands against the wall. The only light that comes into the room is from a small barred window high up on the back wall. Lucy does not have electricity, since she cannot afford to

pay for the electrical connection. She obtained a water tap inside the room after paying a fee.

Lucy's whole life has been spent in this room. Her mother left their village near Nasik after separating from Lucy's father and came with her son to the slum. Lucy was born in this room, which her mother bought for Rs. 150. The mother supported the two children by doing domestic work. Lucy attended a municipal school in the area. When she was in the fifth standard, her brother, who was working in the Railways, was killed in a train accident. Lucy had to leave school and she became a domestic servant.

Her deceased brother's wife and son lived with Lucy and her mother. The wife took a job in a local hospital and left the child in Lucy's care. She also made advances to a neighbouring bachelor, but he rejected these since she was a widow. The sister-in-law retaliated by spreading a rumour that he was having an affair with Lucy. To scotch this rumour, he married Lucy, who was then sixteen. She did not like the idea, but accepted it as the only way out of a difficult situation. The sister-in-law later remarried, but left her son to be raised by Lucy. He is now 18 and tills some family land in their village. He does not send money to Lucy.

Lucy's husband, also a Roman Catholic, was employed as a peon in the Railways. He died two years ago at the age of thirty-five of meningitis, a disease common in the slum. Lucy's four children range in age from six years to one month, and for a while she sold vegetables in the market to help support her children. However, she found it difficult to manage this job as well as care for the children; she gave up the job.

Now that the children are slightly older, Lucy is desperately looking for a job—any job, she says. The Provident Fund she received after her husband's death was spent on the funeral and repayment of old debts. She now receives a pension of Rs. 64 per month. This is supplemented by Rs. 25 per month from Lucy's church. She has enclosed the small verandah in front of her room

and rents it out for extra income.

A Muslim man from U.P. lives with Lucy. He earns two to four rupees daily, selling fruit. Lucy says that this is not a reliable source of income. She puts in the capital and he does the selling. He seems attached to Lucy and her children, but Lucy feels it is not right for her, as a widow, to have any personal happiness.

Lucy cooks only one meal a day. She says she cannot afford more than this and makes chapatis and occasionally a dal or a vegetable. Usually, the chapatis are eaten with tea. She and her children look under-fed and wear badly tattered clothes. Her daughters, aged 6 and 8, help her cook and clean the utensils.

Lucy spends her whole day in the house. She has gone out of Bombay only twice in her life—once to Virar with her husband, and once to Nasik to visit her father. She has not been out socially since her husband's death. She likes films, but cannot afford to see them. Sitting on the nearest suburban railway platform or at a nearby church seems to be her only recreational activities.

Lucy's neighbours treat her as a social outcast. Most mothers are reluctant to send their daughters to her house. They comment on her going out alone, and frown upon her relationship with the man she lives with. Recently, her daughter fell into a pot of boiling rice and ghee. The neighbours accused Lucy of trying to get rid of her children because her husband was dead. Lucy reports this sadly and shrugs her frail shoulders.

She mentions frequent incidents of wife-beating in the slum and suggests that, rather than take such treatment, women should support themselves and their children on their own. She thinks that employment for women is inevitable for economic reasons, but says that they must be relieved of a part of their household work.

Educating her children seems to be Lucy's sole aspiration for the future. She laments her own lack of education, which

hampers her employment prospects, and does not want her children to suffer the same fate. However, her meagre income makes this a difficult task. Her eldest daughter, who had to discontinue school after her accident, has still not gone back to school.

### Kalyani

Kalyani lives in a room 5 feet by 8 feet with her husband and three children, aged 10 years, 2 years and 4 months. This room serves as the kitchen, bedroom and sitting room. A corner of the room provides a *mori* for washing and bathing.

Two pregnancies in quick succession and an accidental knee-injury during her last pregnancy have left Kalyani in a very poor state of health. Her whole day is spent in cooking, cleaning, and looking after the children. Their cramped living conditions and her poor health make this work particularly burdensome to Kalyani. Her husband, who works as a welder in a factory, is away from home from 6 a.m. to 11 p.m., six days a week. His long working hours involve considerable overtime. He cannot find time to take Kalyani to the hospital for a follow-up treatment of her knee injury. He was advised to have a vasectomy after her latest delivery because she was so weak. However, he cannot take leave from his job, as he is not yet confirmed.

They came to Bombay about two years ago, from Calcutta. They left their home town because her husband lost his job there. He now earns Rs. 300 a month—about Rs. 100 per month more than previously.

Kalyani studied upto the Intermediate Science, and was working in a Family Planning Centre before her marriage. She says her marriage, arranged by her parents, put a stop both to her education and her employment because of objections from her mother-in-law and her husband. Her husband used to drink excessively and generally behaved badly, Kalyani says. They have been married now for 11 years, and Kalyani claims that there has been some gradual improvement in her husband's behaviour.



Her husband gives a different version of their marriage. He says that she was married before and that it was her first husband who drank heavily and used to beat her. He says that he was living with Kalyani and her first husband as a paying guest. The husband accused him of having an affair with Kalyani and threw her out of the house. He then took her in and married her. He claims her oldest son is not his, but of the first husband.

Kalyani's poor health and two very young children greatly restrict her social life. She cannot walk very much because of her painful knee. At home, her husband does not like her to join him and his friends in their conversations. She likes to read, but finds no time away from the children.

Kalyani also mentions wife-beating as a widespread problem in the slum. Complaints from the mother-in-law are generally responsible for these beatings, according to Kalyani. The men also drink heavily and then vent their frustrations on their wives. The beatings are often severe, resulting in broken bones and mutilated faces. Kalyani has herself spoken to some men in the area about this, but they say they must act when their mothers complain. It is not uncommon, she says, for the women to be actually turned out of the house. In such cases, the neighbours usually exert pressure on the family to make them settle their quarrels.

Kalyani favours women's employment. Most family quarrels are over money, she says, and extra income would help considerably. She sees household problems and social attitudes as the main obstacles to the woman who wants to work outside the home.

### Christine

Christine is a lovely young girl of 13 who is engaged to be married to her first cousin. This marriage was arranged at Christine's birth. Her family is Roman Catholic, and their church does not permit a girl's marriage until she is 16. So the family is exerting pressure on the church to permit the marriage, and they



are likely to succeed.

Christine studies in the 7th standard in a municipal school. She likes school and wants to continue her education. She is reluctant to get married at this stage, but seems resigned to it if the family succeeds in persuading the church.

Christine lives with the nine other members of her family in a room about 8 feet by 10 feet. They have lived in this room since her parents came to Bombay from a village near Ahmednagar, 25 years ago. There is a sewing machine lying idle in a corner of the room, which Christine's father bought in the hope that it would provide a living to one of his four unemployed sons. The father is the sole earner and works as a fitter in Burmah Shell. Christine's fiance was educated by Christine's family and has lived with them most of the time. He too is employed in Burmah Shell. Christine's 'Cousin', a middle-aged woman with a slightly disfigured face, manages the household and the income. Although she is not legally married to Christine's father, she is in fact like a second wife and has replaced Christine's mother as female head of the household. She is defending family interests, the 'Cousin' says, in insisting on an early marriage for Christine, and adds that, after all, they are allowing Christine to continue her education. She mentions, with some pride, that they expect to spend Rs. 7,000 on the wedding.

Christine is the only young girl in the house, and she enjoys a few luxuries which other girls of her age in the slum can never hope for. She gets a small allowance and is taken on outings and occasionally to films. But she is not allowed out on excursions without either her mother or the Cousin. Christine sees her impending marriage as a threat to the life she now leads. Her smiling face becomes grave when the conversation turns to her marriage.

She thinks women should be educated and work outside the home. She glances hesitantly at her Cousin and says she herself would like to work some day in a factory.

## Conclusions

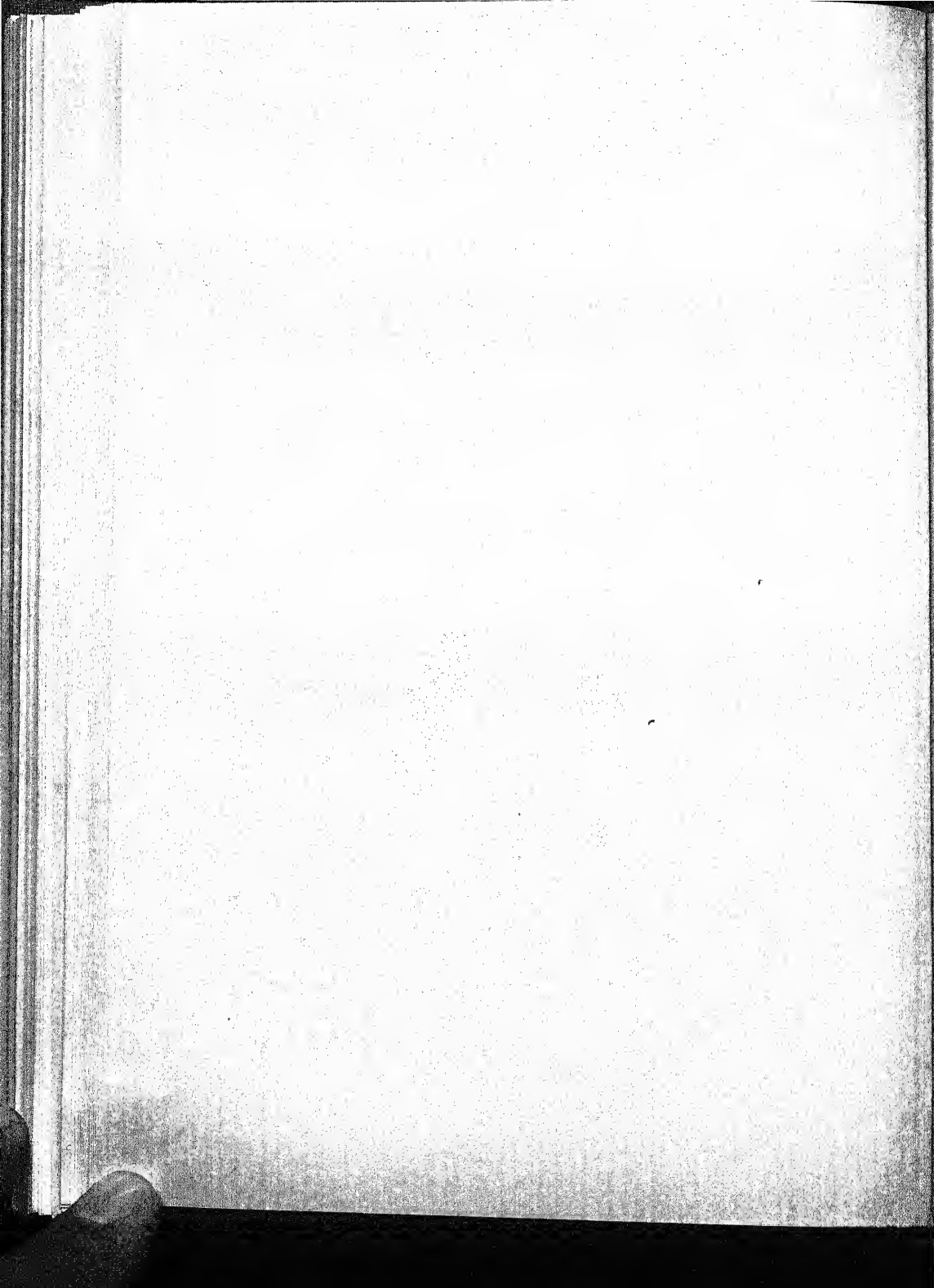
It is generally believed that slum dwellers maintain close contact with their villages. This assumption is belied by the interviews presented here. In fact, it can be seen that all the respondents have lost contact with their villages and show no desire to return to them. Most of the women have grown to adulthood in the slums. This would indicate that the social environment of the slum is not simply one of village life transported to the city. It is, rather, an organic part of urbanisation. The entry of slum women into jobs that take them out of their homes is a product of this situation. Because of constantly rising prices, these women look to employment as a supplement to the family income. However, they face many difficulties in getting jobs—lack of education, a heavy load of domestic responsibilities, absence of child-care facilities. The middle-class resistance to working women is noticeably absent here. However, employment is not so readily available to slum women as to middle-class women.

In addition to the problem of finding employment, slum women must face the daily difficulties of their environment. Their living quarters are cramped. There is an acute water shortage. The scarcity of sanitary facilities leads to misuse of the little available open space. Although the men in the slums have managed to create some recreational facilities for themselves—e.g. sports clubs, the women have no access to these and no alternative facilities. Their social activities are confined to the home. These women are also subjected to frequent beatings by their husbands. In many cases, the woman is found to be living with a second or third husband having been abandoned by her previous mates. The husband may leave at any time, taking with him the family's livelihood. In many cases, the husband will return to the first wife when the children are grown and supporting the family. It is apparent that such marital situations make life even more insecure for the women.

# Nurses and Nuns of Kerala

Gita Aravamudan

Mrs. Gita Aravamudan (b. 1947) is a freelance journalist, who contributes to *The Hindu*, *The Illustrated Weekly of India* and other periodicals.



The women of Kerala are conscious of being independent and of "having a job". One finds them employed in all walks of life, from the most mundane to the highly responsible; there are judges, engineers and doctors and there are the others in spectacular professions like the circus artists from Tellicherry.

The class of "professional" Kerala women under survey here are the ones who are in the middle of the scale: the nurses and nuns. These women, while not exactly occupied in mundane jobs, do not lead spectacular lives either, nor are they in any decision-making positions. Most girls from middle class families, particularly with a Christian background, flock to these professions because they offer security. These girls are not inhibited by the fact that jobs are not always available within their own environmental bounds. They are quite willing to leave their homes, endure the restrictions of hostel life and manage with very few luxuries. As a result of this, nurses and nuns from Kerala can be found anywhere in the country.

What then is the push which sends them careering to all corners of the earth? This was the major question I bore in mind, while talking to nurses and nuns coming from different kinds of backgrounds. I must admit that I started off with some pre-conceived notions which were soon proved wrong.

Being a non-Keralite myself, I tended to think that the Marumakkathayam (matriarchal) Nair society had fostered the idea of independence early among Kerala women. Subsequent talks with

both men and women who had lived under the old *tarwad* (joint family) system indicated that this was not really true. Under that old system, while the women were socially and economically quite independent of their husbands, they were very much under the control of the "Karanavan" or chief of the household who was often an uncle or brother. Therefore, Keralites in general feel that the emancipation of Nair women is a more recent phenomenon.

A major influence on the social life of Kerala was the advent of Christianity, which is supposed to have come down to this part of the country as early as 52 A. D. with St. Thomas the Apostle. It has taken strong root in Kerala culture. The church's message of service, along with the efforts of various missionaries to induce girls to work in their charitable organisations seems to have germinated the idea of girls leaving their homes to work. It is natural, therefore, that jobs involving "service" are the ones which have traditionally attracted girls coming from Christian environment.

The social pressures in more recent times, which have forced so many Kerala girls to seek employment, are those which are to be found everywhere in the country, but which have taken on a kind of concentrated force here because of some of the problems peculiar to this state. A dense population (548 people to a square mile) and a rather high percentage of literacy (60.16) are two of the most basic causes. A dowry system prevalent especially among the Christians is another incentive for girls to work. . . they want to collect enough money to attract good husbands. Many men seem to prefer wives with jobs and in fact the dowry is often reduced with the wage earning capacity of the girl.

### Nurses

Even to a casual observer, it is remarkable how many Keralite nurses one can find in any hospital anywhere in the country. In Kerala itself one hardly ever finds a non-Keralite nurse. Over 80 % of the nurses seem to come from Christian families.



After speaking to several nurses, I found that hardly any of them came because they wished to care for the sick. They came mostly because it was a job which did not require a college degree, yet gave almost guaranteed employment. Only among the older cadre did I find women who had defied their families and joined this rather "lowly" profession.

Smt. Chandramathi, the Senior Nursing Superintendent, a small, brisk lady is one of those pioneers who became a nurse in spite of opposition from her rather orthodox Hindu family. She has been abroad twice, once under a Rockefeller Fellowship and once on a study tour sponsored by W.H.O. While talking of Kerala nurses and their migratory habits, she related a rather interesting experience which she had had. While in Canada, she had to go to Musgrave Harbour, a remote township, 63 miles away from the nearest big town, Gander. As she went around the hospital thinking she had really reached the end of the earth, the sisters there told her that three Indian girls were working as nurses at Fogo Island which was connected only by ferry to Musgrave harbour. Surprised and thrilled that there should be such adventurous Indian girls, she rang them up at Fogo Island. . . and found they were all Malayalees!

Talking of nursing in Kerala, Smt. Chandramathi said that since it was started by Swiss Missionaries, originally the emphasis was more on service and less on service conditions. This, she felt, had left its stigma and even today service conditions were rather below par. This probably accounted for the number of girls who migrated in search of better pay.

I spoke to several girls who had worked for a while outside the state and then returned because of family pressures.

Teresa Gomes, whose father is a shopkeeper, went to Bombay to become a nurse, and returned a few years ago to get married. She now works as a nurse in the Medical College Hospital. After leaving school, she said, she badly needed a job and one of the nuns in the convent in which she studied helped her to get into

this profession. But, says Teresa, she would not have minded becoming a teacher or taking up any other profession. Teresa's husband is a clerk in a printing press and she now has two children.

Shanthakumari, a 34-year old nurse, has worked in Bombay for seven years. She loved the life there and she stayed with her relatives. She too came back to get married. Shanthakumari's mother is a nurse. (This I found quite typical. Many of the girls said, they had become nurses because they had relatives in the profession who urged them to join.) "Also I wanted to travel and see some places," she said. This too seemed to be quite a common motivation.

Another young girl whom I spoke to, was a student in the college of nursing. She came from a fairly well-to-do Christian family and had worked several years in Delhi before returning to Kerala to study. She said that while the conditions outside were much better, she had found life there very lonely. "Girls going from here don't realise how lonely and difficult it can be," she said.

Manorama is a very enthusiastic young Auxiliary-Nurse Midwife who is eager not only "to stay in this job until I die," but also to better her prospects (so she is studying at the college of nursing) and to work for a while outside the state. Manorama is the daughter of a teacher from a village in Quilon district. Her father wanted her to work, but as a teacher. She even did some Hindi examinations to qualify as a Hindi teacher, but in the meanwhile she managed to get this job without her father's knowledge and so she became a nurse. She is probably the only girl I met who even after nine years as a nurse expressed an utter sense of dedication and true love for her profession. She has also persuaded one of her sisters to become a nurse.

Regarding the kind of girls who come to the profession and the problems of training them, Miss Peters, the Director of the College of Nursing, had plenty to say. Miss Peters, who became

an army nurse during the war comes from a well-to-do Christian family. She has travelled much (which was her original motivation to join the army) and done her M.Sc. in Nursing under a Rockefeller Fellowship.

Miss Peters is rather disillusioned with the nursing profession. Although it is actually a highly skilled job, calling for technical training, she said it was generally treated as a kind of mindless profession. The kind of girls it attracted, therefore, were not the type who would give it the thought and concentration it required. She also felt that in Indian society which still places a lot of emphasis on segregation of sexes nursing was looked down upon because girls had to look after men and often perform intimate chores for them. She felt the problem could be eased if male nurses were encouraged.

Another person who is faced not only with training but also organisational problems, is Devakiamma, the matron of the Medical College Hospital. This lady who comes from an orthodox Hindu family became a nurse after some tragic family experiences. She has now to cope with organising the hospital schedule with never enough nurses to go around. If patients complained that nurses have no time for them, she said it was no wonder because they were so overworked.

The nursing movement in Kerala started rather informally in 1906, when some nursing nuns from Switzerland were asked to come and help in the general hospital there. The half a dozen sisters who came were given a cool, spacious bungalow in the heart of the hospital complex. Gradually, they began taking in a few girls to help and it was only in 1934 that it became a formal profession.

Today, all the nursing nuns in the hospital are Indians. One old Swiss nun who came with one of the first batches, now lives there in semi-retirement. She spoke of the girls who first came to work as nurses ... they were so enthusiastic and hard-working, she said. They came from good families and their upbringing was appa-

rent in the way they devoted themselves to their work. Strangely enough, most of them were Hindus, she said. Now, although no longer actively associated with the hospital, she had observed that the sense of dedication was missing. She felt since there was such a demand for nurses, one could no longer choose the type of girls one wished to train.

### Nuns

There are over 12,700 nuns in Kerala, most of whom are Malayalees. Becoming a nun, offers a life-long security. So, even though the girls have to pay a "dowry" while joining the convent they are quite willing to do it, because they will be taken care of for the rest of their lives. Apart from this, of course, there is the strong religious feeling which makes every Catholic family anxious to give at least one daughter as the "bride of Christ".

Among the nuns I interviewed, many spoke of the "entire family rejoicing" when they went home on holidays. However, they also spoke of their anxiety to get away from the turmoils of family life and back into the insulated atmosphere of the convents.

One of the nuns, a lively young woman who is the headmistress of a convent school for girls, said that she for one loved convent life and found herself so fully occupied she hardly had time to think of her home. However, there were nuns who found they could not adjust themselves and had to leave. When a nun leaves the convent, she is given back her dowry. Sometimes in extreme cases, where the girl is unable to pay her bit, the convent pays her expenses and takes her in.

It was a little more difficult talking to the nuns. They did not want to talk about themselves, nor did they want any "publicity". They did not really like to talk of their personal lives.

When finally they were persuaded to speak, they talked of the spirit of dedication and "the call" and so on. Ultimately, when

asked why they personally chose such a life, they could only say that they felt inclined towards being nuns and their families and priests had given them all the encouragement.

Most of the nuns I spoke to came from middle class families . . . that is, they had not become nuns because they direly needed food and shelter, but because this kind of life gave the peace and security they lacked in their own homes. All of them had joined the convent at an early age (16 or 17 years) and none of them seemed to repent this decision. When asked how they were able at such tender ages to make up their minds to dedicate the rest of their lives, they spoke of the village priest who had helped them decide or of the example set by other brothers, sisters, uncles or aunts, who had become nuns and priests.

Since only about 16% of the population of Kerala lives in urban areas, one finds very few city-bred girls employed in these professions. The typical parental home of a nurse or nun could be found in any of the villages which stretch endlessly from one end of the state to the other. Many of the girls' fathers are farmers or teachers or shopkeepers. They often come from large families which they help to support. In spite of all the independence the girls (especially nurses) achieve by earning their own livings far away from home, they remain at heart simple village girls who are obedient to their parents' wishes, and who ultimately return home to marry partners chosen for them by their parents.

"I would like to go out of the state to earn a better pay, but my parents are not sending me," is a common complaint.

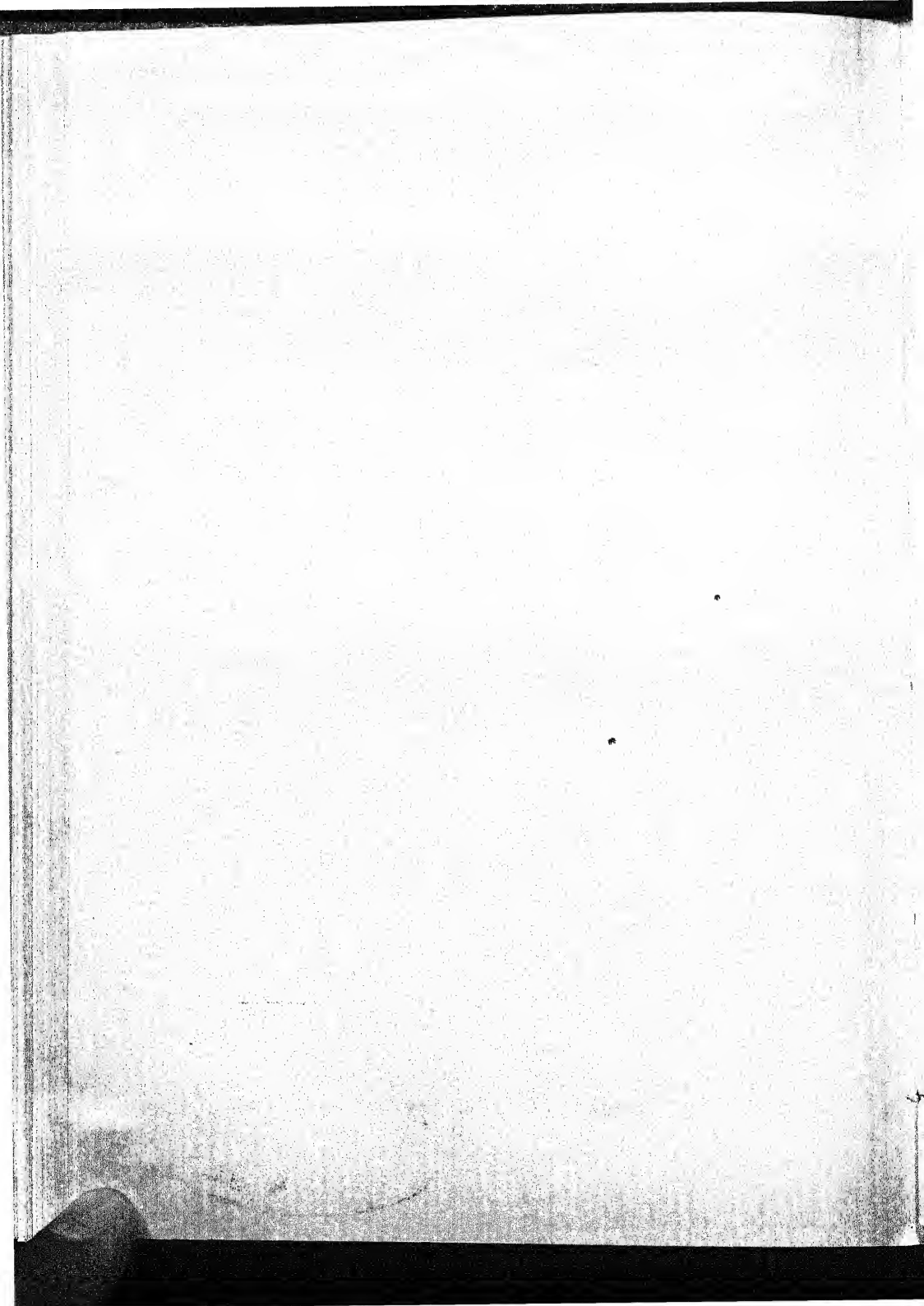
Regarding the nuns, it is just a question of switching over from being obedient to their parents or elders to being obedient to their mother superiors. To girls who have never had the luxury of total independence such a switch-over is fairly easy.

The remarkable thing about it all is that these girls in spite of all their travelling, in spite of their Western clothes, and habits, have remained essentially Keralite.







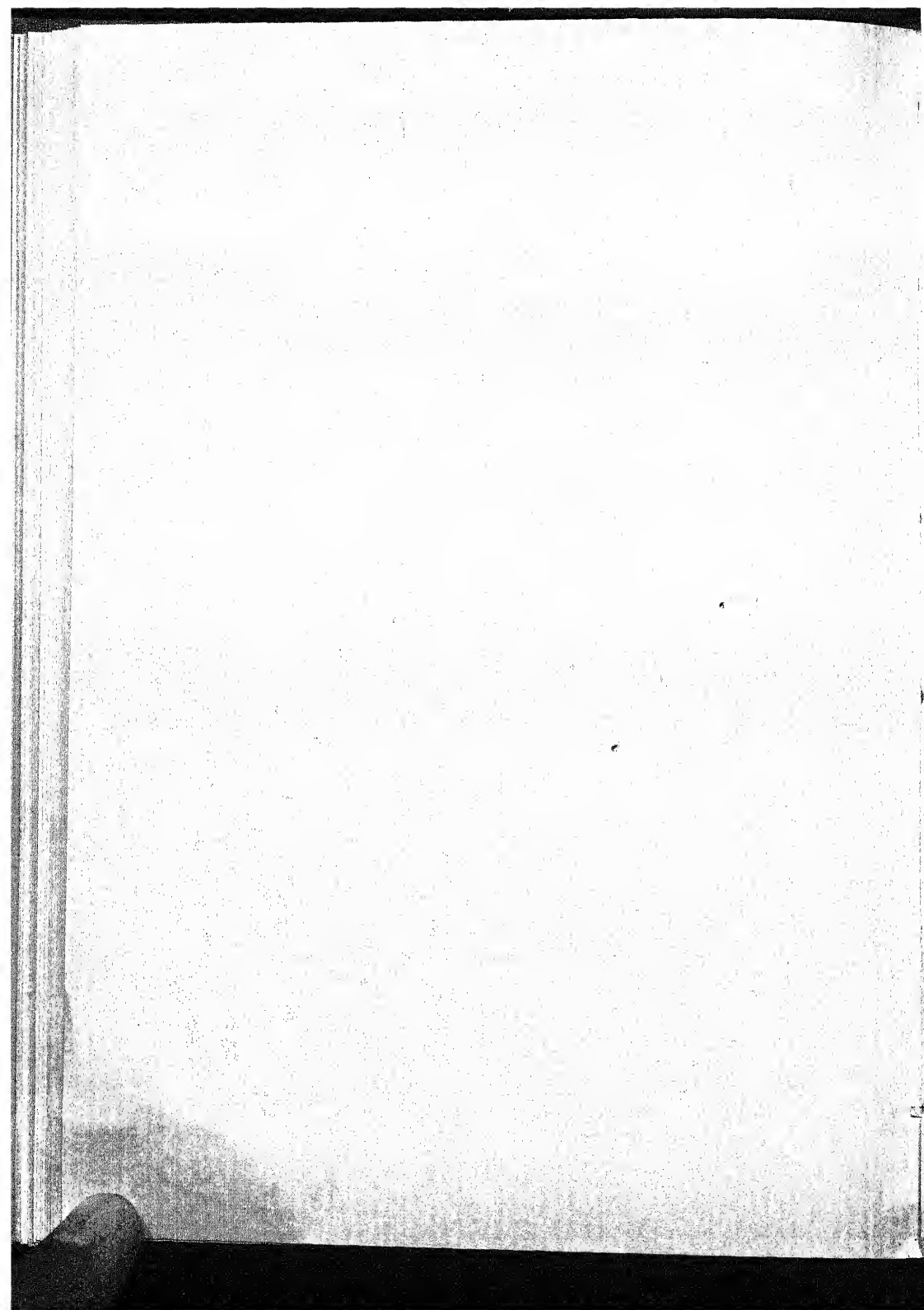


# Prostitution—Notes from a Rescue Home

Parvathi Aiyappan

Mrs. Parvathi Aiyappan (b. 1902) is a social worker of Kerala, interested in education and family planning. She was headmistress of a government high school and has edited a women's magazine.





These interviews with prostitutes are from a Rescue Home in Ernakulam. This institution, started in 1957, has been declared as a Protective Home under the provisions of the Suppression of Immoral Traffic Act. An attempt is made to rehabilitate the inmates by providing employment, or by marriage or by restoration to their families.

With some exceptions they come from the lower middle and the labour classes, that is, the lowest economic groups. There are Hindus, Christians and Muslims among them. The present strength of the Rescue Home is 68, of whom 38 are Hindus, 26 Christians and 4 are Muslims. Hindus include backward classes and scheduled communities who usually belong to the lowest income groups.

Their families are just literate or illiterate. They grow up in an atmosphere of drink and beating of the wife by the husband. Left alone in the homes while the adults are away at work, the girls, without any one to check them, find themselves free and tend to go astray.

Prostitution as a profession comes at a later stage in their life. Some fall victims to treachery. Other who work as domestic servants succumb to the approaches of the men in the houses.

### **Bhanumathy**

Age 26 years—Caste Blacksmith.

Bhanu is a member of a middle-class family having three acres of landed property. She has passed the Secondary School. Her parents are Aiyappan and Kutty. They have six children—five daughters and one son, who is the youngest. Bhanu is the third daughter. All her four sisters are married and are living with their husbands. Bhanu is good-looking and efficient. She knows different kinds of crafts and arts. But too much paternal affection spoiled her and she became uncontrollable in the family. She went to practise '*kadha-prasongam*'<sup>1</sup> and in due course she became pregnant by her master, who was a Muslim named Hassan and much older than her. So the parents were forced to give her in marriage to Hassan. Though he was employed earlier, because of his alcoholism his services were terminated by his employer. At present she has two children by him and they are being looked after by Bhanu's parents.

Bhanu is not only good-looking but also good at everything. She says that she will not go with Hassan and he is no longer her husband. She is fed up of life with him. "He is an ugly and dirty fellow who spends most of his life in toddy and arrack shops." She wants to stay in the Rescue Home till her '*Kandaka Sheni*'<sup>2</sup> is over.

### Sarojini

Age 22 years—Caste Barber.

Sarojini comes from a family of casual labourers, economically and socially the weakest section of society. Her parents—Madhavan and Kutty—had two children. Sarojini is the second. Her brother is married and has settled down separately. Her father died when Sarojini was quite a baby. The mother remarried when she was barely two years old. Her step-father's name is Velayudhan. Sarojini passed the Secondary School at the age of 16. She discontinued her studies under pressure from her step-father. She knows certain crafts and used to earn Rs. 5/- per day.

Her step-father wanted Sarojini to be his mistress. Her

misfortune started with that. Sarojini left home one night with some cash which she received from a chitty and took a bus to Wynad. She went there in search of a job. She worked in the Ruby's Estate for some time. From there an elderly woman took her to Calicut on the pretext of finding her an ayah's job in a decent family. That so-called family was a brothel. She stayed there for three days. Somehow she managed to escape from there and came to Perumbavoor. She wandered there in search of a job, but in vain. While leading an immoral life the police caught her and brought her to the Rescue Home.

Here she corresponds with her mother's younger sister, who is willing to take her back. Sarojini is given training in tailoring and embroidery and she is good at it. She honestly believes that she will be able to lead a good life in future.

### **Ammini**

Age 29 years—Caste Pulaya (Scheduled Caste).

Ammini's parents, Kunjappan and Thanka, are daily labourers. They had six children and Ammini is the second child. She cannot read or write. She was working in Cheenthalar Estate. While working there she got involved with Viswam, a lorry driver and eloped with him at the age of 16. They settled down at Pallimukku in a hut in the Porumboke land by the side of the river bank. She stayed with him for about six years. In the meantime, they had two sons.

One day Viswam's former wife, Madhavi Amma, came to the hut in search of him. In the evening, when Viswam returned, Ammini entrusted Viswam back to Madhavi Amma and left the hut with her children. Ammini went to her house at Peerumedu but her brothers asked her to leave the place at once. From there she came back to Ernakulam and led an immoral life to earn a livelihood. Her sons are now working with two families at Pachalam.



At the Home, Ammini is given training in embroidery and she is good at it. She used to correspond with her sister who now stays with her husband at Cheenthalar. She is hopeful that she will be able to lead a good life with her sister by working in Cheenthalar Estate.

### **Santha**

Age 19 years—Caste Ezhava.

Santha belongs to a very poor family. Her education ended with primary school.

Her parents were Balan and Karthiyani. Balan was the proprietor of a small canteen. Her mother died soon after the birth of the second baby. At that time Santha was five years old. The father remarried and settled down at Kommady (Alleppey). A woman called Lakshmi took Santha to her house as she had only three sons, and sent her to school. Santha's father, Balan, used to visit her occasionally.

One day, when Santha was studying in the 3rd standard, her father came to school and took her to Kommady. After a few days he took her to Dr. C. C. Alexander's residence and she served that family for about six years. Dr. Alexander used to pay Rs. 5/- every month to Balan for the services of Santha. There she fell in love with Babu, an employee of the Water Transport Corporation at Alleppey and eloped with him. Santha's life there was happy. In due course Babu acquired some ornaments for Santha from Bhima Jewellery with the savings they had. One day Santha's father came there and told Santha that he was in dire need of money. Santha felt pity for him and gave away the ornaments. When Babu returned in the evening he got angry and threw her out. At that time Santha was pregnant. She came to Palluruthy and joined the Beggar Relief Settlement. On the 2nd of October, 1972, the Settlement authorities transferred her to the Rescue Home.

## Prostitution—Notes from a Rescue Home

Santha says that her father is an idle person and depends on others for his livelihood. Her brother is now working in a family at Madras and she used to get money from him. She says that she never went after anybody except Babu. She hopes and prays that one day Babu will return and take her and the child back to their home.

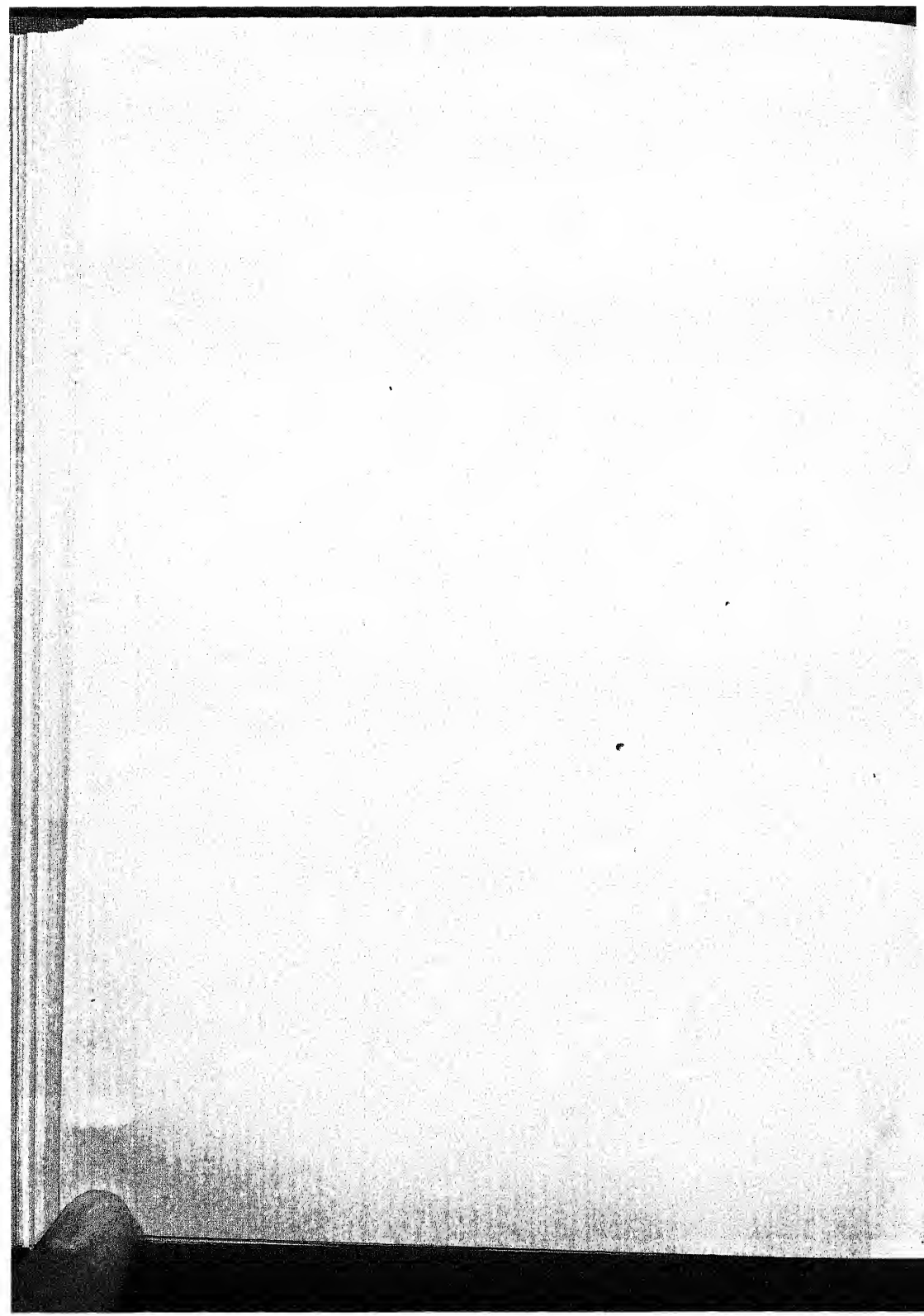
**References**

1. *Kadha Prasangam*: This is a form of mono-acting, explaining the meaning of some story from mythology, which is written in the form of poetry in Malayalam. Each stanza is sung and then explained by acting it.
2. *Kandaka-Sheni*: 'Shani Dassa' is supposed to be a period of misery in one's life according to astrology and Kandaka-Sheni is the worst form of it.

# Chellamma—A Portrait

## Mina Swaminathan

Mrs. Mina Swaminathan (b. 1933), a Homi Bhabha fellow, is the Secretary of the Indian Association for Pre-school education. She has published books on the use of drama as an educational tool in schools.



(This is a portrait of an imaginary woman—based on the lives of several such women known to the author. There is no one Chellamma, but enough such people to make this account true. Chellamma, an elderly South Indian woman belonging to the semi-rural upper middle class, has a many-faceted personality, and a many-sided life. Belonging to an orthodox community, without formal education, and leading a sheltered life within the four walls of her home, she is, nevertheless, not merely a housewife, but performs a multiplicity of roles in her daily life. A member of a diminishing social group that may be extinct in a decade or two, she is important to know, not only as an illustration of a way of life, but also because of her influence on two or more generations of younger women. Her life demonstrates in microcosm the adaptation of traditional India to the modern world.)

Chellamma stands at the front door of her house. It is dusk, and the chores for the day are over. Soon it will be time to light the lamps for the evening hour of prayer and music. It is hard to guess her age from her appearance. Sturdily built, with jet black hair, and an erect carriage, her once fine teeth ruined by the red stains of betel chewing, she is far from beautiful, but has a dignified presence, the look of one accustomed to command. Her sari is simple, but diamonds flash around her face and gold around her person. She is a woman, not so much to be looked at, as reckoned with.

Born into a Brahmin land-owning family of Tanjore District, Chellamma was named Brihanayaki, after the goddess of Tanjore, but always referred to by her pet name 'Chellamma', the favoured one. She was married at the age of nine, also into a land-owning



family. The wedding was a splendid one, talked about in the district for years. Her husband was a college student at the time. Chellamma lived on in her parents' home until three years later, when a formal announcement was made to her in-laws that the bride had 'come of age'. With due ceremony, Chellamma was escorted to her new home in the little town of Thirupuram, where the bride of twelve was initiated into her new life and duties. So began her long training for her final position as mistress of the household and along with her husband, head of a joint family. Burdened as she soon was with child-bearing and child-rearing, Chellamma was for the first few years mostly confined to minor duties, which she shared with several other women of the household, while her mother-in-law undertook the managerial tasks needed to make the wheels of the great household economy go round. This also gave Chellamma time to learn many traditional skills and rituals, and pursue traditional recreations and pastimes which lent colour to the daily routine.

Chellamma's day begins early. She is up before sunrise to see to the milking of the cows, and to carry the fresh milk straight to the prayer room. The observance of religious ritual is one of the chief duties in a Brahmin household. Attending to her father-in-law, while he performed his daily ritual, taking part in the solemn celebrations of all the sixteen major 'samskaras' that mark the changing phases of life in a Hindu household, Chellamma acquired much of the lore that she has today. Chellamma has had little formal education—she was just able to read and write Tamil when she was married. Later, she acquired a smattering of Sanskrit. She has read the Ramayana and some other classics. But her understanding comes not so much from books as from an oral tradition. Music and poetry, myth and legend, story and song, inextricably mixed in the practice of ritual, and constantly repeated, have given Chellamma a deep understanding, not only of ritual and practice but of their underlying meaning too. More deeply than the literature, it is the language which she has mastered. For she expresses her understanding of the meaning of life with the sharp wit and double-edge nuances typical of the rich colloquial speech of her people.

From dawn to noon, Chellamma is busy within her house and garden. At the time of her marriage, the family had recently moved from the village to live in a town house, a typical narrow 'street' house, which soon proved to be too constricting. A few years later, they had moved into a new house on the outskirts of the town, where they have lived ever since. Within the spacious compound there is room for a variety of fruit-bearing and useful trees, for a kitchen garden and cattle sheds. The house is semi-modern—it has been rebuilt several times with many innovations. The front portion, the verandahs and airy central hall are furnished in modern style to receive visitors. Beyond, the traditional pattern reasserts itself—'koodam' open to the skies, surrounded by pillared corridors and smaller rooms leading to the kitchen, store-rooms and semi-open spaces used for various activities.

The house is fully electrified and supplied with running water, and the well in the courtyard is now equipped with an electrically run pump. Upstairs, there are bedrooms with attached bathrooms, and western style lavatories. In the front garden, a host of small sheds linked by a narrow verandah house the offices and stores of the ever-growing business in coconut and rice. Next to the garage is a shed housing the gaily painted single-bullock cart, still occasionally used. At the back are the vegetable and fruit gardens and cattle-sheds.

This, then, is Chellamma's domain, where she spends most of her days, with occasional trips to the orchards in the village or the town market. The cattle and kitchen garden take up a fair share of her time. She not only buys and sells cattle, but also enters into contracts for the purchase of meal and disposal of dung, supervises the daily care of the cattle by two cowherds, issues their daily rations, sees to the construction and maintenance of the cowsheds, and attends to the sick animals or calving cows, watching over both cleanliness and profit, shrewdly calculating the gains and losses from the transactions.

She supervises the gardener who tends the vegetable plot, which not only provides for most of the daily needs but a small

surplus which she trades off. The savings on this and some other minor transactions go into her private hoard. She does not keep any written accounts, but has a pretty good idea of the state of her household accounts at any time and is well-acquainted with the prices of most of the goods and services she handles. She employs or contracts with a score of people, who deal in garden products. Sometimes it is the old woman who weaves strips of thatch from dried coconut leaves, at other times the man who harvests ripe coconuts from the trees, working by the hour. There are skilled craftsmen, vendors and casual workers. There are people who buy (or sell) the unripe mangoes from the mango grove, the ripe fruit at other times, banana leaves, citrus leaves, flowers, dung, thatch and a host of other things. There is a season for every activity, a demand for every product.

During the morning she also keeps an eye on the front part of the house—where there is a constant coming and going, a loading and unloading. Chellamma's husband, starting in a small way, now runs one of the largest businesses in the district, dealing in coconut and coconut products—oil, husk and fibre, and in whole-sale rice. Recently, a new venture has been launched—the manufacture and sale of 'appalam'. It is a cottage industry, sub-contracted out to women working in their own homes, but centrally collected, packaged and distributed. The project has met with great success. Sometimes some of the women come in with their product, and Chellamma inspects and receives it. She supervises the foremen, takes charge of the cash and is always on the look-out for petty pilferage. Few can escape her watchful eye.

From the garden to the kitchen it is only a step, and Chellamma also directs the activities there. The planning and preparation of the day's meals, she leaves to others, and reserves her attention for other things—the parboiling of rice, the pounding and cleaning of pulses and other provisions to be stored, the preparation of various kinds of dried foods, pickles and preserves for the year, the treating of coconut to fill great jars of home-crushed oil, the preparation of medicinal oils, powders, pastes and

perfumes, sweets for festivals and spices and condiments, a whole range of items from milk products to cosmetics. Chellamma is very particular about such things, and sets high standards of work. She not only directs but takes a hand in each process, demonstrating to the other women how best it is to be done, occasionally explaining the theory in a few words. She trains by both example and precept.

Towards the end of the morning, Chellamma drops into one of the inner rooms to see to the treatment of her third daughter, who has recently given birth to her second child. Chellamma herself has had ten children (eight surviving) and contrary to the usual custom had all her confinements in her own home, instead of returning to her parents. From her mother-in-law, she learned the various arts and skills associated with child-birth in a Brahmin home—the precautions for pregnant women, the skills of midwifery, the elaborate diets, medicines and massages for the newly-confined mother, recipes for body, hair and skin care and the care of the infant. All this has stood her in good stead, for she has seen her own daughters through several confinements each.

Today she is an acknowledged local expert in herbal remedies and cures, and also in traditional cosmetics. Ask her a question about almost anything from colic in infants, skin care for adolescents or aching joints in the old—and she has a quick answer to it, which works nine times out of ten, though Chellamma could not tell you the reason why. Chellamma attributes all her knowledge, of course, to her elders—that and a lifetime of observation. Teenagers and her grand-children often draw her out on this and are amazed by her store of knowledge.

It is nearly twelve, time for the main meal. Chellamma listens for the sound of the car which announces her husband's arrival. After serving him, she eats, and after lunch allows herself the luxury of relaxing for a while. Lying where the breeze can find her, she sleeps a little, reads, fondles the grand-children, tells her rosary. Sometimes she joins in a game, sometimes she reminisces, sometimes just listens to the chatter of the others. It is a moment of peace and quiet in her busy day, a moment of recuperation.

The afternoon is the time for the formal social calls and exchanges among women. Now-a-days, Chellamma rarely pays a visit, but there is a call almost every day, usually with some special purpose, such as an invitation to a marriage or family ceremonial. News and gossip are exchanged, discreet enquiries about possible marriages are made. Once the formal purpose is stated, the conversation becomes oblique, proceeding through nuances of tone and expression, silences and signals. So are family affairs discussed and informally settled. And all the time, amidst the chatter, the women continue with the main business of the afternoon—dressing and decorating themselves and the children, preparing for outings, perhaps to the temple, perhaps for another social occasion.

Chellamma's social background is wide, her skill in human relations great and her judgement sound. She is intimate with very few—two or three close friends of her childhood, women of her own age. Except with such friends, she is reserved and watchful. But her social contacts are not restricted to women of her own class and caste. She is an employer and has well-defined business relationships with her employees. With remarkable shrewdness, she has adapted herself to the change from a feudal to a cash relationship with labourers, tradesmen and craftsmen. She rarely gets the worst of a bargain, and has worked out her new obligations and rights. In the course of her travels, for pilgrimages and attendance at social events, she has learnt to deal with all sorts of people. For a ceremonial occasion, negotiations with priests, cooks, astrologers, jewellers, musicians and suppliers of all kinds can safely be left to her.

She is a storehouse of information. Her advice on money matters and marriages is much sought after. Through her contacts she knows all the news of the district. No source is too unimportant for her, and she can gauge the political tone of the countryside from a casual remark. Though rigidly bound by the conventions of her caste, her humanity in her relationships comes through in many ways. With people of different caste or status, she does not consider herself a different kind of person, merely more fortunate, and that too thanks to her karma, and not to any special attribute of hers.



Chellamma's pre-occupations are with order and the prosperity of her own family, first, and then with the rest of the world. With everyone, she is the same, watchful, tactful, a caustic comment rarely far from her lips, but softened by her smile, cautious in speech, quick to seek the advantage for her family, but helpful to others within those limits. Her meaning may not be read by those who look with haste. In human relations, she has a certainty of touch born of long years of observations, an alert mind and sure judgment. No secluded housewife, she.

The afternoon progresses and it is time for music. Untrained though she is, Chellamma has a fine voice, and a large collection of songs, particularly those suited for various ceremonials. Her children and grand-children have received regular training in classical music. Chellamma loves to listen to them, and to attend an occasional concert, or a discourse or devotional music evening at the temple. She is a great story-teller, and on evenings at home regales youngsters with wonderful tales from mythology and legend. During these sessions, through verse and song and story, repeated by the children, she keeps alive the great religious tradition for the younger folks.

Chellamma gives thanks to God (to the goddess, that is) for having looked with favour on her family so far. It is a big one and has changed much since she was married. Two branches still live together. Some of the older members of the family, and some distant relations remain, but her husband's sisters return only for visits, and the entire family now gathers only on ceremonial occasions. Her three older daughters are well placed in life, having married government employees. Chellamma's children are quite different from her. The girls have all received schooling, and her youngest daughter is a graduate. They lack Chellamma's opportunities for a rich and varied life, but have security—typical modern urban housewives in three-roomed flats. Once a year they visit their parents for a vacation, and return after a month's stay, heavier in both body and luggage. Besides, she usually has one of the daughters staying with her for a confinement.



Chellamma is closer to her daughters than to her sons. Her eldest son, a graduate, and the father of two children, will carry on the family business. He and his wife occupy two rooms upstairs, but they are restless, and Chellamma and her husband have already planned to set them up independently to manage a branch of the business at Tanjore. Two sons are away at college, the youngest is still at school. Her third son has a scholarship to continue his studies in America, and Chellamma fears he may decide to stay there. Her younger sons will all fly the nest, she knows. She will be pleasant to their wives, whom she will choose, and visit occasionally, but she will stay where she belongs. She has a pattern to grow old into, so she has no anxiety on that score.

The hour before dinner Chellamma relaxes on the front verandah with her husband. They hold no abstract discussions, but the conversations, practical and pragmatic, cover a range of topics, usually concerning the family. No detail of the family concern is unknown to Chellamma. Her husband respects her opinion and her shrewdness, and often asks for her advice. Decisions about many matters affecting the family, marriages, studies, business and religion are taken in this quiet evening hour. Her own little private board, however, Chellamma keeps a secret, even from her husband. He knows about it, of course, for from time to time one of her daughters sports a new nose-ring or a new vessel in the kitchen. These are Chellamma's private investments, but he would never dream of asking her directly about it. Such is the code of conduct which regulates even the most intimate of relationships in Chellamma's world.

This, then, is Chellamma's life as it is today, and this is the story of how it came to be what it is. Chellamma and her family are resilient. Traditional in her own upbringing, she has adapted herself in many ways to the slow social revolution of our times. Things are not what they were, she often says, nostalgically, but not in complaint. The house has been rebuilt several times, their habits and style of living have altered in so many ways, the younger generation are educated, values are different, ceremonies are shorter, the traditional arts and decorations have given place

to garish modern things. The transistor and the weekly magazine dominate daily life, and the home is full of new gadgets. Business has changed too, from agriculture to wholesale trade, and now to new innovations in processing. Her children lead lives beyond her comprehension and their future will be unimaginable to her. She is uneasily aware that the younger generations have grasped only the shell of her philosophy and its observances, and missed the core, but she rarely puts this feeling into words.

Contrary to the popular image of the Indian woman, Chellamma plays many roles besides that of wife and mother, or simple housewife. She has an economic role as processor and distributor of primary products; she is the head of a small enterprise; ruler of a little community of human beings. In herself she combines the role of manager, teacher, doctor, nurse, judge, broker, administrator, builder, craftswoman and several others. Above all, she has trained the young and carried forward a cultural tradition. Socially, too, her life is far from simple. She lives in a vast network of relationships, which she manages by her understanding of a set of unwritten rules. The unwary and the unintelligent have no place in this complex world, where success goes to those who have learnt to apply the rules with grace, not hesitating to be ruthless at times.

But if this is Chellamma's life, and her world, what is she herself like? What are her hopes and dreams, her values and her aims? Chellamma can be induced to say very little about herself. Her favourite deity is the goddess, and well she understands the power of woman, but she believes that that power must be exercised with discretion. She has been trained to be self-effacing, and she both practises and preaches it. In her vocabulary, the highest word of praise that can be spoken of a woman is the Tamil word 'adakkam', usually translated as 'modesty' but more literally rendered as 'restraint'. And her values? They are power exercised with restraint, in the interest of all and for the sake of harmony, order and proportion; life lived with discipline, not indulgence; all things enjoyed in moderation; steadfastness in both

joy and sorrow, success and failure; orderly progression through the stages of life as laid down by the scriptures and traditions; above all, family before self and before community. It is all there, unspoken—the upholding of Dharma, or Divine order, the philosophy of 'nishkam karma' or detachment, mutuality of obligation, devotion leading to self-realisation.

She is not given to philosophising, and if pressed, would rather illustrate with anecdote and incident than abstract argument. But she runs her life according to a few basic concepts and principles, derived from the religion which is central to her life. She comes from a family and a community of scholars, so she understands the basis of what she believes and practises. But it is foreign to her nature to discuss it except when compelled to do so. She would rather go on living it, and if an argument is carried uncomfortably far, will remind you of a task waiting to be done.

So Chellamma stands at her front door. It is dusk and time to light the lamps. It is the evening of her life too, and it is time for her to withdraw, to light the inner lamps and begin to prepare spiritually for the close. She is not afraid, though she is often puzzled. She is prepared for whatever comes, as she has always been. She turns swiftly when it is time, and goes indoors to see to the lamps.

# Between School and Marriage— A Delhi Sample

Renana Jhabvala  
and  
Pratima Sinha

Miss Renana Jhabvala (b. 1952), graduated from Delhi University, is presently studying Mathematics at Harvard.

Miss Pratima Sinha (b. 1952), a Science (Physics) graduate of Delhi University, who passed with distinction in 1972, is currently doing her M.Sc. in the same University.



There are more girls going to University now than before. Does education change the outlook of the girls? Will educated girls be different from their mothers? In order to get answers to these questions we ran a survey by means of questionnaires and personal interviews with girls from different backgrounds and studying in different courses of Delhi University. We asked questions concerning the girl's background, her reasons for coming to college, her future plans and her attitude towards the older generations.

On the basis of our survey we found that we could divide the girls into these categories—'hep' and 'not-so-hep', 'simple' and 'not-so-simple', and lastly, those we have called 'the exceptions'.

### **Hep and Not-so-Hep**

Stepping into the campus you could not miss the well-dressed, smart and sophisticated girls. These are the 'hep' girls. They are from well-to-do families and come to University to gain social poise. They take up what are known as 'light' subjects, such as English, Psychology and Political Science. They make fluent conversation and can discuss anything from Communism and Kissinger's Russian policy to Women in modern India and the scientific theories of horoscopes and rebirths. They read only English and American books, but indiscriminately—taking in Thomas Hardy and Harold Robbins with equal enthusiasm.

It is a status symbol to have as many 'dates' as possible, to fag and to pot. These girls frequent discotheques and take active



## Indian Women

part in extra-curricular activities, including debates, dramatics and, especially, organising fetes in aid of worthy causes. They tend to put off tasks which involve some effort as "too much work, *Yar!*" or "Oh! you science types must be working so-o-o-hard."

Rita is a hep girl studying English in one of the better known girls' colleges. Her father is in the Indian Foreign Service and so Rita lives in the Girls' Hostel. Rita enjoys herself very much; she believes in 'Youth having its fling' and has experimented with drugs and sex. She used to go out with many different boys but is now 'going steady' with a boy of her own social class.

The not-so-hep girl goes to college to acquire some kind of feminine accomplishments which will help her to be a good housewife, a good mother and an asset to her husband. She also tends to come from a wealthy family.

Rajni is a typical example of the not-so-hep girl. She is the daughter of a rich businessman and is well-dressed and pretty. She has just finished a three-year course in interior decoration and is now happily engaged to a boy chosen by her parents who will soon join her father's business. Her parents are giving Rajni a large dowry which they have been collecting ever since she can remember.

Rajni found her course "useful and interesting". She enjoyed herself in college with her friends. She had no boy-friends but went out a lot with her girl-friends and family in parties, pictures and picnics. She admires her teachers because, she says, they come from good families and don't *have* to teach; and because they are smart and well-dressed. Rajni is looking forward to getting married since this will give her the opportunity to travel, to see a lot of new places and, especially, to go abroad.

### Simple and Not-so-Simple

These girls constitute the majority of University students. Unlike those in the previous category, they come to college not

to acquire social poise but to pass the time between school and marriage. This is a relatively new phenomenon, because now-a-days girls are being married at a later age. A few of these girls even take up jobs, usually as receptionists or clerks in between graduation and marriage. Some others go on to post-graduate studies after which they may take up jobs such as lecturer-ships; they may even continue working after marriage—if their in-laws have no objections. Most of these girls put in genuine effort, diligently taking notes and frequenting the library. They rarely take part in extra-curricular activities. Their interests outside studies are sometimes singing and dancing, often Hindi films.

Some of these girls affect complete indifference towards boys, never talk to or of them and condemn as 'fast' those who do. They refer to themselves as 'simple'.

The 'not-so-simple' girls focus their attention on their male counterparts. They talk a lot about them, nudge each other when a boy comes near but give way to giggles when he confronts them. Since they have no experience of their own, they tend to follow the pattern of romance as depicted in Hindi films, copying the gestures and actions of the screen heroines.

Veena is a 'simple' girl doing a B.Sc. course. She gets up at 5 a.m., helps her mother prepare food for the rest of the family and then does her studies. She comes to college and faithfully attends all her classes. She does not enter the co-ed cafe. Her interests and conversations are confined to her studies and her household duties.

Asha is in the B. A. (Pass) class. She would like to imitate the hep girls but her mother made her give back the pair of bell-bottom trousers she bought for herself. Asha admires a boy in her class but gives way to giggles if he ever talks to her.

### **The Exceptions**

Most of the girls who go to University will never have to work

for a living; usually a B. A. or B.Sc. course does not require much hard work so that a student doing these courses never really has to exert herself. There are a few exceptions, however, who do work hard because they want to be self-sufficient. Hard work is also required of the few girls who go into professional fields such as medicine, architecture and engineering. People do not believe that girls can make good architects or engineers and hence the small number of girls in these courses. Sometimes a family with a liberal member in it will allow the girl to take up one of these professional courses. In these cases it is often found that the girl tends to break away from older traditions and occasionally even marries outside the caste.

Medicine, which is recognised as a subject that a girl can respectably take, attracts a large number of the brighter girls. Although some lose interest as the course goes on, most of them finally take up jobs as practitioners, in hospitals or in administration.

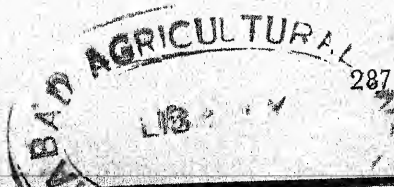
Amita's father is a physicist, which is probably the reason she is so interested in physics. Her father was not very happy about his daughter doing physics, although he had no such qualms about his son. But Amita was adamant. And having finished her B.Sc. she now insists on specialising in Solid State Physics. Marriage or no marriage, Amita is going to insist on making a career in research.

Gurdeep has just completed her Bachelor of Technology degree and plans to get a job as soon as possible so that she does not have to be dependent on her parents. She has been studying in the Indian Institute of Technology and has found the discrimination between girls and boys very frustrating. She has, without much success, been protesting against unequal treatment—such as not being allowed to stay out late from the hostel, or not being allowed to take part in the inter-university sports (some of the cities where the sports are held are not supposed to be safe for girls). Gurdeep's parents want her to get married and have chosen a boy for her, but Gurdeep has refused. She is

determined not to have her marriage arranged and, in fact, says that she will not get married if it means leaving her job.

In conclusion we would say that most girls drift along with the tide. They are satisfied with their roles as future mothers and housewives. College to them is just a means of spending the time till they get married. Those girls to whom college means more than a period of waiting are definitely the exceptions.

However, perhaps the years spent at the University do have some effect on the girls. There is some indication that it makes them more tolerant and ready to recognise new values; it also makes them less satisfied with the traditional values of their mothers. Although most of them settle into the life planned out for them by their parents, this does not mean that they are wholly uncritical in their acceptance. They appear to be aware of certain drawbacks in their parents' attitudes and way of life. 'Orthodox' and 'narrow-minded' are words often used to describe them. Of course, these critical attitudes may just be the natural reaction of the young against the old—'interfering' is another word often used—and may fade away as time passes. But they do indicate a questioning of traditional ways which may be a sign that this generation of educated girls will not be completely unresponsive to change. "I cannot blame them for being as they are," one girl said of the older generation of women, "but I, for one, will not be the same when I am a mother." Time will tell.





# In the Performing Arts

Kapila Vatsyayan

Mrs. Kapila Vatsyayan (b. 1928) is Deputy Educational Adviser, Government of India, in the Department of Culture. Her publications include books on Indian dance and theatre.





It would be impossible to make any broad generalisation regarding the role of Indian Women in the fine arts, more particularly the performing arts of music and dance. The staggering multiplicity of forms which have survived at different levels of Indian society is matched only by the complexity of the socio-cultural fabric of India. Taking only dance and music, what was the situation in the near and distant past and what is the situation now?

In 1934 Balasaraswati danced in Banaras, the heart of Hindu orthodoxy. Balasaraswati came from a family of *Devadasis*. The *Devadasi* tradition had been banned in 1927. Her recital was, however, seen by the middle class and gentle society of the great Brahminical tradition and, surprisingly, it was widely acclaimed. About the same time, Smt. Rukmini Devi, coming from a highly sophisticated Brahmin family tradition, had married a foreigner and had taken to the art of the *Devadasis*. She gave a performance in Madras before an invited audience of the intellectual elite who had not been attending public performances of dance. She, too, was widely acclaimed. Both were compared to celestial dancers; their sociological status seemed to be of no consequence at least for the duration of the recital.

A related fact refers to Smt. Kamaladevi. In 1920 she tried to take part in a dramatic performance before an invited audience. She was not allowed to do so, was locked up in the house and the hero of the play was abducted. Let us move to another level of Indian society: the professional singers known as the *Bais*.

Amongst these were Kesarbai, Siddheshwari Devi, Hirabai Barodekar and others. In the thirties they also began to perform at concert platforms and were readily accepted.

On other levels of Indian society the following can be observed. In the vast majority of rural villages a variety of theatrical forms continue to be prevalent. These forms include a class of traditional theatre in which only men take part. This type of theatre has had a long history, perhaps of about 300 to 500 years; it continues to follow the same conventions as it did 40 years ago. In this connection, one may mention the *Terukoothu* of Tamil Nadu, the *Ottantullal* of Kerala, also *Kathakali*, the *Ankia Nat* of Assam, the *Mayurbhanj* dances of Orissa, the *Purulia* dances of West Bengal, the *Seraikella Chhau* of Bihar, the *Kuchipudi Bhamakalapam* of Andhra, the *Bhagavatmala* of Tamil Nadu, the *Bhavai* of Gujarat, the *Nautanki Ramlila* *Raslila* of U.P., and the *Jatra* of Bengal. The actors are not confined to a particular social stratum; in terms of caste or economic level they range from princes to rickshaw-pullers. Nonetheless, all these forms are purely and uniformly men-oriented. All parts are taken by men and no change seems to have taken place during these years in spite of socio-economic change. What is true of these dance-drama forms of a rural and semi-urbanised society is also true of the more sophisticated stylised forms, such as *Kathakali* or *Koodiyattam*. There are other levels: those of the purely agricultural societies where men and women take part in the functions of everyday life on the field and are also full participants in the arts. This is true of the communities particular to Himachal Pradesh, Bihar, Orissa and Madhya Pradesh. There is the level of tribal society where also we can discern a pattern of participation. In some only men dance and sing, in others both, in yet others only women.

Can any deduction be made as to the stage of social development of the particular society, judging from the mere fact that men or women, or men and women, take part in performances, music and dance recitals, etc.? These unconnected facts at different levels of society clearly point to two things. One

is that the role of women in the arts is not the only indicator of the position of women in that society. For example, the socio-economic stage of development of those who presented the traditional dance-drama forms was generally higher than the purely tribal and village societies and yet it was in the traditional dance forms that women did not take part. Second, many moments of historical time persist and these phenomena are multi-layered and not uni-dimensional, evolutionary or linear in character. Further, this set of facts has to be counterpoised with another set of realities known to the Indian tradition. These belong to the collective psyche of the people at all levels of society, irrespective of caste and class, and have lingered in their consciousness through centuries. The proverbial continuity of tradition belongs to this order of reality rather than to the physical state of society at a given moment of time. Let us identify some facets of this tradition in relation to women and the arts. From the earliest times, it would appear that there is an amazing pre-occupation with the concept of the celestial dancer, who epitomised beauty, grace, and well-being. She could be either a goddess or a professional dancer or musician. On the level of ordinary mundane life both *Sastras* and the oral tradition stressed the indispensability of music and dance with all rites from birth to death. The artistic tradition considered the aesthetic experience and art creations as the highest discipline, termed as a *Sadhana*, a *Tajna*, a *Yoga*, capable of evoking a state of release second only to the supreme state of bliss called the *Brahmananda*. Aesthetics had taken over a well-chiselled terminology of Indian philosophy and discussions in the dimension of the spirit.

Alongwith these traditions which may be called the traditions of idealisation or deification of both women and the arts, there were the negative attitudes to both women and the arts. A Saraswati, a Durga, a Kali, and an Usha were the embodiment of learning, power, energy—in a word, all that stood for the whole concept of *Prakritis*. When this dynamic principle was inverted or reversed then the Kali became a Chamundi and the Urvashi and Menaka gave rise to the Rambhas and the Tilotamas, and a host of other professional entertainers who could

tempt, entice and be used for variety of shady purposes. Apparently, the two attitudes are in direct contradiction. However, this seeming ambivalence to both women and the arts were two facets of the same attitude: an attitude which recognised their unique power and latent dynamism. Both could be the vehicle of the greatest ascension of the spirit and both could be the vehicle of the utmost degeneration, prostitution and indiscipline.

We must recognise that in the tradition, therefore, there lay the seeds of two attitudes that manifested themselves in the twentieth century: one looked upon the practice of these arts by all, and especially by the unmarried girl in the home, as essential for developing personality, necessary accomplishment; the other recognised the negative potential of women and the arts as the most deadly effective instruments of degeneration.

The second approach was represented by Kautilya and Manu and the writers of *Devi Bhagavata*. It is significant that not only is a low place given to these arts in these texts but the mere fact that they are recognised as essential in society reveals the pre-occupation of these writers, even if their case is only stated negatively. It would appear that the middle class society of the early twentieth century was only waiting to see the brighter side of the mirror, having been acquainted with the dark side of the tradition which had considered the arts of music and dance as low, cheap, and vulgar in civilised society.

The transition from the temple to the stage, from the Brahminical household to the concert in an elite society, would not have been easy, had it not been for the fact that within the periphery of the home these arts had continued to be practised by women and that the people had continued to subscribe to the first aspect of the tradition: it was an essential part of the education of the girl, the Kumari, and, in spite of Manu and other puritans, it had never been given up, it had only been sheltered. Thus, when a Rukmini Devi and a Balasaraswati came on the stage, it was as if the dust had been removed from the mirror and all were ready to respond to the original luminosity of image.



This ready acceptance of a major phenomenon of social change without revolts, agitations, intellectual formulations and freedom movements, was in no small measure due to the content of the traditional arts, particularly music and dance. They were distant in time, but in sharing and responding to the content of these arts, the Indian was really facing the totality of this tradition which was timeless and symbolic of all that was refined and pure. The myths and legends, the gods and the goddesses that these arts presented had little or nothing to do with everyday actuality. The form in which this content was embodied, abstracted and depersonalised had no element of subjectivity. And yet the forms were highly sensuous, emanating a celestial radiance without being earthy or fleshy.

But this was only one side: the sensuous form was also a double-edged sword. It was capable of transcending subjectivity through a well-conceived pattern of symbolism and multiple meaning but it was also one where the mathematical formulae were also capable of being poorly rendered, making these very formulae not just wooden, but cheap and vulgar.

In the field of theatre, dance-drama, or all forms of *Desinataka*, the situation was different. Here, although the themes and myths were common, a different dimension was being explored; here, it was not a highly charged ecstatic feeling but "emotion" in the raw. The actor was not a narrator, he was a character: social taboos and theatrical conventions both played a part. It was perhaps this relationship to present-day actuality and the content and form of drama which accounts for the kind of opposition which women met in the field of theatre, in contrast to the comparatively warm welcome accorded to the solo musician or the dancer.

It is significant that although education has reached the villages and traditional culture has come to the educated class, the tradition of these arts is carried on by those for whom the written word is of little consequence. The oral tradition is one other factor in the mobility, the flexibility, the continual inter-action



of different levels of society and different forms of the arts. Insularity was broken amongst the sub-divisions of the social structure, and between the strictly professional and the amateur and the pandit and the practitioner, through the efficacy of the oral tradition. This oral tradition also accounts for the particular place of women in transmitting these arts in the home situation and in community congregation.

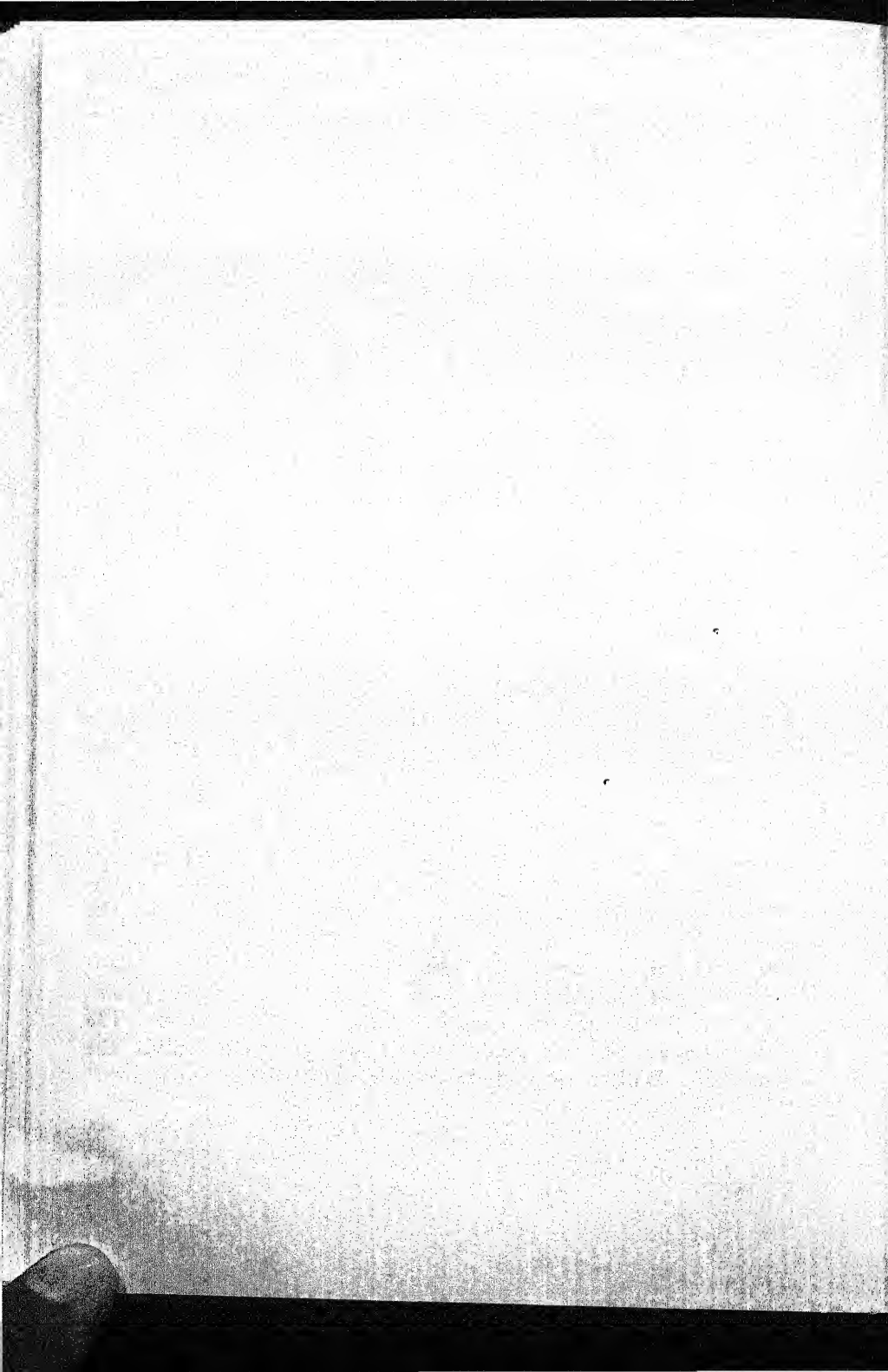
But all this was in the past or in the pre-independence period: Rukmini Devi, Balasaraswati, Menaka, foreigners like Ragini and Simkie, musicians like M. S. Subulakshmi, M. L. Vasantakumari, Gangubai Hangal, and others, all coming from varied backgrounds, have played their part. The art style, the particular *gharana* or *sampradaya*, was the sole criterion for sub-divisions or structuring.

And what of the last twenty-five years, where, while we have gained independence on one level, we have become uprooted and alienated on another. A continuity of tradition was sustained by women in Indian society on many levels. Music and dance alone amongst the arts continued to be traditional without being static. In other fields—theatre, literature, painting—the continuity had been broken and the process was of reconstruction. And what did we do for these arts, and for women to learn them in the spirit of dedication and seriousness?

Soon after independence, schools and colleges multiplied. So did institutions of music, dance, painting and sculpture. There was a shift in emphasis. Professionalism now did not consist in sitting at the feet of a teacher for fifteen years and then emerging as a full-fledged performer. It was a matter of quick institutionalised training and subsequent performance. The teachers, mainly men, were and are associated in large measure with these dance and music academies. Some of the older teachers had been nurtured by an elitist society or a court culture, such as Sri Achchan Maharaj, Hafiz Ali, Allauddin Khan; others had taught and practised dancing in the isolation of a village, such as Bharam Narayanaswami or Meenakshisundaram Pillai. But there

were and are others who are now teaching dance and music to young women who come from ordinary middle-class backgrounds, who are not consumed with a fervour or passion of nationalism, but who wish to study the arts for either a professional purpose or for the general purpose of a rounded education. A teacher, grown up under a *Sampradaya* tradition found it hard to teach a pupil whom he could not take on as *Shishya* in the chastest sense and whom he had to teach merely to earn a living or become a stage actor. The motivation of the women who took to these arts was also not always very clear. While all of them wanted it as an accomplishment, some were not certain whether this was to be a career or a profession like any other. From this varied middle class background come most of the dancers who are on the professional stage today. This includes Smt. Indrani Rahman, Yamini Krishnamurti, and many others. In fact, this generation is meeting with hardly any opposition compared to the preceding generation. Shanta Rao was not easily accepted as a pupil when she decided to plunge into dancing, coming as she did from an affluent background, others who followed her did not face as much difficulty. Amongst the musicians also, the same phenomenon can be observed and many more women have taken to the profession. Their socio-economic backgrounds have varied, most of them have come from the middle-class, many of them from the lower middle-class.

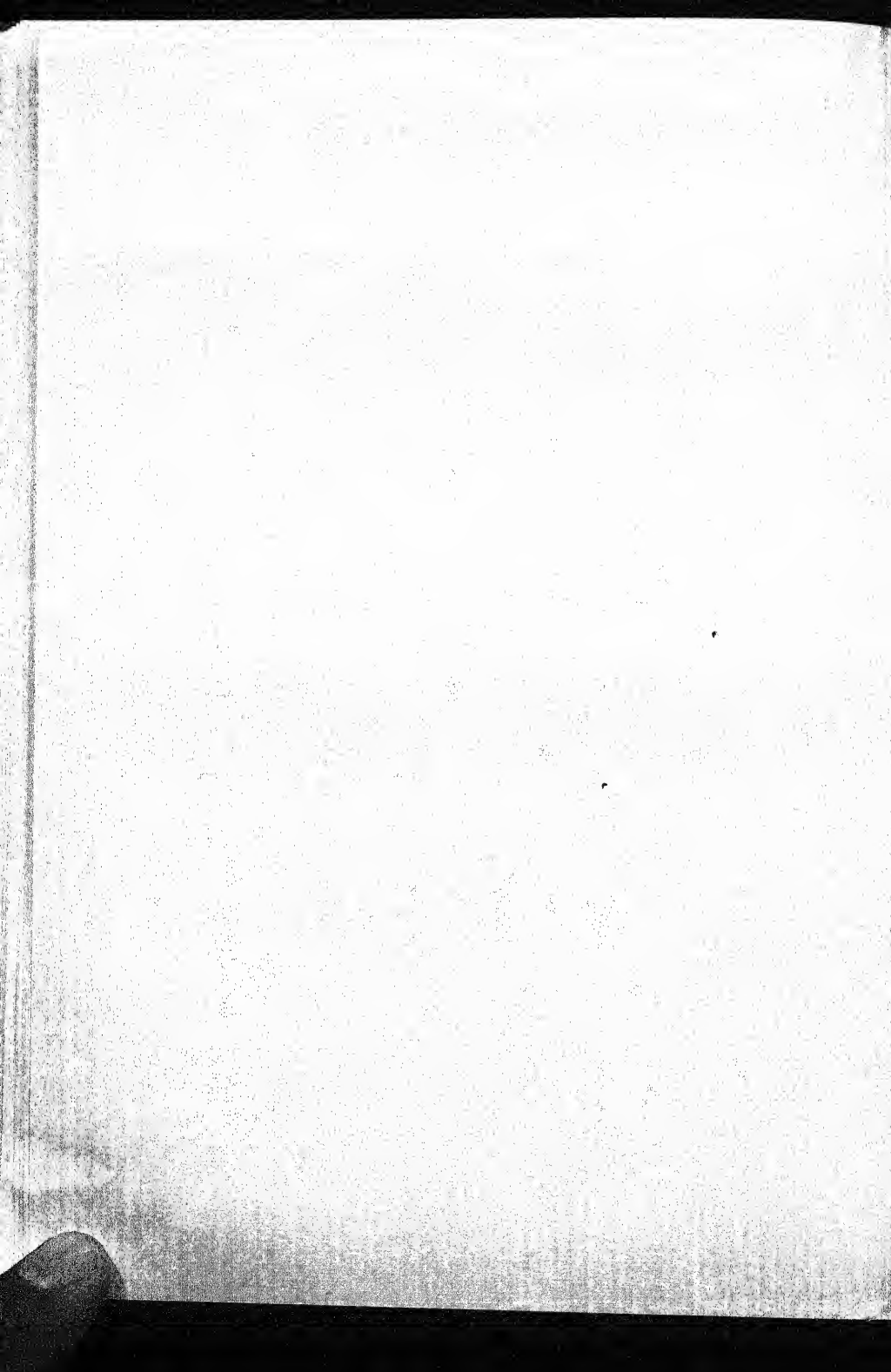
But a last phenomenon can also be noted. The stage is no longer a temple of the arts, where the artists and the audience are sharing a rich cultural experience. This tradition is lost to entertainment in an urban milieu. The artist entertains and the audience gets its money's worth. The popularity of the arts has attracted women from many cultural backgrounds. Paradoxically, the profession has led some of them to go back to become 'professional' in the nineteenth century connotation of that term. The future remains to be seen. Will Indian women sustain the tradition? Will music and dance carry forward the continuity?



# Women in Politics

Imtiaz Ahmed

Imtiaz Ahmed (b. 1940), Associate Professor of Sociology at the Centre for Political Studies, Jawaharlal Nehru University, New Delhi, has edited *Caste and Social Stratification among the Muslims*. He has held academic positions in the field of Anthropology in India and U.S.A.



What is the position of Indian women in the field of politics? It does not take much reflection to realise that this snappy question is not one question but a host of questions.

There are, for instance, comparative questions: Are there differences in the access of men and women to authority and political power? Do men enjoy greater influence in the elaboration and application of political decision than women? Are there basic differences in the political status of women in the different states within India, in cities of different sizes, in different castes, classes and communities? Specifically, what about urban versus rural women?

There are also general questions on the degree and patterns of political involvement and behaviour among women: How far do women exercise their recognised political rights and prerogatives? Do all women exercise them equally? Or, are there differences amongst them as to their interest and involvement in political affairs? What is the part that women play at each level of political participation? What role, for example, do they play in elections, campaign activities, electioneering and in direct political action? What is their role at higher levels, that is, in legislatures and executive positions?

What is the influence of demographic and social factors on their political involvement and behaviour? For example, are there differences in their political involvement and behaviour by age, education and social status? Or, do these differences arise from



their psychological and personality make-up? How far do urbanisation, intellectual atmosphere of the family and role beliefs directly influence their political participation and behaviour?

In what ways do attitudes of men affect the degree of political involvement and participation among women? Are men willing to accept women on equal terms? Or, do they feel that women should be admitted to political offices only in exceptional circumstances and then only within strictly defined limits? What are the policies of the different political parties with respect to the involvement of women in political affairs? What factors enter in their selection for elective and executive positions?

Other general questions focus on what women do in politics: What influence does their participation in public life have on the political policies of the political parties and the bias of their propaganda? Do women concentrate on specialised matters, such as health, education, motherhood, family welfare and housing, etc., that is, on all matters which are considered to be of special interest to women? Or, do they have more broad-based interests in politics? And is any short or long-term shift taking place in their political concerns?

All these and many other questions must be asked and they lead to an immensely complex analysis. So we must also ask: Are there any systematic patterns of variability? If so, of what factors are they a function—the structure of relationships between the sexes, the governmental policies towards involving women in public affairs, of what?

Little solid information is available, however, to help answer these questions. However, if an attempt is made it would consist largely of commonsense generalisations, based on case studies of relatively few single women among the 100 million in the country. It is, therefore, dangerous to generalise. What passes for commonsense is frequently nonsense. Anyone, who is foolish enough to agree to discuss the question "What is the position of

Indian women in the field of politics?" must, therefore, focus on a few elements—and hope for the best.

This is precisely what I propose to do here. I shall first present a few cases that bear on a few of the questions that I have mentioned. The cases were collected through personal interviews with women representing a cross-section of society and from the biographical sketches of individual women politicians in the *Who's Who*, or their autobiographical writings and biographical works about them. The selection of these cases is purely arbitrary; they were selected not so much to be representative as to illustrate some of the factors that could help us to evaluate the position of Indian women in the field of politics. I shall present these cases and then make some tentative propositions which are suggested by them.

Let me present now some of the case material from which I shall draw certain propositions:

**Case 1:** This is a housewife. She was born and raised in a small Punjabi village in Amritsar district. When she was barely fifteen, her parents had married her to a man she had never seen before. After seven years of her marriage, she came to the city to live with her husband. He works as a stenographer in a private firm. She has voted twice in elections. On three other occasions she did not exercise her franchise: once she did not find anyone who would take care of the children, the second time her husband did not ask her to vote, and the third time she did not know that the elections were being held. She does not know what elections are about, though she has heard that they are held to run the government of the country. She always follows the lead of her husband. Each time she had to vote, she asked her husband where to vote and voted according to his political preference. Politics, she believes, is too complicated an activity for her and she would like to leave it to her husband.

**Case 2:** This is a woman aged twenty-four. She is a graduate and works as a school-teacher. Her parents had wanted her to

get married after graduation. She wanted to take up a job and work for some time before getting married. She had put up a real fight against her relatives to take up a job after the completion of her studies. She hopes to get married soon to a colleague in the school, but she would like to keep her job.

She has never voted in an election. Last time, the electoral roll did not contain her name, but she knows what elections are about. She would see to it that her name is entered in the electoral roll when elections are held next time, and she would like to vote for the Swatantra Party. "The Swatantra Party," she admits, "may or may not do very much, but I would like to give it a chance anyway."

**Case 3:** This is also a housewife. She comes from a family of Congressmen. Her father was an active Congress worker and had participated in the nationalist movement. Her husband favours the Jan Sangh. She has never voted in any of the elections. "I would," she says, "like to vote for the Congress and my husband would not like this. I, therefore, abstain from voting altogether."

**Case 4:** This is a member of the city corporation. She had started out as a school-teacher. Around ten years ago, she decided to establish her own school and approached some Congress politicians to help her secure grants for the purpose. Three years later, she was asked to go on the Mandal Committee of the Congress to assist in mobilising female votes. She had no direct interest in politics but she conceded to their request. "I thought," she says, "this way I could at least pay back a part of the debt that I owed them." Last year, she was virtually handpicked to run for a seat in the corporation.

**Case 5:** This is a village pradhan. She is a widow, aged around sixty-four, and belongs to the land-owning caste of her village. When she was elected to the pradhanship, the news of her election had been broadcast widely. The Community Development Department had even awarded a prize to her village for electing a woman as the pradhan. She does not, however, know what the

duties of a pradhan are or how her election to the post came about. She thinks that the government appoints the pradhan.

Her son's reason for putting his aged mother up as a candidate for the pradhanship was tactical. On two previous occasions, he had himself held the position. Ideally, he would have liked to run for a third term in office, but his supporters felt that the position should change hands. So he asked her to stand. She now occupies the formal position of the pradhan, but he takes all the important decisions.

**Case 6:** This is a widow, whose husband was a member of the Lok Sabha. She had been a devoted wife to him and had never herself taken any personal interest in politics beyond allowing her name to be included in the list of patrons of a few social and cultural organisations. After her husband passed away, the party decided to nominate her to the Parliament. She held the seat for two terms.

She never participated in any of the debates of the House. She did as the party bosses asked her to do, which was not very much. She would like her eldest son to enter politics once he is eligible for election. Politics, she says, is in his blood and he would be able to do much more than she could.

**Case 7:** This is the wife of a Chief Minister. Her husband was formerly a member of the Lok Sabha and had held a ministerial appointment in the central Cabinet. Last year, the Prime Minister asked him to take up the Chief Ministership of his state and he had to resign his seat in Parliament. His wife was then given the Congress ticket to run for election from the constituency vacated by him. She has held the seat in Parliament for two years now, but she has never participated in any of the discussions. She also does not attend the sessions very regularly. She has had no previous political experience.

**Case 8:** This is a woman Chief Minister. She is the third woman to become Chief Minister of an Indian state. Her father

## Indian Women

was the Chief Minister before her. She succeeded him after his death.

She was a favourite child of her father. Even as a little girl she was all the time with him. He would buy her books about lives of great men and leaders of the country. Her idol was Subhas Chandra Bose. She was impressed by his courage and patriotism. Her wish as a child was to be somebody and help the downtrodden.

She is married to a Chartered Accountant. He wanted to settle in a metropolitan centre, but she preferred to stay on in her home state. She, of course, had the final say.

She has wide experience in social work and was Minister of State for Health during her father's Chief Ministership. She came into politics in a roundabout way. She wanted to be just there without getting involved in party factions. Her first experience was during the opinion poll when the question of merger of her home state with a neighbouring state was being voted upon. She saw some people jockeying for power and trying to break the party. She took part in the election and won. "My father," she says, "never suggested that I should get the party ticket. My name was put up by the party people."

Her main aim in politics is to complete the work her father had begun.

**Case 9:** This too is a Chief Minister. Born into a family of intellectuals, she was influenced by her uncle. He implanted a deep root of revolutionary ideas and spirit in her mind. She studied about the revolution in the U.S.S.R. and heard with rapt attention about the great ideals and deeds of Marx, Engels and Stalin.

As soon as she entered college, she became a full-fledged member of the CPI and started participating in student politics. She led a black flag demonstration against Jayaprakash Narayan, who

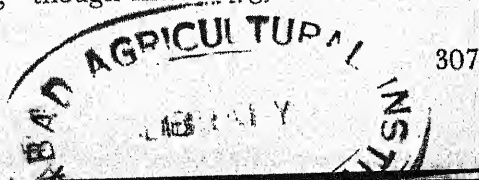


opposed the CPI's efforts to launch a general railway strike, for which she was convicted. She was also detained under the Preventive Detention Act for her activities in the revolutionary programme of her party to overthrow the Government. She was released on parole but again addressed a public meeting sponsored by the CPI and took a leading part in a massive demonstration protesting against the rise in college fees. She was arrested but released on an undertaking given by her father.

Towards the middle of 1950, she dissociated herself from the CPI and married a co-worker in the party who was also a jail-mate of hers. She devoted herself to literary and social work. All her political activities had, however, been watched by the then Chief Minister of her state. He inducted her into the Congress Party and put her in charge of the women's wing. She was elected to the Rajya Sabha in 1962, where, as member of the Consultative Committee of the Information and Broadcasting Ministry, she had ample experience. She also formed part of the set-up where practically every decision of the Party and the Government was discussed. The deliberations of this group had an important bearing on the decisions of the Government. Mrs. Gandhi herself was leader of this group. Upon becoming the Prime Minister, she picked her up as a Deputy Minister.

Her entry in the Union Ministry was a great surprise even to her. In fact, she did not know that her name had been included in the list till the news was broadcast by All India Radio the following morning.

**Case 10:** This is an unsuccessful party worker. She has been active in the women's wing of the Congress Party for well over fifteen years now. Last time, when the Prime Minister wrote to the state branches of the women's wing of her party to send the names of women candidates who could be nominated for Lok Sabha elections, she applied for a Congress ticket from her home constituency. The party bosses did not favour her candidature and turned her application down. She is evidently sore over the rejection. "Politics," she says, "though interesting, is an unsavoury





game. Every group from each district—and there are so many districts in this state—wants to push its own candidates. In this tug of war, I as a woman naturally stood nowhere.”

**Case 11:** This is the Rajmata of a famous royal house in Madhya Pradesh. She was herself a commoner, that is, did not belong to the royal family. She finds that this makes it easy for her to participate at the grass-roots level in politics.

She had always been interested in politics but had never actually taken any active part in public life. “So long as my husband, the former Maharaja, was alive,” she says, “there was not much that I could do. He was very keen that I should keep firmly behind the scene, that I accept my role as wife and mother in seriousness.” She entered active politics after the death of her husband.

She is a prominent member of the Jan Sangh. “The people of this country, particularly the women,” she points out, “are extremely attached to the customs of their religion and culture. They are the upholders of the tradition. There is a need in India for a party which emerges from the national inclinations—religious and cultural—of the people.” She feels that her own party represents the nearest response to such a need.

She holds the seat in Parliament from her home constituency. She finds the Parliament as it is today quite un-interesting. She attributes this to the ‘roadroller’ majority of the ruling party and the prominent position of the Prime Minister. “Indira Gandhi,” she says, “in her role as Prime Minister has maturity, wisdom, and judgment. Her ability to steer a clear course for herself in the political life of the country is a remarkable phenomenon.” She believes, however, that this situation cannot last long. Soon the present allocation of power would be eroded and the opposition would come into its own. Parliament should be very interesting then.

**Case 12:** This is an eminently successful woman politician. Belonging to a family which had had a long tradition of involvement in the nationalist movement, she was drawn into the

vortex of active politics at an early age. She participated in the national movement, courted arrest, and mobilised children and women for the achievement of national independence. She says that she would not have been engaged in political work as her husband, himself a well-known lawyer and politician, had asked her to keep away from political activities. Her continued involvement led to tensions between them. She drifted along a different course and, though the emotional bond with her husband remained quite strong, she devoted herself increasingly to political work.

After independence, she was appointed a member of the Congress Working Committee and placed in charge of the Women's Department. A couple of years later, she was elected to the Presidentship of the Party. As she was staying with her father, she often accompanied him on his international tours. This provided her with opportunities to participate in international forums and make contacts with top leaders in other countries. She obviously acquired skills that she could capitalise upon later, if an opportunity for participation at leadership level presented itself.

Around ten years ago, she was elected to the leadership of the Congress Parliamentary Party. She evidently had no strong credentials for the post. She was still quite young and had not yet proved herself worthy by a long enough test in office. She was, nevertheless, supported by party bosses over other claimants to the position. Presumably, the factor that weighed strongly in her favour was that she lacked an independent power base of her own. This led the party bosses to anticipate that she would be amenable to their control.

Once installed in office, she took her party bosses by surprise. She quickly gained confidence and acquired the skill and technique of wielding power without their support. This led to a split within her party, but it gave her absolute control over the affairs of the party. She has since proved her mettle in dealing with her opponents who show signs of becoming an embarrassment to her.

From these very elliptical summaries of twelve concrete cases, I wish to draw some tentative propositions about the political status and role of women in India.

First, it seems apparent that women differ considerably among themselves as to their political involvement and patterns of political participation. Some women vote like their husbands or join the ranks of those who with complete responsibility ignore politics entirely. Because of the nature of sex roles and authority structure in the family, they find it almost natural to follow the male 'authority figure' when they go to the polls. Others participate in politics on their own but concede to male pressures. Still others realise the significance and value of their political prerogatives and use them quite independently.

Secondly, the structural position of a woman discourages both political participation and political independence. A high degree of political participation, political scientists have concluded, depends at least in part, on the presence of group pressures emphasising the importance of the ballot, and the absence of cross pressures discouraging political independence. In the case of women, each variable works against their participation in public life. A woman finds little encouragement to participate in politics. Unless she has a supportive husband or father, it is just as easy for her not to go to the polls. Moreover, the whole ideal of women's place contradicts the idea of female political independence which only the most committed can transcend.

Third, when women participate in politics, they respond to public affairs as individuals rather than as members of a special interest with a distinctive set of interests. This has special significance for those who argue that women should form a front of their own, independent of other political parties, and express their disinterested opinion and fight for issues of vital concern to them. It would suggest that the idea that women should organise along sex lines, nominate women, urge special legislation and vote en masse, represents little more than a 'hallucination'. Women differ in emotions, ideals, and prejudices just as much as men do.

Fourth, there are several alternate courses through which a woman gets to higher forms of political participation. She can get to it via the widow succession, or as a stand-in candidate or through a complex network of social and patronage links. Whatever the avenue of her entry into politics, she has to depend on the favours of male party officials for her political promotion.

Fifth, most women in top legislative positions either accommodate or depend on male leaders for whatever influence they might exert. Lacking a strong power base of their own, it is often hard for them to build their own independent spheres of influence. Moreover, the fact that most women remain in office for brief periods, would entail that there would be little opportunity for them to build influence. It is only in exceptional circumstances, such as those exemplified by the last case above, that a woman has an opportunity to build her own sphere of political influence.

Sixth, male political leaders like to appoint those women to political posts who they think share their point of view about political matters or who would be amenable to their political influence.

Seventh, when elected to party or legislative positions, they find it difficult to concentrate on issues that are of special concern to women. While they may continue an interest in health, education and welfare, their pattern of participation is quite varied. This fact supports recent findings that the political behaviour of men and women is quite similar at higher levels.

Eighth, there often is a keen competition for available elective and executive positions and success in this competition depends on a large variety of pulls and pressures. A woman as woman stands little chance of success in this tug of war. She must mobilise other pulls and pressures if she wants to succeed.

These propositions suggest that women are, by and large, characterised by a passive political orientation. What accounts

## Indian Women

for this passive political orientation among Indian women? While a definite answer to this question must await further research, it seems clear that the sources of passive and dependent political orientation among women are rooted within the social structure itself. In tradition and practice, the Indian social structure provides an elaborate and segregated network of roles for each sex, with little interaction or exchange between them. This division of labour, in most cases, has led to division of authority as well.

Moreover, the idea that the two sexes should fulfil different roles and responsibilities is buttressed by institutions such as the family, and transmitted from generation to generation through the socialisation process. Males continue to be raised in a way that encourages a participatory life-style, females in a way that contributes to withdrawal, and attitudes and behaviour reinforce each other. Naturally, with few models of 'independent' women to emulate, only a small percentage of women are willing to risk failure in the female world of marriage and motherhood in order to prove their worth in the male world of politics.

These, then, are some of the speculations and hypotheses about the political status of women in India. What this discussion emphasises above all is the need for more intensive research. Meanwhile, it seems quite clear that the real obstacle to equality in the political sphere lies in the division of spheres between men and women; and the legal provisions have not substantially altered this. Women enjoy the right to vote and to be elected to decision-making positions, but these legal provisions have meant little. Nor would they mean much as long as the structure of relationships between the sexes continues to reinforce the idea that the man should be dominant in action toward the world outside the family and the woman should accept his leadership passively. Only a substantial upheaval that undermines the structural basis for traditional views of male and female roles would modify the existing asymmetry in the political status of men and women.





# *Introduction to*

SECOND EDITION

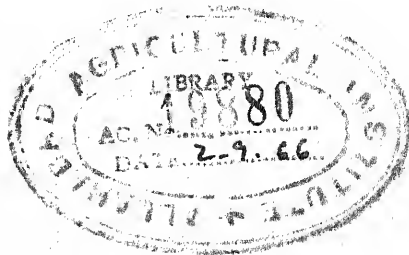
**TYRUS HILLWAY · COLORADO STATE COLLEGE**

**HOUGHTON MIFFLIN COMPANY · BOSTON**

A condemnation of mere opinion . . .

EPICETUS

307.2  
H5591



Copyright ©, 1964, 1956, by Tyrus Hillway

All rights reserved including the right to reproduce this book or parts thereof in any form.  
Houghton Mifflin Company • Boston • Massachusetts • Printed in the U.S.A.

## CONTENTS

Preface to the Second Edition	vii
Preface to the First Edition • Why This Book Was Written	ix

### Part One • RESEARCH AND GRADUATE STUDY

1. <u>The Role of Research</u> in Man's Rise from Barbarism	3
2. The Graduate Student and His Opportunities	19
3. How the Graduate School Came into Being	36
4. Beginnings of Educational Research	54

### Part Two • THE WAYS OF SCHOLARSHIP

5. The Scholar as Detective: The Rules of Evidence	69
6. The Scholar as Detective: The Search for Clues	84
7. The Three Types of Research	99
8. Selecting the Problem for Investigation	107
9. The Hypothesis: What Is It?	120

**Part Three • INVESTIGATIVE TECHNIQUES**

10. Some Common Sense About Techniques of Research	135
11. Documentary Research ✓	141
12. Experiment ✓	165
13. The Survey ✓	187
14. The Language of Statistics	211
15. Statistical Reasoning	227
16. The Case Study ✓	238
17. The Role of Accident in Research	246

**Part Four • PRESENTING THE RESULTS OF RESEARCH**

18. Preparing the Written Report	253
19. Publication: The Ultimate Goal	276
20. The Question of Originality	285

<b>Selected Bibliography</b>	295
------------------------------	-----

<b>Index</b>	301
--------------	-----

## PREFACE TO THE SECOND EDITION

The gratifyingly enthusiastic reception of this work by both professors and students in American colleges and universities ever since its first appearance in 1956 has confirmed the author's belief that graduate students need a general understanding of the spirit and methods of research before undertaking specialized research in their own fields. The particular techniques appropriate to the different subject areas and to the solution of individual problems can best be learned in the actual conduct of research studies.

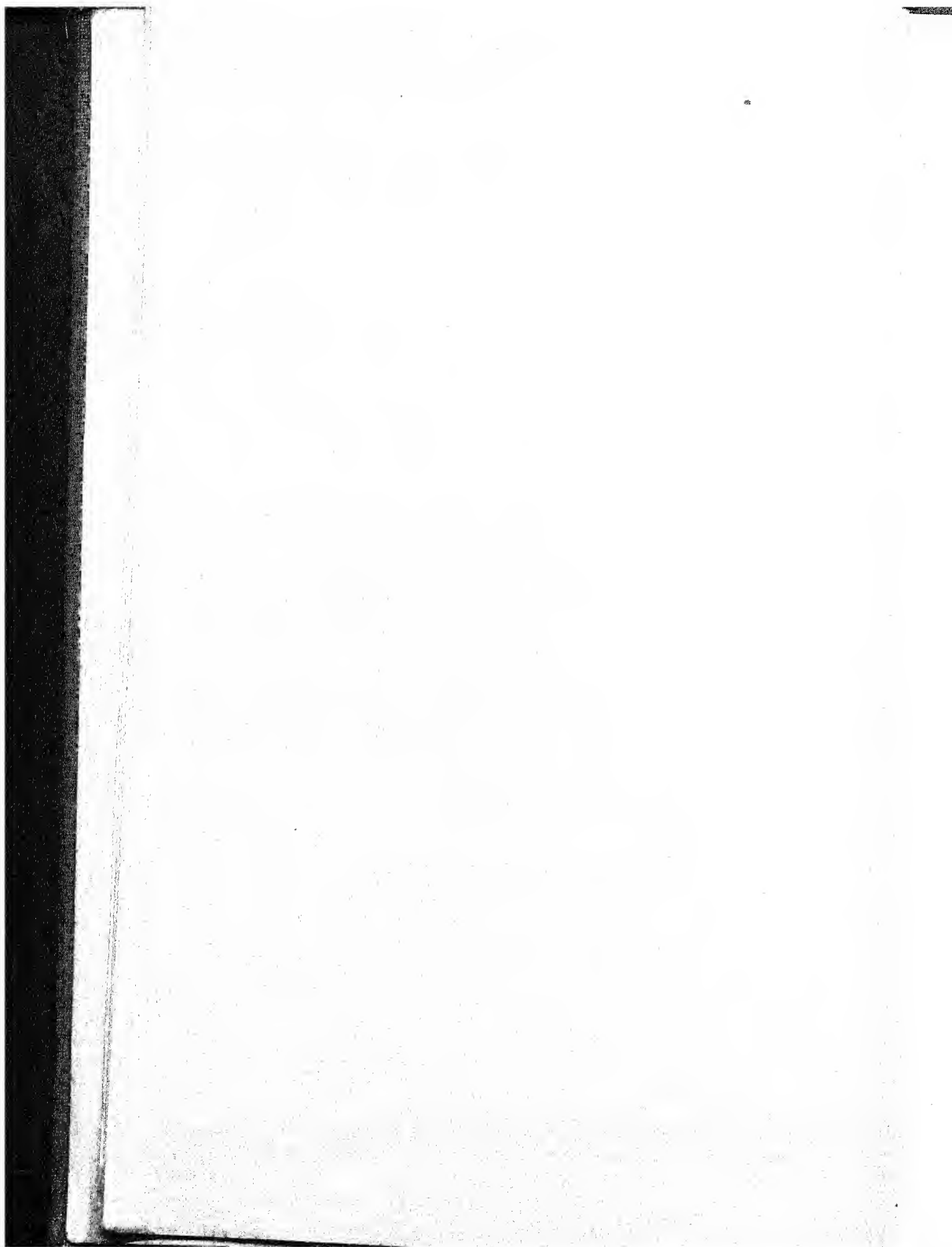
The Second Edition of *Introduction to Research* has been prepared in response to inquiries and suggestions received by the author from colleagues and students in many parts of the United States. The principal result of these greatly appreciated suggestions has been the addition of two entirely new chapters — one on the development of research in education and psychology and one giving further consideration to the use of statistical method in research. Besides the inclusion of this additional material, the revision has consisted of a re-examination and modernization of the text of the remaining chapters and the bibliography in the light of developments that have occurred since 1956.

As in the earlier edition, every effort has been made to present a clear description of the main principles and methods of research with an economy of words and without the unnecessary mystification so often found in works on research. The author's hope is that the additions and revisions will make this book even more useful to graduate students and others interested in this fascinating and highly important subject.

TYRUS HILLWAY

January, 1964





## PREFACE TO THE FIRST EDITION

### Why This Book Was Written

The author's experiences in teaching and advising a large number of graduate students have led him to the belief that many aspects of the scholarly life are, at first contact, extremely perplexing to the young scholar. Approaching specialized study and research for the first time, the beginner frequently fails to understand what is expected of him and finds questions rising in his mind for which the answers are far from easy to obtain.

What methods are acceptable in research? How are suitable problems for study chosen? For what purposes are graduate schools organized, and how do they differ from undergraduate colleges? Why do the standards for a research report differ from those of the course paper or the scholarly essay? How should the report of a piece of original research be organized and written? How does one go about the business of publishing his discoveries? These and scores of other questions on principles and procedures may remain unanswered in the young scholar's mind for many months after he has begun his training in advanced scholarship.

To furnish reliable answers to such questions in a straightforward way is the object of this book. The author has tried to avoid unessential details, technical terms, and complicated explanations. It is his hope that the information he has provided will make the principles and methods of research clearly understandable, and hence will make research itself easier and more effective.

The book is divided into four parts. Part One is introductory; it considers the meaning and importance of research in modern life, as

well as the problems that face the graduate student about to undertake a research project of his own. Part Two briefly describes the general processes of research and the way a trained investigator plans and begins a study. Part Three examines in some detail the various methods of finding and analyzing data and drawing conclusions from them. Part Four deals with matters connected with preparing the written report and securing its publication.

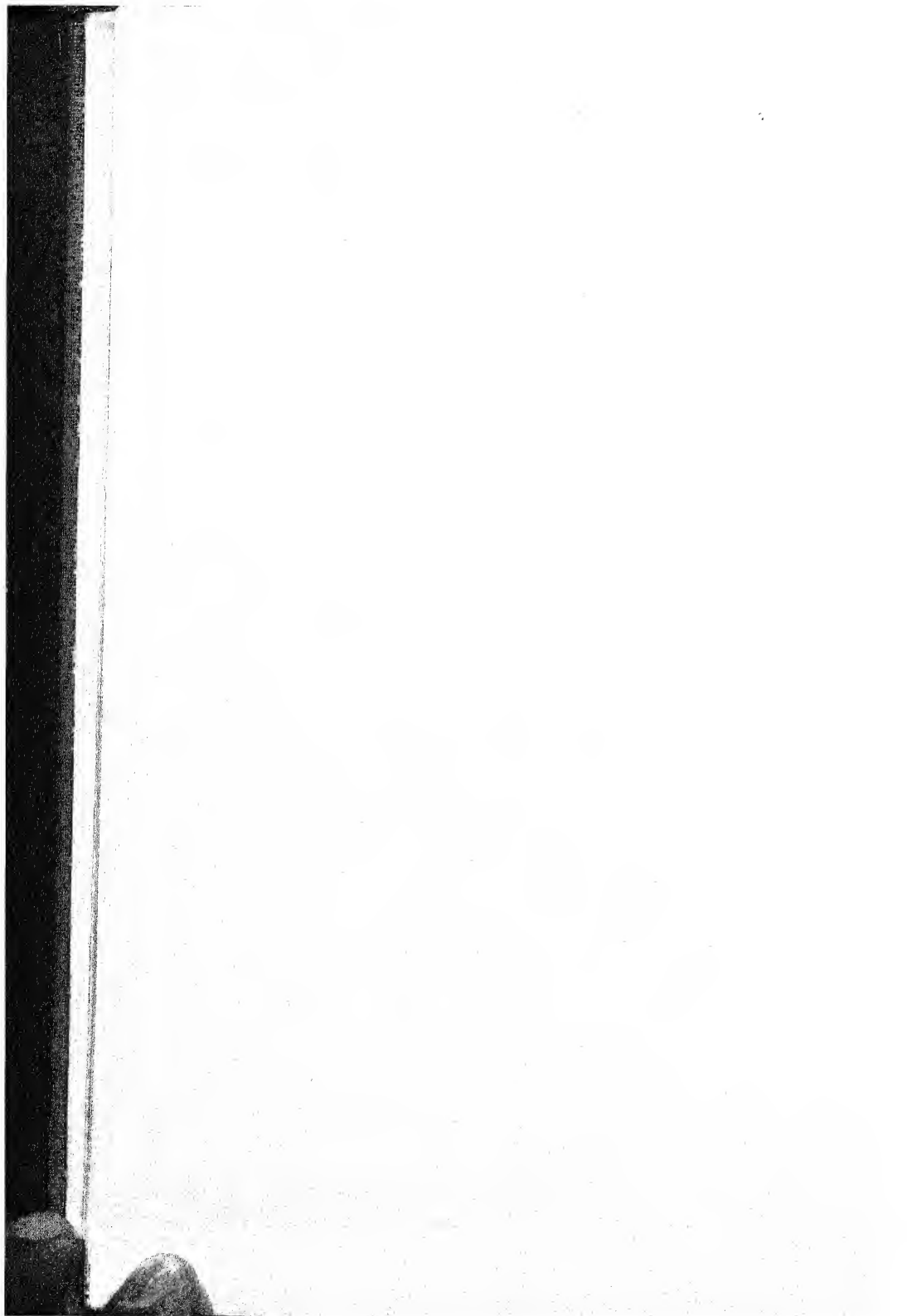
All the facts and ideas given have been tested and found helpful in actual work with first-year graduate students and others who were learning to conduct research projects. The book is intended as an orientation to research in all fields, for knowledge is a seamless whole. Although the subject matter and research materials of one department of study may differ from those of another, the basic principles of research remain the same. The author believes, therefore, that, for the beginning student of research, mastery of the specific techniques in one subject field will be less useful than a thorough understanding of the fundamental principles of research as applied in all fields. The problems of young scholars in the various fields prove upon close examination to be remarkably alike. It is assumed that, if these common problems are solved and if the basic ideas and methods of research are understood, the young scholar will then be able constructively to apply what he has learned to his own special field.

For many of the underlying ideas presented here, the author owes a long-standing debt of gratitude to the excellent scholars who have been his teachers, including especially Professors Chauncey B. Tinker and Stanley T. Williams of Yale University and Hyder E. Rollins of Harvard University, as well as a host of more recent colleagues and friends, particularly Professor Ben D. Wood of Columbia University. For the most useful thoughts in this book, the suggestions and — more important — the inspiration received from such men as these may well deserve the full credit. For the form in which these thoughts are here given, however, and for any aberrations from the principles which these wiser men have instilled in him, the author must accept complete responsibility.

Special acknowledgment should be made also to the many friendly and stimulating students in the author's classes who saw these materials in their preliminary form and who offered many helpful criti-

cisms and suggestions for their improvement. If he has been able to gather together information which will make more meaningful and beneficial the early stages in the training of young scholars, the author will feel satisfied that he has done a useful thing in writing this book.

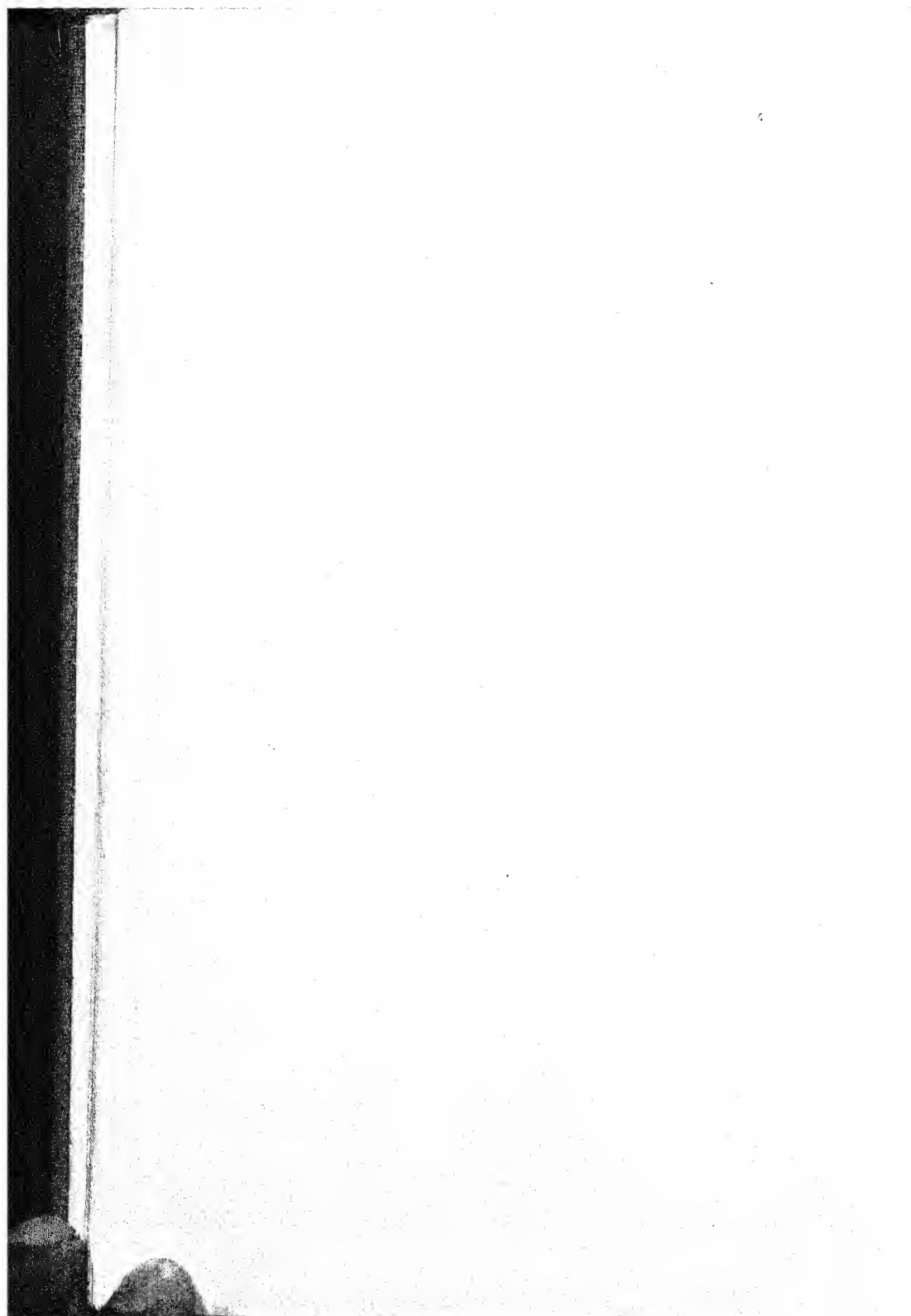
TYRUS HILLWAY



**PART ONE**

Research and  
Graduate Study





# 1

## THE ROLE OF RESEARCH

### IN MAN'S RISE FROM

### BARBARISM

Progress as we know it in the modern world would be impossible without research. Each year new products, new facts, new concepts, and new ways of doing things come into our lives as the result of it. Our national government as a regular policy now spends huge amounts of money to support research that will develop new weapons of war (like the hydrogen bomb) for the defense of our country against attack. Manufacturers carry on research to discover new products (like television in color) for the modern consumer. Agricultural experts perform experiments to find or develop new species of plant life or new breeds of cattle that will supply larger yields at smaller cost or that will prove immune to destructive diseases. Archaeologists are digging into the ruins of ancient cities to learn how our remote ancestors lived and conducted their affairs. Research is going on at this moment which no doubt will provide us with better and faster transportation, more comfortable and cheaper housing, medicines to cure our most critical illnesses, improved methods and materials for educating our children, a more thorough understanding of past history and of the times before recorded history began, more effective controls over our men-

tal processes — in fact, one could go on almost endlessly predicting the numerous benefits which will certainly result if research continues at its present rate in the years to come. /

### Who Carries on Research?

(Perhaps we are prone to believe that the progress of research will continue indefinitely and that a steady increase of our knowledge and powers can be taken for granted. But research cannot go on or learning advance unless men and women are constantly being trained for this vital work. /

The advancement of knowledge does not just happen; on the contrary, it requires constant effort by intelligent and highly trained people who spend their lives pushing back the boundaries of human ignorance. It is no exaggeration to say that nearly all the worthwhile discoveries and improvements in our present civilization came about through planned research. This was not always true, however, in man's history. The principles and methods of research that we now employ so effectively have been available to us only within comparatively recent years — recent, that is, in terms of man's long struggle to rise out of barbarism. What we now accept as a necessary and even routine part of modern civilized life — the techniques of research and the benefits resulting from them — could never have been dreamed of by our primitive forebears, though even they must have had within them that vital spark of imagination, that speculative power which has grown into the marvelous tool of learning we call research.

Everyone learns new facts and ideas in the ordinary ways, which are *chance*, *trial-and-error*, and *generalization from experience*. Man's first knowledge about fire, for instance, probably came to him by chance, through accidental means. Other things he undoubtedly learned by deliberately trying them out; for example, he may have discovered that certain herbs are poisonous merely by tasting them and then noting the after-effects. After a time, the things learned through chance or trial-and-error were very likely transmitted to other men, so that they became common knowledge. Thus began the building up of a permanent body of useful information about the world.

The accumulation of a general body of knowledge must have involved the drawing of broad conclusions from specific incidents of past experience. Perhaps this is how some of the early religious taboos originated. If it was observed that a number of persons in a tribe had been made ill by eating shellfish at the wrong time of the year, a little thinking about the matter might result in a prohibition against eating shellfish at any time. The kind of generalization we get from experience will depend very much upon the kind of experience we happen to have.

These three elementary methods of adding to the sum total of human knowledge (chance, trial-and-error, and generalization from experience) appear to be used by nearly everyone. But a great many people can also employ the method of *logic*, which is considerably different. By logic we "reason things out." Not only do we generalize from our experiences and from those of others, but with logic we can arrive at certain conclusions based upon our previous generalizations. Thus the logical method represents a step forward in man's development of the means by which he learns new things.

But going far beyond the elementary methods of chance, trial-and-error, and generalization from experience, and even beyond the more advanced method of logic, is that method of seeking truth which we call *research* or *scientific inquiry*. The greater part of this book is devoted more or less to the definition of research, to descriptions of its many forms, and to extensive discussions of how its results are accomplished. It will be enough here, however, to describe research briefly as a method of study by which, through the careful and exhaustive investigation of all the ascertainable evidence bearing upon a definable problem, we reach a solution to that problem. Research is an instrument which mankind has perfected very slowly over a period of several centuries, and it seems to be at present our most reliable means of advancing our knowledge. Its purpose, like that of all the other methods, is to discover facts and ideas not previously known to man.

### Earlier Methods of Adding to Knowledge

Before we can fully appreciate the tremendous advantages of research as a method of learning new truths, we must understand

tal processes — in fact, one could go on almost endlessly predicting the numerous benefits which will certainly result if research continues at its present rate in the years to come. /

### Who Carries on Research?

(Perhaps we are prone to believe that the progress of research will continue indefinitely and that a steady increase of our knowledge and powers can be taken for granted. But research cannot go on or learning advance unless men and women are constantly being trained for this vital work. /

The advancement of knowledge does not just happen; on the contrary, it requires constant effort by intelligent and highly trained people who spend their lives pushing back the boundaries of human ignorance. It is no exaggeration to say that nearly all the worthwhile discoveries and improvements in our present civilization came about through planned research. This was not always true, however, in man's history. The principles and methods of research that we now employ so effectively have been available to us only within comparatively recent years — recent, that is, in terms of man's long struggle to rise out of barbarism. What we now accept as a necessary and even routine part of modern civilized life — the techniques of research and the benefits resulting from them — could never have been dreamed of by our primitive forebears, though even they must have had within them that vital spark of imagination, that speculative power which has grown into the marvelous tool of learning we call research.

Everyone learns new facts and ideas in the ordinary ways, which are *chance*, *trial-and-error*, and *generalization from experience*. Man's first knowledge about fire, for instance, probably came to him by chance, through accidental means. Other things he undoubtedly learned by deliberately trying them out; for example, he may have discovered that certain herbs are poisonous merely by tasting them and then noting the after-effects. After a time, the things learned through chance or trial-and-error were very likely transmitted to other men, so that they became common knowledge. Thus began the building up of a permanent body of useful information about the world.

The accumulation of a general body of knowledge must have involved the drawing of broad conclusions from specific incidents of past experience. Perhaps this is how some of the early religious taboos originated. If it was observed that a number of persons in a tribe had been made ill by eating shellfish at the wrong time of the year, a little thinking about the matter might result in a prohibition against eating shellfish at any time. The kind of generalization we get from experience will depend very much upon the kind of experience we happen to have.

These three elementary methods of adding to the sum total of human knowledge (chance, trial-and-error, and generalization from experience) appear to be used by nearly everyone. But a great many people can also employ the method of *logic*, which is considerably different. By logic we "reason things out." Not only do we generalize from our experiences and from those of others, but with logic we can arrive at certain conclusions based upon our previous generalizations. Thus the logical method represents a step forward in man's development of the means by which he learns new things.

But going far beyond the elementary methods of chance, trial-and-error, and generalization from experience, and even beyond the more advanced method of logic, is that method of seeking truth which we call *research* or *scientific inquiry*. The greater part of this book is devoted more or less to the definition of research, to descriptions of its many forms, and to extensive discussions of how its results are accomplished. It will be enough here, however, to describe research briefly as a method of study by which, through the careful and exhaustive investigation of all the ascertainable evidence bearing upon a definable problem, we reach a solution to that problem. Research is an instrument which mankind has perfected very slowly over a period of several centuries, and it seems to be at present our most reliable means of advancing our knowledge. Its purpose, like that of all the other methods, is to discover facts and ideas not previously known to man.

### Earlier Methods of Adding to Knowledge

Before we can fully appreciate the tremendous advantages of research as a method of learning new truths, we must understand



something of the customs of thinking which preceded it. So far as we can tell, men have always tried in one way or another to learn more about themselves and the world in which they live. Curiosity has impelled us to probe the secrets of nature, even when such knowledge might not necessarily have any practical application. It is enough that we desire to know. Even small children exhibit in a remarkable degree this quality of curiosity. They are constantly asking questions. What are those tiny points of light in the sky which we call stars, and why do they move across the heavens? What makes the grass grow? Why is the grass green? How big is the earth? What makes people ill? How far away is the moon? Such questions as these, which we hear asked by children, probably were asked in a remoter day by our earliest ancestors upon the earth.

Until mankind had built up a considerable body of knowledge as a common heritage for educated men, these questions could not be answered in any manner that we should now consider reasonable. Primitive man could satisfactorily explain unusual facts or incidents only if he attributed them to magic and to the influence of some supernatural power. Thus objects of nature sometimes came to be regarded as the dwelling places of spirits who caused certain things to happen according to their whims. The sun in its journey across the sky, for example, could be explained as a chariot of fire driven by a god. A belief in magic provided a convenient means of accounting for anything which did not fit the pattern of understandable everyday experience. Even today, when some unusual event or coincidence occurs, there are people who are still willing to ascribe it to magical or supernatural influences without looking for a natural cause. Gradually, however, as man acquired more knowledge, many things formerly believed magical grew familiar, and natural explanations were found for them.

### **Appeal to Authority**

Mankind seems to have developed very early a sense of reliance upon authority. When a tribe was attacked, when it was struck by a pestilence, or when a river flooded the arable lands after heavy rains, people wanted to know why such a thing had happened to them. They would go for an explanation to their priests or wise

men. The priest might account for the visitation as punishment for sins or for failure to propitiate some god. Frequently the advice of the priests and the wise men was good advice, and men came to trust their chosen authorities implicitly.

Out of this age-old reliance upon authority seems to have grown the idea that the great thinkers of the past were able to discover the truth for all time and that man even today can best learn to know himself and his world by studying their writings. In Western civilization, the great period of reliance upon authority was the Middle Ages, when the teachings of the ancients (Plato, Aristotle, the early Christian Fathers, and others) had far higher standing as creditable sources than did first-hand observation and analysis of facts. For this reason, mistaken theories of early writers on medicine continued to be put into practice (because these writers were accepted authorities) long after experience had proved them wrong. Veneration for authorities led medieval scholars to adopt the attitude that copying, translating, or commenting on earlier works ranked as more important and respectable than personal investigation and original thinking. Truth, it was assumed, had been fully discovered and proclaimed by the scholars of the past; hence, to learn the truth about anything, one would need only to study the works of the right authority.

Nor did the practice of relying blindly on authority die out with the Middle Ages. In Soviet Russia today, to cite one example, the writings of Marx and Lenin on history, politics, economics, and other subjects are supported officially by the government as fixed and unalterable truth. It would be dangerous in Russia not to believe in these authorities, even when their teachings clearly do not agree with observed fact.

Since even the best authority can be wrong, the dangers of reliance on authority seem obvious. Sometimes, however, we find that a problem does not lend itself to scientific investigation. In such a case, the most nearly reliable *opinion* as to a solution may be that of a person who has had long experience with that problem and who has studied and thought much about it. We may assume that such a person's opinion on the subject would be worth more than that of someone chosen indiscriminately. We should call such a



person an authority. In a court of law, the expert opinion of a man who is recognized as an authority upon some subject may be accepted as testimony (or evidence) in a trial, especially when the question at issue depends upon opinion. What we are saying is that, when factual evidence that will solve a problem cannot be obtained, we may have to rely upon authoritative opinion for the time being as the only possible avenue to a solution. In such a case, the point at issue becomes the "authoritativeness" of the authority.

### **The Triumph of Reason**

Perhaps no other people contributed more than did the ancient Greeks toward the development of mental tools by which man may approach the problems of the universe. In devising and using logical and mathematical methods to ascertain facts and principles, the Greeks dealt a death blow to explanation by magic. Largely through their speculations Western man arrived at the concept of the universe as an ordered cosmos, in which everything happens according to definite laws of cause and effect. Beginning with a belief in the natural order of things, the Greeks set out to learn the characteristics of this natural order. They succeeded remarkably well.

Greek thinkers like Aristotle reasoned from the known to the unknown by a deductive process whose basis is the syllogism. The syllogism provides a means of testing the validity of any given conclusion or idea. To use a familiar example, we may state a given proposition as follows:

1. All men must die;
2. Socrates is a man;
3. Therefore, Socrates will die.

In this example, if the two preliminary statements (premises) can be shown to be true, it follows that any reasonable person must accede to the third statement (conclusion). By the rules of Greek logic, a conclusion properly deduced from reliable premises is itself inevitably reliable. Of course, this presupposes that every element in the argument has been carefully examined and all unrelated materials discarded, so that the premises are sound and an unbreakable chain of argument results.

Unfortunately, the method of deduction, however useful, sometimes deceives the user by its tendency to interest him in mental processes and skillful argumentation instead of keeping him on the path to truth. During the Middle Ages the followers of Aristotle's methods neglected his plain emphasis upon the direct observation of nature and formed the habit of deriving conclusions and generalizations by means of logic alone. Using the syllogism, they deduced both facts and principles from certain selected statements of approved authorities, often without checking upon their accuracy and reliability. By the clever use of this instrument and the appropriate selection of premises, they were able to "prove" almost anything. But such distortion of the method must be regarded as a mere *tour de force*, and it does not invalidate deductive logic as a mental tool. The great weakness of the syllogism, of course, lies in the possibility that one of the premises may be erroneous or that the premises may be unrelated; thus, unless each of the premises is carefully tested and the relationship shown, the conclusion may be wrong. Another serious weakness of the syllogism, as the study of semantics has recently shown us, is its dependence upon verbal symbolism.

### **Inductive Reasoning vs. Deductive Reasoning**

As we have seen, the Greeks developed through the use of reason alone a superb methodology of intellectual discovery which added many treasures to the wealth of human knowledge. The advances they made, particularly in geometry and the physical sciences, were not materially improved upon until the sixteenth century. They never succeeded, however, in developing and applying widely the idea of the scientific experiment. This did not arise until comparatively recent times.

We have also seen that the syllogism, which the Greeks invented, fosters *deductive reasoning*. That is, one deduces a specific, or particular, fact or conclusion from the relationship of two or more general facts or principles. In the late sixteenth century Francis Bacon broke with the tradition of his times and attacked this method of reasoning as unsound. He also severely criticized Aristotle and the followers of Aristotle for first deciding upon a conclusion and

then deliberately selecting facts and principles tending to support it. This is the method sometimes used in debating. When two opposing debaters marshal the arguments on both sides of a question, each is likely to be more interested in winning the debate — proving his side right through the power of logic and eloquence — than in finding the true answer. But Bacon was being a little hard on Aristotle, for the latter seems to have insisted on the necessity of basing generalizations upon facts. The followers of Aristotle in the Middle Ages, however, undoubtedly neglected this part of his teachings and adopted the habit of deriving their conclusions from generalities and from statements of presumed authorities.

Bacon — and, for that matter, Leonardo da Vinci before him — stressed the need for basing general conclusions upon specific facts through direct observation. This, of course, is what we know as *inductive reasoning* — that is, going from the particular to the general, rather than, as in deductive reasoning, from the general to the particular. Bacon advised the scholar to ignore authorities, to observe nature closely, to experiment, to draw his own inferences, to classify his facts in order to reach minor generalizations, and then to proceed from the minor generalizations to greater ones. He especially warned against formulating any hypothesis (or probable solution) until all the facts have been gathered. This system of reasoning has been termed mechanistic, because every step of the process is based on provable fact rather than on speculation or logic.

The plain truth is that many scholarly problems cannot be solved by inductive reasoning alone, as Charles Darwin found when he attempted zealously to follow Bacon's advice. For years he collected fact after fact in his biological researches, hoping that the facts themselves would lead to an important generalization. Fact-gathering, however, proved as unproductive of results as gathering bricks for a house when there is no architectural plan for building it. Not until Darwin stumbled upon a possible solution to the problem of how evolution takes place and began to test it by making deductions from it was he able to see how his facts could be put together to form a workable theory. He describes this event as follows:

My first note-book [on evolution] was opened in July 1837. I worked on true Baconian principles, and without any theory collected

facts on a wholesale scale, more especially with respect to domesticated productions, by printed enquiries, by conversation with skillful breeders and gardeners, and by extensive reading. When I see the list of books of all kinds which I read and abstracted, including whole series of Journals and Transactions, I am surprised at my industry. I soon perceived that selection was the keystone of man's success in making useful races of animals and plants. But how selection could be applied to organisms living in a state of nature remained for some time a mystery to me.

In October 1838, that is, fifteen months after I had begun my systematic enquiry, I happened to read for amusement 'Malthus on Population,' and being well prepared to appreciate the struggle for existence which everywhere goes on from long-continued observation of the habits of animals and plants, it at once struck me that under these circumstances favourable variations would tend to be preserved, and unfavourable ones to be destroyed. The result of this would be the formation of new species. Here then I had at last got a theory by which to work. . . .<sup>1</sup>

In other words, having gathered a considerable body of data, Darwin made a shrewd guess (derived from reading Malthus) as to what the data might mean. He formulated in his mind a tentative explanation of the facts he already knew and then proceeded, with his theory (or hypothesis) as a guide for further investigation, to see whether his idea would be supported or proved wrong by the additional evidence which could be gathered. Thus Darwin used both inductive and deductive reasoning to arrive at his final conclusions. This is a good example of how modern research works.

### The Scientific Method

The system Darwin used in seeking an explanation of biological evolution is often called the method of scientific inquiry. This method, of course, is effective not only for studies in the physical and biological sciences but for studies in any field.

Most modern research is conducted in accordance with the same method. Scientific inquiry as a method of learning new truth differs, as we have already seen, from the methods of chance, of trial-and-error, of generalization from experience, and of the syllogism. It also

<sup>1</sup> Francis Darwin, ed., *The Life and Letters of Charles Darwin*, 2 vols. (New York: D. Appleton and Co., 1899), I, 68.



differs from a way of learning often claimed by creative artists and by many scientists too — that of intuition. We should not rule out the possibility that valuable advances in knowledge may sometimes be the result of “unearned grants of insight,” to borrow the phrase of Walter B. Cannon. Many an important idea has arrived as a flash of intuition, like Athena springing from the brow of Zeus. But these insights that overleap methods are most likely to come to the scholar who has worked long and hard on a project, and he will subject them to the rigorous tests of the scientific method before he accepts them as truth. Intuition must be regarded as a fortuitous glimpse of truth which comes as the result of no conscious effort or plan. Intuitive insight, moreover, cannot be relied on without careful consideration of its applications; it can be wrong as easily as it can be right. Since the intuitive recognition of truth cannot be objectively analyzed, and since it cannot be controlled, we shall not here discuss it in detail; our concern is with the conscious method or planned procedure that has proved most useful in modern research.

A great research institution recently described the process which is used for all studies made by its staff. The process consists of several very definite steps. These are: (1) identification of the problem to be investigated, (2) collection of essential facts pertaining to the problem, (3) selection of one or more tentative solutions of the problem, (4) evaluation of these alternative solutions to determine which of them is in accord with all the facts, and (5) the final selection of the most likely solution. In general, these are the steps most commonly followed in all modern research. They are discussed in considerable detail in later chapters of this book.

① What are the distinguishing characteristics of this method? In the first place, it is based upon the belief that a natural explanation can be found for every observable phenomenon. It assumes that the universe is an ordered cosmos in which there is no result without a cause. Whereas primitive man ascribed anything unusual that he might see or hear to the special intervention of the gods, modern man looks for natural causes. Although there still remain many areas of knowledge that have resisted scientific investigation, we have had remarkable success in applying this fundamental assumption of the scientific method.

② In the second place, this method rejects reliance upon authority and substitutes the idea that conclusions are valid only when supported by evidence. The modern scholar does not accept the word of Aristotle or anyone else as authoritative unless he has confirmed it by an inspection of the facts. This entails both direct observation and experiment. Galileo reportedly investigated the rate of acceleration of falling bodies by dropping cannon balls of various weights from the leaning tower of Pisa in 1589. He did not satisfy himself by merely *reasoning* or by consulting authorities on the matter, but actually studied the facts by experimental means. Until his time it had been commonly assumed by thinking men, following Aristotle, that a heavy object naturally would fall to the ground faster than a lighter object. This assumption appears perfectly logical and reasonable to anyone who thinks about it without taking the trouble to test it by experiment. Galileo refused, however, to accept either authority or logic as the basis for his conclusions and so learned, perhaps to his own surprise, that the cannon balls he dropped, except for minor differences caused by the resistance of the air, would all fall at the same rate of speed.

③ Galileo's experiment also illustrates a third way in which the scientific method is unlike others. This is in the substitution, wherever possible, of actual observation for logic. Ideas and facts, whether arrived at through logic or taken from some authoritative source, must be tested and shown to be either true or false.

④ What we have said in the preceding paragraphs does not mean, of course, that either logic or authority can be entirely dispensed with in research. The statements of experts upon some subject may be useful when other evidence is lacking, and especially when we have no contrary evidence. Yet reliance upon authority does not in itself constitute scientific investigation, and it may lead the investigator astray. We must also say that arguments advanced in the support of any conclusion should always be logical. In other words, the conclusion ought to be consistent with the evidence and with known facts and experience within the field of study. Logic may be thought of as the language of reasoning (relating to quality), just as mathematics is the language of measurement (relating to quantity or size). The use of logic, therefore, is essential to scientific inquiry.

### The Development of Research

To write a complete history of research would be a considerable undertaking. A perspective may be gained, perhaps, by mentioning a few of the most important milestones in the development of our present proficiency in this type of activity.

[We have no very clear idea of any point in human history at which we can say research began. While much of what man learned in the primitive cultures undoubtedly was the result of chance, trial-and-error, and generalization from experience, probably a few men even in very early times made a conscious and systematic effort to discover new knowledge. No doubt one of the first products of such an effort was the calendar. By the use of a calendar it became possible to predict the seasons and thus to know when the crops could be planted.] The custodians of such information were the first scholars. [And because this knowledge appeared mysterious and even sacred to the ordinary person, it was recorded and guarded by the priests.] In Egypt, for example, [the priests became versed in mathematics and invented surveying, so that proper land boundaries could be restored after the annual floods of the Nile.] Certain medical data were also recorded; we can still find, carved on stone in hieroglyphics, instructions regarding the cure of several diseases and advice on dental surgery.

[Agriculture and medicine may well have been the earliest fields of research, with astronomy close behind as the ancient astronomers learned to use mathematics as a tool in their studies. When Ptolemy explained the motions of the stars, he did so in mathematical terms. He broke with his predecessors in refusing to ascribe the movements of heavenly bodies to supernatural causes—a great heresy in his day and an important step in the direction of modern research.

Following the example of the priests, the men who conducted early research by the use of mathematics or logic in science, literature, ethics, and other fields often regarded their discoveries as almost mystical and as not to be shared with the common run of their fellow-beings. Thus the followers of Pythagoras are said to have murdered one of their number who had betrayed some of the principles of geometry to the general public in a speech he had given.

This attitude is a far cry from that of today's scholar, who looks upon his discoveries as a contribution to the world's knowledge and not as a private possession. ]

Great advances in the principles of research were made by the ancient Greeks. Building partly upon previous discoveries recorded by the Egyptians and Babylonians, the Greek thinkers delved particularly into astronomy, medicine, physics, and geography, and some of them explored literature and ethics. A few instances will illustrate the scope and the fundamental importance of their contributions to the sum of human learning. Among the earliest whose names we know were Thales and Anaximander (about 600 B.C.), whose principal work was done in astronomy. Pythagoras, living at nearly the same period, studied physical geography and notably furthered the growth of mathematical and philosophical speculation. Democritus (about 400 B.C.) proposed the atomistic theory to explain the structure of matter, though he had no means of investigating the problem experimentally. Hippocrates, often called the "father of medicine," was a pupil of Democritus who revolutionized medical knowledge and practice by insisting upon exact and careful diagnosis and the study of the body and its functions. Aristotle (fourth century B.C.), though best known as a philosopher and logician, added much to our knowledge of many fields, including animal anatomy. Theophrastus, a follower of Aristotle, established a systematic method of studying botany. Archimedes (third century B.C.) worked with physics. Strabo, who settled in Rome about 20 B.C., developed geography as a science. Ptolemy (second century A.D.) was an Egyptian who used Grecian and Egyptian mathematics and science to devise the first satisfactory theory to account for the movements of the planets.

The Romans were the heirs and perpetuators of Greek learning, but their own genius was more for practical application than for the pursuit of knowledge for its own sake. They were lawmakers and engineers rather than speculative thinkers. After the decline of the Graeco-Roman civilization and the break-up of the Roman Empire, not only the methods of research but many of its accumulated fruits were for a time virtually lost to Western Europe. Early Christians tended to avoid pagan books and art. Moreover, the search for sec-

ular knowledge appeared far less worthy than preparation of the soul for eternity. In the Mohammedan countries, on the other hand, the tradition of research persisted. Chemistry began to be studied by the Arabs, from whom it spread to medieval Europe as alchemy, a pseudo-science based upon the futile search for a method of transmuting base metals into gold. In somewhat the same way, early astronomy degenerated into astrology, another pseudo-science, which attempted to trace the influence of the stars upon human life. In short, when men failed to check authority against experience, when they compounded error by deducing erroneous conclusions from erroneous or imperfectly understood premises, learning drifted away from truth.

In the Middle Ages, as we have previously noted, it was widely believed that all essential knowledge had already been discovered and that to learn it one had only to refer to past authorities. Nevertheless, a few men continued to make their own efforts at research, though it was literally dangerous to challenge the accepted authorities. Men like Roger Bacon in the thirteenth century were popularly suspected of dealing in black magic and had to conduct their researches in secret. Copernicus, as late as the sixteenth century, suffered persecution at the hands of the ecclesiastical authorities and had to renounce his theories publicly after he had substituted a heliocentric for a geocentric explanation of the planets' movements.

The great march of modern research, especially in the field of the natural sciences, can be only adumbrated here. It really began with Galileo's experimental work in physics at the dawn of the seventeenth century. This was a wonderful century, made glorious by such achievements as the invention of logarithms by Napier in 1614, the researches of Harvey on the circulation of the blood, the use of decimal notation by Briggs (1617), the publication of Francis Bacon's momentous theories in his *Novum Organum* (1620), Boyle's emergence as the "father of modern chemistry," and Newton's mathematical concepts of the laws of gravity (1679).

In the eighteenth century geology and biology rose as new fields for study. Later, in the nineteenth century, the work of such men as Lyell and Darwin in these areas transformed our entire picture of the physical world. The study of archaeology (beginning with

the excavations at the site of Troy by Schliemann) and of psychology (growing out of the pseudo-sciences of physiognomy and phrenology) began in the nineteenth century. Such developments as the use of biochemistry and bacteriology in the conquest of medical problems and the use of new concepts in physics to accomplish the breaking-down of the atom have taken place largely during the twentieth century.

In the meantime, research has begun in such relatively new fields as social relations, economics, education, and similar areas. This means that we have now applied in these fields and in the humanities the methods of study previously used only in the field of science. We are nearing (though we have not yet achieved it) the perfection of the scientific method as a tool of research for all fields of human study. The remarkable growth of our technology and of all other elements in our present civilization may be attributed very largely to our use of research. To see its results, we have only to look around us.

### **The Scientific Method as a Means of Arriving at Truth**

No one can confidently claim that the scientific method is the only means of arriving at truth. It is admittedly only a tool geared to the exploration of objective reality. Thus, scientific research may establish the date of a Shakespearean sonnet, but it cannot communicate the aesthetic experience of reading that sonnet — an experience that may be as much a part of the whole “truth” about that sonnet as the date. Scientific research can tell us what various people *have believed* or how they *have behaved* on certain social issues, but not what we *should believe* or how we *ought to behave*. What we can hope to do in extending the scientific method into hitherto non-scientific fields is to establish truth insofar as it is objectively demonstrable, and in so doing to widen the basis for rational agreement among men and to give our values more validity by anchoring them more firmly in what we can prove to be so.

The truth discovered by research does not necessarily constitute the whole or final truth about life and the universe. As we discover new facts and formulate new conclusions, our knowledge constantly has to be revised. Research appears preferable to other methods of



adding to man's knowledge merely because it has proved more productive and more accurate than the others. We cannot yet say that it gives promise of solving all human problems.

### **Summary**

Beginning with his natural curiosity about anything he could not understand, man has gradually developed ways of thinking and of investigating his problems which today are producing astonishing results. No longer does man ascribe natural phenomena to supernatural influences, and no longer does he rely blindly upon accepted authority. He has developed an orderly system of searching for truth which, by basing conclusions upon factual evidence, and by using logic as a means of showing relationships between related ideas, has given him better and more accurate answers to his many questions. This orderly system is what we call research.

# 2

## THE GRADUATE STUDENT

### AND HIS OPPORTUNITIES

The typical American graduate student seems to think of the graduate school as the unavoidable barrier which he must hurdle in his race for a higher degree. The degree itself, and not the education which he is receiving, too often is regarded as the main prize. The degree may be necessary to insure the student's advancement in his profession; it is a tangible badge of achievement for all to see and admire. The student is tempted, therefore, to think of all the many requirements which block the way between himself and the degree—the classwork, the comprehensive examinations, the thesis or dissertation, and so on—as annoying and arbitrary obstacles placed in his path by the graduate faculty.

Generally it requires maturity and several years of experience to understand and fully appreciate the opportunities presented in graduate study. The great libraries, the carefully selected faculty, the special facilities for individual research—these tremendous advantages, placed at the disposal of the student in the modern graduate school, have been brought together only as the result of long years of effort and considerable expenditure of money by university administrations. The student will derive the maximum benefit from his graduate career if he avoids the temptation to seek short cuts to his degree and concentrates his attention upon the proper use of the educational opportunities which the graduate school so richly provides.

Traditionally the student chooses his graduate school because he wants to work under the great scholars who are assembled on its faculty. In actual practice, however, many other factors also influence the student's choice. The location of the school, the reputation of certain of its academic departments, the cost of tuition, convenience, and even chance affect this vital decision. Furthermore, so many students are today crowding into our universities that a person may be forced by the competition of better qualified applicants to select some other school than the one he considers most desirable. At mid-century, approximately 200,000 students were reported to be enrolled in the graduate schools of the United States, and the number seems to be increasing each year. Unfortunately, all these factors have tended to destroy the close personal relationships between professor and student which are among the greatest of the joys and benefits of graduate study.

#### **How Graduate Study Differs from Undergraduate Study**

Is graduate work really different in kind from undergraduate work, or does it consist merely of additional courses and slightly more advanced instruction? Is there something distinctive and special about the courses with higher numbers in the college catalogue which in many cases are marked "open only to graduate students"? To many young people the answers to these questions remain a mystery until after several months of graduate study have been completed.

Actually there are profound and fundamental differences between the graduate program and the undergraduate program. While the line between them cannot always be clearly drawn, the aims of graduate education in American universities are not the same as those to which the student has become accustomed in his undergraduate experience.

Generally speaking, the first four years of college — especially in the standard college of liberal arts — are aimed at broadness and rich diversification of educational growth in the individual. President A. Whitney Griswold of Yale University once compared the ideal collegiate atmosphere to "Madison and Jefferson talking to each other about everything under the sun," and though not every

educator would subscribe to Griswold's emphasis upon discussion and the mutual exchange of ideas as the elemental educating force in college, nearly all would agree upon the need for wide contacts with at least the major fields of human knowledge. As a matter of fact, our colleges almost without exception, even including those whose purposes are chiefly professional (that is, vocational), stress the so-called "liberalizing" function of the undergraduate program.

Former Dean McConnell of the University of Minnesota described the objectives of the typical undergraduate program in these terms:

The purpose of the liberal college is to provide a well-rounded education that will fit men and women to utilize their abilities to the fullest extent in understanding the broad cultural foundations, the significant accomplishments, and the unfinished business of their society; in participating intelligently in community life and public affairs; in enjoying literature and the arts; in building a set of values that will constitute a "design for living"; in developing and maintaining sound physical and mental health; and in taking a socially responsible part in the world of work.<sup>1</sup>

Similarly, a great many modern educators have insisted that the aim of the American college must be not to prepare narrowly trained specialists, but to turn out men and women of broad cultural background.<sup>2</sup>

The ideal of developing liberally educated men and women is, of course, not new. Indeed, recent comments on the subject (like those of Griswold and McConnell, above) sound very much like the famous remarks of John Henry Newman, English clergyman and scholar of the nineteenth century. Newman described the ideally educated gentleman as one who

is at home in any society, . . . has common ground with every class; he knows when to speak and when to be silent; he is able to converse, he is able to listen; he can ask a question pertinently, and gain a lesson seasonably, when he has nothing to impart himself; he is ever ready, yet never in the way; he is a pleasant companion, and a comrade you can depend upon; he knows when to be serious and when to

<sup>1</sup> T. R. McConnell, "Liberal Education and Specialization," in *The American College*, ed. P. F. Valentine (New York: Philosophical Library, 1949), p. 82.

<sup>2</sup> See, for example, the report of the Harvard committee, *General Education in a Free Society* (Cambridge: Harvard University Press, 1945).

trifle; and he has a sure tact which enables him to trifle with gracefulness and to be serious with effect. He has the repose of a mind which lives in itself, while it lives in the world, and which has resources for its happiness at home when it cannot go abroad. He has a gift which serves him in public, and supports him in retirement, without which good fortune is but vulgar, and with which failures and disappointment have a charm.<sup>3</sup>

It is essential to understand that these aims of a liberal education — the development of the kind of person both Newman and McConnell so attractively describe, though speaking for different areas — are not the aims of graduate education at all. The graduate school assumes that its entering students have already been broadly educated. The ultimate purpose of the graduate school is to train specialists. This is the first of the fundamental differences between graduate and undergraduate programs.

In the kind of collegiate program offered in the undergraduate years, it is easy to see that the student could successfully complete his courses, receive a baccalaureate degree, and become what one would recognize as a thoroughly cultured person without ever having been, in the strict sense of the word, a scholar. The scholar is not simply an educated person or one with high academic ability, though the term is sometimes used loosely to indicate any person who is attending school. By definition, the scholar is a *learned* person, one with special competence in a particular branch of the world's knowledge. The graduate student is an apprentice in scholarship. By entering the graduate school he has committed himself to the joys as well as the tribulations of the scholar's life. What this really means is that a new and challenging kind of existence is opening before him.

**Graduate Work Introduces Intensive Study of a Special Field.** An important aspect of graduate education, then, is concentration upon one special field of study. Instead of the goal of broad cultural development, the student now sets as his goal an expert and thorough acquaintance with one subject. It is obvious that no one in our modern world can be expert on every subject; therefore we have

<sup>3</sup> John Henry Newman, *The Idea of a University*, ed. Charles Frederick Harrold (New York and London: Longmans, Green and Co., 1947), pp. 157-158.

specialists. By narrowing the area to be studied, the student can dig deeper and acquire a greater understanding of details.

Some people fear over-specialization. If the graduate student has had the advantage of a broad, liberal education before beginning his concentration on a particular field, however, there would seem to be little point to such fears. Furthermore, the person who delves into one subject with real thoroughness quickly finds that it leads him into numerous other subjects. Literature, for example, cannot be studied intensively without a fairly good knowledge of history, philosophy, and linguistics. Investigations in the field of education require a thorough grounding in psychology and the social sciences. The deeper one goes into any subject, the more he is impressed by the essential unity of all areas of human learning. It is only the superficial scholar who becomes over-specialized. The true scholar broadens his knowledge at the same time that he carries forward his particular study of a narrow field.

**Graduate Study Characteristically Involves Research.** Undergraduate work ordinarily consists in reviewing facts and ideas that are already known. The graduate student, on the other hand, attempts to discover new truth. This is the second major difference between these two levels of educational experience.

In learning the vocation of the scholar, the graduate student must become familiar with the methods used in conducting sound research. The scholar's real reason for being is to acquire knowledge, not for himself but for mankind, by pushing back the boundaries of human ignorance. Scholarship means the search for new truth, even though the contributions of any one person can rarely be spectacular and can be arrived at only through painstaking labor. The individual scholar adds his bit to the world's discoveries, and by the slow accumulation of the small truths in many fields our civilization moves ahead. The systematic and efficient pursuit of this objective, by methods which are learned in graduate school, is what we mean by scholarly research.

Requiring, as it does, intellectual effort of the most demanding kind, the scholarly life rarely is anything but an arduous one. Yet it is one of the most challenging of human activities. Our knowledge of our universe and of our place in it remains extremely limited.



Vast areas for investigation and speculation lie unexplored. The search for new truth requires, of course, that the scholar shall have a firm knowledge of the discoveries already made; and this means endless acquisition and careful digestion of all the known facts and ideas in the student's field. Sometimes the long process of acquiring and organizing the materials that his predecessors have discovered may prove discouraging. Yet no scholar can hope to make new contributions to his field unless he is familiar with the existing body of knowledge.

As he gathers understanding of his field, the student soon learns that the world—and even the scholarly world—fairly swarms with half-truths and downright untruths. Thus the continued practice of the scholarly role tends to develop an attitude of skepticism toward accepted ideas. This need not prove a weak or unhealthy development. At its best, this attitude prevents the scholar from succumbing to false evidence and from reaching conclusions not based upon a critical examination of the facts. The critical attitude, in short, helps to eliminate error.

Most graduate students, once they have begun to familiarize themselves with the entire topography of one field of knowledge and have explored a little in the unknown region beyond its borders, feel that research is both valuable and intensely exciting, even though it may not have immediate "practical" bearing. There is, for example, no evidence that research makes better teachers—and the work of the scholar frequently includes teaching. On the other hand, many eminent scholars have been successful both in teaching and in research. The important thing for the graduate student to recognize, however, is that his graduate school experience will include both concentration upon the known materials in his own particular field of study (sometimes called the "major") and preparation for the more significant and serious duty of searching for new truth to add to that field. In other words, he must not only learn what others in his field have thought, but he must begin to do some original thinking of his own. These are the principal obligations of the scholar.

### **The Graduate Student as Apprentice in Scholarship**

In one sense, the graduate student may be regarded as an appren-

tice. Just as craftsmen learn their skills by working under the direction of masters in the craft, so the young scholar may become acquainted with the spirit and methods of research by serving a kind of apprenticeship under one or more of the active research men on the faculty of the graduate school. Perhaps no more effective way of learning this type of activity could be devised. Besides providing a means of observing an expert in action, it also gives the beginner ideal conditions under which to learn through actual doing. Frequent consultations between professor and student — or master and apprentice — help to correct the learner's errors as well as to delineate the various techniques of research which will be most fruitful in his particular field. The expert will also be familiar with, and consequently will draw the student's attention to, the important men and the outstanding research already accomplished in that field.

On the other hand, the graduate student is expected — indeed, required — to attain the art of working independently. Although graduate study constitutes a period of training, during which the student continues to do his work under direction, even the first-year graduate student should be mature enough to exercise initiative in developing his own plan of study and research. He should not expect a blueprint of his program to be provided by his professors but should be able to acquire much of the necessary information through reading and observation. Research projects are not ordinarily assigned by the faculty, although occasionally they may be. It is more customary for a professor to act in the capacity of the student's adviser, approving, disapproving, or suggesting revisions of the student's plans.

Recently there has developed a new approach to some types of scholarly investigation in the form of what has been called "cooperative research." Instead of working individually upon a project, a group of research people interested in a major study will join forces and become a research team. This method is widely used in scientific laboratories, in social science surveys, and in the field of education. Work on the project is planned in such a way that various aspects of the study are allocated among the different members of the team. This has the advantage of bringing to bear upon a single project the varied judgments and special skills of the several workers

who make up the group. The method can prove particularly effective when the project attacked is of considerable magnitude—the study, for example, of an entire school system or of the economic structure of a large city.

### **Other Aspects of Graduate Study**

While training in research usually forms a part of graduate education, the work of the graduate school need not be aimed exclusively—or even primarily—at the production of trained investigators. In many colleges today students are admitted into graduate classes who have no intention of devoting their lives to research or even of acquiring advanced academic degrees. This has come about because colleges have acknowledged that persons preparing for certain careers may profit from graduate courses of their own choosing and that higher training in various combinations of subjects may sometimes be more useful and desirable, especially for teachers, than specialization in any one subject.

Yale University, following this line of reasoning, established in the thirties a division of general studies as a part of its graduate school. The student who enters this program is permitted to study advanced subjects in several related fields. At the time of its innovation, this departure from the traditional concentration upon one area seemed heretical to many educators. Numerous other institutions—for example, the University of California, the Colorado State College, and several more in the western part of the United States—have abolished in some departments or for certain classes of student the customary requirement of a formal thesis in preparation for the Master of Arts degree. These changes probably indicate a trend away from exclusive concern with specialization and research in our graduate schools.

Nevertheless, the graduate student is wise if he keeps in mind the necessity of learning thoroughly the techniques and language of research. It is this aspect of his graduate education which is most likely to make the experience profitable and meaningful to him. If nothing else, the training will help him to read intelligently the reports of research in his field, without the knowledge of which he cannot hope to keep abreast of its most significant and interesting developments.

Recently some educators have been advising those who guide the destinies of the graduate schools to place more emphasis in the curriculum upon training for teaching. In all but a few fields, they argue, the majority of our graduate students will go on to earn their livings as professors in colleges, where the principal part of the job will be teaching and not research work.

No doubt it is true that, while the aim of advancing knowledge by training young investigators in the universities and research institutes has been pretty generally accepted as the traditional function of the graduate school, the teacher-training function has been neglected. It would seem logical, if a graduate student expects to become a teacher, to provide him with specific training for that goal. There are two opposing schools of thought on this question. Some educators insist that attention to such matters as teaching methods and educational theory will rob the student of time that he should be devoting to the study of his particular subject, and that teacher-training, in any case, is not the proper function of the graduate school. Others hold that the graduate school which is interested primarily in the advancement of knowledge cannot produce effective teachers.

While no attempt can be made here to settle the argument, it should be clear that not all graduate schools have the same purpose in mind. In fact, some graduate schools aim at more than one objective. Generally speaking, the most common purposes may be summarized as follows: (1) to advance human knowledge, (2) to train scholars for research work, (3) to prepare students for a profession, such as teaching, and (4) to offer one or more years of advanced instruction along the lines of the students' interests or special needs.

Regardless of the student's purpose in attending the graduate school, however, the study and practice of research can be definitely advantageous. As Professor Tufts has declared, personal contact with productive research workers can make the experience of graduate study in a university truly liberalizing. The great universities number on their faculties representatives of every major field of human knowledge. They are searching for truth on every front. There is a contagious enthusiasm in such a situation. Perhaps no teachers are more interesting and inspiring than those who are them-

selves contributing to new discovery through creative scholarship. Furthermore, when the student undertakes and carries through a piece of research, when he finds a new problem for study and applies to the solution his own original thought and his own analysis of the evidence relating to it, something of tremendous importance happens to him. He will never again be quite the same person.<sup>4</sup>

### **Different Methods of Instruction**

The relatively greater maturity of graduate students as compared with undergraduate students, and their more extensive preparation in the subject matter, make it possible for graduate schools to use methods of instruction which may not be completely effective at the lower levels. One of these is the seminar. In the typical seminar class, a small group of students, having selected or been assigned certain problems for individual investigation, meet with a professor to talk about what they have discovered. Such meetings allow for a good deal of discussion and argument. New ideas or interpretations may be presented and challenged, and the student learns to defend the conclusions to which his investigations have led him. Frequently, in the seminar, the discussion follows the reading of a formal report upon some investigation by one of the students. At other times the professor or the students themselves may propose topics to be discussed by the entire group or by a panel of its members.

The seminar method, of course, is not confined exclusively to graduate classes, nor are all classes on the graduate level conducted in this way. The lecture method is rather commonly used, and in some fields there may be a considerable amount of laboratory work. Through the seminar, however, it has been found that open and free discussion among groups of graduate students, with one or more professors to guide and advise, is one of the most fruitful sources of original ideas and one of the best ways to inculcate the habit of critical thinking.

<sup>4</sup> See James H. Tufts, "The Graduate School," in *Higher Education in America*, ed. Raymond A. Kent (Boston: Ginn and Company, 1930), pp. 350-366.

### Attitudes and Habits to Be Developed

It may be well to point out here some of the attitudes and habits which the student should develop or intensify in order to make the most of his graduate school experience.

The graduate student must be observant. He must notice details and be accurate in observing and interpreting them. Details are the raw materials of truth. If observation is careless or interpretation faulty, the generalizations or major conclusions based upon them will be unsound. For many centuries it was believed that small animals and insects were generated spontaneously from the rags, grains, and other refuse that collected in corners and from the mud and slime at the edges of pools. Observers who saw mice and insects emerging from piles of rubbish or rats struggling out of shallow water and mud banks interpreted these phenomena as examples of spontaneous generation. Even after the more complete and accurate observations of William Harvey (whose *Omnis ex Ovo* appeared in 1651) tended to show that all forms of life descended from older living things, the belief in spontaneous generation persisted as a legacy of inaccurate observation and interpretation.

There is an allied danger in reaching conclusions based upon insufficient observation. Until the invention of the microscope, for example, men had no way of knowing that certain minute forms of life existed. The microscope, in making possible more complete and accurate observation, overthrew many long-accepted theories about the nature of our world.

The graduate student must maintain an attitude of objectivity toward the pursuit of knowledge. Prejudices and premature decisions have no place in scholarship. The scholar does not make up his mind about a problem until he has gathered all the evidence and weighed every fact carefully and justly. Although it is not always easy to give up a pet theory or a comfortable belief, the scholar must be willing, like the judge and jury in a court of law, to let the weight of evidence decide the question.

The graduate student must be willing to study all the available evidence on any subject under consideration. In the first place, he must be familiar enough with his field to be able to find the evidence.



For example, he should never be satisfied that he has familiarized himself thoroughly with a subject until he has read everything, published or unpublished, which has been written about it. There are times when it will be necessary to travel considerable distances or to purchase photostatic copies of documents, and this involves both time and expense. Research foundations are sometimes called upon, though not as a rule by graduate students, to supply funds for such expense when a scholar is not able to bear the full cost himself. By whatever means he may proceed, however, the student should recognize the fact that he cannot fully understand a subject or arrive at sound conclusions about it unless he can get at the evidence.

Furthermore, he must never ignore adverse evidence. It is tempting, in the development of a new idea, to skirt around facts and arguments that are contrary to the proposition which the scholar is trying to prove. A good scholar — and an honest one — does not hide contrary evidence but either explains it and refutes it or changes his theories to fit the facts. If there are facts which defy explanation or which cannot be reconciled with the pattern of the scholar's theory, they must at least be admitted. To use an example from recent scholarship, the discoveries in the field of extra-sensory perception which have been made by Rhine and his associates at Duke University cannot be reconciled with our present knowledge of the physical world. Although the experiments have been carried on in accordance with accepted practices in psychology, very few scholars are inclined to accept the conclusions which have been reached. It seems obvious that either the methods and conclusions are fallacious or some of our current conceptions of the world need to be revised. In any case, the Rhine experiments cannot be ignored entirely.

The graduate student must be able to recognize relationships of cause and effect. He must be logical in his approach to knowledge. That is, he must exercise caution in attributing to any phenomenon the power to cause another phenomenon until he has eliminated all other possibilities. This whole question will be discussed at some length later in this book. It is enough here to say that the student's ideas in any study that he makes must be developed logically and consistently.

The graduate student must be original in his thinking. Too many beginners in scholarship seem to believe that research consists merely

of searching for and cataloguing the statements of other people on the subject being studied. It is not uncommon for a student in a graduate class to hand in a paper which is nothing more than a long series of quotations or paraphrases of published materials. Simply to know what others have discovered about a subject is not enough. The one essential ingredient of research is original thought. The ability of the student to use his own mind in formulating fresh and unhackneyed ideas will determine more accurately than anything else the measure of his success in graduate work.

### Applying the Scientific Attitude

All these habits and attitudes of the scholar, of course, imply that the true scholar bases his conclusions not upon fancy but upon facts and that he discovers and analyzes these facts in an orderly way. This process we sometimes call the scientific method and this point of view the scientific attitude. It means basing generalizations not upon the authority of others or upon abstract logic or upon one's own opinions but chiefly upon carefully observed facts.

The scientific attitude is characteristic of the leading thinking of our time. Not only in the natural sciences and in scholarship generally, but in all phases of our civilized life, its influence may be discerned. Alfred P. Sloan, Jr., former head of the General Motors Corporation, emphasizes its importance in the development of American industry and business:

The great difference in managerial technique between the industry of today as compared with that of yesterday is what might be referred to as the necessity of the scientific approach, the elimination of operation by hunches; this affects men, tools and methods. Many associate the word scientific with physics. But it means much more than that. Scientific management means a constant search for the facts, the true actualities, and their intelligent, unprejudiced analysis. Thus, and in no other way, policies and their administration are determined. I keep saying to the General Motors organization that we are prepared to spend any proper amount of money to get the facts. Only by increased knowledge can we progress, perhaps I had better say survive. That is really research, but few realize that research can and should be just as effectively used in all functional branches of industry as in physics.<sup>5</sup>

<sup>5</sup> Alfred P. Sloan, Jr., and Boyden Sparkes, *Adventures of a White-Collar Man* (New York: Doubleday, Doran and Co., 1941), pp. 140-141.

It should not be assumed, however, that all research must have a practical, utilitarian object. When the structure of the atom was first investigated, it is doubtful if any scientist working at the problem had in mind the ultimate construction of an atomic bomb. The incentive which really impels the scholar is *the desire to know*. Men seek the truth because that is the character of the human mind. The curiosity inherent in us is apparent even among small children in the explanations they demand as they become aware of life's phenomena. The scholar searches more diligently for his facts than does the average person, but his motive remains the same. He simply wishes to know.

While the importance of research in the development of our modern civilization has been discussed in the preceding chapter, it must be clearly understood that no research activity need be justified by its probable contribution to comfort, convenience, or profit. Adding his bit — however lacking in practical usefulness it may seem at the time — to the sum total of the world's knowledge amply suffices as a reason for the scholar's existence. Sooner or later his discoveries may have a practical use, as when the knowledge possessed by scholars in the field of linguistics helped to break enemy codes during World War II. But immediately applicable or not, the quest for new truth can be justified by man's natural interest in breaking down the barriers of the unknown.

From the scholarly point of view, the study of ancient archaeological ruins for the purpose of learning the characteristics of an early culture in an obscure corner of the earth is as important as the application of newly discovered physical principles to the manufacture of an industrial machine. Truth, in other words, is worth discovering for its own sake. The scholar selects that area of study in which he as an individual has developed the greatest personal interest and seeks to expand mankind's knowledge of that field.

### **Reporting the Results of Scholarly Investigations**

In addition to learning acceptable techniques of research — that is, techniques likely to assist him in locating and analyzing his data and in arriving at sound conclusions about them — in addition to this and to building in himself the attitudes and habits which mark the

true scholar, the graduate student must also learn how to present his discoveries to the world in effective form. The ultimate goal of research is publication of its results.

The first step in this respect for the graduate student will be to distinguish clearly between the research report and the essay. As an undergraduate, he probably wrote a number of essays, and these consisted very largely of expressions of his own opinion or summaries of his reading. Any originality in these essays no doubt came from the uniqueness of the student's impressions, from new ways of putting together the information presented, or from the manner of writing. The essays were judged as to accuracy and completeness of subject matter, clarity of style, general organization, interest, and so on; but the student was not held to such rigid standards of form and content as is the writer of a research report.

It should be remembered that the research report is written for informed scholars in one's own field. This does not mean that it needs to be uninteresting or stuffy. Scholars, like other people, appreciate clear and well-organized writing. Nevertheless, the research report seldom has a popular appeal, because only a small number of persons are sufficiently oriented to the scholar's field to read reports of research with full understanding. The report, then, is necessarily addressed to a limited and very critical audience.

Preparing the report of a scholarly study is in many ways like the preparation of a legal brief. Certain kinds of material are barred. For example, just as hearsay evidence is not admitted in a court of law, in a research report ideas based upon conjecture or derived from uncertain or questionable sources must usually be ruled out as invalid. The scholar must carefully describe the problem he has studied, the methods by which he has gathered and analyzed his data, and the significant conclusions he has reached.

Four kinds of statement may be admitted in the research report. These are: (1) a basic assumption, (2) a statement of fact, (3) the writer's opinion, and (4) the opinion of an authority in the field. A *basic assumption* is any presumed fact so commonly known and accepted that it needs no proof. No study can be made without assuming certain things as true. These things need not be supported by examples or documentation, but they should be named in such a

way that the reader will readily recognize them as basic assumptions which the scholar believes to be commonly accepted as true. For every *statement of fact* the scholar should indicate the source. That is, he should explain exactly how he knows it to be a fact. Usually this is accomplished either by using a footnote which gives full details as to where the information may be found or by describing the writer's first-hand observation of some phenomenon. The *writer's opinion* should always be labeled as opinion and not presented as fact. In general, it is better to avoid statements of opinion, even though there may be instances in which they are justified. When presenting the *opinion of a recognized authority* as evidence for any contention, the student should be careful to evaluate the worth of such opinion as well as to distinguish clearly between this type of evidence and that which is derived from direct observation or demonstrable fact. These matters will be discussed later in much more detail. They are mentioned here principally to show that a real difference exists between the research report and the ordinary collegiate essay.

It goes without saying that the written report prepared by a student should be perfect as to mechanical details. That is, the student should use acceptable grammar and should not expect his professors to correct errors in English usage. The physical form in which a report can be presented — the nature of the title page, the style used in footnotes, and similar considerations — usually is prescribed by the university and fully described in one of its publications or in a style book which it recommends. Needless to say, the student should become thoroughly acquainted with such requirements before putting his report into its final form.

Most institutions regard the thesis or dissertation as evidence that the student has developed the capacity to pursue the study of a worthwhile problem independently and successfully and that he knows how to present the results of such a study in acceptable form.

### **The Objective of the Graduate School**

"*Connaitre — c'est chercher*," said Pascal. Graduate schools, for the most part, are committed to the philosophy that every student must learn the truth for himself through independent inquiry. For

this purpose great libraries and other facilities are placed at the disposal of the student. He is trained in tried and sound methods for the pursuit of truth. He is expected not only to become familiar in detail with all the present knowledge of his field but also to discover on his own initiative previously unrecorded facts and ideas.

The late President Nicholas Murray Butler of Columbia University called the fully trained scholar "a broad man sharpened to a point." Graduate work should provide the necessary sharpening of the student already broadly educated. His energies and abilities will then be directed at effective and satisfying activity in one field. This ideal — the cultured and well-informed man trained as a specialist in one segment of human knowledge and able to exercise leadership in the intellectual life of the nation and the world — is the ultimate objective of the typical American graduate school.

### Summary

Graduate education differs from undergraduate education chiefly in its concentration on a single area of subject matter, in its attention to research, and, to some degree, in the methods of instruction used. The graduate student may be described as an apprentice in scholarship. His task is to develop in himself the scientific attitude — that is, accurate observation, objectivity, willingness to study all forms of evidence before arriving at conclusions, ability to recognize causal relationships, and originality and independence in thinking. By training himself in this attitude and by applying the appropriate techniques of the scientific method to the solution of his chosen problem, the graduate student moves toward the scholar's goal of contributing to the sum total of human knowledge.



# 3

## HOW THE GRADUATE

### SCHOOL CAME INTO BEING

**E**ven less than a century ago, an American student seriously interested in graduate study would have been unable to pursue it in his own country. Hundreds of our young men went abroad to advance their education in the universities of Europe, and especially those of Germany. Although at least one of our institutions of higher learning, the University of Virginia, had been founded (in 1822) upon Jeffersonian principles that included complete freedom of inquiry, and although Harvard, Yale, Columbia, and others had begun to offer occasional courses beyond the level of the baccalaureate degree, for one reason or another (e.g., the dearth of qualified students, the lack of adequately trained professors, and financial stringencies) no true graduate school appeared in the United States until near the end of the nineteenth century.<sup>1</sup>

In Germany, on the other hand, modern universities had evolved years before out of the tremendous flowering of interest in science and research. Universities there had freed themselves from the domination of church dogma and had become state agencies for the advancement of secular learning. Professors could claim freedom to study any problem and to follow boldly any line of inquiry, freedom to teach the knowledge discovered through these efforts, and free-

<sup>1</sup> At such American universities as Harvard and Yale a graduate obtained the master's degree a year or two after the baccalaureate simply by paying a fee and providing testimony of good character (i.e., "keeping out of jail").

dom to publish to the entire world the results of their studies. Students, for their part, had the right of relatively free selection among the course programs offered. Such freedom in teaching and in learning (*Lehrfreiheit* and *Lernfreiheit*) was enviously regarded by some scholars in our own colleges, which aped the worn traditions of the English institutions, notably Oxford and Cambridge, and in many of which it still was customary for members of the faculty to subscribe to certain religious beliefs in qualifying for their positions. (The English model copied by our colleges provided a program intended primarily to prepare young men for the Christian ministry. Even though such a program had clearly grown out of date by 1636, when Harvard was founded, our early colleges kept it in force in this country for another two hundred years.)

The agitation of leading American educators to establish in the United States institutions for advanced learning and research modeled after those of Germany began shortly before the middle of the nineteenth century. In 1851, Henry Tappan, soon to become the first president of the University of Michigan, proposed a thoroughgoing reform of higher education. He praised the German universities as progressive examples for Americans to follow and suggested that our freshman and sophomore years be eliminated immediately from the university system. This change, he declared, would permit our universities to accomplish greater things by concentrating their efforts upon more advanced studies and research.<sup>2</sup> Unfortunately, Tappan later lost his position at Michigan because of charges that he was attempting to "Prussianize" American education. Because of dissatisfaction with our outmoded curriculum and the salutary influence which university research in Germany obviously exerted upon the expanding economy of that nation, however, most thoughtful American educators no doubt shared Tappan's new views and hoped for a change in our educational system.

Even earlier, in 1849, President Francis Wayland of Brown University had submitted his resignation to his trustees on the grounds of his disgust with what he termed the backwardness and decaying conservatism of the collegiate curriculum. Invited by the trustees

<sup>2</sup> Henry P. Tappan, *University Education* (New York: George P. Putnam, 1851).

to describe his own ideas of an effective university program, Wayland urged, among other things, the abandonment of the prescribed course of study (which then consisted almost entirely of Greek, Latin, and mathematics) and the substitution of a plan under which new courses in science and other contemporaneous knowledge would be available and every student would be free to select the subjects he preferred.<sup>3</sup>

A slow movement in the direction of advanced courses and the encouragement of scholarship took shape during the period between 1825 and 1875, but the National Teachers' Association could complain with justice at its meeting in Trenton, New Jersey, in 1869: "We have as yet no near approach to a real university in America."<sup>4</sup>

What this association of teachers meant (and what Tappan had meant) by a "real university" must be understood, of course, as the German type of higher institution, in which the major work was research. This must be distinguished both from the traditional undergraduate college, which for the most part has concerned itself with the transmission of general knowledge to students (that is, with teaching), and from the professional school, which exists to prepare students for particular professions (law, medicine, architecture, education, and the like). In such a university, primary attention is given to the search for new knowledge and secondary attention to the training of young scholars in the techniques of the search. The ideal of this "real university" has been adopted in America not in the precise form which it had in Germany but in a rather different form as that institution which we Americans call the graduate school.

### The First American Graduate School

No university on the German pattern existed among the American institutions of higher learning when, in 1867, a wealthy Quaker merchant of Baltimore set aside in trust the sum of \$3,500,000 for aid to education. This merchant, Mr. Johns Hopkins, gave the full

<sup>3</sup> See Francis Wayland and H. L. Wayland, *A Memoir of the Life and Labors of Francis Wayland*, 2 v. (New York: Sheldon & Co., 1867), II, 82-92.

<sup>4</sup> See *Report of the Commissioner of Education Made to the Secretary of the Interior for the Year 1870* (Washington: U.S. Govt. Printing Office, 1870), pp. 418-421.

management of his bequest into the hands of a board of trustees, with instructions that the capital funds were not to be expended for buildings but with practically no other restrictions on their use. To the trustees he left the vital decision as to the precise type of institution which ought to be established.

The trustees, a somewhat remarkable and certainly able group of men, began their work by seriously attempting to inform themselves with regard to the status of higher education in America and Europe and by searching carefully for an outstanding educational leader to take charge of the proposed institution. They read and studied a large number of the contemporaneous books about collegiate programs and problems, and they traveled in various sections of the country to visit other universities and interview their presidents. They were clearly disposed to create an institution in which the highest academic standards would be maintained and in which the developing needs of scholarship would be met.<sup>5</sup>

On the advice of President Eliot of Harvard, President Angell of Michigan, and President White of Cornell, the trustees in 1874 elected to the first presidency of the Johns Hopkins University Daniel Coit Gilman, then head of the University of California. Gilman, a graduate of Yale, had a broad experience of travel, teaching, public school work, and university administration. He spent the first year of his appointment gathering information in Europe regarding university programs there and professors who might be attracted to this side of the Atlantic. Gilman's advice to his trustees was to the effect that the new institution should be not just another college, of which there were already a sufficient number in and near Baltimore, but a full-fledged university. The first real graduate school in the United States opened its doors in 1876, though it was five years more before graduate work as such was actually under way there.

**A Graduate Program.** For his first faculty Gilman selected men already known for their scholarship, and he recruited them both from Europe and from this country. Fortunately, he was able to pay them salaries which, for that period, were unusually high. While teaching ability came into consideration, probably more importance

<sup>5</sup> See Daniel Coit Gilman, *The Launching of a University* (New York: Dodd, Mead and Co., 1906).



was attached to success in research. In the curriculum there were some offerings in classical studies, but Gilman felt that the chief emphasis should be placed upon science, including the relatively new subject of biology. Thomas Henry Huxley, the famous English biologist, gave the principal address at the formal opening of the institution—a fact that symbolized, in effect, the university's interest in scientific studies. Huxley's appearance was not without its dangers to the new institution, for some people considered him an atheist.

The program itself consisted of regular lectures in courses conducted by members of the faculty, supplemented by laboratory demonstrations in some subjects and a system of visiting lecturers. This latter system proved a significant innovation. Hopkins could hardly afford to bring together on its permanent faculty all the eminent scholars of the world, however desirable such an achievement might be, but it could invite many of them from time to time to visit the campus as lecturers. They might remain for a term or a year and thus bring to the campus the best thinking and the newest ideas in their various fields and, as Gilman phrased it, prevent the instruction of the university from falling into a rut. "A company of non-resident professors and lecturers," remaining at Johns Hopkins for brief periods of time and then returning to their own institutions, maintained excellent contacts for both students and faculty with the entire modern world of scholarship. Among the earliest lecturers under this plan were such famous men as James Bryce, Alexander Graham Bell, Francis J. Child, Charles W. Eliot, William James, Sidney Lanier, James Russell Lowell, Charles S. Peirce, and Woodrow Wilson.

The ultimate aim of the Johns Hopkins program was to develop trained leaders in the various fields of scholarship and to aid in the general advancement of human learning. Gilman hoped that, like the German universities, Hopkins would offer advanced work only, which meant eliminating the subject matter customarily given on the freshman and sophomore level. For various reasons, however, this part of his plan proved impracticable, and the traditional undergraduate program of four years was maintained here as at other colleges. In this respect the institution never became a true university in the sense in which Gilman understood the term.

Students, nevertheless, were selected very carefully, and twenty annual fellowships were awarded to young men who seemed to show special aptitude for scholarly achievement. The seminar method of instruction was adopted with marked success in several courses. Freedom of thinking and freedom of teaching were insisted upon, including the right of every student to pursue studies in that field of knowledge in which he had a special interest. The responsibilities of scholarship also were stressed. Students entering advanced studies were expected to be well grounded in fundamental knowledge. Before a student was ready to accept the privilege of advanced work in the field of his own choice, Gilman believed, he must be fully mature and well prepared in the general areas of collegiate study.

No grades or prizes of any kind were awarded, and, unlike other colleges, Hopkins made no periodic announcements of the relative standings of students. Such incentives were deemed unnecessary for mature persons. Because of the small numbers enrolled in the early days of the institution's history, an informal atmosphere, with close attention to the qualifications and progress of every student, proved possible.

**Other Features of the Plan.** The essential difference between Johns Hopkins and the other American universities of the time lay in the encouragement given to original research by members of the faculty. This took the form not only of allowing the necessary time for investigative work in a professor's weekly schedule but also of establishing a number of scholarly journals in which the results of the investigations could be recorded. To print scholarly books and reports, a university press was set up.

The scholarly periodical has become recognized as a vital service to modern scholarship. The products of research must be published to the world, and particularly to other scholars in the several fields. This idea was already well established in Europe when Johns Hopkins was founded, but the existing journals in the United States at the time were chiefly for general circulation and not for specialized scholars.

Gilman constantly stressed his belief that professors must unselfishly devote themselves to the search for truth and must renounce all financial rewards for their discoveries. Since they had been granted the privilege of almost complete freedom in the conduct



of research, with reasonable salaries and limited teaching duties, the faculty were willing to agree that any remuneration which might come as the result of their scientific or other discoveries ought to be used exclusively for further research. This ethical principle still is believed in by many, if not most, of those who have dedicated their lives to scholarship, though in some few instances we have seen the encroachment of more mundane ideas.

Hopkins carefully kept its program free of domination by any sectarian religious groups, a major stumbling block in the path of change at many other institutions. Not that Gilman opposed religion. As a matter of fact, he took an active hand in church work. But he feared the influence of sectarian dogma on the development of the curriculum, especially in science, and he wished the pursuit of truth to be free of all preconceived convictions or prejudices. Religious control might be altogether suitable for the American undergraduate college, but it had no place, he believed, in the organization of the true university.

Once the pattern of graduate education, based on the example of Germany, had been firmly introduced at Johns Hopkins University, similar developments at other large institutions took place.

### **Clark University**

In 1886 Mr. Jonas Gilman Clark, a highly successful business man of Worcester, Massachusetts, invited a group of prominent local citizens to serve with him as trustees of a new university which he proposed to endow with money and his name. Clark was a self-educated man who had acquired a huge fortune in various enterprises throughout the country. The kind of institution he seems to have planned was a charity college for poor boys, with a curriculum devoted to practical rather than theoretical subject matter and not necessarily of the best quality.

Clark's notion of the first important step in the furthering of his enterprise was the construction of one or more buildings. He himself proposed plans for the campus and the main building even before the nature of the program had been thoroughly worked out. In 1887 the project was chartered by the state legislature as Clark University.

The trustees, after seeking advice from several sources, decided upon G. Stanley Hall, then a professor of psychology and pedagogy at Johns Hopkins, as the best candidate for the presidency. Hall, incidentally, had previously been considered very favorably by the Hopkins trustees before their selection of Gilman. A graduate of Williams College and a student at Union Theological Seminary and at universities in Bonn and Berlin, Hall had been an outstanding teacher at Antioch College and at Harvard University (where he received his doctoral degree). He had studied theology, philosophy, and psychology before deciding upon pedagogy and experimental psychology as his specialties. On his second visit to Germany he had become acquainted with some of the psychological laboratories just being developed there. After lecturing with great success on pedagogy at Harvard (immediately following this second excursion in Germany), he had been persuaded by Gilman to join the Hopkins faculty and to establish there a psychological laboratory, the first in America. He had also founded the *American Journal of Psychology*.

Hall reluctantly left his post at Hopkins in 1888 and assumed control of the new institution, apparently without any clear ideas as to the kind of program he was expected to initiate. The trustees, in fact, left this matter almost entirely to his judgment. He secured a year's leave of absence to travel in Europe, where he visited universities, inspected laboratories and libraries, collected books and pamphlets, purchased equipment, and interviewed professors. He came back imbued with zeal for the establishment of a great center for advanced learning more nearly like the German pattern even than Johns Hopkins — a project apparently far different from the original intentions of Mr. Clark.

**An Auspicious Beginning.** With a small group of selected advanced students and a superb faculty of research men, Clark University inaugurated its program in the fall of 1889. In addition to land and buildings, Mr. Clark presented the institution during its first year with \$600,000 as an endowment, plus \$100,000 for the support of the library. It was understood that he would continue his benefactions from year to year and leave a final substantial gift in his will.

Many educators have stated that Clark University during its early

years could claim one of the best faculties ever assembled for purposes of graduate education. The seminar method of instruction, in which the students had excellent opportunities to exchange ideas with one another and with their professors, was extensively used. For at least two years the work of the new university impressed educational leaders throughout America as markedly successful and as a prime example for others to follow. In the third year, however, serious troubles began, centering largely on the financial situation.

Obviously the university that Hall created was not what Mr. Clark originally had conceived. Evidences of the founder's dissatisfaction began to appear. He refused to indicate clearly the extent to which his further financial support could be relied on. Furthermore, he insisted on having a hand in details which must have been beyond the scope of his experience or competency — for example, the fitting up of the laboratories. He is said to have treated Hall and the professors much as he would have treated the hired help in a business concern. A division of opinion between Hall on the one hand and the institution's principal benefactor on the other could not fail to have bad results.

The faculty felt the strain of this difference of opinion and the growing uncertainty of the university's future course. Morale sank low, and many of the faculty began to speak of resigning. Hall hoped that he might win Mr. Clark's eventual approval of the university program in which he himself so deeply believed; Clark seems to have set his heart on the establishment of the more familiar undergraduate college. In the end the founder became so skeptical of the program's worth and of Hall's ideas that he entirely withdrew his monetary aid, leaving the whole project in a precarious condition.

The discontent of the faculty finally culminated in a mass resignation of about half of the professors, partly for financial reasons and partly because of strained relations with the president. Several of the faculty turned, at William Rainey Harper's invitation, to positions at the University of Chicago, which was being reorganized by Harper as a true university. A few remained at Clark to await better times or to resign later.

When Mr. Clark died in 1900, he left provision in his will for the establishment of a separate college for undergraduates. This was to

have a president other than Hall at its head and, though it would use the same library and buildings, was to be in most respects a separate institution. Some funds were also left for an addition to the Clark University endowment, an art gallery, and the improvement of the library.

During its first three years Clark University made a brilliant contribution to American graduate education. It came actually nearer to the ideal of the true university than did Johns Hopkins, and its achievements in research work set a standard seldom surpassed. The brilliance of its first years, however, was never afterward recaptured. Nevertheless, it furnished a goal in graduate studies which others could strive to reach.<sup>6</sup>

The new spirit of research that President Hall made possible at Clark University was eloquently described by him in his admirable address given at the Clark decennial celebration in 1899:

Have we duly considered, even the best of us, what a real university is and means, how widely it differs from a college, and what a wealth of vast, new, and in themselves most educative problems it opens? A college is for general, the university for special, culture. The former develops a wide basis of training and information, while the latter brings to a definite apex. One makes broad men, the other sharpens them to a point. The college digests and impresses second-hand knowledge as highly vitalized as good pedagogy can make it, while the university, as one of its choicest functions, creates new knowledge by research and discovery. The well-furnished bachelor of arts, on turning from the receptivity of knowing to creative research, is at first helpless as a new-born babe, and needs abundant and personal direction and encouragement before he can walk alone; but when the new powers are once acquired they are veritable regeneration. He scorns the mere luxury of knowing, and wishes to achieve, to become an authority and not an echo. His ambition is to know how it looks near and beyond the frontier of knowledge, and to wrest if possible a new inch of territory from the nescient realm of chaos and old night, and this becomes a new and consuming passion which makes him feel a certain kinship with the great creative minds of all ages, and having contributed ever so little, he realizes for the first time what true

<sup>6</sup> See especially G. Stanley Hall, *Life and Confessions of a Psychologist* (New York: D. Appleton and Co., 1927), and Edmund C. Sanford, "A Sketch of the History of Clark University," *Publications of the Clark University Library*, VII, 1-10 (January, 1923).

intellectual freedom is, and attains intellectual manhood and maturity. This thrill of discovery, once felt, is the royal accolade of science, which says to the novice, stand erect, look about you, that henceforth you may light your own way with independent knowledge.<sup>7</sup>

### The University of Chicago

The greatest beneficiary of the troubles at Clark University was the University of Chicago. This institution, first begun in 1859 as a Baptist academy and college, had closed in 1886 after severe financial reverses and two disastrous fires. Through the influence of Baptist groups and a gift of \$600,000 from John D. Rockefeller, it was revived in 1890 under the leadership of President William Rainey Harper.

Harper was a Biblical specialist; yet what he desired for Chicago was not a denominational college but a real university for advanced and professional studies. He felt that the establishment of any other kind of institution would be a bitter mistake and would entirely fail to meet the vital educational needs of the time. A long process of negotiation and friendly argument among those involved in launching the enterprise became necessary before the matter could be settled. Though he agreed without enthusiasm to an undergraduate program (along with a preparatory academy) within the new institution, at least as a temporary expedient, Harper firmly held to his insistence upon a secular university, in which there would be advanced scholarship, research, and unhampered freedom of inquiry. He expressed at first some doubts as to whether he would be regarded by denominational leaders as sufficiently orthodox in his religious views to serve as the head of a Baptist institution. The founding group, however, placed great pressure upon Harper to accept the presidency, and their eagerness to secure him for the position was probably not at all abated by Yale's reluctance to lose him from its faculty. As a matter of fact, the administration at Yale had just raised, with much difficulty, a fund for the permanent endowment of his professorship there.

Severing his ties with Yale, Harper entered upon his duties as president of the University of Chicago in 1891. Students began to

<sup>7</sup> *Clark University, 1889-1899: Decennial Celebration* (Worcester: Clark University Press, 1899), pp. 53-54.

be admitted into its reorganized program during the following year. Besides the graduate school in which Harper's chief interest apparently lay, there were also an academy, an undergraduate college, an extension program, and a divinity school—all going into operation during the first four years of his administration. Rockefeller was prevailed upon to add another million dollars to the endowment for the express purpose of graduate education.

**The Program.** Harper himself seems to have considered the new university to be in part experimental—that is, a new tack in higher education for the United States, different from either Johns Hopkins or the traditional American college. He organized three divisions of the program: (1) the University Proper (the academy, a college of liberal arts, a college of science, a college of literature, a college of practical arts, the graduate schools, and various professional schools); (2) the University Extension Work (lectures, evening courses, correspondence work, and the like); and (3) the University Publication Work (partly consisting of a program for publishing the research studies of the faculty).

A distinction was made between the so-called “academic college” (freshman and sophomore years) and the “university college” (junior and senior years). Later the two divisions became known as the “junior college” (probably the first use of this term in America) and the “senior college.” A summer quarter also was introduced as a part of the plan, and the upper levels of the program were coeducational. To some extent, these were new ideas in our system of higher education; like correspondence courses, they met with little approval among our more conservative educators. A relatively light load of teaching for the faculty (about eight to ten hours per week) was designed to allow ample time for independent research and study. Some educators criticized Harper's program because no provision had been made in it for ascertaining the religious orthodoxy of the professors. He overrode, however, all objections and predictions of failure.

Unlike Johns Hopkins, the University of Chicago retained the custom of giving students regular grades in their courses and ranking them according to their academic standing. In the curriculum itself considerable emphasis was placed upon science, although the other



fields were not neglected. A gift of over half a million dollars from the estate of William B. Ogden, a former trustee of the first University of Chicago, made possible the establishment of the Ogden Graduate School of Science.

While both Johns Hopkins and Clark University for a long time remained fairly small institutions, the growth at Chicago proved remarkable. Its fame and promise quickly spread, and students flocked hopefully to its doors. Within four years it had already outstripped both Yale and Harvard in enrollment, and it continued to enlarge its numbers rapidly. Part of this growth resulted undoubtedly from the magic effect upon the popular imagination of Rockefeller's backing, but a large part also came from the powerful personality of William Rainey Harper and his uncanny ability to arouse public enthusiasm.

**The Faculty.** Harper desired at the start a faculty of experienced and capable scholars, men already prominent in their several fields. Bringing together such a group of specialists proved anything but an easy task. Most of the noted scholars of the day showed reluctance to leave secure positions in order to join the faculty of a budding university which might, after all, end in failure. They saw no reason to exchange a certainty for a promise.

Not until the differences of opinion at Clark University caused rumblings of discontent at that institution did Harper succeed in attracting the first portion of his faculty to Chicago. The professors at Clark were all admirably trained and had been working together successfully under President Hall. They knew exactly the kind of institution that Harper hoped to establish and made precisely the sort of material that he had been seeking. He visited Worcester briefly in 1892, at a moment when faculty morale there was at a low ebb, and at a single stroke acquired the nucleus of his faculty for Chicago. While the blow could not fail to be a severe one for Clark, it provided Chicago with a ready-made faculty of the kind Harper had been vainly trying for several months to gather together. To this nucleus he gradually added a distinguished body of scholars from other great universities of the world. As a departure from tradition, women scholars as well as men were welcomed to places on the new faculty.

Harper knew that the University of Chicago would become widely

known chiefly through the achievements of its faculty, and he spent immeasurable time and energy in selecting the right persons. Strangely enough, the institution had maintained even in its pre-Harper days the rule that "no religious test or particular religious profession [should] ever be held as requisite for admission to any department of the University, or for election to any professorship or other place of honor or emolument in it, but the same [should] be open alike to persons of any religious faith or profession."<sup>8</sup> Harper continued and even strengthened this policy under the reorganization and promised his professors independence in teaching and learning. While he was willing to accede a place in higher education to colleges in which a special belief was taught or a particular kind of instruction was prescribed, he carefully distinguished between these and the true university.

Among Harper's faculty were many whose opinions and teachings on various matters stood in direct opposition to the idea of other professors on that same faculty, yet freedom of expression was given to all, and academic harmony reigned. All who visited the institution seemed struck by the spirit of real unity. While Harper constantly remarked upon the evils of one-sided partisanship and urged his faculty not to abuse their liberty by promulgating untested opinions as truth, he believed that even the abuse of free expression was preferable to restrictions on research. Perhaps much of the harmony and expansive energy noticeable in the early history of the new University of Chicago may be attributed to the significant fact that Harper and his faculty regarded their work as a pioneering venture.

### Other Developments in Graduate Study

Johns Hopkins, Clark, and Chicago broke forcibly with the decadent English tradition in our system of higher education and established a different pattern soon to be copied by many other universities. All three were founded upon the conviction that the American educational needs of the late nineteenth century were not being adequately served by the American college. Adopting (with some revisions) the German plan of the university, they placed the greatest emphasis upon the advancement of knowledge through

<sup>8</sup> See Thomas W. Goodspeed, *A History of the University of Chicago: The First Quarter Century* (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1916), p. 372.

single-handed achievement by the individual scholar, as well as upon the enforcement of rigid standards of objectivity in the search for truth. As the basic philosophy on which their activities were based, they accepted the doctrine that the true university exists not only to transmit all the best learning of the past but also to produce new learning of high quality and significance.

Students who entered the advanced courses of these institutions (not including, of course, the undergraduate program) took the role of the apprentice scholar. Out of this role grew an atmosphere of hard work, informality, friendly guidance, and even affection in the relationship developed between student and master. All areas of human learning were open to investigation. While the most careful tests of an objective nature had to be applied to the discoveries and new ideas which arose out of research, the quest for truth was kept unhampered, insofar as this is possible, by preconceived beliefs and prejudices. The very air of these new institutions, at least by contrast with the typical situation in the older colleges, must have breathed freedom and stimulation for the student.

The advantages of this type of program appealed strongly to the American student, and it quickly spread into many other institutions. The number of students enrolled in graduate work rose rapidly as more opportunities became available. A former specialist in higher education on the staff of the United States Office of Education has recorded that the enrollment of graduate students in the United States increased from slightly more than 400 in the year 1880 to 2,382 (of whom 409 were women) a decade later.<sup>9</sup> By 1900 there were 5,831 (1,179 women); by 1910, 9,370 (2,866 women); by 1920, 15,612 (5,775 women); and by 1930, 47,255 (18,185 women). The number of master's degrees awarded by American institutions grew from about 70 in 1890 to 14,495 in 1930; and the number of Ph.D. degrees, from 44 in 1876 to 2,024 in 1930. At the present time there are probably well over 250,000 students in our graduate and professional schools.<sup>10</sup>

<sup>9</sup> Walton C. John, *Graduate Study in Universities and Colleges in the United States*, Bulletin of the U.S. Office of Education, 1934, No. 20 (Washington: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1935). See especially pp. 12-19.

<sup>10</sup> The *Biennial Survey of Education in the United States*, compiled by the U.S. Office of Education, reported 233,327 post-baccalaureate students enrolled in the academic year 1951-52. Of these, 118,015 were in professional schools and the rest in graduate schools of arts and sciences.

It should be kept in mind that the new graduate schools which have been developing during the past three-quarters of a century have inherited not only the tradition of advanced study in course work, which had been present in many of our colleges almost from the beginning (Harvard offered a program for the master's degree as early as 1642, and Yale awarded the first American Ph.D. degree in 1861), but also the more modern emphasis on research for the scientific advancement of knowledge (John Hopkins was the earliest American university specifically to adopt this as its major purpose).

### Teacher Education

Since the nineteen-thirties especially, increasing attention has been paid to the question of using graduate programs to improve the training of teachers. Many state laws for the certification of public school teachers now require at least a full year of graduate study in addition to undergraduate preparation. For several years the majority of candidates for the doctorate have been students interested in becoming college instructors. It has been argued with some justice that if the graduate student is to earn his living by teaching, he should become familiar with at least the rudiments of his profession. The trained research worker, some say, is not likely to prove entirely successful in dealing with teaching problems. A number of graduate schools throughout the country seem to have adopted this point of view, and as a result they have become somewhat less concerned with the aim of advancing human knowledge and correspondingly more interested in that of providing for the acquisition of instructional skills.

A graduate school, many now believe, may claim as its fundamental aim the advancement of learning and the training of research scholars, or it may place its principal stress upon the task of preparing students to become effective teachers. It may even offer post-baccalaureate courses without having in view either of the aforementioned objectives. On the other hand, some graduate schools accept a variety of aims as legitimate and try to achieve each one as fully as it is possible to do so, depending upon the varying desires and needs of the students.

The ideal envisioned by such early leaders in graduate education

as Daniel Coit Gilman, G. Stanley Hall, and William Rainey Harper, however, still remains the most potent force in most of our graduate programs. It was reaffirmed only a few years ago in a statement by Professor George Boas of the Johns Hopkins University, who, in describing some new plans devised by the faculty of that precedent-breaking institution, thus epitomized the essential purpose of its program:

The Johns Hopkins University has chosen as its own goal one of the many legitimate ends of higher education: the training of scientists and scholars, people who engage in research which, it is hoped, will be disinterested. Such people must above all things be acutely aware of problems when they arise, and consequently their training must orient them towards spotting the unusual event, the event which is an exception to the rule. It is admitted that no one knows how to train the creative imagination, but we do know more or less what impedes its functioning. We know, for instance, that a Charles Darwin, a Freud, an Einstein, a Willard Gibbs simply could not arise in a society governed by the principles of authority and tradition. I do not say that in some societies, like the monastery and the army, tradition and obedience to it are not essential to the common good. But I do say that in the society of scholars the original mind, the recalcitrant individual, the man who looks for himself and stubbornly refuses to accept the word of authority merely because it is that of an authority, is the man who contributes something to the sum total of knowledge.

If that is so, then the problem of the educator in such a university is first of all to admit to his society only such people as have shown a genuine interest in discovery. He must surround himself, in the second place, with scholars who have already achieved — or show promise of achieving — a position of eminence as creative scholars. The professor who gives standard courses out of textbooks may do a good job of teaching in certain kinds of colleges; but he has no place here. In the third place, the student must be regarded not as an empty mind into which the teacher is to pour his accumulated wisdom, but as an associate with his teachers in the acquiring of knowledge. In the fourth place, every effort must be made by the teacher to adjust the program of study to the student's needs, rather than to force the student to take a standardized course of study after which he will be given a standardized degree. And in the fifth place, it must be assumed that some problems have already been solved and become obsolete as problems, that new problems are always arising and are calling for solution, and that finally the teacher in association with

his students will stand on the frontiers of knowledge and attempt their solution.<sup>11</sup>

### Summary

The modern American graduate school had its beginnings at the Johns Hopkins University, Clark University, and the University of Chicago. Here the traditional but now decadent English pattern of higher education which American colleges had copied for generations was cast aside in favor of the German idea of a true university. Under the new system, later adopted by others, graduate work meant not merely the addition of more courses to the program but concentration within the program upon a systematic search for truth, to the end that the present boundaries of learning might be extended. This ideal since has come to be accepted as the major objective of the graduate school.

The older collegiate plan, however, did not go entirely into the discard. Even at Hopkins the undergraduate program was retained. In spite of long efforts to reform the basic organization of American higher education by relegating the freshman and sophomore years of study to the secondary school or the junior college, thus permitting the work of the university to consist exclusively of advanced or specialized studies, nearly all American universities have held onto the collegiate structure, merely superimposing a graduate school upon it. Since 1880 the growth of graduate programs throughout the nation has been rapid. Of recent years some educators have become increasingly concerned over the problem of teacher-training on the graduate level.

While the aims of graduate study may vary among the different institutions, the influence of the pioneering efforts made at Hopkins, Clark, and Chicago has been a profound one. The important core around which most graduate programs today are built is objective research—or, to state it more broadly, the free and unhampered inquiry after truth.

<sup>11</sup> George Boas, "New Plans at Hopkins," *The Johns Hopkins Magazine*, III, 3 (February, 1952). Quoted by the kind permission of Professor Boas.



# 4

## BEGINNINGS OF

### EDUCATIONAL RESEARCH<sup>1</sup>

While scientific research in such fields as chemistry, physics, and medicine may be traced back three centuries or more into the past, research in many other fields must be said to have barely begun. Modern archaeology, for example, made very little progress until after Heinrich Schliemann's excavation of the ancient city of Troy in 1870. Research in psychology, while based in part upon earlier studies in the fascinating pseudo-sciences of physiognomy and phrenology, did not actually come into being until about 1879, when Wilhelm Wundt constructed a psychological laboratory for experiments in Leipzig. Psychological research was accelerated shortly thereafter as the result of investigations undertaken by Francis Galton and Karl Pearson in England leading to the development of statistical methods and principles.

Among the areas of knowledge to be developed most recently through scientific research is that of education. Though Johann Friedrich Herbart maintained early in the nineteenth century that education can be studied as a science and not merely practiced as an art, that its products can be measured and its methods tested scientifically, and though an attempt at standardized educational measurement was made some time in the 1860's by the Reverend George Fisher, master of the Greenwich Hospital School in Eng-

<sup>1</sup> This chapter is included because of the widespread use of this work as a textbook for courses in educational research.

land, by means of a "scale-book" of examinations in the chief school subjects, true research in this field goes back only to about 1895. Pioneer in the work appears to have been the American, J. M. Rice, editor of the *Forum* magazine and an ardent educational reformer.

Fisher's commendable but probably rather unscientific efforts at constructing scales for measuring pupils' achievement in subject matter apparently aroused little interest among educators of his day; and Rice, in spite of his earnest and careful methods of approaching problems of the school curriculum, was met at once by open condemnation and scorn from professional educators, including the leaders of the National Education Association.

E. B. Chadwick, writing on the statistics of educational results in 1864,<sup>2</sup> described Fisher's idea of standardized measurement as follows:

A book called the "Scale-Book" has been established, which contains the numbers assigned to each degree of proficiency in the various subjects of examination: for instance, if it be required to determine the numerical equivalent corresponding to any specimen of "writing," a comparison is made with the various standard specimens, which are arranged in this book in order of merit; the highest being represented by the number 1, and the lowest by 5, and the intermediate values by affixing to these numbers the fractions  $\frac{1}{4}$ ,  $\frac{1}{2}$ , or  $\frac{3}{4}$ . So long as these standard specimens are preserved in the institution, so long will instant numerical values for proficiency in "writing" be maintained. And since fac-similes can be multiplied without limit, the same principle might be generally adopted.

The numerical values for "spelling" follow the same order and are made to depend upon the percentage of mistakes in writing from dictation sentences from works selected for the purpose, examples of which are contained in the "Scale-Book," in order to preserve the same standard of difficulty.

By a similar process values are assigned for proficiency in mathematics, navigation, Scripture knowledge, grammar and composition, French, general history, drawing, and practical science, respectively. Questions in each of these subjects are contained in the "Scale-Book," to serve as types, not only of the difficulty, but of the nature of the questions, for the sake of future reference; observing that the same numerals are used in the same order as before, viz., number 1 denotes the highest, and number 5 the lowest amount of attainment.

<sup>2</sup> In *The Museum, A Quarterly Magazine of Education, Literature, and Science*, III (1864), 480-484. The quoted material appears in an appendix to the article.

In respect to the numerical values of "reading," as regards accuracy, taste, or judgment, it is obvious that no other standard of measurement can be applied, beyond the interpretation of the terms "good," "bad," "indifferent," etc., existing at the period of examination. And the same observation will apply to the estimation of numbers of "characters" and "natural abilities," as determined by the united testimony of the respective masters.

Having stated this much with regard to the plan pursued in this school, I may well add that the advantage derived from this numerical mode of valuation, as applied to educational subjects, is not confined to its being a concise method of registration, combined with a useful approximation to a *fixed standard* of estimation, applicable to each boy; but it affords also a means of determining the *sum total*, and therefrom the mean or average condition or value of any given number of results.

#### **Educational Studies by J. M. Rice and Others**

At the annual meeting of the Department of Superintendence (now the American Association of School Administrators) of the National Education Association in 1897, Rice discussed the results of spelling tests which he had administered over a period of several months to some 33,000 school children in a variety of different school systems. His investigations tended to show, he said, that formal spelling drill failed in its avowed purpose and could be regarded as largely a waste of time. Children with short periods of drill achieved substantially the same scores on his tests as did children with longer periods of drill.<sup>3</sup> His results, clearly critical of contemporaneous teaching methods and therefore highly objectionable to members of the teaching profession, were substantiated in later years by further studies of a similar nature. Rice continued his work indefatigably over a span of several years, examining the methods used in teaching arithmetic and languages as well as spelling. Though not believed at first, he succeeded in pointing out serious weaknesses in the educational theories of the nineteenth century.

Since Rice's research was wrongly interpreted as a malicious attack upon teachers, he was promptly labeled an enemy of education. How could subject-matter examinations administered by an "outsider,"

<sup>3</sup> Rice had previously published two articles on the subject: "The Futility of the Spelling Grind," *Forum*, XXIII, 163-172 (April, 1897); 409-419 (June, 1897).

the teachers demanded, adequately measure the real achievement of any pupil? Only the classroom teacher, they asserted, was in a position to make such measurements fairly.

But Rice, who had studied in Germany and had there become familiar with the work of the great German psychologists at Jena and Leipzig, insisted that knowledge of education could be reduced to scientific principles and that the practices pursued in American schools of his time were both vague in theory and haphazard in use. "I came to recognize," he explained, "that . . . the claims of school men following different courses of study [were] all talk, — that no one really knew the facts, because there were no standards to serve as guides. Then one day, the idea flashed through my mind that the way to settle the question was to try it out. For a beginning I decided to take spelling, and on that very day I made up a list of 50 words with the view of giving them as a test to the pupils of the schools as I went on my tour from town to town. I have no record of the date of the inspiration, but I think it was some time in October, 1894."

In spite of the opposition he aroused, the work of Rice did serve to encourage others in the application of scientific methods to the study of education. Among those who dared openly to support his views was Paul Hanus, professor of education at Harvard University. Several of the younger scholars at Columbia University also fell under the spell of his logic and sincerity, notably E. L. Thorndike. The latter, though primarily taken up with psychological experimentation, strongly endorsed standardized examinations and began to apply statistical methods to their construction. The Thorndike Scale for measurement of merit in handwriting, completed in 1909 and presented at a meeting of the American Association for the Advancement of Science in that year, is often referred to as the real beginning of modern scientific measurement of the products of education.<sup>4</sup>

### **Educational Surveys**

While the introduction of scientific devices for measuring pupil achievement constituted the earliest important step in the rise of educational research, other developments took place rapidly as the

<sup>4</sup> The scale was published in *Teachers College Record* for May, 1910.

feasibility of treating education as a science impressed itself upon the minds of intelligent educators. At Columbia University, which assumed the leadership in this field throughout the first quarter of the twentieth century under such bold pioneers as Thorndike, George D. Strayer, and Leonard P. Ayres, detailed studies were made of children's progress through the grades. It now became possible to establish national norms of achievement for all grades and to rate a child's progress on the basis of his deviation from the norm.

Meanwhile, Hanus was invited by the governor of Massachusetts to investigate the state's need for vocational education and to make recommendations regarding a publicly supported program of training. After consulting manufacturers in the state and making a tour of trade schools in Germany and other European countries, Hanus proposed a plan for state institutes that was enthusiastically put into effect in states throughout the eastern part of the country. At about the same time, Ellwood P. Cubberley at Stanford University and several other scholars were engaged in a careful and thorough tracing of the history of education.

Perhaps more significant — and certainly more popular — than any of these activities, however, was the school survey. An important social survey of the city of Pittsburgh took place in 1907, and this no doubt stimulated interest in separate surveys of the various phases of community life. Hanus was one of those who supervised a survey of the school systems in Montclair and East Orange, New Jersey, in 1910, presenting to the citizens of these towns their first really accurate picture of the organization and work of their schools. Other detailed studies of school systems in various parts of the country quickly followed, especially the New York City survey of 1911-12, in which the use of standardized achievement examinations in arithmetic (the famous Courtis arithmetic tests) was introduced very successfully as part of the survey.

Between 1912 and the beginning of World War II, several hundred school systems in all sections of the nation were subjected to the new technique of the school survey, either the entire system or some separate phase of its organization or administration being investigated and described, usually in statistical form. By far the largest

number of these early surveys were conducted not by professional research people in the universities or in the districts themselves but by doctoral students in the process of learning the methods of research. Between the two world wars American public school teachers in considerable numbers entered graduate work, at least partially spurred on by the higher salaries being offered to teachers with advanced degrees. Furthermore, state requirements for certification were generally rising. These young scholars, when faced with the necessity of selecting topics for their doctoral dissertations, found ready to hand a wealth of unsolved problems in the field but only an infinitesimal quantity of tested scientific techniques with which to attack the problems. They turned in remarkably large numbers to the descriptive survey — examining, measuring, and reporting on existing school practices and policies. The studies uncovered a mass of unsuspected information about American schools. Each of the studies, while possibly of little importance by itself, helped in building a composite picture of the national school system, in assessing its accomplishments, and in contrasting effective with ineffective school practices.

School surveys represent a comparatively easy form of educational research. Because they merely provide an accurate and thorough description of the conditions that actually exist, they have been denigrated as inadequate to supply a scientific means of improving school practices. Yet they do make it possible to base educational decisions upon a true knowledge of the facts rather than upon chance impressions or misinformation. This obviously gives our school authorities a better opportunity to deal confidently with their problems. Since the data supplied by systematic school surveys clearly have an immediate practical value, many of our larger school districts, led by the early example of New York City, have adopted the plan of periodic or continuing surveys of their operations to measure the rate of progress or deterioration. In the decade of the 1920's, over a hundred separate bureaus of research were established in American school districts for the purpose of gathering and analyzing facts about the progress of the schools.

Educational surveys constitute a familiar and essential part of



research in the field of education today. While the methods used are subject to justifiable criticism at several points (for example, in the overabundant proliferation of questionnaires and opinionnaires as favorite devices for gathering data), survey techniques have been improved gradually over the years. It should be remembered that surveys can do little beyond providing true *descriptions* of the conditions and practices of the schools; yet, by supplying the data for careful analysis and comparison, they can also lay a foundation for improving these conditions and practices.

### **Contributions of Psychological Research**

Closely related and extremely beneficial to education is the growing body of research conducted in the field of psychology. The studies of Binet and later psychologists with respect to the measurement of intelligence have greatly altered our treatment of students in the classroom. We are now able to identify with relative accuracy the slow and fast learners among children, as well as those with special talents, and thus can take their individual differences into account in teaching them. The child with low academic intelligence need no longer be treated as if he were merely stubborn; instruction can be planned and given at the level of the child's ability to comprehend and perform. In the modern school, because of our present knowledge of scientific measurement, the superior child, the average child, and the slow learner may all advance in their learning experiences at the rate appropriate for each. In general, psychological research can be credited with having made the recognition of individual differences among children the very cornerstone of twentieth-century educational theory.

Psychological research has also contributed a vast amount of useful information about the developmental patterns of growth among children and adolescents. Without the application of such knowledge as we possess in this field, American teaching methods would be far less effective.

G. Stanley Hall began the study of child growth and development at Johns Hopkins University before the turn of the century. Since his day hundreds — if not thousands — of investigations have been made of the ways in which children mature and of the stages normal

to their development. Among the most influential of growth studies have been those of Arnold Gesell and his associates at Yale University; but the names of Baldwin, Dearborn, Ilg, Ogg, Olson, and Rothney are familiar ones to all students in this area of research. Teachers today can thank these investigators for the increasingly clear and exact understanding now obtainable of the physical, mental, emotional, and social development of boys and girls.

A third aspect of education to which the psychologists have made significant contributions through research is the learning process. Obviously, thorough comprehension of how human beings learn is necessary if teaching is to be properly done. During the latter half of the nineteenth century the mental faculty theory of psychology — the belief that the mind consists of several separate and identifiable faculties, including will, memory, and the like — was known to all well-informed school teachers and impelled them to place undue emphasis upon drill as a teaching method. Mental faculties presumably could be strengthened, in the same way as could the body's muscles, through exercise. It was even deemed possible to devise particular exercises for the strengthening of particular faculties. Rice, as we have seen, adduced ample evidence to throw serious doubt upon the value of drill in achieving the purposes intended. Further studies have resulted in the rejection of the faculty psychology altogether.

Experimental studies by many different psychologists in both Europe and America opened the door to new methods in the determination of how learning takes place. Though philosophers, using reason rather than science, have been speculating for many decades regarding the learning process (John Locke, it will be remembered, referred fancifully to the infant mind as a *tabula rasa* on which experience writes its messages), the problem has long resisted scientific analysis. Thorndike attempted ingeniously during the first quarter of the present century to discover the laws of learning by observing the controlled behavior of rats in mazes. What has been determined is chiefly that human learning actually constitutes a much more complex process than was previously supposed, and a great deal of additional research will no doubt be needed before its complications can be satisfactorily unraveled.

Of special practical usefulness in education has been the gratifying success of psychologists in the construction of tests to measure various characteristics of the human mind and personality. These now include instruments to identify vocational interests and aptitudes (e.g., the Seashore Test of Musical Talent, which first appeared in 1915), emotional stability, and social attitudes. Much of the most important work in this general area has been accomplished since — and also during — World War II, and a considerable quantity of this type of research is going forward constantly.

### **Strengths and Weaknesses of Educational Research**

While numerous changes have occurred in the school curriculum and in teaching procedures as the result of our acquisition during the past sixty or seventy years of more certain and reliable knowledge regarding children and their individual characteristics, less progress has been made in the direct study of education itself — of its aims, processes, and organization.

The main difficulty seems to lie in the complicated nature of the subject. Many educational problems have thus far defied analysis. This does not mean, of course, that eventual solutions remain forever impossible. On the contrary, all problems are theoretically solvable, provided that appropriate techniques can be invented for solving them. As Thorndike declared, everything that exists must exist in some amount and is therefore measurable.

Yet achievements in educational research continue to fall short of those in other fields. Important problems cry for a solution. When a particular subject in the school program has been reorganized or is taught by a new method, how can all the results be measured, particularly those that occur within the student? It is a relatively simple matter to use tests of subject matter to rate the student's memory and retention of details, but the other benefits that may be desired from the teaching process are not nearly so easy to measure. Much curriculum research remains inconclusive because of our present inability to make a *total* assessment of the product. Not long ago, for example, a nation-wide study was undertaken to learn whether collegiate courses organized as General Education were achieving their intended goals and could thus be proved superior to

the traditional courses in the liberal arts. The study encountered extremely disturbing difficulties from the very start — even in deciding upon which goals could be considered acceptable as the basis for measurement — and was only partly successful in arriving at any definite conclusions.

The famous Eight-Year Study of the 1930's, sponsored by the Progressive Education Association, did manage to show that capable students can succeed in college regardless of the precise pattern of the work taken in the secondary school. Studies of school district organization have revealed that rural districts, originally formed when all children walked from home to school, can substantially improve their educational offerings and facilities by enlarging their geographical area through consolidation with other districts. The financial strength of the larger districts makes better schools easier to obtain, and in this day of excellent roads and efficient bus transportation children can reach the school safely with a minimum of physical exertion. Studies of school building architecture by Strayer, Engelhardt, and others have brought about a virtual revolution in school construction. Better lighting and ventilation, better location of the buildings, classrooms with a more functional design, and the elimination of common hazards to health and safety have come out of these useful studies.

On the other hand, no research has yet been astute enough to discover exactly the qualities that are needed to make an effective teacher or the over-all effect that a given teaching method has upon a child. Fortunately, educators have not abandoned research in the face of these temporary setbacks, and solutions for such problems may very well be found in the near future.

Education badly needs dedicated, intelligent, and thoroughly trained research experts, like those in science and medicine, who will devote their energies and powers to honest, careful, and objective research. New techniques, under the leadership of such persons, will no doubt be invented for attacking most of the unsolved problems — and they are legion — in the field of education. One fact is indisputable: Our knowledge of education needs to be far more exact and voluminous than it is at present. While the tremendous value of educational research is already firmly established by the work that

has been done, its potential has never been fully developed. In part this condition may be ascribed simply to lack of time for the perfection of research techniques that will solve educational problems.

The future in this field, however, looks extremely bright. Though in the past educators admittedly have had to be content with research of questionable quality and little scientific reliability, critical standards with respect to educational studies have risen sharply in recent years. We may predict with confidence that much of the research now being produced will have important effects in improving our schools. Although barely out of its infancy in the historical sense, educational research is at last beginning to show more and more signs of a competent maturity.

### Summary

Educational research is a relatively new field of endeavor and suffers from a dearth of satisfactory techniques. Though the idea that education can be studied as a science originated with Herbart and others as early as the first half of the nineteenth century, no real research in the field was conducted until about 1895. J. M. Rice at about this time studied the effectiveness of spelling drill by means of spelling tests administered to thousands of children in many different schools. His findings revealed that much of the time given to drill was wasted, but educators refused to accept his conclusions.

Thorndike, Strayer, and Ayres at Columbia University led the way in further educational research by examining children's progress through the grades and seeking norms for the various grade levels. Thorndike introduced statistical calculations into the treatment of quantitative data and constructed the first scientific test of subject-matter achievement in 1909. Meanwhile, Hanus at Harvard University investigated vocational education and later began to make district school surveys.

The survey has become one of the most popular types of research in education. While it is almost entirely *descriptive*, its information provides the basis for steps leading to the general improvement of educational programs. Hundreds of surveys were conducted among the school systems of the nation during the 1920's and 1930's, many

by graduate students working on doctoral dissertations. The practice continues with unabated vigor today, and the larger school systems frequently maintain bureaus of research to perform this function.

Research in psychology has contributed knowledge of prime usefulness to education. Tests of mental ability have proved a great boon to school work and have aided in emphasizing the importance of individual differences among children. Psychologists have also studied the inherent nature of the child and have discovered significant patterns of growth and development. Numerous attempts have been made to examine the human learning process, and research is continuing on this vital subject. Thorndike's experimental work on learning is a landmark, though now revised by later investigations. In child study, the work of Gesell at Yale University has been particularly impressive. Since World War II steady advancement has been made in the measurement of aptitudes, interests, attitudes, and personality.

Educational research possesses many weaknesses, probably owing to the recency of its development. It has, however, achieved some successes worthy of note, and many aspects of American education have been considerably improved as the result. For the future this approach to our educational problems offers the best hope in prospect for their ultimate solution.

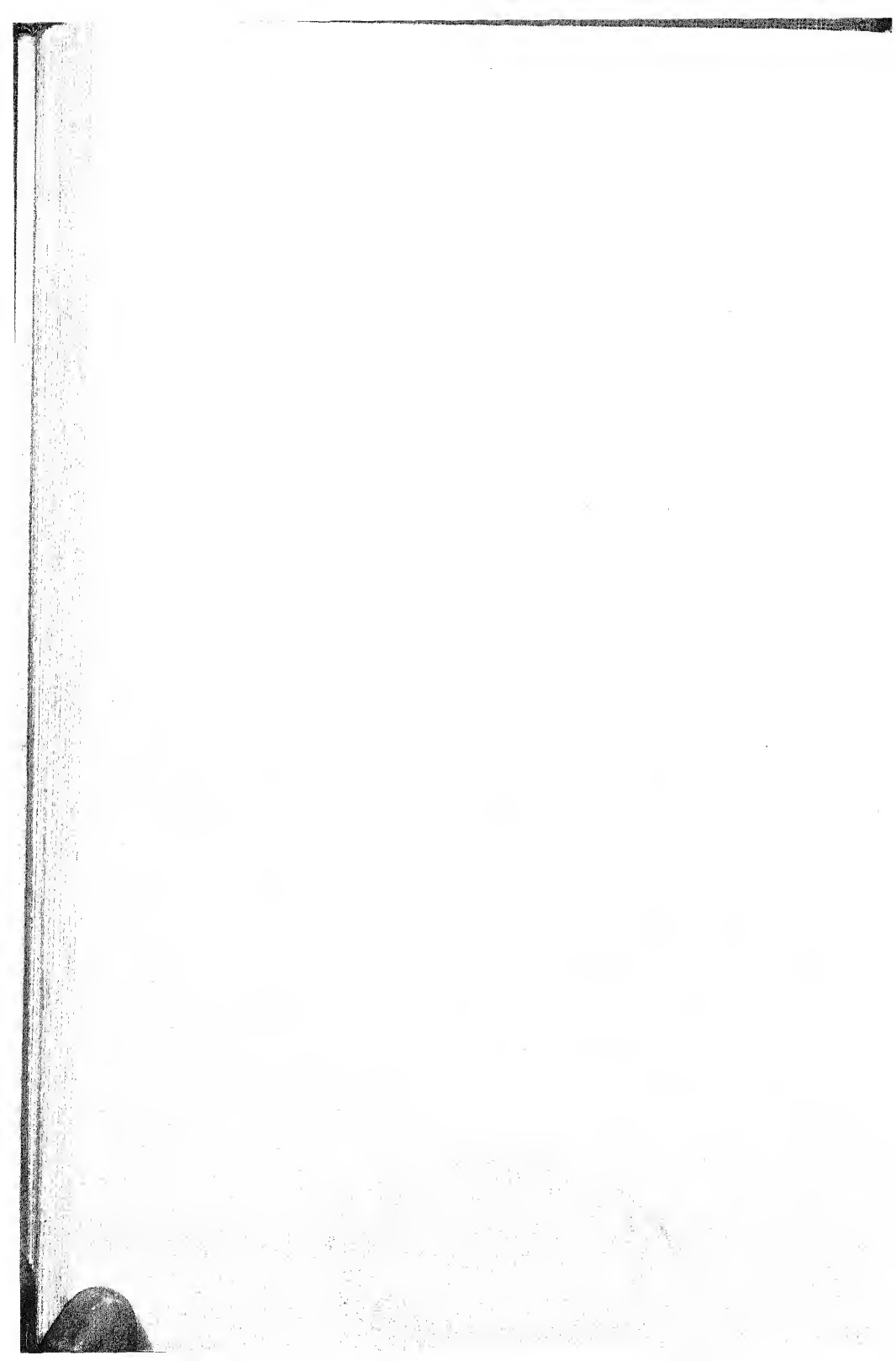




PART TWO

The Ways of Scholarship





# 5

## THE SCHOLAR AS

### DETECTIVE: THE RULES

### OF EVIDENCE

The work of adding new truth to the present store of the world's knowledge cannot be regarded as a simple or easy thing. While the average person accepts many ideas as true merely because they seem plausible or prove temporarily workable, the scholar searches with comprehensive thoroughness for all the available trustworthy evidence, both pro and con, and weighs it carefully before coming to a decision as to its accuracy and value.

The successful scholar must be just as painstaking in his investigations and just as precise in his methods as a detective engaged in the search for clues leading to the solution of a crime or a district attorney engaged in prosecuting a criminal in the courts. What the scholar seeks — as the detective or the attorney does — is evidence of every kind that can be shown logically to be linked in a cause-and-effect relationship with the problem or question under consideration. While the scholar may deal with somewhat less spectacular events than the detective or the attorney, the methods he employs are essentially the same, and the same care is used in fitting clues together and in demonstrating where the weight of the evidence lies. Occasionally in scholarship, as in police work, a problem cannot be solved

because the evidence is insufficient or because it does not hold together when tested by logic or reason.

To illustrate the analogy between legal procedures and scholarship, let us examine some of the facts relating to an actual crime. Our attention should be focused on the procedures used in bringing the alleged criminal to justice and in avoiding errors which would place him in undue jeopardy. It should be noted that legal procedures are aimed at the same objective as all research — that is, the determination of the truth.

### **An Analogy from Criminal Procedure**

Two police officers, driving one day in a police cruiser through a suburban area in Maryland were shocked by the sudden spectacle of an automobile careening at high speed and apparently out of control down a slanting street. After striking obstacles on both sides of the street, the automobile ran up over one of the curbings and overturned. When the two police officers approached the wrecked vehicle, they found its motor still running and its wheels rapidly spinning. Inside was the dead body of a woman with several deep gashes in her forehead.

To the ordinary observer, this event had every appearance of that common occurrence in America, a traffic accident, although a rather unusual one. It would be reasonable in the light of everyday experience to suppose that the driver, descending the hill at far too high a rate of speed, had lost control or had fainted and that she had been killed by striking her head against some sharp object inside the automobile when it overturned. The police officers, on the other hand, being specially trained observers, noticed several facts that others might have overlooked.

The continued running of the motor at high speed after the apparent accident they regarded as unusual. They attempted to ascertain the cause and soon discovered that a small pebble was wedged under the accelerator pedal — another unusual circumstance. Was it likely that such an object could have lodged itself there accidentally? Experience would argue to the contrary. Yet this evidence could not be considered as conclusive; it merely raised serious doubts. Indications that blood from the dead woman's body on the floor

and upholstery had flowed in a direction opposite from that which might normally be expected as the result of the automobile's position also aroused some suspicions. Liquids do not flow uphill. Furthermore, no trace of the woman's purse (or her eyeglasses, it was later learned) could be found. The observed facts, then, indicated a certain unreasonableness in the situation. Some of the evidence did not fit the logical pattern of a traffic accident.

Medical examination by a skilled physician revealed later that the skull fractures and the wounds on the forehead could not conceivably have been caused by any object found within the automobile. Besides, the absence of injuries or contusions on other parts of the body, which normally should have been present if death had been caused by the impact of the body against portions of the car, tended to show that the woman had been dead before the events witnessed by the two police officers had occurred. Thus the first hypothesis about the incident — the belief that the woman's death was accidental — which the police officers had formulated almost automatically while watching the incident happen, had to be rejected. Reasoning from the facts established by an observation of details and by known principles of science, the authorities turned from the hypothesis of accidental death to the hypothesis of murder.

Note that the police officers and the physician, because of their training in observation and their previous knowledge and experience, were able to detect certain things which an ordinary person might not have noticed, or the significance of which he might have missed. Note also that the pattern of reasoning used in reaching the hypothesis that a murder had been committed consisted in the piecing together of bits of pertinent evidence to reach a conclusion by which all the unusual facts of the case could be accounted for.

The problem now was to bring the criminal to justice. Having decided that a murder had been committed, the authorities began their search for the guilty person by trying to formulate and then test out various hypotheses as to possible motives for the crime — that is, they sought its cause. One hypothesis developed from the failure to find any trace of the woman's purse. This fact suggested the possibility of robbery as a motive. If the woman had been robbed and beaten (the beating resulting in her death), the robber,



to conceal his crime, could have contrived the events witnessed by police officers. To test this hypothesis, the authorities made an investigation to determine whether any known criminals could be shown to have been anywhere near the scene of the crime at the time it was committed. The search proved unfruitful, however, and this hypothesis had to be laid aside; no strong evidence was uncovered which tended to substantiate it.

Meanwhile, efforts were being made to learn as much as possible about the victim's life, her family, her friends, and her daily habits. The investigation centered upon this question: Who might have had a reasonable (or plausible) motive to murder her? The police obviously believed (a basic assumption derived from extensive experience) that murders are seldom committed without impelling motives.

When the police learned, by sifting and cross-checking all the facts and opinions which they could unearth in a study of the victim's life, that her husband appeared to be in love with another woman, a strong motive for the crime suggested itself. When the husband seemed also to have been the last person to see the victim alive — and this not long before her death, the police were convinced of his guilt. He was indicted, brought to trial for murder, and convicted.

### **Presenting the Evidence**

The data presented above, of course, do not in themselves establish the fact of the criminal's guilt. While the police may have been satisfied that these facts adequately demonstrated the guilt of the accused, the man himself was entitled by law to defend his innocence, to provide some other explanation for the facts disclosed, and to require the presentation of conclusive evidence of his guilt before a jury.

The prosecuting attorney, in order to prevent error, demonstrate the truth, and establish justice in the case, was given the problem of analyzing, classifying, and interpreting all the evidence found, of presenting it in a logical order to the jury, of explaining any contradictory or unclear pieces of evidence, of showing how the evidence pointed to the guilt of the accused, and of generally demonstrating a clear-cut conclusion of guilt based on logic, known probabilities, and established facts.

In presenting a case before a judge or jury, an attorney is bound by certain rules of procedure devised for the purpose of eliminating error. Particularly is this true in the presentation of evidence. In the judicial sense, evidence means any demonstrable fact, presumed fact, or expert opinion which has a bearing on the question in dispute and from which inferences regarding the main question may be drawn. (To illustrate what is meant here by a presumed fact, we may point out that it is not necessary for anyone to dip his finger into a steaming cup of coffee in order to determine whether the coffee is hot. Past experience leads to the presumption that the presence of steam indicates heat in the coffee.) Certain types of evidence, however, cannot be offered at all, either because they have no direct bearing on the case in question or because they are obviously unreliable or (in some instances) because they are likely to appeal merely to prejudice or emotion.

The laws of the United States provide that no person can be presumed guilty until definite evidence of his guilt can be demonstrated; that is, he must be accorded a fair trial. Thus the burden of proof rests not with the accused to prove himself innocent, but with the prosecuting attorney to prove him guilty. In a murder case, such as that described above, the prosecuting attorney is required by legal rules to prove, beyond any reasonable doubt, certain facts, which may be classified briefly as follows:

1. *Proof of death (corpus delicti)*. He must bring evidence to court (for example, the signed statement of a medical examiner or the oral testimony of a qualified witness) fixing the identity of the victim and proving that the victim is actually dead. Had the wife in the Maryland case merely disappeared without a trace, her murder could not have been presumed without some very strong evidence pointing to the fact that her death really had occurred.

2. *Cause of death*. The circumstances of the death must be such as to give cause for the presumption of murder. In the case above, the observations of the police officers and the report of the medical examiner were such as to establish the presumption of murder, though not necessarily to prove it.

3. *The connection of the defendant with the murder*. It must be shown that the defendant had the opportunity of committing the crime. Had the husband in this case been able to prove that he was

in another city at the time of the murder, he could not have been convicted. He was unable, however, to supply a sufficiently strong "alibi" of this kind.

4. *Intention to commit murder.* Since it is a basic assumption in law that no murder can be committed without a definite intention, it is necessary to give some evidence of malice and forethought on the part of the defendant. This usually means finding the defendant's motive. In this case, the husband's proved passion for another woman — described by her in oral testimony before the court — established a plausible motive.

### **Some Principles Underlying Presentation of Evidence**

What principles may be derived from the legal proceedings briefly summarized here, and how do these apply to scholarship?

In the first place, it should be noted that a murder trial (or any other case in court) and scholarly research have essentially the same purpose. This is to solve a problem honestly and fairly, to establish truth based on sound evidence. Occasionally justice may go astray and scholarship fall into error. Elaborate safeguards, however, have been set up to prevent such occurrences so far as possible.

In the second place, the burden of proof in law is upon the person who brings the case into court. Unless he can present sufficient evidence to substantiate his claims, he loses his case. In a similar way, the burden of proving a case in scholarship rests with the scholar who believes he has made a new discovery in his field. His belief in the proposition he supports is not sufficient; he must have good evidence to back up his claims. To be sure, facts and ideas which are already generally known and accepted may be stated without any special supporting evidence. Such basic assumptions as the fact that water flows downhill, that a live coal will burn the hand, that the purpose of schools is to educate children, and the like, need not be argued. Other facts used by the lawyer and the scholar in proving their cases, however, must be supported by clear evidence.

In the third place, the evidence offered must be relevant (that is, related clearly to the problem which is being solved); it must be material (that is, of sufficient importance to carry some weight in proving the case); and it must be competent (that is, derived from sources that can be relied upon as qualified and truthful). The

scholar, like the lawyer, should ask himself, when dealing with *any* type of evidence: Does this fact have real bearing on the question at hand? Does this fact actually have significance and importance in the solution of the problem? Is this fact learned from a trustworthy source? Some of these aspects of evidence will be examined more fully in a later chapter; at this point the essential thing is to realize the great necessity for inspecting evidence carefully before using it in the solution of a problem.

In the fourth place, a line must be drawn between factual evidence and the kind of evidence which is mere opinion. Generally speaking, both in law and in scholarship, evidence ought to consist of facts, and from these facts opinions (or generalizations) may be drawn by those judging the case. In the strict sense, of course, everything which we regard as a fact really amounts to an opinion derived from our sensory impressions. Thus, as a practical rule of procedure, we accept as a fact any evidence based upon direct sensory knowledge of the events in question. For example, if a witness in a court of law positively identifies a suspected person as someone with whom he has long been familiar, we are likely to accept his inference (based upon the senses of sight and hearing) as factual. In the same way, the chemist who mixes two colorless liquids together and sees the mixture turn green can report the incident as a fact. He has inferred the change in color from seeing it happen — that is, from direct sensory knowledge.

Opinion cannot have the weight of factual evidence in proving any case. On the other hand, there are times when opinion may be the best evidence available. In such cases, care is exercised to make sure that the opinion offered is qualified and authoritative. Ordinarily, this means the opinion of one who is an expert with regard to the matter under consideration. To determine and provide evidence on the cause of a person's death, a medical examiner may be asked to perform an autopsy on the body and then testify as to what, in his opinion, was the cause of death. Expert opinion of this kind has almost the weight of factual evidence, though even experts will sometimes disagree. But though *expert opinion* may have its uses when factual evidence proves insufficient or inconclusive, *opinion in general* has little weight and is not admissible as evidence.

In the fifth place, evidence derived at second-hand usually is con-

sidered of small value. With some exceptions, hearsay evidence cannot be used in courts of law. It is too unreliable and it usually cannot be substantiated. Furthermore, since memory is faulty, errors are easy to make in reporting anything learned from someone else. Sometimes, of course, hearsay evidence may represent the truth, but how is one to be sure? For a century and a half a rumor or legend persisted in Denmark to the effect that Giertrud Birgitte Bodenhoff, a wealthy young widow of the eighteenth century, had been buried alive and that grave-robbers, digging up her coffin to steal the jewels which had been interred with her body, had killed her with a spade. There was no evidence to support the gruesome story—a story based on hearsay—until 1953, when the body of Giertrud was exhumed. A skull found in the grave not only lay face down but had a distinct and sharp dent in the brow. The skeleton was discovered to be in a curiously twisted position. With such evidence of a factual nature to support the hearsay, the old legend would seem to be vindicated.

Finally, the evidence used in solving a problem—assuming that it is relevant, material, and competent—must fit together into a logical pattern, and this pattern must point conclusively to a definite solution of the problem. In law, that solution may be the guilt or innocence of an accused person or the establishment of liability; in scholarship, it is the correct answer to the question which the scholar has chosen to study.

### ✓Steps in Pursuing an Investigation

How does the scholar ordinarily proceed in the study of a problem in his field? The usual steps in pursuing a scholarly investigation may be clearly distinguished. It will be seen how closely they parallel the main steps followed in solving the crime described earlier in this chapter.

**The Problem.** First, there must be a problem to solve. It may be stated as a general rule that all scholarly studies are undertaken to solve specific problems. Just as the police investigator examines the circumstances of someone's death in order to discover what caused it, so the scholar has in mind some definite thing that he wishes to learn from his study. That thing is the solution to a specific problem.

**The Data.** Once the problem has been defined, the next step is to begin a thorough examination of the data — the facts of the case. And it is vital to have all the relevant facts. If, as frequently happens, some pertinent information is overlooked by the person who is insufficiently trained, the investigation will go astray. The police officers in the Maryland case might have overlooked some of the circumstances which led them to suspect murder. They might not have noticed, for example, that the woman's purse was missing, or they might simply have shut off the ignition switch without wondering why the motor continued to run after the car had overturned. But these facts were necessary as evidence in substantiating the idea of murder.

**The Hypothesis.** After a preliminary examination of the data, sooner or later some possible solution to the problem suggests itself to the investigator. This tentative solution may easily be the wrong one. It will be recalled that the police in the Maryland case at first assumed that the woman's death was accidentally caused. Then, even after they were quite convinced of the probability of murder, they searched for the criminal in the wrong direction because they argued that robbery must have been the motive. It is natural and useful, however, to make reasonable guesses as to the possible solution of a problem even at the very beginning of an investigation. Such a guess we call a hypothesis. It may prove to be correct and in agreement with all the facts, or it may be wrong and have to be discarded.

**Testing the Hypothesis.** The formulation of a reasonable guess, or hypothesis, as to the solution of a problem helps in determining where to look for evidence. Thus, even when the hypothesis turns out to be the wrong one, it aids the study. After the hypothesis has been decided upon, there begins the work of collecting evidence from as many sources as possible to test it. Through discovering new facts and applying accepted principles of knowledge and logic, it will be determined whether the hypothesis adequately accounts for the facts in the case. This careful search for data, guided by the tentative hypothesis, constitutes the chief labor of all research, just as of criminal investigation.

**The Conclusion.** After testing the hypothesis by gathering as much information as possible and fitting it into a logical pattern,



the investigator either discards the hypothesis as unproved or decides that it is correct. If correct, it forms his major conclusion in the study. In other words, the study must continue until the investigator is convinced of the truth of his hypothesis *and is able to convince others by the weight of the evidence*. In the same way that a prosecuting attorney must present a case that will stand up in court, the scholar must report his findings in such a way that his conclusions will be acceptable to informed people in his field.

### The Scholar as Thinker

It should be kept firmly in mind that the essential thing about any study is not merely the gathering of data, the accumulation of facts, but the scholar's interpretation of what the facts mean and how they fit together into a logical, usable pattern. In other words, research requires thought.

The particular kind of thinking which goes into research has been variously referred to as *scientific thinking* or *critical thinking*; as *reflective thinking* or simply *reflection*; and as *ratiocination* (by Edgar Allan Poe and others), a word which really means *careful reasoning*. Whatever the term we employ, it is obvious that scholarly work requires a much more complex type of thinking than that to which we are accustomed in our daily experience.

Most of our thinking in everyday life seems undirected. We simply react with the least effort necessary to the experiences we meet. We are likely to generalize about our experiences without thinking very hard about them and without gathering all the facts essential to a wise decision. After a time we learn by this undirected thinking how to act so that the results are pleasant rather than unpleasant. But random thinking of this kind, because of its limited extent and because of the inaccuracy of many of our casual observations, can lead us into error.

In contrast with the usual random flow of our thought, reflection is defined by John Dewey as an "active, persistent, and careful consideration of any belief or supposed form of knowledge in the light of the grounds that support it and the further conclusions to which it tends."<sup>1</sup> Furthermore, this type of thinking centers on a problem

<sup>1</sup> John Dewey, *How We Think* (Boston: D. C. Heath and Co., 1933), p. 9.

or question and seeks to solve or answer it with the greatest possible degree of accuracy.

As we have noted in a previous chapter, mankind has for many centuries attempted by various methods to explain the phenomena which are observed in this life. Man's method has been sometimes to explain the unknown as magic; sometimes to depend for his explanations upon the dictums of authorities; and sometimes to seek explanations through syllogistic reasoning. Reflection as defined by Dewey is the latest step in man's development of his power to think and thus to solve his problems. It is our chief weapon in the advancement of human knowledge when used by an observant and thoughtful person, thoroughly familiar with the general field in which he is working, who applies both deductive and inductive reasoning to the collection and analysis of the facts relating to a problem and who fits all the relevant, material, and competent evidence available into a logical pattern and thus into a satisfactory solution.

### Dangers to Straight Thinking

In following the procedures of investigation recommended above, whether one is attempting to solve a crime or a scholarly problem, the investigator will avoid serious error only if he is wary of several pitfalls. Among these we may number premature conclusions, the tendency to ignore adverse evidence, the habit of thinking within fixed limits (lack of originality or perspective), inability to obtain all the related facts, inaccuracy of observation, the mistaking of coincidence for cause-and-effect, and personal prejudice (lack of objectivity). Any of these can destroy the value of a study.

**Premature Conclusions.** Many a scholar, carried away by his own enthusiasm, has clung fast to a pleasing or attention-getting theory even while realizing that the evidence to support it was flimsy indeed. A little patience, a little more time spent in hunting down the facts, might have saved him from error. The careful investigator does not make up his mind until all the evidence is in and has been painstakingly checked. This is a safeguard against wrong conclusions in the same way that legal procedures are a safeguard against injustice. During the early history of the western United States, before

law and order were well established, men are known to have been accused falsely of certain crimes (as a typical example, horse stealing) and condemned by informal courts under mob or lynch law on the merest suspicion of guilt. Frequently the circumstance that a man was a stranger turned this kind of court against him. Thus, through lack of knowledge of legal safeguards, well-intentioned citizens often hanged innocent men. Scholars can be similarly mistaken in their work when they jump to firm conclusions without a sufficient search for evidence.

**Ignoring Adverse Evidence.** A scholar may even grow so enthusiastic about his hypothesis that he glosses over or ignores important adverse evidence. Perhaps this kind of thing may be condoned in a political debate, in which the object is to win the argument at all costs. But scholarly studies and reports are not made to win arguments; their purpose is to discover truth. Adverse evidence must be given the same weight as confirming evidence, even though it may mean changing the hypothesis.

**Thinking Within Fixed Limits.** Nothing is more deadening to productive scholarship than the habits we form throughout the years of thinking within fixed limits. More and more, as we grow older, we seem to react in much the same way to similar kinds of experience. Thus, in thinking about a problem, our thoughts tend to follow a certain course; and each time we think about the same problem, the same course of thinking is followed. Psychologists have observed that, even in such a simple thing as adding up a column of figures, an error once made has a tendency to be repeated. The scholar must make efforts to avoid rigid patterns in his thinking. He must encourage his own habits of originality. New situations or unexpected results arising from a study should find him ready to adapt himself and willing to recognize the unforeseen.

Numerous vital discoveries have actually been made because of mistakes or accidents occurring during a study, provided the investigator was willing to notice their possible implications and adopt a new line of investigation. Röntgen, while studying the rays of light produced by electrical discharges within a vacuum tube, happened one day to leave a screen coated with barium platino-cyanide on his work bench near one of these tubes. The screen was

cut off from any visible rays of light by black paper which Röntgen had placed around the tube; yet Röntgen, to his amazement, noticed that it had begun to glow. Further study of this phenomenon (the X ray) brought him to the conclusion that certain rays of light will penetrate opaque objects. While accident obviously played a part in this discovery, it was the scientist's alertness to the unexpected which enabled him to capitalize upon the incident. Although imagination and originality are sometimes mistakenly thought of as handicaps to straight thinking about scholarly problems, all the great research men of history appear to have been liberally endowed with these qualities.

**Inability to Obtain All the Relevant Facts.** In undertaking some studies, scholars may encounter considerable difficulty in securing sufficient evidence to form valid conclusions. The inability to obtain all the pertinent facts must be recognized in these cases. For example, when Ptolemy studied the movements of the stars, the telescope had not yet been invented. To him the stars were merely points of light in the sky, and he had no means of determining their characteristics except by the naked eye and some primitive tools for measuring angles. Again, to cite a modern example, we may arrive at certain conjectures about the activities of the Norsemen or the early Irishmen in pre-Columbian America, but so little evidence clearly connected with their life here has been found that, until more definite information is unearthed, our knowledge must remain fragmentary and inconclusive. Important errors have been made by scholars drawing broad conclusions from scanty evidence.

**Inaccuracy of Observation.** Inaccuracy of observation presents another danger. When men imagined that certain forms of life were spontaneously generated and actually believed they saw small animals being formed out of the mud and ooze at the edges of pools, they were simply not observing accurately. Experiments often must be repeated several times to make sure that all the elements have been properly observed. In any kind of research, it is surprisingly easy to overlook some factors or to see only what one is prepared to see. Not long ago the discovery of chemical Element 87 was announced. The method used was X-ray analysis. X rays emanating from a substance supposedly containing Element 87 were

reflected from a crystal of calcite. The spectral lines formed in the reflection made a pattern like that which had been predicted for the previously undiscovered element. But scientists who repeated the experiment reported that these spectral lines were caused by the surface irregularities of the crystal; they could even be made to vanish when the crystal was moved.

**Mistaking Coincidence for Cause-and-Effect.** Another danger is that of mistaking coincidence for a cause-and-effect relationship. A few years ago a New York City newspaperman pointed out, in fun, that the years during which the New York Giants had won baseball championships had been years of economic prosperity everywhere in the country. His delighted conclusion: To achieve prosperity, allow the Giants to win the pennant! Unfortunately, serious conclusions are sometimes drawn by poorly trained scholars from situations no less far-fetched than this one.

**Lack of Objectivity.** The final danger to be mentioned here is lack of objectivity. The scholar should have no ax to grind. He should be seeking for truth. Studies undertaken merely to support some belief or ideology to which the scholar previously has committed himself serve a doubtful purpose. In the Soviet Union biological scientists (particularly the geneticists) have been expected by the authorities to subscribe to the so-called Lysenko theory relating to the inheritance of acquired characteristics. According to this theory, the nature of any organism can be changed by artificial means, and this change can be transmitted to the offspring. This belief conforms to the minor Marxist doctrine that the nature of man is determined by his social environment. Discredited by progressive biologists in other countries, this restricted belief has no doubt been secretly rejected by many Russian scientists, but even pretended adherence to it would hinder free research.

To be sure, some problems cannot be treated with complete objectivity. They may, for instance, involve human emotions or tastes. Who can describe, except subjectively, the taste of whale's milk? A color that seems attractive to one person may seem unattractive to another. Perfect objectivity in research, therefore, must be regarded as impossible. Nor is the kind of subjective judgment mentioned here necessarily to be avoided, especially when several investigators

agree on their reactions to sensory stimuli and describe their observations in much the same way. If everyone tasting sugar agrees that it is sweet, then the fact is established.

The kind of subjectivity which needs to be avoided is prejudice, failure to keep an open mind. Twisting or selecting the data simply on the basis of their agreement with accepted dogma or the investigator's own general beliefs is anathema to good research.

### Summary

Scholarship may be compared to police work and courtroom procedure. As the detective and the lawyer face the problems of putting clues together into a logical pattern and presenting sound evidence before the court in an orderly way as the means of solving a crime and bringing the criminal to justice through the discovery of truth, so the scholar faces problems and procedural rules of a similar nature in attacking problems of scholarship. Conclusions must be based upon clear evidence (data), and such evidence must be relevant, material, and drawn from competent and credible sources.

Scholarship requires a particular kind of thinking, involving both deductive and inductive reasoning, and the formulation of a logical pattern of evidence in support of the scholar's conclusions. Dangers to effective thinking in relation to scholarly (as well as other) problems include forming premature conclusions, ignoring adverse evidence, thinking within fixed limits, failing to observe all related facts, being inaccurate in observation, mistaking coincidence for cause-and-effect relationships, and allowing oneself to be influenced by subjectivity or prejudice.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>2</sup> For helpful advice on principles of legal procedure discussed in this chapter, the author is deeply grateful to Judge John Joseph Dooley, Weld County, Colorado.



# 6

## THE SCHOLAR AS

### DETECTIVE: THE SEARCH

### FOR CLUES

The quality in a well-written detective story that gives it intellectual as well as emotional appeal is the cleverness and skill with which the detective-hero searches out the clues in solving a crime. His almost superhuman powers of observation and the deductions he draws from these observations—as in the stories of Sherlock Holmes—fascinate the reader. Sometimes we hear speculations regarding a “perfect crime,” by which term we mean a crime that leaves no clues to betray the criminal. Detectives of long experience maintain that a crime without clues is so rare as to be practically unheard of.

Suppose that a boy riding his bicycle on a city street has been struck down and injured by an automobile. The operator of the automobile, instead of stopping to assist the victim and to report the accident to the police, as he should, rapidly drives away; he is, in short, a hit-and-run driver. How can he be apprehended?

The police undoubtedly will begin their search for the culprit by first observing and recording as many *facts* about the incident (clues) as they can. How did the accident occur? They make photographs of the scene, look for tire marks on the street, measure the distance

of the bicycle and of the boy's body from the probable point of impact. This may tell something about the speed and direction the automobile traveled. What were the make and model of the automobile? The police may find pieces of glass from a broken headlight or flakes of paint scraped from the surface of the car. They examine the marks left on the bicycle. They may even analyze in the police laboratory the dirt or dust shaken from underneath the automobile's fenders at the scene. They search for eye-witnesses who may have seen the accident or caught a glimpse of the car as it sped away. What was its color, its make, its model? Could the license number be read? Was the witness able to see the driver's face? Was the driver a man or a woman?

From any pertinent facts or opinions obtained in this fashion, the police will draw such preliminary conclusions as may be warranted. But suppose no witnesses at all can be found. Then perhaps a little may be learned by examining the small traces of paint which have been found adhering to some parts of the bicycle—paint presumably scraped from the automobile during the collision. Such paint can be inspected under the microscope and analyzed with chemicals,—a process that may lead to an identification of both the color and the type of paint used. The records of automobile manufacturers may then reveal the make of car for which this type of paint was made. Pieces of glass from the headlight may also provide a clue to the make and model. Furthermore, by deductions based on calculations regarding the speed at which the vehicle was traveling, it may be inferred that a fender was damaged and will need to be repaired. The police may visit garagemen in the community and ask them to be on the lookout for an automobile of a certain color and make which has a dented fender. By such methods the erring driver may often be located.

### **Clues in Scholarship**

Problem-solving in scholarship involves just such methods as are here demonstrated. The chief principle underlying the hypothetical illustration used above is simply that problems can be solved by those who know how and where to look for the pertinent clues. Ordinarily only the trained person can do this. The untrained person would

not be likely to know where the necessary information could be found, and still less would he understand how to classify and analyze the information when it was found.

How does this principle apply to the scholar? It means, first of all, that he must be familiar with all the important sources of information in his own field. It means also that he must be able to use the tools of research which are available to him. Most of these tools he will find in the library or the laboratory.

Just as the detective should have experience and special training in order to know where best to exert his efforts in an investigation (that is, where he is most likely to find the clues), so too the scholar, for much the same purpose, must be thoroughly familiar with all the basic discoveries made in his field; he must be, in other words, an expert within that field. His first step in solving a problem within his academic field, then, is usually to review carefully the present state of knowledge with regard to that problem. This essential step has two purposes: It refreshes his mind on what previous investigators have contributed toward the solution of the problem, thus preventing unnecessary duplication of work already done by others; and it may suggest methods of research which he can use in attacking the problem.

In a practical sense, this means that the scholar must carefully read, or re-read, all the published and unpublished materials that have any relation to the question being studied. Often a bibliography on the subject will lead him to several books or articles which deal with it in some degree; these books and articles in turn may suggest further sources of information. He should also ascertain whether doctoral dissertations, or master's theses have been written on the topic or have touched on it in any way; if these are available, he should consult them. Lists of research projects in progress may tell him of other scholars who are already working on the same or similar subjects. He may very well correspond with these fellow-workers to exchange information and also to avoid encroachment upon areas of study which they have previously claimed. A scholar does not knowingly undertake the solution of a problem which another scholar is already studying. But the point is to know exactly what has been done and is being done. Once the scholar has a firm un-

derstanding of the facts and opinions revealed through this painstaking "review of related literature" (as it is frequently called), he can then proceed with an orderly search for clues which others may have overlooked or with the application of new methods of analyzing data already available.

### Knowing Where to Look

The chief source of the preliminary information used in any scholarly study is, of course, the library. The better and more complete the collection of materials on a given subject in the library, the more likely is the scholar to be successful in his search for clues. For this reason universities and other institutions annually spend huge amounts of money to collect published and unpublished writings of many sorts. Without great libraries the task of the scholar would be difficult indeed. Even the experimental scientist consults the library before planning a project in the laboratory.

But even within a good library some sources of information will prove better than others. In the order of their probable usefulness to research, the principal materials to be found in the library include (1) official documents and original manuscripts having a direct bearing on the problem being studied, (2) other scholarly studies of the problem or of one related closely to it, (3) books and articles expressing opinions on the subject by persons having special competence or experience in dealing with it, and (4) other miscellaneous writings on the problem or any aspect of it. To these might also be added the bibliographies, reviews of research, catalogues, and other tools useful in helping the scholar to locate the materials mentioned above.

For the young scholar, to whom the search for clues may be a new experience, a word of caution regarding the relative importance of these different kinds of material may be beneficial. Some periodicals in almost every field publish direct reports of scholarly studies, and these are by all odds the most useful periodicals for the scholar. They provide in very exact language a record of recent and essential discoveries by investigators in the field. Other periodicals merely comment upon these discoveries. To be sure, essays by competent authorities, giving expert opinion, often may be of considerable

value; they do not normally, however, prove as sound a basis for scholarly evidence as do the reports of actual research. A third class of periodical may seek to interpret scholarly discoveries to the general public, and these the scholar will find of extremely limited value for his purposes. Often their intention is to entertain the reader instead of accurately informing him.

If a young scholar wishes to determine whether a particular periodical is of one type or another, he may find it helpful to glance at the title page and consider three questions:

1. *Who publishes the periodical?* If it is published by a scholarly organization, a university press, or perhaps a governmental agency, one may ordinarily assume that it enforces fairly high standards of scholarship in its articles.

2. *Who are its editors?* If there is a board of editors consisting of reputable scholars and leaders in the field, the articles no doubt have been carefully read and sifted by these experts to insure their accuracy and their value to scholars.

3. *Are the articles, whether essays or reports of studies, clearly documented?* That is, do they have footnotes or some other device for citing evidence in support of the statements made, so that the reader can, if he wishes, go to the sources and inspect the evidence for himself?

A little experience and inquiry will soon reveal which are the standard and the reliable scholarly periodicals in any field, and the young scholar should make himself thoroughly acquainted with these.

### **Primary and Secondary Sources**

A graduate student recently turned in to his professor the report of a study in which he used certain information relating to a court case involving school taxes. His facts about the case were derived entirely from newspaper accounts and from articles appearing in such popular magazines as *Time* and *Newsweek*. After examining the report, the professor asked the student this question: "Why did you not inspect the actual court records in this case?" The student replied that this possibility had simply not occurred to him.

If scholarly investigations are to be accurate, they must make use

not of second-hand information, which can be very inexact or incomplete, but of primary source materials. In the instance mentioned above, the student should of course have consulted the court records.

In general, school and college textbooks, encyclopedias, almanacs, digests, and other summaries of information for popular consumption may be regarded as secondary sources. They are seldom used in research except as the means of tracking down other materials and references; in the student's footnotes and bibliography they are not usually mentioned. The reason ought to be obvious: the information contained in them is derived from other sources and is given in summarized form. To find the full details about a subject and to be sure of exact information, it is necessary to go beyond the encyclopedias and the textbooks and search out the primary sources. Furthermore, the presentation of material in a secondary source almost invariably includes an interpretation or a selection of the facts or a judgment by the author or compiler. The careful scholar will not be satisfied with second-hand opinions and judgments; he will wish to arrive at his own conclusions from his own examination of the source materials. Every time a fact or an idea is transmitted from a primary source to a secondary source, there is the chance of error, omission, or wrong interpretation.

Experience in research and familiarity with his field will help the young investigator more than anything else in determining which are primary sources of data for his purposes and which are secondary. If he is making a biographical study—say, for example, the life of Abraham Lincoln or some phase of it—the standard biographies of Lincoln will provide him with a general framework and the broad sequence of events which he must record; but these are not enough. To find the facts he must go to primary sources—to letters, diaries, old newspapers, official governmental records, and the like. Merely to repeat, recombine, or put into new words the facts which others have previously collected and published is not scholarship. The essential thing is to seek for clues which have hitherto been overlooked and thus to learn and bring to light something new in one's field. This, of course, can be done properly only by direct observation of the evidence at its original source.



Note, moreover, that it is the relation of the material to the problem, rather than the nature of the material itself, that determines whether it is to be classed as a primary or a secondary source. For example, if a study entailing a comparison of school textbooks is being made, then the textbooks themselves become primary sources. Again, if the editorial policies and practices of *Time* or *Newsweek* are being studied, the student must examine copies of the magazine to obtain the facts he will need in forming his conclusions, and in such a case these materials become primary sources.

Many inexperienced young scholars appear to think that, once they have made a review of all the related literature, the study has been completed. On the contrary, such a summary of the studies and opinions of others is merely the first step in any research project. It clears the way for the investigator's advance into the unknown. If he is able to use the foundations already laid by earlier studies and achieve one further step in the advancement of the knowledge of his field, he will have embarked upon real research and may soon experience the joys of scholarly discovery.

### **The Library: Storehouse of Learning**

The library constitutes a storehouse of learning written down and arranged in some usable order. Successful research often depends upon the extent and quality of the library facilities which are available. Of course, in these days of scholarly cooperation libraries often borrow materials from each other; if a particular library does not have the book or document needed for a certain study, some other library may be willing to lend it. If not, the student is faced with the necessity of traveling to the library which has the material he needs. Much, however, is being done to assist the scholar in his constant search for evidence. Photostatic reproductions of rare items may be made and supplied to him under some circumstances at a nominal cost. Microfilming adds a method of increasing a library's holdings and conserving space.

Manuscripts, it is true, cannot ordinarily be sent from one library to another; there is too much danger of loss or damage. Rare and fragile books, as well as other scarce or irreplaceable items, must be guarded against damage, loss, or theft. One cannot, for example,

expect the Harvard University Library to place its rare Shakespeare folios at the mercy of the mails or even of a possibly careless scholar. But the serious and honest scholar who is reasonable in his requests will find libraries and librarians only too happy to help him locate the things he needs. Without their help, he would in most cases be unable to accomplish his work.

No library can store or acquire everything that is needed for every research project. Some books and manuscripts, for example, remain in private hands and are sometimes inaccessible. Until quite recently the relatives of Emily Dickinson, the American poet, withheld most of the original copies of her poems from scrutiny by anyone outside the family; as long as these materials remained out of reach, it was not possible for scholars to determine whether the published versions of these poems were in the form in which she wrote them. Libraries cannot find or afford to purchase complete files of all newspapers or all magazines or all books that have been published. The larger the library, however, the better are the scholar's chances of locating the materials he requires for his research. This accounts for much of the concentration of graduate study in the larger and older universities, which have been able to build up immense collections of manuscripts, books, and periodicals for the use of their students. Because of the tremendous cost and effort involved in assembling a comprehensive collection, most modern university libraries have tended to specialize in a few fields. One library may be pre-eminent in the field of economics, another in seventeenth-century English literature, another in American education, another in medieval European history, and so on. The scholar should learn as early as possible where the best collections of the materials in his own field are to be found.

### **The Use of the Library**

It goes without saying that skill in the correct use of the library is highly essential in a scholarly investigation. By the time the student has achieved graduate-school status, he should have become familiar with the general principles and practices of library usage. As a scholar with a problem to solve, however, his relation to the library will in many ways be different, at least in degree, from what

it was when he was an undergraduate. Instead of depending on course reading lists, for instance, he must now compile his own lists of reference materials. The more he knows about the systems and practices of libraries in general, and of his college or university library in particular, the more effective can he be in tapping library resources. It may prove helpful briefly to review some of the fundamentals of library usage in the light of the research scholar's special needs and purposes.

**Systems of Classification.** Every library has its own arrangement and system of shelving and cataloguing. Usually there is a logical and recognizable classification of the materials by subject. Books and periodicals are numbered and placed on the shelves in some understandable order. The scholar must expect to spend some time studying and exploring each library he uses so that its particular system will become familiar to him. If he is permitted by the library rules to study and browse among the shelves, or stacks, he will find this privilege a most profitable and welcome one. Searching the shelves often results in the discovery of books which might not have come to his attention in any other way. On the other hand, if the library does not allow the scholar access to the shelves, he must realize that this restriction exists for the purpose of protecting the library's treasures. Unfortunately, vital materials in libraries, unless carefully safeguarded, have an exasperating way of disappearing.

Even though libraries differ from one another both in methods and in details of arrangement and classification, there are two systems of classification which every scholar should know by heart; for most American libraries (though not all) now employ one or the other. These are the Dewey Decimal system and the Library of Congress system.

The Dewey Decimal system, invented by Melvil Dewey, a noted American librarian, arranges all published materials in a library under ten principal headings, as follows:

000	General Works	500	Natural Science
100	Philosophy	600	Useful Arts
200	Religion	700	Fine Arts
300	Sociology	800	Literature
400	Philology	900	History

The Library of Congress arrangement has the advantage of greater diversification. Instead of ten major divisions, it has twenty, and consequently it is much more likely to be useful to a very large library. The headings are:

A	General Works	M	Music
B	Philosophy and Religion	N	Fine Arts
C	General History	P	Language and Literature
D	Foreign History	Q	Science
E	and F American History	R	Medicine
G	Geography and Anthro- pology	S	Agriculture
H	Social Sciences	T	Technology
J	Political Science	U	Military Science
K	Law	V	Naval Science
L	Education	Z	Library Science and Bibli- ography

Besides its general classification by subject area, each book in a library is classified somewhat more specifically according to its exact subject and is then given a class number. Thus, under the Dewey Decimal system, a book on music goes in the general classification of 700 (Fine Arts), but within that classification it would fall somewhere between the numbers 780 and 789, which are especially reserved for the field of music. In one library of the author's acquaintance, the book entitled *Our Musical Heritage*, by Curt Sachs, (picked at random) has the class number 780.9, and in the same class are found all other books on musical history and criticism. But the book also has an author number (S121o) and can be located on the shelves of the library by finding first the class number and then, within the class, the author number under an alphabetical arrangement. No two books in a library will have the same complete number; thus each one, if properly shelved, can be found in its own particular location.

The essential thing to remember is that every library needs to be studied and its particular system of classification thoroughly understood. This knowledge can save many frustrating hours of hunting for elusive source material when conducting a scholarly study.

**The Card Catalogue.** To aid the scholar in learning what items may be found among the library's holdings, there is normally a card

catalogue in which are filed (usually in alphabetical order) one or more cards for each book on the shelves. For most items, at least three cards are filed: on one of these the title of the book is mentioned first, on another the author's name, and on a third the subject matter of the book. The card catalogue is an ever-present friend of the scholar, for it tells him whether the library has the item he wants and also tells him under what classification number it can be found. If the book deals with several subjects or can be classified in more than one way, there will probably be several subject cards in the file to help him find it. Its location on the library shelves, as we have already noted, is indicated by a code number which appears on the catalogue card and usually on the book itself.

**Periodicals.** Periodicals in most libraries are kept in a separate room or section. Articles within periodicals ordinarily are not catalogued on individual cards but must be searched for by consulting an index or a bibliography. Most periodicals supply their own annual indexes, either within a certain issue or in loose-leaf form to be used when the library binds the individual issues in annual, semi-annual, or quarterly volumes. Even more useful are the annual bibliographies published by scholars in various fields, which try to record all the books and articles published within a given field during the year. Such general indexes as *Poole's Index to Periodical Literature* (1802-1906), the *Reader's Guide to Periodical Literature* (1900- ), and the *International Index to Periodical Literature* (1907- ) are useful in several fields of study. They do not, however, list articles appearing in the more technical and specialized periodicals, and for such information the scholar must look elsewhere.

### **Compiling a Working Bibliography**

The scholar's review of the related literature — that is, his search for all books and articles which have been published on the subject he has undertaken to study, as well as for all work completed or in progress but still remaining unpublished — ordinarily begins with the compilation of a "working bibliography," a list of the items he needs for his own study. First he writes down the titles and authors of all works on the subject which he has read or has heard about. Next he may consult the library's card catalogue to see what other

books on the subject the library may have. After this he may go to the periodical section of the library and make a careful check through the indexes and bibliographies kept there. Finally he will look through all the library's list or indexes of unpublished materials, such as *Doctoral Dissertations Accepted by American Universities* (an annual publication of the H. W. Wilson Company). By this time his list of works to consult should be a fairly long one, and as he reads these the various references in them will lead him to still other items. He may also correspond with bibliographers or other scholars in his field and ask them whether they know of any other relevant studies or of any materials not generally accessible. Each book, article, or unpublished work read by the scholar should be combed minutely for clues leading to further sources of information. It goes without saying that no study can be thorough and complete unless the scholar makes every reasonable effort to obtain and read each work listed in his working bibliography. He cannot be sure that he is not overlooking important data if he fails to consult even one of the known sources.

### **Taking Notes**

While reading the materials he has collected in his search for clues which will help him solve his problem, the investigator must be sure to compile careful and adequate notes of all the statements, facts, and other points he is likely to use. Since he cannot always tell in advance which clues may prove most fruitful and which will have to be discarded, he will do better to err in the direction of too much note-taking rather than too little. If the notes are full and exact, all necessary materials will be at hand when the study is brought into final shape.

Notes may be recorded in any way that is most convenient and useful for the scholar. Many students find that reasonably small file cards or slips of paper (4 by 6 inches, or thereabouts) offer the advantage of easy handling and filing. Others prefer somewhat larger cards or loose-leaf notebook paper. Notes taken on cards or slips of uniform size are more easy to handle and to organize than notes taken in some less consistent fashion. The important thing is to have in orderly notes everything essential to the study, so that the



investigator does not have to dig back through volumes he has already read for information he neglected to write down systematically during the first reading.

It is best to make a separate bibliographical card or page for each book or article on which notes are taken. The first item written down ought to be the full name of the author as given on the title page, then the full title of the work, the date of publication, the place of publication, and all other pertinent facts about the source—in a word, the complete bibliographical reference. Care must be exercised to avoid small errors. Not only will this procedure help in finding the item again if it should ever be needed, but all the detailed facts will be at hand for use in footnotes or in the final bibliography.

Having carefully recorded the bibliographical reference on a card by itself, the scholar may next abstract or copy materials that will be of use to him, indicating the source by a short title or a code reference to the bibliographical card, and giving the exact page number on which each item is found. The experienced scholar never takes notes indiscriminately, but tries to anticipate how he will use them. Since part of his task in note-taking is to assimilate the materials he reads, making an abstract or a summary in his own words will often serve his purpose better than a verbatim extract from the source. Anything that is directly quoted from any book or article read should be placed within quotation marks to avert possible future errors or plagiarisms caused by faulty memory. When excerpts are copied, moreover, they should be copied exactly, with no changes of any kind. In his final report, of course, the investigator may wish to make certain changes in the quoted material. He may, for example, wish to leave out a few unnecessary words here and there or to correct some obvious typographical error or misspelling in the original. This is permissible, especially if it will help the reader understand the quoted passage; but any changes (including both omissions and emendations) must be indicated with appropriate punctuation, the details of which can be found in any good handbook on style and usage.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> See, for example, William Giles Campbell, *Form and Style in Thesis Writing* (Boston: Houghton Mifflin Co., 1954).

### The Importance of Reading Skills

The most successful scholars develop the ability to read rapidly. For some studies hundreds or even thousands of books and articles must be consulted; unless one has the reading skill to go through these quickly and pick out unerringly the useful materials for the study, the process may consume a vast amount of time. One of the things a scholar learns to do is to *skim* the books and articles he reads. This means looking at each page of the work and picking out the important paragraphs, then finding the important sentence or two in each important paragraph. Much of the material in many of the books or articles one reads is likely to prove of no significance for the particular study being made; to waste time on unessential reading would be pointless. When the important paragraphs and sentences in the work are found, however, they should be read through very carefully and the notes taken.

Some students complain that they cannot skim but must read very slowly in order to be sure they do not miss any essential information. Rapid reading is a skill that can be mastered, however, and the time saved will sometimes prove amazing. At first the effort required in skimming may seem considerable, but a little practice will gradually improve the habit. Skill in reading is of the highest importance to the scholar.

When materials essential to the study can be found only in books or periodicals written in foreign languages, it goes without saying that the scholar must either know these languages or have access to competent translations. It is generally assumed that most scholars will have a reading knowledge of German and French. A knowledge of Latin may be helpful in some fields. Other languages are less frequently used, except in certain areas of study. In general, some acquaintance with foreign languages is almost indispensable to thorough scholarship, though in some fields — education, for example — it seems less important than in others.

### Summary

Problems of scholarship, like other problems, are solved by those who know how and where to look for clues. An important part of

the value of graduate study lies in the training it provides in searching out, classifying, and analyzing clues. The scholar's first task must be to cover the ground thoroughly — that is, to make himself familiar with all the sources of information bearing on his particular problem. Most commonly the search begins in the library, as a review of the present state of knowledge on the chosen problem, and the wise scholar will therefore master early and thoroughly such bibliographical techniques as making effective use of the library's resources, tracking down information in books and periodicals, and evaluating sources. An indispensable skill in the process of running down clues is the ability to pick out quickly, from masses of reading matter, those items which are relevant and useful to the purpose at hand, and to make full and adequate notes on them. Although it is the lesser of two evils to err on the side of too much than of too little, the well-equipped scholar will have learned how to strike a golden mean both in his reading and in his note-taking.

# 7

## ✓ THE THREE TYPES

### OF RESEARCH

It is customary to label all activities of the scholar as research, but a brief glance at the published scholarly articles in any field will reveal many fundamental differences among them. Some articles describe scientific experiments and their results. Others report on surveys of opinion. Some announce broad generalizations based upon evidence. Others merely convey, in essay form, the impressions a scholar has gained from uncontrolled contacts with a subject and from reasoning about it. The activities of scholarship are many. They include experimentation, scientific surveys, analysis of documents, historical studies, interpretation of ideas, editing, and many other things.

[In general, however, scholarly activities may be classified into three types. The first is *fact-finding*; the second is *critical interpretation*; and the third we may call, for want of a better term, *complete research*.] It may be helpful to examine these three types of activity one by one.

#### ✓ Fact-Finding

[A medical scientist in a laboratory decides to test the effectiveness of a new drug in killing different species of germs. He proceeds by bringing the drug into contact with one type of disease germ after another, carefully recording whether the drug kills the germ and, if so, how long a time is required, what potency of solution is most

effective, and so on. What can the scientist learn from this procedure? He learns *facts* about the experimental drug with relation to certain disease germs under laboratory conditions. There are many other steps to be taken, of course, before the drug actually can be used in treating a disease, but that is beside the point for our present purposes. The main thing to note here is that the above procedure is one of *fact-finding* and little else. This does not, of course, mean that it is unimportant.

Suppose a scholar is investigating the history of a certain college. He collects old records, catalogues, newspaper accounts, letters, diaries, and so on to establish the facts of the institution's growth and development. He is trying to discover and write down an accurate statement of the facts about the college he has chosen to study. Unless he is seeking to prove some generalization about the college, his task essentially consists of fact-finding.)

The same would ordinarily be true for a scholar attempting to write the biography of some notable person in his field. Unless the study goes into such matters as an evaluation of the person's character, an assessment of the benefits derived from his contributions to the field, or judgments of a similar nature, the work involved in the study amounts almost entirely to fact-finding.

A scholar who compiles a bibliography of all books and articles published on a certain topic, or a dictionary of some language, or a statistical examination of school enrollments in a given place during a given period — or, indeed, any one of a vast number of activities in scholarship which involve making a record of the facts relating to a situation which is being investigated — such a scholar is conducting research on the fact-finding level. Not long ago scientists at the California Institute of Technology examined the structure of human hair and found that it is made up of long, coiled chains of protein molecules. Seven of these chains, one in the middle and six others coiled around it, form a spiraled cable; and each human hair consists of huge numbers of such complicated cables twisted together. Now, complex as this study was, it still did not go beyond fact-finding.

When, however, a professor of geography at Johns Hopkins University found some chipped rocks and some partially shaped (or "worked") smaller stones in an ancient stream bed near San Diego,

California, he concluded from the estimated age of the stream bed that man must have occupied the area some 300,000 to 400,000 years ago and may have reached here from Asia between the third and fourth Ice Ages. He was thus going beyond fact-finding to generalizations derived from these facts. This distinction is important to keep in mind.

### ✓Critical Interpretation

/In certain fields — philosophy and literature, for example — one may be dealing with ideas a great deal more than with facts. Research may then consist largely of a *critical interpretation* of these ideas. What, for instance, did Herman Melville *mean* in the story of *Moby-Dick*? Did he write merely a fictional tale of sea-going adventure, or did he use the narrative to convey his philosophical ideas about the world? Such questions cannot always be answered by reliance upon facts. By knowing something about Melville's life, by comparing *Moby-Dick* with his other works, and by examining the thoughts expressed in his letters and elsewhere, it is possible to arrive at a reasonable and supportable thesis as to Melville's underlying meaning. Since the facts of the matter — in the form of a definite statement by Melville saying just what he meant — probably cannot be ascertained, we are left with the alternative of *reasoning out* the answer from the evidence available. This involves critical interpretation.

The chief devices used in this kind of research are perspicacity, experience, and logic. Suppose one were to attempt a study of what the functions of an American graduate school should be. After carefully reading all the books and articles which have been written on the subject, inspecting the publications of all the graduate schools, and questioning the deans and faculties of as many graduate schools as possible, the scholar would still find himself dealing pretty largely with a vast body of *opinion*. While the scholar could perhaps determine the facts as to what functions graduate schools *do* perform, it would be another matter to decide what functions they *should* perform. Probably the only method of approach to the question would be an analysis and classification of the opinions expressed and a critical interpretation of them, showing in a logical way the strength



and weakness, the reasonableness or unreasonableness, of each opinion found and of any further ideas on the matter which the scholar himself might have. Then, having reasoned out in his own mind a logical and acceptable answer to the question, the scholar might state this answer as his own considered opinion. This often results in an essay rather than in a research report.

While it may be possible to determine the salient facts of a man's life, agreement as to what his ideas were and how valuable they have proved to be rests largely upon human judgment. As an example, let us take Horace Mann — usually regarded as the foremost American educator. The fact-finding process will tell us the outward acts and incidents of his life. It will not, however, tell us much about what went on inside Horace Mann's mind. This we can only infer, through critical interpretation, from his writings and speeches, from some of his actions, and from the comments of those who knew him. Furthermore, how is one to determine whether Mann actually was the leading American educator? After all, such an evaluation rests mainly on opinion, though a sound scholar should be able to advance logical reasons for holding such an opinion. Wherever conclusions rest mainly upon logic and reasoned opinion, we are dealing not with fact-finding but with *critical interpretation*.

This process in scholarship has undeniable values. Without it, we might find it impossible to arrive at workable conclusions on matters about which definable facts are scarce. While it is true that research has been accumulating for us more and more facts about man and his universe, there still remains a vast part of human experience, artistic production, and thought which is not approachable by the factual method. Our only approach is through critical interpretation. Much of the research now being conducted in that academic area designated as the humanities is of this nature.

Three particular characteristics must be present in critical interpretation. First, the argument must be based upon, or at least agree with, known facts and principles in the field in which the study is being carried on. Some years ago a German literary scholar tried ingeniously to prove that John Milton, the great English poet, had borrowed some of his ideas and language from an earlier writer. He attempted this by showing that certain identical words could be

found in paragraphs chosen from the works of the two authors, and he proposed the principle of comparing "word clusters" in the writings of two different literary men to discover whether one had borrowed from the other. This principle, however, has been rejected by modern scholars because it conflicts with a known fact in literature; namely, that two authors writing about the same subject are very likely to employ many of the same words in describing it. Thus, critical interpretation with conclusions based upon the rejected principle of "word clusters" would today be regarded as fallacious and unacceptable.

Second, the arguments advanced in critical interpretation must be clear and reasonable — that is, they must follow logic. Generalizations and conclusions arrived at in this type of research should be derived logically from the known facts and from the principles applied by the scholar in dealing with his material. Furthermore, the steps in reasoning which have led the scholar to his conclusion must be clearly demonstrable. The basic procedure in critical interpretation is reasoning, but this reasoning should be so impeccably honest and so thoroughly complete that the reader will be able to follow the argument without any difficulty and be impelled by it to accept the scholar's conclusions.

Third, critical interpretation is expected to result in some generalization or conclusion which follows from the reasoning which the scholar has done. The argument, in other words, must have an outcome. This outcome usually amounts to the reasoned opinion of the scholar with respect to the problem in hand. But, most important, this opinion is based upon accepted facts and principles in the scholar's field and is fully supported by both logic and the available evidence. The chief danger to be avoided in this process is that of stating a conclusion which relies upon the scholar's intuitive or general impressions rather than upon specific and reasoned argument.

### **Complete Research**

What we may call, for want of a better term, *complete research* makes use of both *fact-finding* and *reasoning*. Yet it is also something more. To regard any study as complete research, we must be able to find in it several definite factors. The first of these is a

problem to be solved. The second is evidence, consisting usually of provable facts and occasionally of expert opinion. The third is a careful analysis and classification of the evidence, by means of which the evidence is arranged in a logical pattern and tested with regard to its application to the problem. The fourth is the use of reason and logic to arrange the evidence into arguments or factual supports leading to a solution of the problem. The fifth is a definite solution, an answer to the question which the scholar's problem poses.

Note that *fact-finding* alone does not necessarily solve any problems. Note also that *critical interpretation*, while usually aimed at solving a problem and based upon the method of logical reasoning, cannot always build its case on factual evidence but must often rely to a great extent on mere speculation. *Complete research*, on the other hand, is expected to base its conclusions chiefly upon facts. Thus, after the problem has been defined, the first step toward a solution involves an attempt at answering the question, "What are the *facts* in the case?" In addition to gathering the facts, the scholar may also ask, "What has expert opinion to say on this problem?" Opinion, however, no matter how expert, can never carry the weight of solid fact and is useful chiefly for corroborative purposes. Having ascertained the facts, the scholar then raises the next question, "What do these facts suggest as to the solution of the problem?"

After deciding what he thinks is the correct solution, the scholar is in duty bound to test and challenge his conclusion in every way possible in order to be certain he is right. Does the solution agree with all the known facts? Are the facts clear enough and numerous enough to support the conclusion? Are the facts honestly used? Is the line of argument a logical one?

It should be obvious that *complete research* goes considerably beyond *fact-finding* but that it makes far greater use of factual evidence than does *critical interpretation*.

Scientists have long speculated about how the planets and their satellites were formed. What evidence other than pure reasoning is there, for example, to support the theory that the moon is an offshoot of the earth? Actually some interesting and rather convincing factual evidence has been turned up. One observable fact is what appears to be a definite scar in the surface of the earth itself.

Of course, if the moon had been thrown off by its parent body during the earth's molten stage (assuming that such a stage once existed), there would probably be no evidence of the event which could be observed in the earth's present surface. On the other hand, if the moon was formed after the earth had acquired a solid crust, there should remain some distinct indications of the exact spot at which this gigantic rupture took place. An examination of the earth's crust reveals a discernible scar in the area occupied by the Pacific Ocean. This area, comprising approximately a third of the earth's entire surface, resembles, first of all, an immense basin or hole such as one would expect if a roughly circular mass had been removed at that spot. Surrounding the Pacific Ocean is a ring of high and actively volcanic mountains — the so-called "ring of fire" — which makes a kind of ridge encircling the hollowed-out area. Furthermore, although every other part of the earth is covered with a layer of granite resting on a bed of basalt, the floor of the Pacific is made up entirely of basalt, with not a trace of granite. Since these conditions, when tested by known physical laws, resemble exactly what we should expect to find if the moon's mass had broken away from the earth at this point, they provide evidence for an acceptable explanation of the moon's origin. (There is, in addition, further evidence not mentioned above.) We have thus a speculative conclusion, or hypothesis, in agreement with observable facts and accepted physical principles — a conclusion logically arrived at through demonstrable evidence (only the bare essentials of which we have touched on here): The moon was formed at a time when the earth was covered with a crust, and it broke away from that part of the globe now occupied by the Pacific Ocean.

This illustration, though presented crudely and without any details, is intended to show how facts, once discovered, can be put together in a logical pattern (by the use of reason) to reach a generalization. It is possible that evidence discovered at a later time could prove the present hypothesis untrue and perhaps provide a better answer to the question. For the moment, however, the weight of evidence appears in favor of the conclusion that has been stated here. We *think* this is probably how the moon came to be.

*Complete research* nearly always involves a long and painstaking

search for factual evidence (including the results of previous investigations by other scholars), whereas *critical interpretation* may often proceed upon only a slight factual basis, most of the process consisting of sound reasoning. On the other hand, complete research always goes beyond mere *fact-finding* to the solution of some scholarly problem and the statement of a generalization based on the available evidence.

### What Is Not Research?

The beginning scholar sometimes imagines that, when he has recorded the opinions of a great many experts upon some subject and then announced his own opinion, he has done research. This is not the case. To know the opinions of others may be helpful, but it solves no problems. Problem-solving can be accomplished scientifically only through gathering and weighing the factual evidence.

Furthermore, the beginning scholar is likely to think that, because he has invented a plausible theory to explain the phenomenon he is investigating, his work has been completed. The theory still remains to be tested and proved—that is, the scholar must marshal his evidence in support of his idea. Too many scholars fall in love with hypotheses which have no support except their inventors' faith.

### Summary

Three types of scholarly research activity may be distinguished: (1) *fact-finding*, which consists of a search for facts without any attempt to generalize or to use these facts to solve a problem; (2) *critical interpretation*, which makes use largely of the method of logical reasoning to arrive at the solutions of problems, and is applied usually when ideas rather than facts are to be dealt with; and (3) the process we have termed *complete research*, which aims at solving problems and stating generalizations after a thorough search for the pertinent facts, an analysis and logical classification of *all* the evidence found, and the development of a reasonable pattern of support for the conclusions reached. Anything other than one of these three processes, while not necessarily wasted effort in terms of scholarship, is nevertheless not research.

# 8

## SELECTING THE PROBLEM

### FOR INVESTIGATION

There is never any lack of problems that require investigation in any field of study. New areas for exploration open every day, and the discoveries already made merely suggest the limitless possibilities for further research. Though Columbus discovered a whole New World, he probably died completely unaware of the vastness of the great continent lying to the west of the islands on which he landed. Compared with the body of knowledge that still remains to be discovered, the present achievement of human learning is about at the Columbian stage; that is, we have yet before us the task of exploring and mastering a huge continent of new information about the universe and about ourselves.

Why, then, do beginners in research often find it so difficult to select suitable problems for investigation? The chief answer lies usually in the lack of complete familiarity with one's field.

#### Knowing the Field

A thorough understanding of the known facts and accepted ideas in the department or area in which the scholar's work is being pursued constitutes the first and most important step in selecting a problem for study. If the scholar is familiar with his field and knows what research has already been completed in it, he will also know something of the many problems that remain. Gaps exist in every field of human knowledge; these gaps must be filled in at some

time or other, and they stand as challenges to the ingenuity of the young scholar.

Not only will the scholar himself notice a number of unsolved problems and unexplored areas during the course of his general study in his field, but he can frequently lay his hands on summaries and reviews of research that point these gaps out. Periodicals published for the scholarly reader often contain long lists of topics upon which additional research is needed. Also, from published articles and reports of research one can glean ideas and suggestions for subjects requiring further study. These aids can sometimes be of real help to the young scholar when he is casting about for a suitable problem to attack. In many cases, however, a broad knowledge of subject matter will be enough to reveal the multitude of problems that cry for solution.

The annual bibliographies which appear in most fields of study will help to keep the scholar informed about the research going on in his field. They may also suggest to him possible new topics for his own researches. Thus, even though the scholar probably cannot read every article listed in the annual bibliography, he can at least gather a fairly accurate picture of what his contemporaries in the field have been doing, and this in turn should give him ideas for subjects to study for himself.

### **The Goad of Curiosity**

In general, a natural curiosity is the best guide in selecting a problem. The scholar usually decides to investigate a problem because it interests him, because he wants to know the solution. Furthermore, he is likely to do a better job of research with a topic that he selects because of the interest it holds for him than with one that is arbitrarily imposed. When the scholar has become convinced of the need for solving a particular problem or when he feels an overpowering interest in finding the answer to some puzzling question in his field, he not only appears to do his best work but also derives the greatest pleasure out of the investigation.

Satisfaction of personal curiosity—the “felt need” or natural interest in a problem—would seem, then, to be the most desirable incentive in the selection of a topic for study. This comes ordinarily,



as we have already remarked, from having a thorough knowledge of one's field and of the gaps that exist in it.

Some young scholars, however, try to select research topics too soon — that is, before they have really achieved familiarity with a special field of study. It is the rare graduate student, for example, who conducts research and writes his thesis upon the topic which interested him at the time he entered graduate school. Experience teaches him that there are problems of greater interest and deeper concern than those which he considered when he had only a smattering of knowledge in his field. Again, young scholars may make the mistake of selecting a problem which already has been adequately studied by someone else or of choosing one which is far too broad in scope. They look for subjects of earth-shaking importance, which unfortunately prove to be far beyond their power to handle. In most cases it would be better to stake out a small plot of ground and study it well. The amount of research necessary to solve even an apparently insignificant problem can prove surprising.

The scholar should not expect another person to choose his topic for him. Sometimes, it is true, a colleague or fellow-student or professor may make excellent suggestions that open the scholar's eyes to some new possibility which had not previously occurred to him, but in the last analysis every scholar should select for himself the problem he wishes to investigate. Certainly the young scholar should never proceed in the manner described so humorously but so aptly in the following article.

#### THE EDITOR TURNS PROFESSOR<sup>1</sup>

The nine o'clock chimes have scarcely ended their morning salute when the peace of the editorial sanctum is invaded by the clerk from the outer office. "Mr. Blank to see you by appointment," says she. The editor, whose editorial position is considerably subordinate to his professorial duties, recalls that this is his office hour — a period set apart expressly for the conversationally minded students. Evidently this is an interview which cannot be evaded.

Enter Mr. Blank. "Good morning, Mr. — uh, Mr. — " What was it Miss Graham said his name was? Mr. Blank obliges, and the editor

<sup>1</sup> [B. R. Buckingham], "The Editor Turns Professor," *Educational Research Bulletin*, VI, 252-253 (September 14, 1927). Quoted by permission.

takes time out to jot down the name where he can see it and make apparently spontaneous use of it during the subsequent interview.

"You have an appointment with me this morning, Mr. Blank?" Mr. Blank confirms the fact, already sufficiently attested, that he has; and without undue delay gets down to business.

"I've got to write a Master's thesis," says he, "and I'd like to talk to you about a topic." The statement ends with a slight upward inflection as if, in spite of its grammatical form, a sort of question were implied. After an awkward pause Mr. Blank repeats that he would like to talk about a thesis topic. Whereupon the editor suggests that he go ahead and do so.

It transpires, however, that the editor-professor has misconceived Mr. Blank's meaning. He has no topic to talk about. In fact, instead of coming with a topic, he has come to get one. He looks so expectant, too; purely, as one might say, in a receptive mood.

No, he has no problems to suggest. He gives one the impression of having just learned about this thesis business, and of being entirely open-minded on the subject. At least, one gathers he has no bias toward any particular topic and certainly no preconceived notions.

A conversation ensues. The editor—playing for the nonce his professorial role—asks in what department Mr. Blank is majoring, what courses he has taken, what positions he has held, and for what type of educational service he is fitting himself. At one stage of the resulting exchange of ideas Mr. Blank brightens. With some modesty, yet with the undeniable air of a discoverer, he suggests that he might correlate intelligence and achievement in the high school. He could give some tests in the school with which he is connected; and his friend, the principal of the X school, would probably let him give some tests there; and maybe he could get one or two more schools if he stopped to think about the matter. And, O yes! how many schools does the professor think would be needed to get results that you could depend on? On being told that intelligence and achievement—so far as either is now measurable—have already been correlated by hundreds of people, Mr. Blank helplessly withdraws within himself, a discouraged seeker after truth in a world where all the problems have been solved.

Mr. Blank is a type. There are others. There is the student who has a topic, or at least has thought about one, but whose topic is trivial. Here the professor is on dangerous ground. No problem, if it is truly a problem, is valueless; and if a student has a real desire to work on a relatively unimportant problem, he should be allowed to do so—provided, of course, it is feasible and has not already been solved. Ordinarily, however, students have no strong convictions as to the problem upon which they wish to turn the light of investigation.

Moreover, it is not to be denied that in their bearing upon the real work of education some problems are far less vital than others. One may hazard the opinion that "The Legal Status of the School Board Member" is a less significant topic even for the administrator than "Teachers' Meetings as Means of In-Service Training" or "Classroom Visiting."

Then there is the student whose topic is so broad that no penetrating treatment of it is possible. Probably both of the subjects just suggested would be still better if they were more sharply delimited. McCall tells of a person — he calls him an "experimenter," but it is suspected that he was a graduate student—who formulated this problem: "What Is the Effect of Various Factors upon Learning?" After a little urging, says McCall, he departed and returned later with this formulation: "What Are the Effects of Distribution of Time upon Learning?" At a later stage the problem became: "Will a Typical Fourth-Grade Class in Silent Reading, Spending Three Thirty-Minute Periods per Week, Accomplish More or Less than an Equivalent Class Spending Five Periods of Eighteen Minutes Each per Week?"

There are still other types of students who impinge upon the editor in his office hours as professor — the student whose sole idea of the means of getting data is the questionnaire, the student whose topic is real but incapable of solution with the means at his disposal, the student who, without a sense of values or meanings, has only his industry to commend him. This last type will labor without ceasing; he will cover hundreds of data sheets and filing cards, and, if you set him at computing, he will figure long and furiously; but his labor is vain, because his data sheets, his cards, and his figures are without meaning to him.

And then there is the student who may or may not come with a problem, but who in any event has benefited by his experience and thought as he studied. He has a sense of values. He is a worker, but he glorifies drudgery by his enthusiasm. The editor-professor knows no keener delight than working with him. He gives him a push here, and a prod there; but mostly he just watches him grow. This student is the compensation for all the ills that professorial life is heir to. When he turns in his thesis, one tries to look severely critical and can't manage to do so. When he steps up to the President on Commencement Day to receive his degree one feels a glow of pride, and later a sense of loneliness. Something has gone from one's life. Will there be another to take his place?

In selecting his problem for study, the scholar has as much opportunity for the exercise of originality and initiative as he has in

devising the means of solving it. Unless he chooses wisely, however, he cannot hope to find true satisfaction in his work.

### Other Ways of Selecting Problems

Often it happens that a scholar will read an article with which he violently disagrees. This immediately suggests the possibility of his investigating for himself the problem discussed in the article and perhaps of presenting his own point of view. Many a beginning scholar has made an excellent start in research merely by trying to prove someone else wrong. Out of such disagreements important new discoveries are sometimes born.

Actual and pressing problems may also arise out of the scholar's everyday experience. If he is a teacher, for instance, he may meet some instructional difficulty which can be overcome only by a scientific study of all its aspects. He may — let us say — wish to see whether a particular method of teaching or a special type of examination can be shown to be superior to those commonly in use. This will require careful investigation by scholarly processes. In business and industry, when serious problems arise, the solution is often found as the result of research. Thus actual experience can suggest many topics that need study.

A special type of scholarly work consists in the task of devising and constructing necessary tools of research, that is, aids that may be used by other scholars. Before an automobile can be manufactured in the form in which we purchase it, a large number of machine tools must be made which are essential in its construction. Someone must provide the carpenter's tools before the carpenter can build a house. In the same way, tools of research have to be developed to make the work of research easier for others.

At the University of California, as a means of studying the movements of people's eyes while reading, a special motion picture camera was designed and constructed so that research men could photograph the eye movements. This piece of equipment was planned by persons well trained in scholarly methods; it is a tool of scholarly research which helps to obtain data that might not otherwise be accessible. The chemist in his laboratory plans and constructs flasks and test tubes of unusual shapes which give

him better control over his experiments. Other common tools of research include such things as bibliographies of books and articles on various topics, official statistical summaries of special information (such as the census reports), guides to research which others have conducted (for instance, encyclopedias and yearbooks in certain fields), dictionaries, and so on. These tools must be devised and constructed by trained scholars for the use of others in their fields, and they comprise a fairly large area for scholarly activity. The young scholar may profitably look into the need for tools of research in his own field; the inspection may suggest an interesting and highly useful subject of investigation to him.

### Questions to Ask about the Problem

When considering a problem which he may undertake to study, the scholar should ask himself a number of questions about it. These will help him to decide whether the problem under consideration is really one which he ought to adopt. The most important of these questions are the following: (1) Is the problem interesting? (2) Is it new? (3) Will it add to knowledge? (4) Is it feasible? (5) Has anyone else a prior claim to it?

1. *Is the problem interesting?* Since this aspect of the matter already has been discussed, we need only say that the investigation of a problem in which the scholar has little or no interest can prove the most irksome kind of drudgery. When real curiosity has been aroused, however, it almost invariably leads to the formulation of a worth-while problem. To the young scholar, the best advice in most instances appears to be: Follow your interests.

2. *Is it new?* Obviously there would be no purpose in studying a topic which had already been adequately investigated by others. Besides, there are so many unsolved problems in the world that no scholar needs to repeat another person's research except with the intention of checking upon its accuracy. The young scholar, however, may unwittingly duplicate someone else's work simply because he is not aware of everything that has been done in his field. In ignorance he may conduct a research project which is not at all new. In such a case his disappointment will be keen, indeed, when he discovers his error. To avoid such duplication and the chagrin

which results from learning too late that one has wasted his time by repeating work already adequately done by others, it is necessary to examine very carefully the record of research completed in one's field. No problem should be selected — we are deliberately excepting, of course, those investigations which are consciously repeated in order to test their accuracy — until a thorough search has established the fact that it really is a new problem, one which has never before been investigated successfully.

3. *Will it add to knowledge?* Not every problem is of equal importance, and a trivial one may produce results of little value in the scholar's field. For this reason, any topic which is being considered should be scrutinized for its possible significance in making a worthwhile contribution to knowledge. To be sure, one cannot always be certain of what a given piece of research may produce in the way of results. Occasionally vital discoveries have been made quite by accident. Yet it seems only sensible for the scholar to think over what he hopes to accomplish in a particular study. What is his *purpose* in undertaking to solve the particular problem he has chosen? In other words, what new knowledge does he hope to add to the sum-total of what is known? And what value is this new knowledge likely to have? If the solution of his problem seems likely to add nothing of real importance to the scholar's field, that problem should in most instances be discarded as too trivial.

4. *Is it feasible?* There are numerous and weighty problems which would be excellent choices for the scholar if only some way could be devised for solving them. Unfortunately, in our present state of learning, not every problem is capable of solution. While it may be possible in working with certain problems to review all the facts and opinions relating to them, unless these facts and opinions can be brought into a pattern which points to a clear and logical solution, the study cannot really be completed. Can one prove that living creatures occupy the planet Mars? Is it possible to know whether the continent of Atlantis ever existed as a great center of civilization? As yet our methods of study have not approached near enough to perfection and our sources of information have been too meager to provide more than a guess on matters of this kind. Whenever an acceptable method of solving a problem is not known to be available and cannot be devised by the scholar, the problem has to be

set aside for the moment as not feasible. Such problems are still numerous in every field. Inaccessibility of the sources of information, even when these are known to exist, also may rule out a problem as non-feasible.

5. *Has anyone else a prior claim?* The ethics of scholarship require that any scholar who has undertaken to solve a given problem shall have the first claim upon it and that other scholars will avoid working on it, except with his full knowledge and permission. In selecting a topic, the young scholar would be well advised to take advantage of the various means at his disposal for determining whether anyone else is already at work on it. He can, for example, inspect the latest reports of research in progress which are available at regular intervals in most fields. If his project is a doctoral study or some similar major effort, he will do well to announce in one of the periodicals of his field his intention of undertaking the work. Sometimes two scholars find themselves engaged in studying the same subject and arrange to pool their efforts or to divide the subject between them. The old and senseless habit of acquisitive competition among scholars to see who can be first in solving a problem and thus in receiving personal credit for the feat is no longer held in high regard. Since the work of scholars constitutes a gratuitous contribution to the world's knowledge, and since there are in any case plenty of topics to go around, modern scholarship expects ethical conduct from its practitioners in this as in other respects. It may be emphasized here again, too, that any fact or idea taken from the work of another scholar should invariably be acknowledged. Fortunately, little need be said on matters of this kind, since it is well understood in the world of scholarship that to be a scholar is also to be a gentleman.

### Stating the Problem

The scholar must, of course, be certain that he knows exactly what his problem is before he begins work on it, and this matter does not always turn out to be as simple as it sounds. A common error is to hit upon some large and vague topic without consciously formulating a specific problem out of it. This can result in the accumulation of a formless mass of information, in a considerable vagueness about what actually has been discovered, or even in com-



plete frustration for the investigator. Suppose a literary scholar were to choose the topic: "Factors Influencing the Thinking of Walt Whitman." This topic is so general, and the probable factors which can influence anyone's thinking are so numerous and so hard to pin down accurately, that years of study would be necessary to reach any satisfactory and comprehensive conclusion. A better problem, because more limited and specific, would be: "The Influence of Scientific Literature upon Walt Whitman's Writings."

Before beginning work on his topic, the scholar will find it helpful to pause and ask himself: Exactly what am I hoping to discover? Precisely what problem am I seeking to solve? Sometimes the answer will be much more complex than it would appear at first glance, and this very complexity may suggest the wisdom of limiting or sharpening one's approach. Narrowing down the topic to workable size is extremely important at the very start.

One excellent way of making a problem clear and concise is to turn the statement of it into a question. If one states the problem in question form, it obviously requires a specific answer, and this answer then becomes the objective of the study. Suppose we were to become interested in examining the requirements of American graduate schools for the master's degree. What could we hope to learn from such a study? In the first place, we might succeed better by being somewhat more specific in the statement of our problem. Do we simply wish to discover what the customary requirements are, or do we wish to go deeper and aim at learning what the reasons for them are and how they may be justified? If the latter is our intention, then we are launched upon a fairly extensive study. Some pruning of the problem may very well be in order.

We might prune the above problem by examining only one requirement for the master's degree instead of all requirements. In other words, we can limit the problem somewhat. For example, suppose we limit it by confining ourselves to a study of the thesis requirement only. Suppose we further limit ourselves to the thesis requirement in relation to the master's degree in only one field—say, education. The question then arises: Exactly what do we wish to learn about this requirement? Presumably we might wish to learn whether such a requirement is useful and sound, whether it has validity. The whole matter might be clarified by turning the

problem into a specific question, such as: "Should the Thesis Be Required for the Master's Degree in Education?" We now have a reasonably workable problem, the answer to which can be positive (yes), negative (no), or conditional (yes, in certain circumstances; no, in others). The study would probably give us one of these answers and show the reasons for it.

By deciding in advance upon the limits of his problem, the scholar can also save himself much useless work. The problem we have just been considering has been limited, for example, to the thesis requirement for the master's degree in the field of education only; other departments and their requirements will not be taken into consideration at all. Such limitations as this must be clear to the scholar very early in the course of his attack upon the problem. Furthermore, as we shall see later, all the limitations which apply to a problem ought to be pointed out clearly when the final report of the study is written. At the moment we are interested primarily in getting an accurate idea of the problem to be studied before any work is done to solve it. Knowing what we are searching for is often half the battle.

In other words, the steps described above are means of easing the burdens of research by a clear and precise definition of the problem. At every subsequent step, the elimination of as many sources of misunderstanding as possible and the avoidance of all vagueness, either in the problem or in the data which are gathered in order to solve it, must be scrupulously attempted. The firmer and clearer the picture which the scholar has in his own mind of the problem he is to solve, the better are his chances of successfully solving it.

The following rules will be found helpful in setting down on paper the final definition of a problem:

1. Be sure that the topic chosen is neither too vague nor too broad in scope.
2. To make the problem clearer and more understandable, state it as a question which requires a definite answer.
3. Carefully state the limits of the problem, eliminating all aspects and factors which will not be considered in the study.
4. Define any special terms that must be used in the statement of your problem.

**Defining Special Terms.** Definitions of terms used in a study are

not necessary unless these terms might be interpreted in more than one way or have particular meanings in the study itself. When such is the case, however, the terms will need to be carefully defined, not only for the sake of readers of the final research report, but also for the scholar's own benefit, so that he will not make the mistake of using a term in two different ways at two different times.

The word *curriculum* — to take a common example — is frequently interpreted by writers on education to mean the entire program of a school, including both classwork and other activities as well. But some writers use the term to mean classwork only. Thus, in the description of any problem having to do with a school curriculum, the meaning of *curriculum* for that particular study has to be determined in advance. Otherwise there is a good chance for confusion to develop within the study. The scholar should be clear as to which meaning he has in mind, and he should be consistent in his use of the term.

Another source of potential difficulty stemming from carelessness in the use of terms is the frequent confusion between the *purpose* of a study and the *problem* to be studied. The purpose of a study is generally understood as the reason *why* the study has been undertaken; whereas the problem is *what* the scholar specifically hopes to solve. If the purpose of a research project is considered, it should be regarded as an explanation of the possible uses to which the results of the study may be put. It should concern the probable value of the study. In brief, it should explain why the study was undertaken and not what the subject is. The purpose concerns the *why*, and the problem concerns the *what* of the study.

### How Good Is the Problem?

To determine just how good the chosen topic is, the recommended procedure is to make a preliminary investigation of the more obvious evidence. Many a problem is chosen but later dropped, often because there are not enough data available to provide a solution. Whatever the reason may be, there is no disgrace in dropping a problem that gives no promise of resolution. Trial-and-error is often the only method by which we can learn whether an investigation is likely to prove at all fruitful. If every scholar would make a prelim-

inary investigation of the most accessible data before deciding finally on the choice of a problem, there would be fewer failures in research.

### Summary

Countless unsolved problems exist in every scholarly field, and familiarity with the field cannot fail to reveal many of them to the young scholar. In addition, he can find problems for study through such means as disagreeing with results of previous research, studying lists and summaries of both completed and needed projects, and meeting and recognizing problems in his own daily experience. The problem the scholar chooses should be of genuine interest to him, should be new, of real value in his field of specialization, feasible, and not claimed by someone else. He must take pains to state it carefully and clearly in order to eliminate vagueness and any possible confusion which might hinder his search for a solution. The problem should be sufficiently narrowed down to give promise of a fruitful conclusion, its limits should be clearly set, and the terms used in its formulation should be specific and understandable. In selecting his problem, the scholar will often find that a preliminary investigation of the more obvious data is a helpful test of feasibility.

# 9

## THE HYPOTHESIS:

### WHAT IS IT?

In an earlier chapter we drew certain parallels between the investigation of a scholarly problem and the work a detective does in solving a crime. We should remember that a detective's usual aim is to build up from his clues a plausible theory as to how and why and by whom the crime was committed. It must be a theory in full agreement with all the facts in the case and one which provides a logical explanation that will hold together and prove convincing when it is brought under careful scrutiny in a court of law. The scholar similarly labors to produce a sound *theory* (or *generalization* or *conclusion*) from the data which he gathers. In fact, the ultimate aim of any complete scholarly study should be the presentation of a new and better *explanation* regarding the subject studied than any which has previously been advanced.

#### The Better Theory

When we speak of a "better" theory, we mean one which provides a more natural and logical explanation for the observable facts. It was once common to account for shells and other remnants of marine life discovered on the slopes of mountains as a kind of *lusus naturae*, as a miraculous production of the earth itself. Hardly anyone, however, now subscribes to that theory. Today we believe that such remains were deposited centuries ago when the area in which they are found was covered by the sea.

During the eighteenth century Lamarck proposed the theory of "the inheritance of acquired characteristics" to explain how new species may be formed in biological evolution. He contended that an organism which has been changed by its environment may transmit the change to its offspring. According to this belief, it should be possible to produce a race of short-tailed dogs by cutting off the tails of one generation of the species. The theory, widely accepted in its day, was challenged in 1883 by Weismann and is no longer credited by modern biologists anywhere except in the Soviet Union.

In the nineteenth century Charles Darwin proposed another theory, that of "the survival of the fittest." Since every organism competes against others in the "struggle for existence," Darwin said, those organisms which prove most adaptable and have the best characteristics for the environment in which they are found seem the most likely to survive and to pass these characteristics along to succeeding generations. This process he called "natural selection." Although widely accepted among biologists, the theory fails to explain how changes in organisms actually occur.

At the beginning of the twentieth century De Vries advanced the "mutation theory" to account for the changes which occur from time to time in various species. He contended that such changes are taking place constantly in the world of nature through a kind of spontaneous mutation. If the change proves advantageous to the individual organism, it helps the organism to survive and is passed along to the offspring. If disadvantageous, it is likely to disappear through the process of natural selection. According to the De Vries theory, a change of this type takes place within the organism and is not caused by outside factors, as Lamarck supposed.

All these theories, it must be admitted, were based upon very careful observations of the known facts of biological evolution, and in each case the theory was consistent with all that was known by the best-informed biologists of the time. Yet Lamarck's ideas now generally have been discarded, and those of De Vries require much more evidence before scientists of the present day will consider them as firmly established. Modern biologists are continuing to study the many problems concerned with biological evolution and may produce theories which will eventually supplant those we now hold. Thus all

principles of human knowledge, however well founded, should be thought of not as fixed and final statements of truth but as reasonable theories, supported by the best evidence mankind has thus far been able to adduce. The best we can say for any of them is that they *seem* to be true and that they may actually work.

The essential thing to keep in mind here is that what we aim at in research is a sound theory — and we cannot regard any solution as any more than a theory — that satisfactorily explains the facts. We may call this theory a solution or a conclusion or a generalization; these terms all mean much the same thing when used in this connection — they mean whatever learning of importance results from the study itself.

### The Provisional Theory

Before we reach the final *theory* or *conclusion* in a scholarly study, however, it usually happens that one or two possible solutions to the problem are suggested to the scholar by his data. These provisional or temporary theories — held only until all the evidence has been collected and one of the possible solutions has been decided upon as the correct one — we call *hypotheses*. They consist, if we describe them simply, of theoretical explanations of the data which may be right or wrong, or of all the possible answers which the scholar may find for the question under study. Each hypothesis must be tested carefully to find out what evidence supports it and thus, by testing, to decide upon its truth or falsity. As soon as the scholar has examined enough of the facts to formulate a hypothesis, or temporary theory of explanation, this hypothesis will guide the direction of his further study of the subject.

In the past, candidates for college degrees were expected to defend some *thesis* (or theory) by public argument. A thesis, roughly speaking, means a proposition to be defended or proved. At Harvard College during the eighteenth century candidates for the Master of Arts degree defended such theses as the following:

That civil government has its origins in a contract.

That private profit ought not to be the chief end of moral actions.

That the dissolution of solids in corrosive liquids is performed through the means of attraction.

That the Christian religion ought not be spread by force of arms.



Each of these constituted a belief or theory which had to be defended by the student through the marshaling of all the available evidence and particularly through the use of logic. We still say to a student who is writing a paper for a graduate class: "What is your thesis?" What we mean by the question is: "What *conclusion* or *theory* are you defending?"

Etymologically speaking, the *hypothesis* consists of something "less than" (*hypo*) or "less certain than" a thesis. It may be described as a reasonable guess or supposition based upon the evidence available at the time the guess is made. A scholar may develop several hypotheses during the course of a study until he at last finds one which fits the case best or which most satisfactorily explains all the data. This *final hypothesis*, then, becomes the chief *conclusion* drawn from the study.<sup>1</sup>

It is not uncommon for a scholar, in investigating a problem, to make up his mind fairly early as to the solution which he thinks most probable. Further study, however, may cause him to change his mind. What he must remember is the necessity of testing his hypothesis objectively by carefully observing and examining all the related facts of the case. If his hypothesis is not supported by his evidence, the scholar will certainly discard it and search for another one.

A few years ago a well-known literary scholar advanced the hypothesis in a biographical study that the rather disagreeable and proud hero of Hawthorne's tale, "Ethan Brand," was intended as a portrait of Hawthorne's friend and neighbor, Herman Melville. The scholar based this hypothesis upon his analysis of Melville's person-

<sup>1</sup> The terms *hypothesis*, *theory*, *law*, *generalization*, and *conclusion* all mean much the same thing in relation to a study. They refer to the *solution* which investigation has revealed for the problem studied. From the research scholar's point of view, the hypothesis may be conveniently considered as a tentative or working assumption, and the theory as the surviving or final hypothesis which is most defensibly supported by all the evidence. But since knowledge arrived at through the scientific method is subject to revision in the light of new data, a theory is in only one sense always only a working assumption, so that the conventional distinction between *hypothesis* and *theory* (on the basis of increasing adequacy of evidence and hence of greater certainty) is a relative one. For all practical purposes, the duality of the term *hypothesis* need not concern the research scholar except to serve as a salutary reminder that no conclusion reached by the scientific method is necessarily a fixed and final truth.

ality and upon the fact that "Ethan Brand" was published not long after Hawthorne and Melville met. But other scholars quickly pointed out an essential bit of evidence which the hypothesis had overlooked. In Hawthorne's notebooks there appeared a plan for the tale of "Ethan Brand" which had been written down long before Hawthorne knew Melville, and thus the author of *Moby-Dick* hardly could have served as the model for its chief character. This hypothesis clearly was proved wrong.

In considering the general nature of the hypothesis in a scholarly study, we must keep the following ideas in mind: (1) The hypothesis represents a possible solution of the problem under investigation; (2) after preliminary examination of the data (or evidence), two or three hypotheses (possible solutions) may suggest themselves to the investigator; (3) each hypothesis which appears as if it might be the correct solution of the problem should be taken up separately and considered in the light of all evidence available; and (4) the hypothesis which best meets this test and fits all the evidence may then be decided upon as the proper solution of the problem, and it becomes the *conclusion* reached in the study.

### **A Theory Supplanted: Ptolemy vs. Copernicus**

A plausible hypothesis — one which explains all the observable data — may be accepted as a correct and authoritative theory for years, even for centuries, before new methods of research and new discoveries prove it wrong or a better hypothesis can be developed. In order to understand how this can happen, we may look at the history of the Ptolemaic and Copernican theories (or hypotheses) in astronomy.

Ptolemy of Alexandria was a brilliant scholar who lived in the second century after Christ. The achievement for which he is best remembered is his mathematical system for calculating the movements of the planets. This great system, in which Ptolemy accumulated and coordinated the teachings of all his predecessors in the field of astronomy, he described in a book which Arabian astronomers later called the *Almagest*.

It should be kept in mind that in Ptolemy's time the telescope had not yet been invented, and that he also lacked other instruments of

precise measurement which have since been developed. Furthermore, the prevailing authorities of his day believed that the movements of all heavenly bodies were directly attributable to the agency of supernatural beings; that the stars and planets moved more or less at the whim of certain gods. Ptolemy deliberately ignored this possibility and looked for natural explanations instead. He dealt only with such facts and principles as he found verifiable by actual observation. In doing this he took a long step toward the modern scientific method.

What observers in Ptolemy's time saw when they looked at the night sky was virtually the same thing we see today with the unaided eye — thousands of tiny points of light. Most of these, like the sun and the moon, seem to rotate in fixed positions around the earth every twenty-four hours. A few (the planets), however, apparently wander about the sky in what seems a haphazard manner. They are seen in one position tonight, in another position two months from now. To account for these aimless and strange wanderings of the planets was what interested Ptolemy. His great accomplishment was his remarkable ability to take huge quantities of data and relate them all mathematically into a single harmonious theory.

In working out his theory Ptolemy of course had to make certain basic assumptions. He assumed, for example, that the earth must be the center of the entire universe, arguing that, if this were not so, one part of the heavens would be nearer to us than another and the stars in it consequently would appear larger than those in the farther part. He also recalled the fact that anything falling "from the sky" tends to fall toward the earth, and he thought this phenomenon to be evidence for the theory of an earth-centered universe. Like most other scholars of his time, he regarded the earth as an unmoving sphere, assuming that any motion of such a sphere would cause objects on its outer surface to fall away or at least lose their equilibrium.

Ptolemy's theory, when first announced, met strong opposition, especially from ecclesiastical authorities; but its practical value for astronomers at last became recognized, and for over a thousand years it remained the prevailing theory for all astronomical calculations and predictions. It was not seriously challenged until Copernicus (1473-1543), a Polish scientist of great genius, published his *De*

*Revolutionibus Orbium Coelestium* and argued for a heliocentric or sun-centered theory of the universe. Much as Ptolemy was attacked by other scholars for heretical teaching in his day, so too Copernicus had to bear the label of heretic for seeming to dispute the accepted authorities. In the end, however, the new ideas were generally adopted because they proved more useful than the old and were apparently in greater accord with the observable facts. Acceptance of the heliocentric theory as proposed by Copernicus took about a century.

Ptolemy postulated a spherical earth entirely surrounded by a greater sphere in which the permanent stars are fixed. Thus as the outer sphere turns, the stars move slowly across the heavens at a regular rate of speed. The position of each of the fixed stars remains constant. The planets, Ptolemy observed, are not fixed in this outer circling sphere; each has an additional movement of its own which he described as an epicycle. Assuming the existence of such an epicycle (or smaller circle in which the planet moves, the center of which is on the surface of the outer sphere) explains what would otherwise appear to be irregular and erratic motion on the part of each of the planets. A separate epicycle must be assumed for every planet and its relative size determined by observation. The discovery of a new planet means the invention of a new epicycle to account for its movements. Copernicus, on the other hand, taught that, once the idea of a heliocentric rather than a geocentric universe is accepted, the motions of the planets can be calculated and accounted for without assuming the existence of epicycles and without having to invent new epicycles when a new planet is found. This amounts to a considerable simplification in theory.

Neither Ptolemy nor Copernicus conducted any experiments to test his hypothesis. Indeed, neither would have considered that any experimental work, when dealing with celestial bodies, was either necessary or possible. They both reasoned logically from the facts they observed. Thus we cannot say that Copernicus really had any *proof* to show his predecessor's theory false. He did so simply by supplying a less complicated and therefore more logical theory, that is, a "better" theory. In essence, what he did was to show that, if we are willing to assume a universe in which the earth moves around

the sun (rather than one in which the sun moves around the earth), many facts can easily be explained which would otherwise need elaborate and complex explanations. In other words, the principal advantage of the Copernican theory, when compared with that of Ptolemy, lay in its relative simplicity — in its power to explain more of the facts with fewer modifications of the theory itself. Later it was also shown that the ideas of Copernicus were far more useful for predictive purposes. Early in the nineteenth century the planet Neptune was located largely as the result of conclusions based upon the Copernican theory. Such a discovery very likely would not have been made, except through accident, under the Ptolemaic system.

Nevertheless, it must be understood that the Ptolemaic theory did explain the movements of the planets (although not the reason for their movements) and was just as sound mathematically as the Copernican explanation of the same facts. Astronomers may be said to have had placed before them two rival theories of planetary motion, each of which competently accounted for the observable facts. If either theory would explain the facts, and if accurate calculations could be made according to either, why should astronomers have come to prefer one to the other? The answer is that one theory was much more simple and all-encompassing than the other; it explained more of the data with fewer complications in the theory itself. Later, of course, with the invention of better instruments it became possible to observe more and more facts which had been unknown to both Ptolemy and Copernicus and which gave further weight to the Copernican explanation.

### **The Marks of a Good Theory**

The conclusion or theory resulting from any piece of thorough scholarly research can be judged and evaluated according to the success with which it meets the criteria of certain desirable characteristics. For instance, a satisfactory theory about anything must agree with and account for all the important observable facts in the case. To be sure, not every phenomenon can be satisfactorily explained, and then we sometimes merely make a guess, hoping that further study may reveal the proper explanation. Sometimes a theory will explain part of the evidence but fail to explain the rest of it, and

such a theory must be regarded usually as incomplete. In general, no theory in any field of knowledge can be regarded as final and adequate unless it is able to explain all the data which have been observed.

Besides judging a theory on its ability to explain the facts, we may say also that the theory which has fewer complexities and assumptions — in a word, the simpler theory — is preferable to the more complicated one. As we have seen, greater simplicity was one of the advantages causing the acceptance of the Copernican theory. It requires no complicated system of epicycles to explain the planets' movements. As Isaac Newton so aptly phrased it, "Nature is pleased with simplicity." In different words, we may consider that theory best which explains the greatest number of observable facts without revisions of the theory. This idea has come to be known in scholarship as the Law of Parsimony.

Thus, a good theory ought to be capable of explaining all the known facts relating to any particular problem; and the more simply it can explain these facts, the better is the theory. Besides this, a theory may receive added weight if predictions based upon it actually turn out to be true. As a matter of fact, the success of a theory for predictive purposes constitutes one of the most useful criteria by which it may be judged. To elaborate on an instance already mentioned, the existence of the planet which later became known as Neptune could be predicted with certainty according to the principles of the Copernican theory (reinforced by Newton's ideas regarding gravitation) long before the planet itself was ever sighted through the telescope. Furthermore, astronomers for many years contended, without being able to secure exact measurements to test the idea, that if Copernicus was correct in arguing that the earth revolves around the sun, even a fixed star would have to appear in different positions if seen from two different points in the earth's orbit. That is to say, the revolution of the earth would cause changes in the actual distance between a star and any given point on the earth's surface. After a sufficiently powerful telescope had been developed, Bessel was able to verify this fact by observation in 1838 — a very difficult feat, indeed.

It should be said finally of the good theory in scholarship that it ought to be fruitful of new discoveries. It should suggest further

areas of knowledge to be investigated. One of the great achievements of the Copernican theory consisted in opening the door to the Newtonian mechanics upon which much of our modern technological development has depended. Probably the better the theory, the more new doors of knowledge it will unlock.

### **The Hypothesis as a Temporary Guess**

As we have seen, the hypothesis may be looked at in two different ways. On the one hand, it may be regarded as a *principle* or *generalization* which has resulted from the careful and thorough study of a given problem. In this sense, the term *theory* or even *law* is often used, meaning a hypothesis adequately substantiated by evidence. On the other hand, in any study (particularly during the early stages) there may be one or more tentative hypotheses which really are nothing more than *temporary guesses at possible solutions* which the scholar makes to guide him in searching for further data and thus in reaching his final, correct conclusion. A scholar may test and reject any number of hypotheses in the course of a single research project.

When we speak of the hypothesis as a temporary guess or tentative solution of a scholarly problem, we find that it is arrived at and used much as follows:

1. The investigator, after a preliminary gathering of data or evidence which he believes to be related to the problem he is studying, employs inductive reasoning to reach a preliminary conclusion (or probable solution). This constitutes merely the first or trial hypothesis.

2. Having adopted this hypothesis temporarily as the most probable answer to the question he is investigating, the scholar next makes use of deductive reasoning to decide what kind of data he should expect to find if the hypothesis is true. In other words, he determines what should logically follow from the principle or generalization he is testing.

3. Having decided through his reasoning and previous knowledge exactly what kind of data to look for, the investigator then proceeds to test his hypothesis by gathering all possible data and considering whether the actual evidence and his hypothesis are fully in agreement.



4. If the evidence found in this way fails to support his first hypothesis, the investigator must reject the hypothesis. He will then search further until he has hit upon a second hypothesis or possible solution, which he tests in turn by comparing it with the evidence already available and with any further evidence that can be found. If, however, his first hypothesis proves good enough to survive all tests, the investigator may make up his mind that it constitutes the correct solution of his problem, and he need go no further.

To prevent error, it may often be helpful to consider several hypotheses (or at least more than one) when dealing with a problem. When each of these is tested in turn, the best one usually will stand out clearly. To this procedure it is frequently objected that the testing of several hypotheses, especially when some of them seem very unlikely, will be a waste of the investigator's time. Unfortunately, too great a reliance upon what has appeared altogether obvious and the failure to test possible alternative hypotheses have occasionally led even experienced scholars into serious mistakes.

Perhaps the most important fact to be remembered about the hypothesis as a temporary guess is this: Its purpose is not that of supplying a ready-made answer to a scholarly question or of setting up an arbitrary generalization to be defended by the scholar's ingenuity in argument. Rather, it is chiefly useful in suggesting new lines of observation and experiment. It leads, in other words, to the evidence. Improperly handled, the hypothesis can degenerate into someone's "pet theory" and lose its value for scholarship. Handled with skill and care, it can prove a vital tool in the hands of the trained investigator.

### **Is the Hypothesis Always Necessary?**

When fact-finding alone is the purpose of a study, there may sometimes be little use for a hypothesis. If the scholar is investigating the history of a city or nation, the life of a man, or the present status of teachers' salaries, his work will consist entirely of determining what the facts are. The same is true if he is attempting to compile a comprehensive bibliography, a concordance, or some other factual catalogue. When fact-finding alone is the aim of the study, a hypothesis may not be required.

Most major studies, however, involve not only fact-finding but

interpretation of facts. If a scholar is tracing the history of a school district or of an industry or of a political party, the facts he gathers will prove useful only if he is able to draw conclusions from them — that is, generalize about what those facts can teach us. Ordinarily, no major study is made without the hypothesis or generalization. After the facts have been discovered, what do they mean? What conclusions can we draw from them? Probably no American graduate school would accept a doctoral dissertation which involved only fact-finding and no hypothesis.

We had better say, then, that although studies *can* be made without any hypothesis whatever, the hypothesis is expected in every major study. Not the facts alone, but the conclusions that we can draw from them, must be regarded as the chief objective of research.

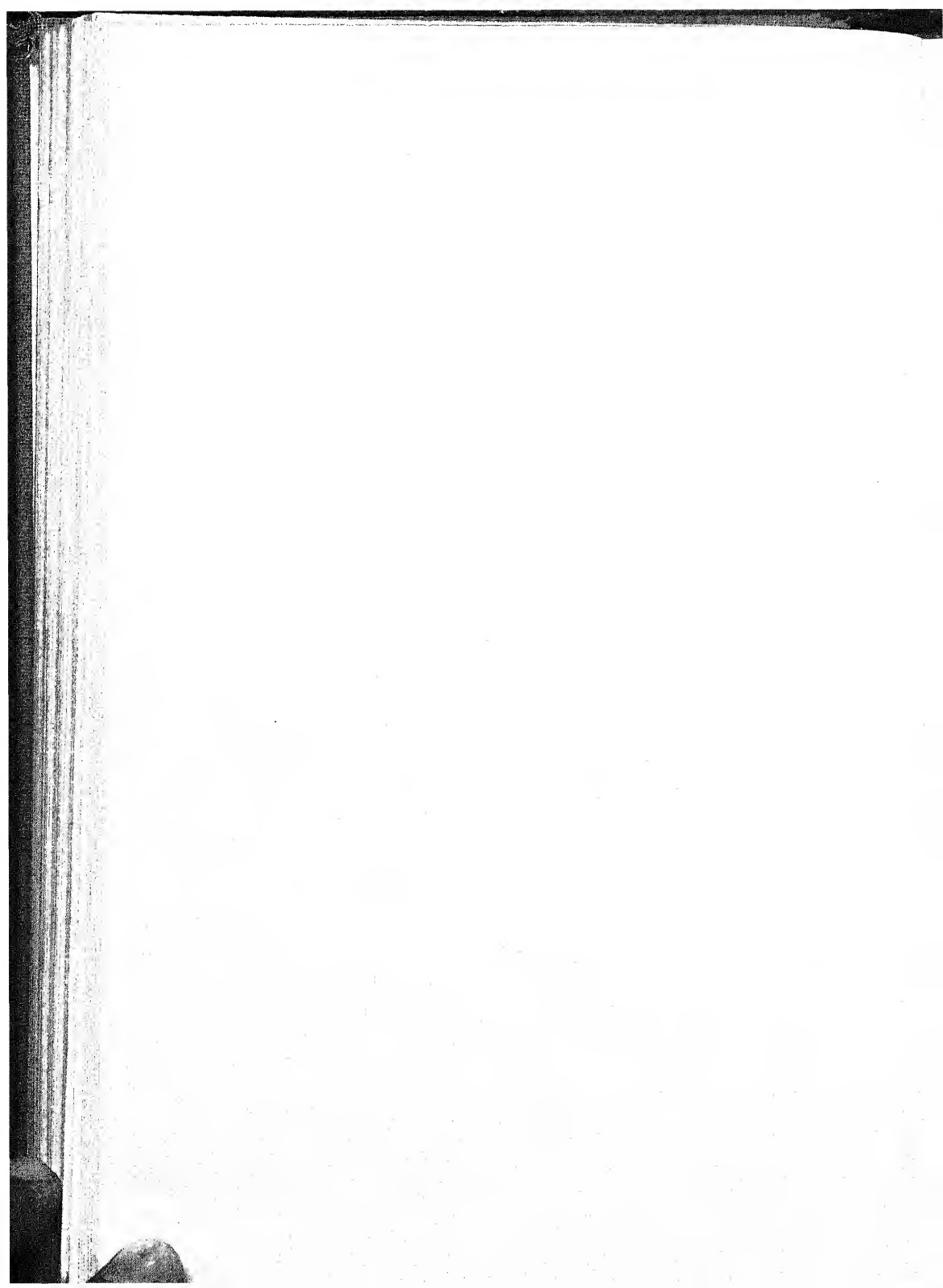
### Summary

The hypothesis has been described in this chapter as (1) the theory or generalization or conclusion ("final" hypothesis) which results from the study of any problem, and (2) the temporary guess or working assumption which the scholar makes early in his investigation to guide him in the search for further data. The temporary guess at a correct solution may prove wrong, and if so it must be rejected in favor of some other possibility.

In the absolute sense, the "final" hypothesis or theory arrived at in a scientifically conducted study cannot be regarded as final truth; it really represents only the best answer available with the present data. A better theory may supplant it later if it fails to meet the test of time and of new discoveries.

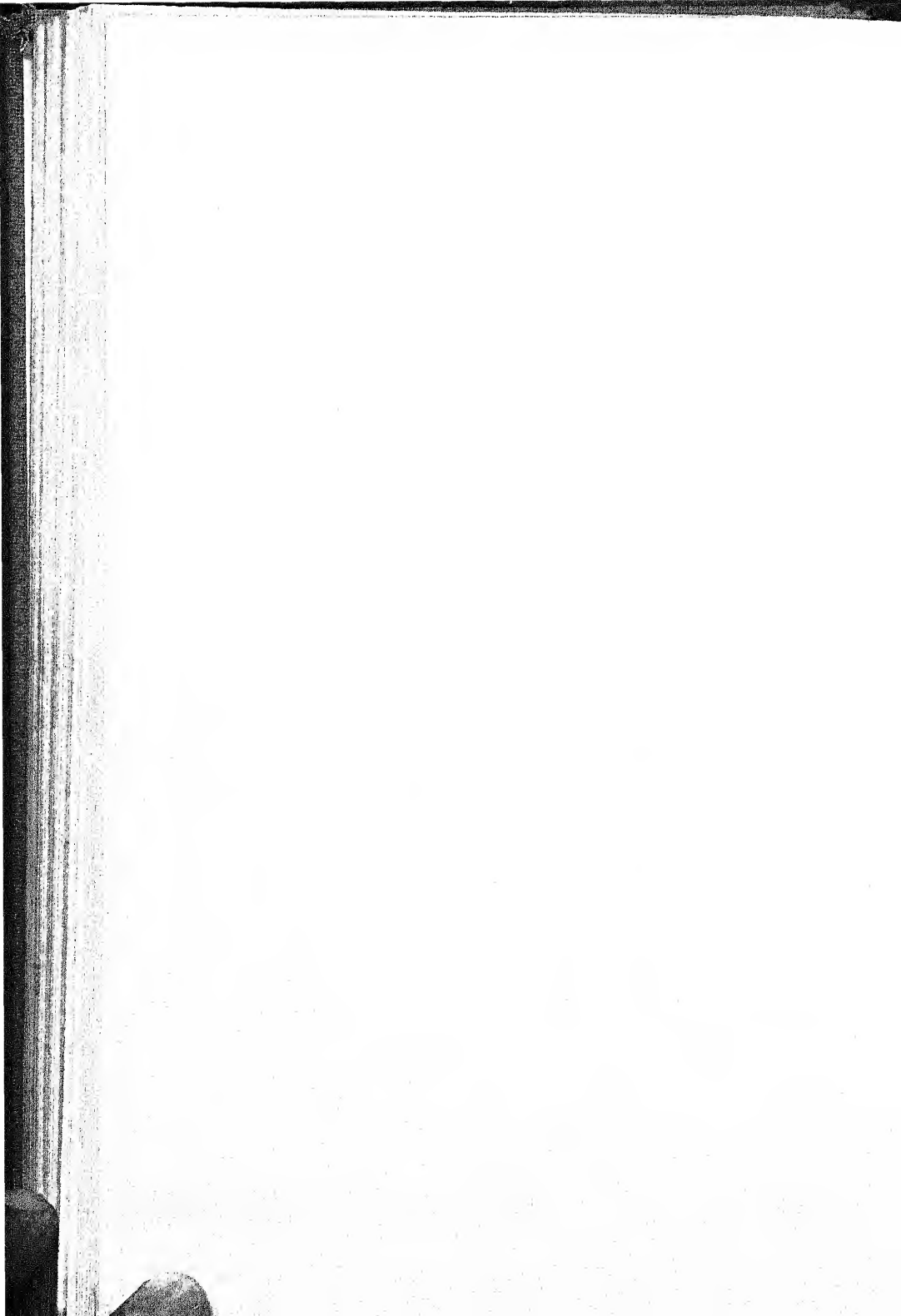
A hypothesis or theory finally selected by the scholar after thorough study, and one which he is prepared to defend, must meet the following tests if it is to be acceptable: First and most important, it must be capable of explaining all the data; second, it must conform to the so-called Law of Parsimony and explain the data more simply than do other theories; third, it must be so accurate that predictions based upon it will come true; and finally, it should be fruitful of new discoveries in its field.

While the hypothesis may not be necessary in a purely fact-finding study, it is generally considered indispensable to the completion of any major piece of scholarly research.



**PART THREE**

Investigative Techniques



# 10

## SOME COMMON SENSE

### ABOUT TECHNIQUES OF RESEARCH

In the foregoing chapters we have been concerned with the underlying philosophy of research and the general mental approach that seems necessary in order to use research as a means of discovering new truth. We have seen that research in the various academic fields always entails the search for previously undiscovered knowledge. Invariably such knowledge takes the form of acceptable and provable hypotheses which, taken together, constitute all the principles and facts that we call human learning. We have seen that such knowledge is arrived at usually through a deliberate and often laborious attempt to solve a specific problem. We have learned that, once this problem has occurred to the mind of the investigator and has been carefully considered and accurately defined, the first step toward a solution must be an inspection of all the available facts, opinions, and known principles which may have any bearing upon the problem.

This inspection ordinarily leads the scholar to some tentative hypothesis, or possible solution, but not necessarily to his final conclusion. He next proceeds to test his hypothesis, in order to see whether it is correct, by gathering and analyzing further data — that

is, by making sure that the hypothesis conforms with all the discoverable facts and accepted principles in the case and also that sufficient evidence exists to support the hypothesis effectively. Where to look for such evidence is frequently suggested by the hypothesis itself. If the hypothesis fails to stand up under this test, if the evidence proves too weak to support it, or if it is seen to be not in conformity with the facts discovered, the scholar discards it and begins over again with a new hypothesis, which he tests just as thoroughly as he did the first one.

### Testing the Hypothesis

It is this testing of the hypothesis which concerns us next. This is what we mean when we speak of the *techniques* or *methods* of research.

The techniques used in solving a scholarly problem are of the utmost importance. Obviously, if wrong techniques are employed, a correct solution can hardly be reached, unless by accident. For this reason the investigator must learn as much as possible about the techniques which have proved fruitful in his field and must acquire skill in using them. No good means of acquiring that skill really exists, of course, except actual practice. In a general way, however, the techniques of research can be described and broadly classified, and this may help to make the process of learning the skills easier and faster.

The exact techniques which are decided upon in investigating any scholarly problem will depend upon the nature of the problem itself. Probably no two problems can ever be solved in quite the same way. Furthermore, the data which need to be observed in working toward the solutions of different problems will differ in important respects. Thus, before the proper method of attack can be chosen, each problem has to be considered in the light of its particular characteristics and of the type of data available.

Research techniques or methods — as we use the terms to describe ways of testing the hypothesis — include these principal steps: first, locating and collecting the data necessary to serve as the basis for any solution; second, analyzing and classifying these data in a logical manner; and, third, interpreting these data in order to arrive at a preliminary hypothesis which can be tested and shown to be either correct or incorrect.



While there may be countless ways of uncovering evidence and of analyzing and classifying it for purposes of research, they can all be described broadly under four headings: (1) documentary or historical research, (2) experiment, (3) descriptive research or the survey, and (4) the case study. In any given investigation, it may even be necessary (in fact, it is frequently desirable) to use two or more of these general types of research in combination. There is no reason, for instance, why one should not seek the solution of a problem by studying its history through an examination of documents (documentary research) and then determining its present status by some sort of survey (descriptive research). Thus, although it may be the more common practice to use one technique only in any one study, the different methods can also be applied effectively in combination. At any rate, the decision as to which method will be used always depends upon the kind of problem under attack and the nature of the available data. It goes without saying that no investigator selects a problem for study simply because it lends itself to a particular technique of investigation.

Any notion that these various techniques are mysterious or unusually complex ought to be dispelled at once. Basically they are simple and are founded upon common sense. Occasionally the discussions which are carried on about these techniques may seem a little strange and complicated because of the use of technical terms not commonly heard in the average person's vocabulary.

What we are speaking of here is the principle underlying research techniques—a principle which in itself need not be difficult to understand. We are not saying that the solution of problems is easy. Far from it. We are not saying that it is easy to find all the necessary data or to interpret such data correctly. What we are saying is that the methods employed in doing so entail the exercise of common sense and adherence to one basic principle. That principle is the belief that hypotheses are not tested and scholarly problems are not solved merely by flashes of intuition (however valuable they may be), by unconsidered experience, or by reason and logic alone. They require carefully planned methods of study that will eliminate errors of judgment as well as errors of fact and that will build a solid foundation of acceptable evidence for the conclusions reached.

The different methods or techniques which we shall consider in the following chapters, then, have been devised as tools to be wielded in the search for truth. Their purpose is to assist the scholar both in his quest for evidence with which to test his hypothesis and reach his final conclusions and also in his detailed examination of that evidence. While description can never serve as a satisfactory substitute for actual practice in scholarship, these chapters may help to explain how successful scholars find the data necessary to their investigations and how they analyze and classify these data as a means of reaching sound conclusions.

### Words of Caution

A few words of caution should be given about methods of research. In the first place, there is no special merit in being able merely to *name* or *identify* a method used. What is important is being able to devise a technique of study which will accurately solve the problem. No method, however ingenious, can be called successful unless it leads to true conclusions. The technique or method, therefore, should not be regarded as an end in itself but rather as the means to an end.

Further, the investigator should fully and clearly understand the method he has hit upon for solving his problem. He ought to plan in advance, so far as he can, the steps he will take in progressing toward a solution. While changes and additions in his technique will no doubt result from the discovery of more and more evidence as he develops the study, his main plan should be carefully drawn up at the start. Moreover, the method he chooses to test his hypothesis and thus reach a final conclusion should be so firmly fixed in his mind and so definite and precise in its details that he will have no difficulty in describing to someone else exactly what his plan is. This ability to describe in detail the specific method being used, incidentally, constitutes a very good way of determining whether the method chosen has been worked out properly and is likely to prove effective. If the scholar cannot clearly describe his method, the chances are that it is too vague and general to yield him satisfactory results.

Finally, there are at least three major dangers to be watched for in the collection and analysis of data. The first of these concerns the adequacy of the data. The investigator must always ask himself, before finishing the study, whether the evidence discovered actually is sufficient to support the conclusions reached and also just how reliable it is. If evidence is either weak or insufficient, the results of the study cannot be regarded as convincing or conclusive.

The second danger involves the handling of the data. Evidence must always be carefully sifted and considered for its accuracy and authenticity. Errors in the set-up of an experiment (such as admitting chemical impurities or failing to account for all variables) or fallacies in the construction of a questionnaire (such as including leading questions) or the misreading of a document can be fatal to accurate work in the scholarly study. Besides making sure that he has uncovered the very best evidence and enough of it for his purpose, the investigator must be certain that he has handled the evidence properly.

Finally, there remains the danger of deriving wrong conclusions from the data — of thinking they mean something other than what they do mean. Does the evidence really mean what it seems to? This question invariably presents itself to the scholar who is sincerely striving for objectivity. He must resist the attractive temptation of seeing in the evidence meanings which he would like to see but which are not really there.

### Summary

Four major techniques or methods of research may be distinguished: documentary (or historical) research; experiment; descriptive research (the survey); and the case study. These methods are tools to assist the scholar in testing his hypothesis through the collection and analysis of data, and he will regard them as tools, or means, not as ends in themselves. The choice of the appropriate method, or combination of methods, depends upon the nature of the problem and upon the kind of data the problem entails. If the scholar has selected his method carefully in relation to his problem, and clearly understands both the method and his reasons for using it,

he should thereby be enabled to gather enough reliable data, and to handle and interpret it properly, to support a valid conclusion. By a "method" or "technique" of research, then, we mean a reasonable plan for attacking and solving the problem under investigation, making use not of intuition or chance experience or pure logic, but of scientific principles based upon objectivity and common sense.

Documentary research receives its name from the scholarly activities involved in learning new facts and principles through the study of documents and records. While this type of research can be and is used extensively in every academic field, it has been particularly important in the study of history, literature and linguistics, and the humanities in general. Historians use this method so constantly that it sometimes is called the "historical" method. Although useful in investigating the events of the past (in fact, really the only practicable method), it may also be applied profitably to the study of current matters. For example, the documentary method of research aided American cryptographers in solving enemy codes and thus translating military messages during World War II. Documentary research need not be thought of as limited exclusively to historical studies.

This method of collecting and analyzing data can probably be considered the oldest form of true research. The Greek historian Thucydides contributed one of the earliest examples of its use when he tried to establish certain principles of human behavior and government by examining closely the origins and conduct of the Peloponnesian War. Aristotle also applied the method of documentary research when he made his provocative studies of Greek drama and poetry. The method in modern times, however, has been greatly refined and thus made far more exact than it was when the ancient Greek historians and philosophers first began to develop it.

Basically, documentary research consists in putting together in a logical way the evidence derived from documents and records, and from that evidence forming conclusions which either establish facts hitherto unknown or offer sound generalizations with respect to past or present events, human motives, characteristics, and thoughts. The process, while applied more commonly in dealing with human documents, can also be effective in studying non-human records of several types. In geology, for example, the story of the earth's development may be pieced together by a study of rock strata, fossils, and the like. Here the "documents" examined are not written records or even relics of human activity. They are simply natural facts that constitute observable and more or less permanent records of events. The fossil itself tells us more about prehistoric life than we could learn from a written record, however complete and accurate it might be.

Before considering how documents are studied, we might first ask why we study them at all. The answer lies in man's desire to learn. Whether a knowledge of recorded human history or of prehistoric times has any practical value or not, most of us are interested in learning and speculating about past events. Our curiosity, therefore, would provide enough justification in any case for documentary study; but it seems likely also that by this means we can make generalizations from past events which may guide us in our present actions. Furthermore, current ideas, tastes, and attitudes seem better understood when we have determined their origins and the steps in their growth. Documents, then, do not have merely antiquarian value but can also give us increased power over nature and over ourselves. We study the records of the past and present, first, to understand them; second, to discover facts from them; third (if they are human records), to learn something about their authors or originators; and finally, to make generalizations (hypotheses or conclusions) about them.

#### **What Kind of Document May Be Studied?**

The data gathered in documentary research may be drawn from many sources. Chief among these are the following:

1. *Official records.* These may include legal records (such as

transcriptions of courtroom proceedings), laws and other legislative acts, minutes of meetings, administrative reports (for example, the official report of a governmental agency or of a college president to his board of trustees), committee reports in the work of organizations and clubs, the annual reports and proceedings of deliberative bodies, legal instruments executed by individuals (such as contracts and wills), legal instruments conferring powers upon individuals or groups (such as certificates, licenses, and charters), and similar documentary proof of official actions or decisions. These ordinarily constitute excellent sources of exact information because of the care which official bodies must exercise to make certain that such records are accurate, complete, and carefully preserved.

2. *Newspaper accounts.* Although not always accurate in detail (even factual material may be interpreted and presented in more than one way), newspaper accounts, especially as they appear in the standard newspaper of today, often provide essential facts and serve as a more or less permanent record of day-to-day happenings in the world. News may also be found in magazines and various other periodical publications, but a distinction must be made between factual reporting and expressions of opinion (as in editorial writing). Obviously, newspapers and magazines are never as accurate and complete as official source materials; scholars, therefore, use them chiefly when official records do not exist.

3. *Eye-witness accounts of events.* If the investigator cannot witness an event himself (as will usually be the case, especially in dealing with historical matters), a desirable source of information about the event will be the testimony of someone who was a witness. This testimony may be given orally (when the investigator talks with the witness) or in written form. In studying conditions in American schools of a half century ago, it might be helpful, for instance, to talk with a person who attended or taught in a typical school of that era. Or we might seek to learn about present-day education in Germany by consulting a recent immigrant who would be able to give a first-hand account. Because of the uncertainty of human memory, an eye-witness account written down *at the time of the event* will usually prove more reliable than efforts to recall incidents a long time after they have occurred. We might also



say that a written record seems generally to be more trustworthy than an oral report — though not always.

4. *Letters and personal diaries.* Since personal papers like letters and diaries presumably are not edited by their writers with any thought for publication, they may reveal more detailed and more intimate information than public records of events. Data from personal writings are particularly helpful when the scholar is making a biographical study.

5. *Biographies, autobiographies, and memoirs.* If authoritative, these sources will be useful mainly to review the already established facts about a person's life — seldom to establish new facts. Usually more direct and original source materials (like those mentioned above) are preferable, if they can be located. On the other hand, information given in the story of a person's life may be of use in tracing the growth and influence of some historical movement or idea. It would be difficult, for example, to study the development of the American Constitution without knowing a great deal about the lives and ideas of the men who formulated it.

6. *Historical writings and studies.* If based upon scientific investigation, historical writings and studies may be used with some degree of confidence, though examination of the original source materials would be better. Historical summaries are nearly always derived from more direct sources.

7. *Descriptive studies made in the past.* If a scholarly study cannot be repeated (as an experiment can be — or, for that matter, a survey study), it becomes a documentary source of information. In other words, the report of the study is used in much the same way as any other historical document.

8. *Literary and philosophical writings.* Such literary productions as poems, novels, plays, and essays may provide information about actual events, but the scholar is more likely to examine them for their ideas. In literary or linguistic studies, of course, the writings themselves may constitute the only really essential source of data.

9. *Archaeological and geological remains.* These records (the ruins of Pompeii, for instance) are not documents in the same sense as written records; yet they serve much the same purpose in historical research, they are studied in the same way, and they reveal data which are used in forming conclusions or hypotheses.

10. *Miscellaneous*. Works of art, musical compositions, monuments, memorials, and various other miscellaneous sources of information may be important "documentary" sources in certain kinds of research or in the absence of other data.

It can be seen that the supply of source materials for documentary research is extremely varied. The first major task which faces a scholar who has undertaken to solve a problem requiring the examination of documentary evidence is the location and selection of the documents themselves. These may not always be readily accessible, and sometimes it takes much ingenuity and hard work to discover them. A problem entailing documentary research cannot, it is clear, be solved without a direct examination of the materials containing the essential evidence.

### **The Location of Documentary Data**

Heinrich Schliemann about the year 1870 opened a whole new field of research, the field we now call archaeology, by finding and excavating the ruins of the ancient city of Troy. His interest in ascertaining the exact site of the city made famous by Homer led him to explore the coast of Asia Minor until he was able to identify one spot which had all the characteristics noted in Homer's descriptions. The discoveries of Schliemann, in addition to other things, confirmed the fact that Homer had based his story (at least in large part) upon actual historical truth rather than upon pure imagination.<sup>1</sup>

One of the most spectacular occurrences in twentieth-century literary scholarship has been the recovery of an immense quantity of manuscripts left by James Boswell, the great biographer of Samuel Johnson. For years the existence of some of these papers had been suspected, but the bulk of them remained unknown and were thought lost until Professor Chauncey B. Tinker of Yale University began in the nineteen-twenties the detective work which led at length to their re-discovery. Through long and careful efforts, Tinker became acquainted with Boswell's descendants and succeeded

<sup>1</sup> For a fascinating account of Schliemann, his predecessors, and his successors, see C. W. Ceram, *Gods, Graves, and Scholars*, trans. E. B. Garside (New York: Alfred A. Knopf, 1951).

in securing a glimpse in Malahide Castle, Ireland, of a much discussed "ebony cabinet," a family heirloom, in which dozens of Boswell manuscripts were stored. These papers, after much difficulty and expense, were generously purchased and brought to the United States by Ralph Isham, an American financier, who made them available for scholarly study. Other Boswell papers were later chanced upon when an old croquet box was opened, and still more turned up in the attic of an ancient Scottish country house. The detailed history of these discoveries is in many ways as interesting as a best-selling novel.<sup>2</sup>

The point with which we are primarily concerned here is that the documents used in scholarly studies do not as a rule fall fortuitously and haphazardly into the scholar's hands. He must search them out. Like a skillful detective, the scholar laboriously follows clues, recollects his wide knowledge of the materials already known in his field, and frequently calls upon his imagination and ingenuity to track down his quarry. The first step in documentary research must be the location of all the necessary documents.

### **The Importance of Primary Sources**

One can hardly stress too much the importance of getting as near to the original documents as possible. The scholar should never use a copy of a document if he can see the original. True, sometimes this may entail more time and expense than is justified, and a carefully prepared copy may suffice for the purpose at hand. For a scholar working in California, the photostatic copy of a manuscript preserved in the Harvard University Library may be quite as satisfactory as the manuscript itself. But a scholar should not use the published version of, say, a letter if he can conveniently (or even inconveniently!) obtain access to the letter itself. Transcription and publication leave the way open for a whole host of possible errors. Similarly, a picture cannot be just the same as the thing itself, however carefully it may be reproduced.

The document which constitutes a primary source of information is, in most cases, the written record of what its writer actually saw and

<sup>2</sup> A large part of the story is excellently related in *The Scholar Adventurers*, by Richard D. Altick (New York: The Macmillan Company, 1950).

heard or the first-hand expression of his ideas. The newspaper account may be a primary source if the reporter himself witnessed the event he describes. Material quoted by an author from the writings of another author, on the other hand, can never be considered a primary source; the investigator, before using such data, should go back to the original published or unpublished form of the quoted material. Textbooks, almanacs, encyclopedias, and similar summaries of information cannot qualify as primary sources (except in a study where a scholar is examining them for their own characteristics), for they usually derive their facts and ideas not from direct observation but from the writings of others.

Like rumors, data which pass through several hands before they reach the investigator may bear little resemblance to the original versions. In studying the poetical works of Geoffrey Chaucer, modern scholars are somewhat handicapped by the unfortunate fact that we do not have extant a single manuscript in Chaucer's handwriting nor even a copy of his poetry written down during his lifetime. Ways in which his lines may have been altered by careless copyists or later editors after leaving his hands or being dictated by him to some scribe have occupied and worried literary investigators for a number of years. A few poems formerly ascribed to Chaucer have been dropped, as the result of extensive research, from the canon of his works. Obviously, no final judgment regarding Chaucer's accomplishments as a writer can be arrived at unless we are certain of just what he wrote. Painstaking scholarship must be exercised in deciding which of the surviving documents are most like the original version of Chaucer's writings. The only solid basis for conclusions reached in documentary research lies, after all, in the use of primary sources—that is, those which are as near as possible to the actual phenomenon under investigation.

Scholars quickly learn the wisdom of preserving all documents carefully. The constant difficulties they meet in the search for materials, their natural annoyance at the careless handling and marring of documents by others, to say nothing of their feelings on learning that valuable source materials have been lost or destroyed—tend to make scholars ardent abettors of all efforts to preserve important records. The scholar comes to realize that a document lost

is a page torn from the book of man's history. To him the person who filches souvenirs from a Pueblo cliff dwelling, or who steals a picture from a library book, or who throws away some useful note or letter, seems nothing short of criminal in his conduct.

The scholar falls under an immediate obligation to treat tenderly all the documents and records which pass through his hands. In the library he makes certain that the works he borrows go back to the shelves in a condition no worse than that in which he received them. Many such records cannot be replaced if destroyed or damaged. He conscientiously keeps his promises to those who lend him letters, manuscripts, books, and the like, and in every way lives up to the trust which has been placed in him.

### **Criticism of Documents: External Appraisal**

Once the proper documents for investigation have been assembled, the next step is careful and critical appraisal of each item. Such an appraisal usually takes two forms. First there is *external* examination, or an attempt to determine the genuineness or authenticity of the document. Is it what it purports to be? Then there is *internal* examination, which concerns the meaning, accuracy, and general trustworthiness of the statements contained in the document.

As an example of external appraisal, we may take the case of the famous Kensington Stone. This relic, called "probably the most important archaeological object yet found in North America,"<sup>3</sup> was dug from among the roots of a tree on a farm near Kensington, Minnesota, in 1898. On one side were carved runic symbols which, when translated, revealed the exciting story of eight Gothic (Swedish) and twenty-two Norwegian adventurers who had been attacked by Indians while exploring the western country. Apparently they left the message carved in stone as a memento of their presence in this wilderness, fearing a second attack by the red men and the possibility of being killed without leaving any trace. Their camp, according to the inscription, had been made on a rocky island. The date inscribed was 1362, though this was not deciphered until much later.

While the stone and its carved writings gave every appearance of

<sup>3</sup> By M. W. Stirling in the Washington (D.C.) *Times-Herald*, March 12, 1948.

authenticity, this document was declared by eminent scholars of the time to be a forgery on the following grounds:

1. The farmer who discovered the stone was known to be interested in the early Norse explorations of North America and to be an amateur student of runic writing.

2. No other evidence then existed which would indicate that Norse explorers had advanced as far inland as the Mississippi River valley.

3. The language used in the inscription seemed to be a curious mixture of Norwegian and Swedish.

4. Not being able in 1898 to read correctly the date of the inscription, scholars of the period assumed that an expedition like the one described must have been made (if it was made at all) during the eleventh or twelfth century. In those years, however, Norway and Sweden were at war, and thus Goths and Norwegians would not have been traveling together in the same party.

5. The stone was found not on an island, as the inscription would require, but on a piece of land at some distance from any lake.

There were other arguments as well, and they seemed conclusive. The stone was returned, unhonored, to its finder, who used it for some years as a door-step. Later, however, answers to the objections were advanced one by one. More evidence was gradually unearthed of the presence of early Norsemen in the eastern parts of the North American continent. Further knowledge of the Scandinavian dialects and runic symbols of medieval times seemed to resolve certain supposed discrepancies in the message itself and provided a correct reading of the date. An examination of topography in the Kensington area showed that many lakes which had once existed there had long since dried up. By 1948 many prominent archaeologists had become convinced that the Kensington Stone was not a forgery but an authentic document of Pre-Columbian American history, and it was placed for preservation in the Smithsonian Institution at Washington. Here it remains available for further study.

On the other hand, external appraisal may sometimes reveal that a document, while seemingly genuine, is not what it appears to be. Hoaxes and forgeries have been rather numerous in human history. Besides, there is always the chance of an honest error. One of the

most famous hoaxes in Western history was the so-called Donation of Constantine, an eighth-century forgery, presumably by some ardent churchman, which purported to give the Pope temporal and political power over all the states of Italy. This and numerous other forgeries known collectively as the False Decretals were exposed in the fifteenth century by the great humanistic scholar, Laurentius Valla.

In our own century, in the nineteen-thirties, a spectacular scholarly scandal came to light when John Carter and Graham Pollard, two young English book dealers, discovered evidence tending to show that certain rare and expensive books by well-known British authors, books presumed to have been published in limited or small editions about the middle of the nineteenth century (and, because of their extreme rarity, commanding fabulous prices in the rare-book market), could be exposed as forgeries printed somewhat later by a clever bookseller. Since relics, letters, mementoes, and various other documents of the sort, such as first editions, have great monetary value for collectors, the temptation always arises to produce a skillful forgery which will be financially profitable. In the case mentioned here, the suspected bookseller, a man of unquestioned learning and enviable reputation, seems to have carried on his business of publishing false documents rather quietly over a period of many years and with immense personal profit. When openly accused, however, he denied his guilt. While admitting that forgery had been accomplished, he attempted to shift the blame to others.

Letters attributed to famous men have frequently appeared on the market with errors so crude and obvious that they are easily proved forgeries. In one such letter offered for sale as coming from the pen of Lincoln, the ineptitude of the criminal forger was revealed by a reference to Kansas at a period some twenty years before that territory was known or settled. These attempts to cheat a glib purchaser or a slipshod scholar can be defeated by calm and thorough external appraisal of every document used in a study. This rule, of course, applies chiefly to *new* documents—that is, to those which have not been carefully appraised in the past. In every academic field there exist countless documents whose au-



thenticity has been well established. If there can be the slightest question, however, the scholar should adopt the most skeptical attitude. It is a rule of scholarship not to take anything for granted.

Some of the more effective techniques for detecting spurious items have been described by Captain Arthur J. Quirke, a handwriting analyst for the Department of Justice in the Irish Free State.<sup>4</sup> His book makes excellent reading for scholars. Although his discussion applies chiefly to handwritten documents, a number of the techniques he presents may be used also in the analysis of other unauthenticated documents.

No doubt every scholar who has ever studied written records, especially those of an unofficial nature, recognizes the necessity of comparing an autograph manuscript (that is, one written by hand) with one or more known examples of the presumed author's handwriting. Sometimes the difference or similarity will be immediately apparent. A scholar familiar with an author's handwriting from long study of many examples learns to know the individual marks and peculiarities which distinguish it. Nevertheless, it is not always an easy matter to identify the writer of a particular document beyond any shadow of doubt. Even a signature may present problems. Are the signatures of William Shakespeare (or Shakespere, Shaxspere, or Shagspere) which have survived until modern times really those of the great English playwright? We simply do not know; there do not exist a sufficient number of authentic documents indisputably in Shakespeare's handwriting to offer the chance of comparing them carefully and ascertaining their distinctive characteristics. Unless there can be absolutely no doubt as to the authorship of a given manuscript, the scholar verifies it whenever possible by comparing it carefully with authenticated examples of the supposed author's writing. While the analysis of handwriting is too complicated a matter for treatment here, its importance to any conscientious investigator of documentary materials must be recognized.

Other techniques for assessing the genuineness of a document include such procedures as physical and chemical analysis of the

<sup>4</sup> Arthur J. Quirke, *Forged, Anonymous, and Suspect Documents* (London: George Routledge and Sons, 1930).

substance upon which it is written. The art of paper making has changed gradually over the years, and a document sometimes may be dated by determining when and where the paper was made. The same holds true for the ink used. Often the printer's type from which a published page has been set can be identified by its design or by certain special characteristics or imperfections, such as broken or worn letters. By studying the type face and by finding other books printed in the same kind of type, Carter and Pollard were able to trace the origin of the forged pamphlets which they were inspecting to a particular printing press and a particular font of type in a London printing office. Typewriters, too, have distinctive and individual characteristics which can be ascertained by close scrutiny. The magnifying glass, the microscope, and the camera prove competent allies in this process of authenticating or condemning source materials.

Recently some interesting new methods of examining documents through the use of ultra-violet rays and fluorescence photography have been developed. These have proved especially helpful in detecting alterations and erasures. When Randall Stewart (now a professor of English at Vanderbilt University) examined the personal journals of Nathaniel Hawthorne in the Pierpont Morgan Library, he discovered that numerous changes had been made in the original material by Mrs. Hawthorne after her husband's death. The author's uninhibited comments on persons and events had been considerably toned down to make them sound more genteel or inoffensive, and in some instances they had been heavily blacked out in ink. By employing modern police devices Mr. Stewart was able to read even the blacked-out portions. Consequently his editions of Hawthorne's journals reveal Hawthorne as a man of real vigor and some bluntness of expression, who was not quite the idealized figure that Hawthorne's widow had succeeded in placing before the world.

Examination of a document's contents may sometimes expose discrepancies that prove it unreliable as a witness. (Documents to the scholar are as courtroom witnesses to the lawyer — sources of information from which the pertinent data must be extracted. Before accepting the testimony of a witness, the court must know

his identity and appraise his reliability.) Questions have to be raised by the scholar which, if satisfactorily answered, establish the item as genuine, and if not satisfactorily answered, cause it to be rejected as a source of evidence. Besides determining whether the handwriting corresponds with other examples by the purported author of the documents, whether the paper and ink meet the tests which are applied to them, and whether the document has been changed in any way by another person, the scholar must also check minutely into such details as the date, the signature, the statements themselves, and the general tone or style. If a letter, for example, has been dated from Paris on a day when its purported author is known to have been speaking before an audience in San Francisco, either the document cannot be what it seems to be or some error has crept into the records. The discrepancy must be explained or the document rejected.

A few of the questions which the careful scholar puts to himself almost automatically when he looks at a document are the following: Who was the author? Is the connection between him and the document a natural and plausible one? Is the subject one with which he could be expected to have some degree of familiarity? Could he have been in the place indicated at the time indicated? Was the information given in the document original with him, or did he copy it from someone else? Are the statements made in the document consistent with the known level of intelligence, education, experience, and individual temperament of the purported writer? These and many other questions of the same searching quality help the investigator to arrive at a sound judgment with respect to the genuineness of the document.

### **Criticism of Documents: Internal Appraisal**

Whereas external appraisal is concerned with what the document is, internal appraisal is concerned with what it says — that is, with the meaning, accuracy, and general trustworthiness of the statements made in it. Once the document has been proved genuine, we must ask what significance it may have as a source of information. What sort of data does it supply for the task at hand, for the solution of the problem?

In working with a document of the distant past, the question of meaning or interpretation often comes to mind first. Suppose that an ancient stone implement is picked up on the New Mexico desert. Before its probable significance in the study of ethnology can be determined, the scholar must understand what the object is meant to be. For what purpose was it intended? How was it used by its makers? Once questions of this nature have been answered properly, the scholar can say he knows the *meaning* of the relic and can proceed with his investigation of the other facts concerning it.

In dealing with *written* records, first of all the meaning of the words and the symbols needs to be ascertained. The language (Old English or Anglo-Saxon) in which the only remaining manuscript of the epic poem *Beowulf* was written is one that we no longer use; therefore the scholar must learn it before he can study the text of the poem. Even the words of the King James version of the Bible do not all have the identical meaning today which they had in 1611. *Let* now means *allow*, whereas in the time of King James it meant *prevent*; and instead of *turtle* (for the name of a bird) we would now say *turtle dove*. Before the statements in a document can be correctly understood, then, each word, phrase, and symbolical expression in it must be interpreted. This may involve the reading of a foreign language, the deciphering of a special code, or the translation of some form of communication now no longer used.

The diary of Samuel Pepys, for instance, was originally written down in a form of shorthand which had to be deciphered by modern literary scholars; in fact, a few portions of this famous diary in an obscure private cipher still have not been read successfully. To cite another example, when strange marks and pictures were discovered on stone monuments and on papyrus rolls in Egypt, and others of a different kind upon baked clay tablets in Mesopotamia, they were believed at once to be writing of some sort; but for years they remained untranslated. About 1800, Georg Friedrich Grotefend through careful reasoning found the clues necessary to read the cuneiform writing of ancient Persia; and Jean François Champollion some twenty years later, by his work on the Rosetta Stone, made it possible to translate the Egyptian hieroglyphics.

In literary scholarship especially, though in other fields as well, interpretation has an important place. Many literary, philosophical, and religious works have allegorical or secret meanings which have to be discerned. Bitter satires like Jonathan Swift's *A Modest Proposal* (in which he proposes to relieve the overpopulation of Ireland by serving Irish babies as food) or Daniel Defoe's *The Shortest Way with Dissenters* (in which religious intolerance is described in a sober but shocking manner as highly desirable) have been mistaken by some persons for serious and straightforward recommendations. Individual words and phrases in some works have been laboriously studied in order to reach the author's intended meaning—sometimes without success (e.g., Milton's "two-handed engine at the door" in line 130 of his poem *Lycidas*). Occasionally a thorough investigation of an author's times and the country in which he lived may be necessary in order to understand what he has written. Ideas and phrases (as well as contemporaneous references) easily comprehended by the people of one century may be unintelligible to those of the next. In Chaucer's day—to give one illustration—such terms as *twenty*, *fifty*, and similar round numbers were apparently used freely to indicate merely *a large number*. Thus, when Chaucer spoke of owning "twenty books," we can interpret this to mean not that he had made an exact count but that he owned a substantial library. Today we still use a term like *a thousand and one* when we wish to represent a large but indeterminate number.

Interpreting the meaning of a document may be a very simple thing or a very complicated one—requiring, in some instances, a thorough knowledge of history, linguistics, politics, economics, sociology, psychology, and other disciplines. Common sense tells us, however, that understanding the true meaning of the statements contained in a document is essential if the scholar intends to rely on them as data in the solution of his problem.

**Accuracy and Trustworthiness of Documents.** If the meaning of the statements within the document has been clearly determined, the next part of the procedure in evaluating a document internally is an appraisal of the accuracy and the trustworthiness of these statements. The investigator must raise various questions about

the author's competence and integrity. How good an observer was he? Did he have ample opportunity to observe the matters he described? Did he possess a reputation for truthfulness? How well could he have known the facts of the case? Was he personally interested in presenting a particular point of view? Was he prejudiced? Was he trying to deceive? Were his observations made at first hand, or did he receive the information from others?

Two persons who see the same incident may interpret it in wholly different ways. People who have witnessed an automobile accident from opposite sides of the street may be unable to agree on the details because they were observing from different perspectives, or because one was more observant than the other, or because one was standing still while the other was walking along rather hurriedly, or because of any number of chance circumstances. If the events in a labor dispute are investigated, the representatives of labor and of management usually can be counted upon to disagree not only on the interpretation of the events but even on a factual description of them. Writers of books about such controversial political figures as Franklin Roosevelt will present vastly different impressions. Thus the scholar cannot afford to accept blindly the statements made in even the best authenticated of documents. He must employ every legitimate means to decide upon their probable accuracy and trustworthiness.

Official news releases or prepared public announcements of individuals or groups, works written to please a special person or group (such as a flattering biography), striking reminiscences or interesting but unsubstantiated legends (like the story of George Washington and the cherry tree), historical works which are subsidized by interested parties (families, patriotic organizations, or individuals) for the purpose of obtaining favorable notice for their own activities or ideas (like the histories of California written to counteract the unpleasant information about certain early California settlers in the works of George Bancroft) — such sources as these must all be regarded with extreme suspicion. Actually, no document is likely to prove absolutely accurate upon close examination. Human errors creep in almost everywhere. Some documents, however, will be found far more accurate and trustworthy than others.

How much of the story does a given document tell? This question must always be considered in internal evaluation. Every document necessarily is incomplete; that is, the whole story of any event, in all its diversified details and possible ramifications, never is completely recorded. It would be beyond the realm of human possibility, for example, to reconstruct in every detail from documents the full story of even one day in the life of one person. The scholar is interested, however, only in *significant* information — in those data which help him specifically to solve his problem. Thus he is more concerned with those documents which reveal the significant facts accurately and reliably than he is with having every conceivable detail set forth. On the other hand, the scholar should have some idea of how thoroughly the document in question covers the matter at hand. If its information proves barren or vague, the temptation to read into the document things which are not really there may lead him astray. Books have been written and extensive theories propounded about data not contained in a document at all, but merely *suggested* to the imagination of the investigator. While such excursions into fancy may be decidedly interesting, they cannot be classed as true scholarship.

### Dangers in the Use of Documents

Thus far we have been mainly concerned with dangers that lie in the documents themselves — with pitfalls relating to their authenticity, their suitability as evidence, their accuracy, and so on. It may be well to remind ourselves at this point of the two chief dangers to be avoided in the *use* of documents for problem-solving purposes. These are: (1) insufficiency of data, and (2) improper selection of data.

As an example of a conclusion drawn from an insufficient amount of data we may cite any of the several attempts made over a long period of time to prove that someone other than Shakespeare actually wrote the plays attributed to him. The era during which the Bard of Avon lived is shrouded in considerable mystery so far as private lives are concerned. We have just enough information about Shakespeare and his contemporaries to make us wish we had a great deal more. It is known, of course, that a London actor named William Shakespeare came originally from Stratford-on-Avon,



where he received a not very extensive education. Because it seems unreasonable that one with little formal education could become England's greatest literary figure, some scholars believe that Francis Bacon or Christopher Marlowe or some other university-educated person must have written the Shakespearean plays. The evidence adduced, however, is chiefly negative. As one of the most prominent recent editors of Shakespeare points out, in each case "the arguer has constructed a thesis or hypothesis, and has gone out and searched for matter which can be reconciled with that hypothesis. His whole case is thus built up within itself. Such arguments have no controls, and, as Bacon says, the fact that a system of thought is consistent with itself is no proof of the truth of that system. A true hypothesis is one supported by proof independent of the pre-suppositions of that hypothesis."<sup>5</sup>

Similarly, a Shakespearean scholar not many years ago advanced the hypothesis that Shakespeare's plays are not necessarily to be divided into five acts. The playwright himself, he argued, had never clearly intended such divisions, and it would be just as logical to divide them into three acts or four acts, or even to consolidate them into single acts, as to retain the currently accepted five-act division. But in rounding up his evidence this investigator had forgotten one extremely damaging piece of information — damaging, that is, to his hypothesis. Shakespeare's *Henry V* has a prologue at the beginning of each act and thus clearly establishes the playwright's intention of separating that play into five parts. Thus, not only was the evidence in favor of the hypothesis inconclusive, but there was conclusive evidence in existence to confute it.

As any illustration of the second and perhaps more subtle danger (faulty selection of evidence) we may cite the study of Thomas Chatterton made in 1842 by Robert Browning. A poet rather than a scholar, Browning was nevertheless fond of literary detective work, and he did not hesitate to express his ideas and theories, right or wrong, about people and events in literary and political history. In particular, he enjoyed espousing the cause of anyone he considered mistreated by public opinion.

<sup>5</sup> Hardin Craig, *An Interpretation of Shakespeare* (New York: The Dryden Press, 1948), pp. 4-5.

Chatterton, a brilliant young English poet of the mid-eighteenth century, had foisted upon the English reading public a group of ballads which he himself had written in antiquated language, but which he claimed to have discovered among some old manuscripts dating from the Middle Ages. By certain errors of wording and other signs detected only by careful scholars, the hoax had been exposed. After being unmasked, Chatterton had committed suicide at the age of eighteen. His pity and romantic sympathy aroused by the boy's tragic fate, Browning wrote a supposedly scholarly article in which he exaggerated some facts and ignored others, thus drawing the picture of an abused genius who had been driven to suicide by unjust persecution. This picture does not at all agree with the total weight of the evidence available. Browning thus demonstrated one of the commonest scholarly failings — the temptation to plead a special case by closing one's eyes to part of the evidence. Thinking with the heart rather than with the head, however admirable from certain points of view, cannot be called scholarship.

### **Types of Documentary Study**

Since all information about the past comes to us from documents and records, this method of research, as we have said, is the only one likely to prove useful in historical studies. But the documentary method also plays an important part in other academic fields as well.

Every academic field, for instance, has a history that needs to be studied in scholarly detail. Investigations along these lines will include such areas of study as (1) biography, (2) histories of institutions and organizations, (3) sources and influences, (4) editing, (5) the history of ideas, and (6) bibliography.

Biographical research means, as the term implies, determining and presenting truthfully the principal facts about the life, character, and achievements of an important person in one's field of study. The literary scholar will investigate the lives of literary men and women, the student of education will study educators, the scientist will be interested in the lives of other scientists, and so on. All must use the method of documentary research; the facts neces-

sary for a biography cannot be gathered by means of an experiment, a survey, or a case study. When studying the history of an institution (for example, a university) or of an organization (or in some cases, an unorganized group, such as the "metaphysical poets"), the same general method applies as for the study of an individual's life.

The investigation of sources and influences ordinarily entails the attempt to learn how the ideas, writings, and special achievements of a person or group have been influenced by such factors as education, associates and friends, reading, incidents of everyday life, and environment in general. Frequently this sort of thing is done by discovering in a person's written and oral statements or in his conduct clear evidence of such influence. In literature, for instance, a writer may borrow a plot, a character, or a rhyme scheme from some earlier writer. In science, a research man may be led to a new concept by an intentional or unintentional suggestion received from somebody else. We may recall that the theory of the "struggle for existence" was first suggested to Darwin by his reading of Malthus.

Editing the works (or a particular work) of a chosen author to produce a readable modern version or a definitive annotated one, or making available to the world some rare document of interest and significance in one's field—these and similar scholarly activities under the broad classification of editing constitute another beneficial type of documentary study. Sometimes this means only reprinting, as the faculty of the Colorado State Teachers College (now Colorado State College) in 1929 reprinted Henry Barnard's *Normal Schools*, a milestone in the growth of the American educational system, which had appeared in 1851 and had been out of print for a long time. Usually, however, editing consists in much more than simply reprinting. It entails, first of all, establishing the correct text of the item being edited. Among older publications, especially those not protected by copyright, and among works which were copied down by hand (that is to say, manuscripts), variations in the text may abound. Among half a dozen variants, the editor may have to decide whether one is the best and most accurate copy and thus the one from which the text is to be

reprinted, or whether all extant copies were made from one or more earlier copies, now lost, and thus need to be used collectively in order to piece together the original intention of the author. Sometimes works are added to or revised by their original authors, and such changes ought to be accounted for by the conscientious editor. Obvious and probable errors or misprints in the text must be corrected. The author's meaning as well as his words must be ascertained and his allusions explained if they are obscure or unfamiliar. As an example of a typical editorial problem, we may cite the task of reproducing the text of Shakespeare's plays. Many editors have worked on this problem, and no doubt many others will do so in the future. Because of the state in which the surviving copies of Shakespeare's plays have come down to us, it is well-nigh impossible to produce a modern edition of the plays which we can be certain represents them as originally written. The same can be said of many other works in various fields.

Editing may sometimes mean, along with other things, translation. Several years ago there turned up in an Italian castle a long manuscript in a complicated cipher, upon the margin of which some unknown person had inscribed the information that the manuscript was a treatise from the pen of Roger Bacon, that unholy and mysterious English friar who spent so many secret hours in the study of alchemy. The writing, after laborious effort, was finally decoded, though some question remains as to the complete accuracy of the translation. At any rate, here was an instance of documentary research where translation was closely related or preliminary to the job of editing.

Studying the history of ideas ordinarily involves the tracing of major philosophical or scientific propositions from their origins or earliest manifestations through their different stages of development or the tracing of changes in popular thought and attitudes over a given period of time. Such an idea as the theory of biological evolution, for example, may be followed from its origins in Greek philosophy to its present status and influence in modern science. Again, recent scholars have advanced the hypothesis that Western man's characteristic attitudes toward himself and the universe have shifted with some degree of regularity from classicism (which

views the universe as a static mechanism) to romanticism (which views the universe as dynamic and changing) and back again. Other major ideas may be studied in the same historical way.

Finally, the compilation of a bibliography in any field requires documentary research. Bibliographies provide an essential service to scholarship by listing all works having to do with a given subject, thus immensely shortening the time other scholars conducting studies in the same area must take to locate their materials.

It hardly seems necessary here to go further into the numerous uses of the documentary method for projects of research in the various academic fields. Let it suffice to say that in some fields (such as art, geology, history, linguistics, literature, music, philosophy, and political science) this method is employed perhaps more than any other. In other fields (such as biology, chemistry, economics, education, geography, mathematics, physics, psychology, and sociology) it may be employed less frequently but still is highly useful, both in itself and in combination with other methods.

### **The Hypothesis in Documentary Research**

Lest it should be supposed that research through documents and records must be limited largely to fact-finding and that hypotheses are comparatively rare in this area, we may say again that the most significant and useful results of any research lie in the generalizations or principles which are derived from the factual data. Documentary research has produced generalizations, or hypotheses, in abundance.

One or two well-known examples will be enough to make this point clear. If we turn to the research done in American history over the past half-century or so, we shall at once perceive that two hypotheses or interpretations of historical events (telling how and why they occurred) have achieved far greater prominence and influence than any others. One of these, ably advanced by Frederick Jackson Turner, suggests that attitudes and events in America have been shaped largely by the constant presence of the frontier. According to this theory, the free lands and unrestricted life of the West, by permitting escape from the economic and social pressures of the more settled East, have kept American life democratic and individualistic. The other of these hypotheses, that of Charles A.

Beard, interprets the main incidents of American history as being almost entirely the result of economic factors. Even the early colonists, in Beard's belief, were motivated less by the desire for political and religious freedom than by the attraction of greater economic opportunity in the new land. In the same way the American Revolution and other great crises in our history are interpreted in the light of a continuing struggle for economic advantage. Beard's view thus tends to minimize the possible effect of idealism and moral principles in the development of American life and character. While perhaps both hypotheses to some extent oversimplify the fundamental factors in our historical growth, and while they seem in the broad sense to contradict each other, both represent careful generalizations based upon factual data drawn from an analysis of documents, and both have been extremely influential in shaping the thought of other historians.

These illustrations are cited, without critical discussion, simply as instances of the place of the hypothesis in documentary research. With the other examples mentioned in this chapter, they should point up the prevalence of the hypothesis in this type of research and show that use of the documentary technique involves more than mere fact-finding.

### Qualities of the Evidence

Something already has been said about the kind of evidence that is acceptable in scholarship. As in a court of law, the evidence must be relevant, material, and competent. These are the tests we apply to all documents and the data contained in them.

The evidence of a given document can be considered relevant to the problem only if it is demonstrably and unquestionably related and suitable—that is, if it has a real bearing on the problem. If it has no relevancy, it should not be admitted as evidence. Sometimes data may be relevant but still have little or no real weight. In other words, they can easily be dispensed with. Such data are not material and therefore need not (and probably should not) be considered as acceptable evidence. Finally, there remains the question of competence. To be competent as evidence, the document must be proved genuine, and its data must be both ac-

curate and reasonable. Only a competent document is a good witness.

### Summary

Documentary research is a method of testing a hypothesis by locating and analyzing data from documents and records of many kinds. These may range in type from official written or printed records to personal comments, both written and oral, and archaeological and geological remains.

The method is widely used in all fields of investigation, but especially in history, linguistics, literature, philosophy, and related areas. After being located, the documents used must be evaluated both externally and internally to make sure of their genuineness, their applicability to the study, and their acceptability as evidence. In general, only primary sources (if these are available) should be used. The dangers of too little data and of the improper selection of data are particular pitfalls in this kind of research. Before deciding upon final conclusions in the study, the scholar should be convinced beyond any reasonable doubt that his documentary data are completely relevant, material, and competent.



# 12

## EXPERIMENT

Early in the twentieth century a Swiss entomologist named Felix Santschi was engaged in studying the behavior of the common ant. Certain of his observations had led him to the hypothesis that ants probably rely upon the light of the sun in determining directions. This might well explain how a single ant, foraging alone in the wilderness without the guidance of any traveled and marked trail, readily finds its way back to the home nest. (Ants using a pathway already traveled by other ants presumably would be guided by chemical traces left by their predecessors.)

To put this hypothesis to the test, Santschi devised a plan of experiment. He selected a patch of grass in a field not far away from some ant hills. On one side he set up an opaque object to serve as a sun shade; on the other, a tilted mirror. Then he waited quietly for the appearance of a lone ant forager on his way back to the nest. As one of these approached, the investigator carefully placed the opaque shield in a position which would cut off from the ant's vision the direct rays of the sun. Next he moved the tilted mirror so that the sun's rays were reflected by it upon the ant from the direction *away from* the sun itself. So far as the ant was concerned, then, the sun, which had been shining from the west, suddenly began to shine from the east. The ant immediately stopped and, after pausing to get its bearings, turned around and started off in the opposite direction — that is, away from the nest. Apparently the ant had been using the sun as a direction-finder. When the light abruptly shifted from one side to the

other as the result of Santschi's manipulations, the ant seemed to have made up its mind that it was going the wrong way home.

### Elements of the Experiment

Santschi's method of observation illustrates in simple form the basic elements of experimental research. This can be described as a means of testing a hypothesis by setting up artificial or controlled conditions for observation. Instead of drawing his conclusions either from logic or from observation under *natural* conditions, Santschi invented new circumstances under which his theory could be tested quickly and accurately. (As a matter of fact, Santschi produced additional evidence by conducting other experiments besides the one described here. The evidence of the observations made by this one process alone would hardly be conclusive.)

Often experimental research involves the construction and use of mechanical equipment, sometimes of a rather elaborate kind. Modern chemists and physicists, for instance, have been extremely ingenious in designing and constructing apparatus for experimental purposes. But equipment is not in itself the essential element in this type of research. The really important factor is the intelligence of the investigator. He must be able to devise and create conditions which he can keep under control at every stage of the experiment. He must be alert enough to follow the development of the experiment as it proceeds and to understand what is happening; otherwise his observations will not be reliable. Some experiments, like those for testing new methods of teaching in the schools, may be conducted without any special equipment at all. Nevertheless, it should be kept in mind that certain conditions, or *controls*, must always be present in any well-conducted experiment. The nature of these may be discerned by recalling some of the earliest experiments recorded in the history of Western civilization.

**The Experiments of Galileo.** Galileo is frequently called the father of the experimental method. We have already mentioned elsewhere his experiment with falling weights, conducted by dropping cannon balls of different sizes from a height (supposedly the leaning tower of Pisa). Though logic would seem to indicate that the heavier objects ought to reach the ground before the lighter ones,

Galileo's experiment (observation under controlled conditions) demonstrated that objects of the same substance, regardless of their size, fall at identical rates of speed and, if dropped at the same time from equal heights, reach the ground at the same instant.

To demonstrate further what is included in experimental research, we may turn our attention to Galileo's complete investigation of the nature of physical force. Aristotle and his followers, basing their conclusions upon careful observation under natural conditions and upon logical reasoning, had supplied a reasonable and useful definition of force that amply met the needs of early science. According to the physics of Aristotle, force is that which, acting upon any object, causes it to move—which, in other words, produces velocity or motion. When one pushes (or applies force to) any object—say, a table or a chair—the object moves. When one ceases to push it, unless the force of gravity is operating or some other force is applied to keep it moving, the object stops.

By Galileo's day, however, the Aristotelian definition of force had become somewhat less acceptable in that some phenomena had been observed which it could not explain. Galileo and his contemporaries noticed, for example, that the rule did not seem to fit the case of a projectile fired from a cannon. Here all the force is applied at the moment of the explosion and then ceases. Nevertheless, the projectile continues to move in a great parabola over a considerable distance. Here, then, was a situation which apparently contradicted the Aristotelian explanation of what force is and does. Galileo, to resolve the dilemma, set out to find a more universally acceptable hypothesis.

From his experimental observations of objects falling freely, Galileo saw that the motion of a body being drawn to the earth by the attraction or force of gravity is not affected by the weight of the object. Thus force cannot be measured as merely proportional to the weight of the body on which that force acts. This leaves two other logical possibilities, each of which Galileo considered in turn. One of these, the idea that force may be proportional to the distance through which the object being acted upon travels, he rejected on mathematical grounds. The remaining possibility is that force may be proportional to the length of time during which it causes the

object to move. In other words, the greater the force, the longer the time during which it operates to produce motion.

Thus far Galileo had proceeded largely through the use of reason and mathematics, except for the "Tower of Pisa experiment" which had caused him to reject one of his tentative hypotheses. He undertook to test the final tentative hypothesis by experimental means.

For this purpose Galileo constructed a piece of apparatus consisting essentially of an inclined board along which he allowed a metal ball to roll. With this equipment he was able to measure fairly accurately the distances covered by the rolling ball during various units of time (or, to look at it in another way, to measure the time necessary for the ball to travel half the distance, two-thirds of the distance, three-fourths of the distance, and so on) and thus to determine quantitatively the effect of the force exerted by gravity. He came to the conclusion, after these controlled observations, that force must be defined not as that which merely *produces* motion or velocity but as that which *changes* velocity. According to this new definition, an object does not necessarily cease to move when the force causing its motion is removed; it only ceases to change its velocity. This amply accounts for the action of the projectile shot from a cannon. Its velocity as it rushes from the cannon's mouth remains constant (except for the effect of air resistance) until the force of gravity draws it earthward. Galileo's hypothesis changed the whole concept of traditional physical theory and is often called the foundation of modern mechanics.

**Experimental Studies on the Origins of Living Things.** Since observations made under natural conditions proved indecisive in determining whether living things always originate as the offspring of living parents or are sometimes produced by spontaneous generation or other means, controlled experiments were required to settle the question conclusively.

Francesco Redi conducted several interesting experiments during the seventeenth century to determine whether worms and maggots could be spontaneously generated in decaying meat. Suspecting that maggots actually develop from eggs deposited on meat by flies, Redi placed pieces of spoiled meat in a paper-covered container and found that no maggots appeared. When the paper cover was removed and

a thin layer of gauze placed over the top of the container, flies were attracted by the rising odor and laid their eggs upon the gauze. By such demonstrations Redi effectively dispelled the notion that maggots could be produced chemically by the decaying meat itself.

When the microscope came into general use in biology, however, organisms never before visible to the human eye were discovered and studied. Since these Infusoria frequently appeared without any apparent source in previously sterile liquids, they caused a strong revival of the old theory of spontaneous generation (heterogenesis). In 1860 Louis Pasteur attacked this problem, using both experimental and other methods. He considered carefully the hypothesis that germs might exist in the air and be carried by wind currents from place to place. This would account for their being deposited in sterile liquids kept in open containers. To test this hypothesis, he first directed a stream of air under forced pressure through cotton filters, then (to avoid possible impurities in the cotton) through asbestos filters. In both instances germs were deposited upon the filters, strongly pointing to the presence of invisible organisms in the air. Next he examined specimens of air collected in different sections of France — in the congested streets of Paris, in the open fields, on mountain heights, and in his own basement laboratory. The clearer and less dust-laden the air, the fewer germs he found. The evidence, then, showed that minute organisms are present in the air, carried by dust.

But did this really prove the air to be the exclusive source of the Infusoria which developed in the sterile liquids? To pursue this question to a conclusion, Pasteur devised a more elaborate experiment. He boiled liquids until all trace of living matter had been destroyed. In each case, when such liquids were left standing in open containers for a few days, the Infusoria gradually re-appeared. When the same process was repeated, however, but with the liquids being placed in flasks with downward-curving necks, to prevent the dust from settling on the surface of the liquid, no germs developed. Only when dust actually came into contact with the liquids did the organisms appear. By demonstrating that only those liquids into which dust had entered contained the Infusoria, while other liquids of the same kind and handled in the same way *except for this one*

*factor of dust* contained no Infusoria, Pasteur at last laid the ghost of spontaneous generation.

Here is an excellent example — in fact, one of the very best — of scientific analysis under controlled conditions. Pasteur succeeded in planning his experiments carefully enough to isolate and observe each factor which might possibly affect the results. His objective, as we have said, was to identify the real *cause* of the phenomenon under investigation. By discovering causes, the investigator is able to gain control over events or to predict them accurately.

### Methods of Experimental Inquiry

John Stuart Mill, the great English philosopher, analyzed the search for causes in experimental research in order to identify the various means by which it may be achieved. He identified four major principles or methods of procedure, to which a fifth may be added by combining the first two. These constitute the five famous Mill's Canons, or rules of experimental research.<sup>1</sup> They are useful as guides in the design of an experiment, and they serve as general principles which can be applied in the search for causes, but they should not be regarded as rigid rules applicable in all cases.

Mill, in his book on logic, introduces the first two of his canons as follows:

The simplest and most obvious modes of singling out from among the circumstances which precede or follow a phenomenon, those with which it is really connected by an invariable law, are two in number. One is, by comparing together different instances in which the phenomenon occurs. The other is by comparing instances in which the phenomenon does occur, with instances in other respects similar in which it does not. These two methods may be respectively denominated, the Method of Agreement, and the Method of Difference.<sup>2</sup>

**The Method of Agreement.** Mill's *method of agreement* proposes that, if the circumstances leading up to a given event have in every instance only one factor in common, that factor probably is the cause. Or, to express the same idea in the negative, we may say that nothing can be the cause of a phenomenon in the absence of which

<sup>1</sup> See Book III, Chapter 8, of John Stuart Mill, *A System of Logic*.

<sup>2</sup> Mill, *op. cit.* (New York: Harper and Bros., 1873), p. 222.

that phenomenon is found to occur. The principle expressed here has been used effectively in many studies. A few years ago, when an epidemic of a rare disease threatened one of our large eastern cities, investigators, applying Mill's first canon, ascertained that the earliest victims of the disease were all women who had recently purchased a particular kind of cheap fur scarf. When the scarves were discovered to be the one significant common factor in all the cases, they fell under strong suspicion. Upon being carefully examined, they were identified beyond any question as disease-carriers. To be sure, it was not their identification as the common factor so much as the actual finding of disease germs on them which rendered the final proof condemning the scarves. Yet the application of Mill's method of agreement provided the vital clue.

Unfortunately, the various and combining factors in a given set of circumstances are not always so clear-cut and easy to locate as in the instance mentioned above. Perhaps all the victims of a stomach ailment in a country village may draw their water from a common well; yet the water of the well may be pure, and the source of the disease may turn out to be something altogether different. Much of the difficulty in using this canon lies in determining which factors are significant and which are not.

In World War I doctors in the Allied armies were baffled when some wounded men, left lying in the summer sun for two or three days before stretcher-bearers could reach them, recovered from their wounds with no sign of infection. They became well faster, in fact, than others who had received immediate medical attention. The agency of this remarkable circumstance appeared to be the ordinary house fly. Its eggs, deposited in the open wounds, hatched into maggots. Instead of bringing infection, somehow the presence of the maggots promoted healing. Since maggots were present in all the cases reported, such a conclusion, astounding though it seemed, was formed by the application of Mill's method of agreement.

But could this mean that the larvae of the house fly, notorious enemy of human health, ought hereafter to be placed upon open wounds to heal them? For a time some doctors regarded this as a distinct, though shocking, possibility. After some ten years of further investigation, scientists at last were successful in identifying a sub-



stance called trypsin as the real healing agent. This chemical (a digestive enzyme) is secreted by maggots but may be obtained in pure form from other sources. It is now extracted commercially from the pancreas glands of cattle as a by-product of the meat-packing industry. Thus in this instance the true cause had to be separated from an apparent cause.

*rule.* The Method of Difference. The second canon of Mill, which he named the *method of difference*, proposes that, if two or more sets of circumstances are alike in every respect except for one factor and if a given result occurs only when that factor is present, the factor in question probably is the cause of that result. Or, stated negatively, nothing can be the cause of a phenomenon in whose presence the phenomenon fails to occur. Let us say that a group of white rats are fed a special diet from which Vitamin C has been eliminated. Another group of rats are fed a diet which contains ample amounts of the vitamin. We may assume, when we note that the second group of rats grow larger and seem healthier than the first group, that the vitamin in the diet has been responsible. On the other hand, such a conclusion would be justified only if confirmed by a vast number of cases. In this particular instance a factor like the heredity of the two groups or some condition in the environment other than Vitamin C might conceivably affect the results.

Seldom is it possible to find two or more sets of circumstances in which every factor is alike except one. Thus the method of difference can be seen to have distinct limitations. With proper safeguards against error, however, it will prove extremely useful in designing an experiment.

The Joint Method. Perhaps the most generally reliable results in experimental research may be achieved in those investigations in which both the method of agreement and the method of difference are used. Mill called this third canon the *joint method*. According to this principle, if the conditions of the method of agreement are satisfactorily met and the conditions of the method of difference are also met, the identification of the cause should be fairly conclusive. By the joint method we first apply the method of agreement to our testing of the hypothesis (that is, we find the one factor common to all the instances in which the given phenomenon occurs) and

next apply the method of difference (we determine that the phenomenon never occurs when this particular factor is absent). If both methods lead us to the same conclusion, the investigator can feel reasonably certain that he has found the cause. It was the joint method that Pasteur used in his experiments on the origins of the Infusoria.

**The Method of Residues.** Mill also advanced what he referred to as the *method of residues*. This, his fourth canon, recognizes the fact that some problems cannot be solved by the techniques of experiment called for in the first three canons. The method of residues in a sense finds causes by the process of elimination. When the specific factors causing certain parts of a given phenomenon are known, this principle suggests that the remaining parts of the phenomenon must be caused by the remaining factor or factors (that is, by the residue). This might be called, then, a method of last resort, one which we can use when other methods fail.

**The Method of Concomitant Variations.** For still other instances in which the foregoing methods cannot be applied, Mill offered a fifth canon, his *method of concomitant variations*. This teaches, in effect, that when two things consistently change or vary together, either the variations in one are caused by the variations in the other, or both are being affected by some common cause. As an illustration of this principle, Mill cited the influence of the moon's attraction upon the earth's tides. Because we cannot manipulate the moon experimentally, as by removing it from the scene to learn what will happen when it is not present, the method of agreement and the method of difference will be of no value to us here. Using, however, the method of concomitant variations, we compare the variations in the tides with the variations in the moon's position relative to the earth. We observe that all the changes in the position of the moon are followed by corresponding variations in the times and places of the high and low tides throughout the world, with high tides always occurring on that side of the earth nearest the moon and on the side exactly opposite. With such observations before us, we come to the conclusion that (1) the tides affect the motion of the moon, or (2) the motion of the moon, or the changing of the position from which it exerts its attraction, raises the tides, or possibly (3) the

variations in the moon's position and in the tides are caused by some factor common to both. Further consideration of the question makes us reasonably sure that the variations in the moon's position actually do result in the changes of the tides and thus that the moon's influence is what causes the tides in the first place.<sup>3</sup>

### Experiment in the Laboratory

Scientists early discovered that the laboratory provides the ideal atmosphere for experimental research. Not only is it a place isolated from disturbing outside influences; it is also one deliberately designed and equipped for this type of research. If all relevant factors in the experiment are to be kept under control, apparatus must be carefully designed and its effectiveness tested, measurements must be accurately recorded, adequate safety precautions must be taken, and so on. Nevertheless, we should not be misled into equating a roomful of expensive and complicated equipment with successful research. Even with poor materials and makeshift apparatus, an experiment can be a success if the investigator is resourceful, ingenious, and faithful to the principles of experimental procedure outlined above. Students at one small eastern college were able to split the atom and thereby release atomic energy through the use of rather crude equipment made of items rescued from a junk yard. Not laboratory apparatus but the *human mind* is the essential feature of all good experimental research.

No one will deny, however, the advantages of a well-equipped laboratory. For one thing, it makes possible the carrying out of experiments that require unusual equipment or elaborate controls. Sometimes special equipment is so central to an experiment that it could hardly be carried on without that equipment. In trying to discover better methods of teaching pupils to read, educational experimenters devised a motion picture camera which photographs a beam of light focused upon the subject's eye while he is reading a page of print. The motions of the eye itself are thus recorded on film, where they may be studied, and the characteristic eye move-

<sup>3</sup> Mill, *op. cit.*, p. 232. Would the above investigation actually constitute an experiment? No, for we cannot control the conditions but merely observe them. Our conclusions are drawn entirely from a survey of the pertinent facts.

ments of good readers can be compared with those of poor readers. Without such a camera, studying the movements of the eye in reading would be extremely difficult.

The interrelation between the hypothesis and the resource of the laboratory is well illustrated by the classic Michelson-Morley experiment conducted in 1881 in Cleveland, Ohio. This was an attempt by two American physicists, A. M. Michelson and E. W. Morley, to learn whether the immense area of space outside the earth actually consists, as Newtonian physics teaches, of an invisible and motionless mass or "sea" of ether, through which the earth travels. If such an absolute substance or entity does exist, the earth moves through it much as a ship moves through the water mass of the sea. Then, argued Michelson and Morley, it should be possible to measure the earth's velocity through this ether by using the ether itself as a frame of reference, in much the same way that a sailor measures the velocity of a ship through the water (using the water itself as a frame of reference) by throwing overboard the log and line and then measuring the distance which separates the moving ship from the floating log after certain intervals of time. By knowing how much line has been played out within a given period (and allowing for drift and currents), the sailor can calculate the velocity of the ship through the water.

Applying this simple idea, Michelson and Morley devised a way of using a beam of light as their "log and line." The ether stream arising in space as the result of the earth's movement through it (like the effect of the ship's passage through the water) should, they reasoned, have a measurable if slight influence on the velocity of the beam of light used in the experiment. A ray of light projected *in the direction* of the earth's presumed movement through space ought to be slowed down by this flow of ether, like a swimmer moving upstream. A ray of light projected in the *opposite* direction (that is, downstream in relation to the earth's passage through space) ought to move slightly faster than before.

Reasoning along these lines, Michelson and Morley designed what they called an interferometer, an ingenious and surprisingly sensitive instrument which can detect changes in the speed of light. This instrument has mirrors arranged in such a manner that a single beam

of light can be reflected in two different directions at once and thus, in effect, be split into two parts. (Light striking a central mirror is permitted, on the one hand, to proceed straight ahead in its original direction by passing through a thinly silvered section of the mirror and, on the other hand, to be reflected off simultaneously at a right angle. The split beam of light is then reflected by other mirrors back to the central mirror and from there to an eye-piece. The whole apparatus can be rotated at will in order to study the beam of light in all possible relationships to the presumed stream of ether.) After exhaustive tests the two investigators decided, to the amazement of nineteenth-century scientists, that no detectable difference exists in the velocity of light whether it moves *with* or *against* the so-called "ether stream." But theoretically such a difference ought to exist. Thus physicists were left with an embarrassing choice: Either they must abandon the Newtonian theory of ether (which, up to that point, had proved unquestionably useful to scientists), or they must consider incorrect the older Copernican assumption (also useful in many practical ways) that the earth is perpetually in motion. But one fact seemed assured: The earth has no measurable velocity through space. This dilemma finally was resolved by the researches and speculations of Albert Einstein and others, of whom we need say nothing here; at this point we are concerned simply with the laboratory methods of experiment employed by Michelson and Morley to study a complicated problem. Their techniques and equipment, though basically simple in design, were remarkably ingenious and remarkably accurate.

### ✓ Experiments with People

Since, in general, it is neither expedient nor desirable to subject living persons to the discomforts and humiliations of laboratory experiment (though some admirable individuals have submitted voluntarily to experiences as "human guinea pigs"), non-laboratory techniques have had to be devised for the purpose of experimenting with human beings.

Important experiments of this kind have recently been conducted in the United States on a rather extensive scale in the attempt to test possible preventives of poliomyelitis. In the "gamma globulin"

experiment, the first of these tests, public school children (with the consent of their parents) served as the subjects. In dozens of American communities, particularly in some in which there had recently been a high incidence of poliomyelitis, the so-called gamma globulin preparation was administered to as many school children as possible within certain age groups. The object was to compare the number of instances of the disease after use of gamma globulin with the number of instances which occurred in the same communities before it was used. The prevalence of the disease in these communities would also be compared with its prevalence in other communities, where gamma globulin was not used. Finally, a placebo, or ineffective substance, was administered to some of the school children in the experiment (the control group), and these children were to be observed to see whether they became susceptible to the disease and how the results in their case compared with results among those receiving gamma globulin. If the occurrence of poliomyelitis could be shown by these comparisons to be significantly lower wherever the new preparation had been administered, the application of Mill's joint method would clearly suggest that gamma globulin had produced the desired results. If no significant difference in the susceptibility of the different groups were noted, the usefulness of gamma globulin as a preventive of poliomyelitis would not have been proved. Similar tests were made two years later with the Salk vaccine.

Other mass experiments with people have been conducted in recent years by adding fluorine compounds to community supplies of drinking water. Here the purpose has been to determine whether such additions aid in preventing tooth decay. In two communities of about the same size supplied with the same kind of drinking water, the experiment can be conducted with a fair degree of accuracy and objectivity. Fluorine is added to the water supply of one of these communities but not to that of the other community. For some five or six years careful records are then kept in both communities as to the amount of decay found in the teeth of the school children. If there is a noticeable decrease in the amount of tooth decay among children of the community which has used fluorine in its drinking water and not in that of the other community (provided, of course, no other factor affects the operation of the experiment), we may

conclude that the addition of the fluorine has aided in protecting the children's teeth.

Another answer to the difficulties of experimentation with people (besides the answer provided by the non-laboratory technique) has been the use of laboratory animals. Edward L. Thorndike and others have tried by experimental methods to discover how human beings learn, and at one time Thorndike actually formulated so-called "laws of learning" largely on the basis of observations made in experiments with rats in a laboratory.<sup>4</sup> Pavlov in Russia studied the physiology of digestion in dogs and applied his conclusions to human beings (including his famous discoveries about psychological association). Other laboratory animals, such as guinea pigs and monkeys, have become quite common as experimental subjects in the attempt to learn new things not so much about the animals themselves as about people.

Perhaps more generally now, however, we are perfecting the various group methods of experimentation, which provide a way of working experimentally with human beings outside the laboratory. The results of experiments with laboratory animals, it seems clear, may not invariably prove true when applied to people, and the group methods offer the means of studying human subjects more directly, though in numbers rather than individually. The principal group methods are usually classified into three types: (1) the one-group method, (2) the parallel-group or equivalent-group method, and (3) the rotation-group method.

**The One-Group Method.** In the *one-group* experiment a single identifiable factor is added to or subtracted from a group (or, occasionally, an individual), and the resulting change, if any, is measured. For example, a group of students may be given a standard examination in reading. After their scores have been determined, they receive special instruction with remedial reading materials over a period — let us say — of several weeks. Then they are given the same examination a second time, or perhaps a comparable form of it. The scores made on the second examination are compared with those made on the first. If there can be shown to be a noticeable improvement in

<sup>4</sup> See, for example, Edward L. Thorndike, *The Fundamentals of Learning* (New York: Teachers College, Columbia University, 1932).



the reading ability of all or most of the students, it would be justifiable to conclude that the instruction in remedial reading has been of some value and, specifically, that it constitutes the essential factor (assuming that no other important change in materials or methods of instruction took place at the same time) which is responsible for the change in reading ability.

✓ On the surface, this may seem like a simple enough procedure. Actually it is, but it may also be susceptible of grave errors. For instance, in the study just mentioned, extreme care must be exercised in making certain that no other factor (such as the teacher's enthusiasm and desire for good results, or the added hours of instruction, or unusual effort on the part of the students) has affected the result. A new method of teaching can sometimes prove effective simply because the teacher uses it with joy and inspiration. In such a case it often happens that the attitude of the teacher and not the method of instruction accounts for the results obtained. The investigator, however, may be deceived into thinking that the method of instruction deserves all the credit.

✓ At any rate, the one-group experimental method can produce highly satisfactory results if all the factors affecting the experiment can be kept under control. In some of the recent experiments with fluorine in drinking water, it has been found possible to achieve generally sound conclusions merely by comparing the amount of tooth decay observed after the fluorine is added (and after a sufficient length of time has elapsed) with the amount of tooth decay observed in the same group of subjects before the fluorine was added.

✓ Because factors operating in a one-group experiment cannot, however, be kept under control in every instance, the parallel-group and the rotation-group methods may be preferred. These methods have been invented for the purpose of securing greater accuracy of observation.

✓ **The Parallel-Group Method.** In the *parallel-group* or *equivalent-group* experiment two groups of persons are studied simultaneously. These two groups must be as nearly alike as possible — that is, parallel. They must be alike with respect to such characteristics as age level, sex distribution, intelligence level, family backgrounds, previous experience with the materials or subject matter used in the

experiment, and so on. The simplest and surest way of securing two parallel groups ordinarily is to find matching pairs of individuals (one member of the pair in each group) who are essentially alike in every characteristic which might conceivably affect the experiment. Having secured his two separate but parallel groups of "pairs," the investigator applies the experimental factor to only one of the two groups (the experimental group). The experimental factor is not applied to the other group (the control group). After the experimental factor has been applied, the two groups are studied to determine whether any significant change has occurred in the experimental group as compared with the other.

Some years ago experimenters undertook to learn whether typists could produce more and better work when using the new Dvorak typewriter keyboard than when using a standard keyboard. In examining the question, they selected an actual business office in which a large number of typists were employed. They divided the working force of typists into two roughly parallel groups. The first (control) group continued to work as usual on their standard typewriters. The second (experimental) group received machines with the Dvorak keyboard and instructions in how to use them. The object was to compare the work product of the two groups with respect to both quantity and quality. Under the conditions described, it was assumed that no factors of any real significance would affect this product except the experimental factor itself (the Dvorak keyboard). After a short period of training, the girls using the Dvorak typewriters were able to produce considerably more work and to achieve a higher degree of accuracy than the others. (As a matter of fact, however, the knowledge that they were part of an interesting experiment probably stimulated these young ladies to somewhat greater effort than usual in their work.)

In much the same way, this method of experimenting can appropriately be used to test the effectiveness of some new procedure or device in teaching. Two parallel groups of students are chosen. One group (the control group) is taught by the usual methods or devices; the other (the experimental group) by use of the new device or procedure, but by the same teacher. After a reasonable period of time for instruction (it must be exactly the same for both

groups), they may be tested with a standard achievement examination in the subject taught. If the experimental group makes a better average score or shows a noticeably higher degree of improvement than the control group, the conclusion might well be that the new device or procedure has advantages over the older method of teaching. (Again, however, we must recognize the danger of error which may arise out of the teacher's attitude toward the new device. If the teacher is enthusiastic in teaching with the experimental factor but lackadaisical in the use of the older methods, the outcome can probably be regarded as a foregone conclusion.)

But are any two groups of human beings ever really equivalent or parallel? Can identical pairs of individuals be discovered — persons who are alike, for the purposes of the experiment, in every essential detail of character and experience? Probably not. And here lies one of the worst weaknesses of the parallel-group method. Minute and seemingly unessential differences among the individuals of the two groups often have a cumulative effect and result in fairly important differences between the groups themselves. Thus it is necessary, in setting up parallel groups for the experiment, not only to compare and equalize the two groups as pairs of individuals but also to compare them in their general (or average) aspects. If an intelligence test is used in pairing individuals, for instance, the investigator must find pairs who are nearly or exactly equal in their scores and must also make sure that the range of scores and the average score for the two groups are alike. The same sort of comparison must be made with respect to other important characteristics of the two groups. A little thought about this matter will show at once that securing equivalent groups is not only a complicated process but a major difficulty.

Besides the trouble and care involved in securing parallel groups, we face also the necessity of dealing with a large number of human subjects to provide us with reliable data. Ordinarily it is not practicable in one experiment to have groups of more than a few dozen persons. Larger numbers just cannot be handled conveniently. Yet the results obtained with small groups cannot be accepted as reliable until the experiment has been repeated many times. Data from too small a number of cases cannot be trusted. For this reason experi-

ments like those mentioned here must be done over and over again with different groups. Only after observing hundreds or even thousands of human subjects can the experimenter begin to feel sure that his conclusions apply to the population as a whole. What may prove experimentally true of a small group of human beings need not necessarily hold for the general population.

**The Rotation-Group Method.** The *rotation-group* experiment seeks to avoid many of the dangers of both the one-group and the parallel-group procedures. In the rotation-group experiment two or more groups of subjects may be used, and an attempt usually is made to see that the groups are more or less equivalent. Then the experimental factor is applied to each group in turn. Thus each of the groups in the study becomes by turns an experimental group and a control group during the various stages of the investigation.

By the use of this rotating arrangement the investigator may conduct his experiment with several groups rather than with only two, and these groups do not ordinarily need to be equated as carefully as when the parallel-group method is used. Furthermore, it is possible to apply the rotation-group technique to a single group of subjects by introducing the experimental factor to different groups of individuals within the total group at different times. There are many ways of accomplishing this, and it can be done quite easily if the investigator will remember to maintain the conditions which must always be present in a successful experiment.

#### ✓ **Difficulties to Be Avoided**

As in all other kinds of research, there are numerous difficulties and pitfalls in testing a hypothesis through experimentation. Perhaps the most common fault is the natural tendency of the investigator to depend upon the results obtained in a single experiment. If this experiment has been conducted properly and its results are valid, the same results will be reached when the experiment is repeated. Repetition will reveal whether this is the case. If it is not, some error will usually be found in the procedures followed. At least one repetition of the experiment is always necessary as the absolute minimum if we are to place any reliance at all upon the conclusions reached, and frequently it is a good idea to repeat the experiment

several times. Failure to repeat with identical results tends to invalidate any experimental study.

Poor instruments and faulty equipment used in an experiment may cause inaccuracies and thus completely ruin a study. Such things as minute impurities in chemicals or unsuspected individual factors among animal or human subjects may profoundly affect the results. But this kind of difficulty seems fairly obvious to any careful student. Every scholar soon discovers the importance of absolute accuracy and purity in his materials and equipment; if these conditions are impossible of attainment, he makes allowances and provisions to compensate for his experiment's shortcomings in such respects.

Less obvious, perhaps, is the difficulty of identifying *all* the variable factors which may affect the results of an experiment. In any study of human subjects, for instance, the isolation and control of every factor which might have any bearing on changes occurring during the experiment may prove well-nigh impossible. If an experiment conducted with a human subject requires a month's time, in the very nature of events the subject will have grown and changed in certain respects during that month and will no longer be exactly the same person he was when the experiment began. The changes may be minute, but they are nevertheless present in some degree. Besides, it is hardly practicable to keep human subjects under constant surveillance during the entire course of an experiment. A child upon whom some new method of teaching reading is being tried may, unknown to the investigator, get additional instruction in reading from his parents at home; and this factor can distort an assessment of that child's progress in terms of the experiment. Another person who is required to go without sleep for forty-eight hours in order to provide information about the physiological effects of sleeplessness may, unknown even to himself, indulge in occasional cat-naps and thus unconsciously change the conditions of the experiment and invalidate its results. Needless to say, that experiment is most nearly ideal in which every significant factor (or variable) can be identified clearly and controlled completely throughout the course of the study. Sometimes this ideal simply does not prove possible. The experimenter, it should be kept in mind, always tries to control the variables which may conceivably have some effect on the results of the

particular experiment, leaving uncontrolled only those (there are often a great many of them) which would appear to exert little or no influence on the results.

The choice of subjects for study may lead the scholar astray in an experiment. When Thorndike and others observed the behavior of rats under controlled conditions to discover indirectly how people think and learn, they certainly discovered much new information about rats. Whether what they discovered applies to human beings as well as to rats may be a matter for argument. Perhaps it would have been better to study people directly. The degree to which the subjects are representative of a whole group or "population" is another important consideration. In an experiment conducted in a school to determine whether giving milk to children at recess time each day has a desirable effect upon their growth and general health, one would have to make certain that the children selected for participation actually represent the school population as a whole or their own particular age group. If well-fed children from substantial upper-class homes are selected, the milk at recess time probably would have no important effect and, in fact, might merely spoil their appetites for lunch. If, on the other hand, a group of undernourished children from poor homes are chosen for this experiment, the results may be quite favorable, but these results would not necessarily apply to *all* school children or even to the average child. Choice of proper subjects, then, can have a profound bearing upon the success of an experiment, and the whole question must be weighed very carefully before the investigator proceeds with his work.

Especially when dealing with human subjects, the bias of the experimenter may play an unfair part in the results. It has already been pointed out that a teacher trying out some new method or device can make it produce good results merely by enthusiasm, personal interest, or unconscious effort to make it succeed. Bias may also appear in the subjects of an experiment; they may be stimulated by their status as experimental subjects, or they may try harder if they know the purpose of the experiment. To avoid the dangers of bias, every reasonable precaution must be taken. For example, in testing a new medicine, it is customary to give some of the subjects false injections or sugar pills which they believe to contain the medicine. In one experiment involving a new drug intended to cure the

common cold, some subjects who received only sugar pills recovered from their colds quite rapidly — in fact, faster than they might have recovered under normal circumstances. The power of suggestion can be very strong in human beings.

Experimentation with persons also suffers from the effects of unconscious signaling or practice. Frequently these dangers are extremely difficult to detect. Anything in the equipment or in the method which tends to tell the subject (or even hint to him) what hypothesis the investigator is testing, or what the significance of his responses is, may color his responses. Furthermore, after a certain amount of practice in responding to the experimental factor or in taking examinations to measure the results, the subject may learn special skills or develop unusual speed (the “practice effect” so often referred to in research) which may enable him to achieve higher scores or in other ways appear to change or gain something through the application of the experimental factor. Such possibilities must be watched for and guarded against with great care.

Finally, we should mention the dangers inherent in the use of an insufficient number of subjects in a group experiment. If the number of subjects is quite small, the results of the experiment will not be likely to apply to larger sections of the population. The actual number of subjects in any experiment will depend, of course, upon common sense and particular circumstances. There are principles of scientific sampling which will serve as useful guides to the investigator; these are described briefly in Chapter 12. For the moment a word of caution will suffice. No investigator should rely upon results obtained with an experiment performed upon too small a group. One of the classic jokes in scholarship concerns the graduate student who attempted to study the effect of certain diets on white rats. At the end of the study he summarized his discoveries by explaining that one-third of the rats had gained weight on the special diet, another third had died during the study, while the third rat had run away.

### Summary

The experimental method of research is one in which controlled conditions are established for testing the hypothesis. Often this requires a laboratory and special equipment, but experiments can be



devised and performed in which artificial aids of this kind need not be used.

John Stuart Mill analyzed the most important philosophical principles underlying experimental techniques and resolved them into five methods of procedure: (1) the method of agreement, (2) the method of difference, (3) the joint method, (4) the method of residues, and (5) the method of concomitant variations. Mill's five canons deal with experimental techniques in the abstract and are now used chiefly as guides in the planning of experiments.

Since for various reasons it is not always possible or convenient to study human beings in the laboratory, certain methods have been devised for observing them experimentally in groups outside the laboratory. These are classified as the one-group method, the parallel-group method, and the rotation-group method. Though experiments are also undertaken with individual subjects, the need for a large enough sample to yield valid results makes the group methods well adapted for experimental work with people.

Besides the usual dangers of error in research, there are special dangers relating particularly to experimental studies. Every experiment should be repeated several times before its results can be accepted as convincing. Instruments and materials used must be accurate and in good condition. Great care must be exercised in seeking to identify all the factors which might affect the results of the study and in keeping them under constant control. The selection of the animal or human subjects to be observed in an experiment has an important bearing on the results, and the number of subjects should be large enough to serve as a clearly adequate sampling. The bias of the experimenter or of the human subject may spoil an experiment, and unconscious signaling or the "practice effect" sometimes enters the picture.

Thus, while experiment is in many ways the most scientific method of research, it presents (like all other methods) numerous pitfalls. In the last analysis, it is chiefly the intelligence and the ingenuity of the investigator, coupled with an objective attitude and a large amount of care and patience, rather than elaborate equipment or materials, that will guarantee successful results in an experimental study.

# 13

## THE SURVEY

When Caesar Augustus, emperor of Rome, as we are told in the New Testament, issued his epoch-making decree which required every person in the empire to report on a given day to the city or village of his birth and there enroll upon the tax lists, he was actually conducting one of the first major survey studies in the world's history. Facts disclosed by such a survey could obviously prove of considerable practical usefulness, for they not only told the emperor the precise number of people in his domain but also provided the means of assessing and collecting taxes from them.

As in this early census of Caesar Augustus, most surveys involve counting. The data secured in surveys characteristically are *quantitative*.

The survey typically constitutes a way of obtaining exact facts and figures about a current situation (such as, in a census, the number of persons inhabiting a country and their distribution throughout that country). This method (also known variously as the *descriptive study*, the *normative-survey*, or, in some instances, the *status study*) attempts usually to *describe a condition* or to *learn the status* of something and, whenever possible, to draw valid general conclusions from the facts discovered. It should be kept in mind that the survey need not be restricted to fact-finding but may often result in the formulation of important principles of knowledge and the solution of scholarly problems. Nevertheless, the facts established by a careful survey may sometimes be extremely useful in themselves. For example, a school district which makes a child-population study will thereafter have a reasonable basis for planning its future facilities and

hiring new teachers. The survey sometimes has been called that kind of study in which the investigator obtains his data from other people.

**A Modern Instance: The Cancer Survey.** Surveys frequently establish or discover certain relationships between different phenomena which might otherwise not be known. As an instance of this kind of survey, we may turn our attention to a study which is being conducted by the American Cancer Society. Since the survey still is under way at the time of this writing, only the preliminary results can be discussed.

The survey of the American Cancer Society, as reported in the public press, aims to discover whether cigarette smoking is a cause of lung cancer. Medical men for several years have suspected the smoking of cigarettes as a possible cause of this disease, especially because a marked increase in lung cancer has been observed along with a similar increase in smoking. The amount of lung cancer in the United States is said to have increased since 1933 to three times the number of cases observable before that time. Many of the persons who have contracted it (chiefly men over 45) were soldiers in World War I and acquired the smoking habit in the trenches. To determine once and for all whether an actual relationship does exist between cigarette smoking and the incidence of this type of cancer, the American Cancer Society in 1952 instituted a survey of nearly 200,000 American males between the ages of 50 and 70. These men were questioned to learn how many of them smoked cigarettes and the approximate extent of their smoking habits. The death rate of this group was then studied over a period of years, and the causes of death determined, so that mortality rate and medical reasons for death could be learned for non-smokers, moderate smokers, and heavy smokers.

A preliminary report issued in 1954 showed that 187,766 had been interviewed up to that time, and of this total 4,854 had since died. When the death certificates were examined to determine the dates and causes of death, it was found that cigarette smokers in general have a mortality rate 63 per cent higher than do non-smokers (that is, they die much younger). There were among the group studied 82 per cent more deaths from heart disease among smokers and 106 per cent more from various types of cancer. Generally speaking,

these figures suggest that the more one smokes (only cigarette smoking was considered in this investigation), the more likely one is to die of cancer or heart disease and the earlier one is likely to die. The results, of course, cannot yet be considered as final (or could not when this was written), and several other factors in the picture which have not been included in the Cancer Society study may be in need of careful scrutiny.

### **Beginnings of the Social Survey**

The survey method did not really begin to prove its usefulness until it became a weapon for social and economic reform in the late eighteenth and early nineteenth centuries. As everybody knows, the eighteenth century was a period marked by great social upheaval (particularly in England and other manufacturing countries) as the result of changes brought about by the Industrial Revolution. To correct economic injustices and restore a measure of social balance, a great many reformers appeared on the scene. Their suggestions for change often carried a religious or emotional appeal.

A reformer of rather different kind was the English philanthropist, John Howard. Becoming high sheriff of Bedford in 1773, he started immediate efforts to improve conditions at the Bedford jail. His reforms were opposed on the ground that all prisons of the time operated under substantially the same conditions and that changes were not justified at Bedford unless precedents could be found elsewhere.

To ascertain whether a precedent might not exist for better prison management, Howard set out on a journey through much of England in the course of which he visited jails in many counties. At each one he carefully recorded the location, the number and names of the prisoners, the offenses for which they were being held in custody, their terms of imprisonment, the number of jailers provided, the illnesses of the prisoners, their complaints, and other relevant data. In effect, he made a thorough survey of prison conditions in England.

Armed with precise facts and figures, he presented his testimony before a committee of the British House of Commons, where he made a very forceful impression. The committee, accustomed by previous experiences to emotional testimony unsupported by detailed

evidence, received Howard's exact knowledge with much respect. As the direct result of his testimony, two bills were enacted almost at once to reform some of the evils he had pointed out. One provided for the release of all prisoners against whom no "true bill" had been brought. (In the past such prisoners could secure their freedom only by payment of a special fee to the jailer. Now the government assumed responsibility for payment of this fee.) The other act required regular cleaning, whitewashing, and inspection of jails, together with medical care for sick prisoners and various other safeguards for their health and welfare. Thus the survey, while it solved no real problem but only offered accurate and convincingly described facts, proved effective as the basis for corrective action.

Howard next turned his attention to continental Europe. Through various pretexts (like volunteering to contribute alms to the prisoners) he gained admission to prisons in France, Germany, the Netherlands, and other countries. This gave him data for a *comparative survey*—that is, a comparison of the status of prisons on the continent with that of the English prisons. His widely influential book, *The State of Prisons* (to give it a somewhat abbreviated title), was published in 1777, and supplements appeared in 1780 and 1784.

The last five years of his life Howard spent in studying ways of preventing the spread of the plague. To observe how sick people were being treated in European hospitals, he deliberately subjected himself to contagion and thus learned at first hand the true conditions in the lazarettos or (as they were sometimes called) pest-houses of that day. Later he published his *Account of the Principal Lazarettos in Europe* (1789). On a journey to inspect the camp hospitals of Russia he contracted camp fever and died, thus literally giving his life to research.

Howard proved in his remarkable surveys the value of direct field observations, of specific schedules (or planned outlines to guide observation), and of the comparative analysis of conditions in different places.

**A French Reformer.** Frédéric Le Play, a prominent French mining engineer, professor of metallurgy, government official, and (briefly) politician, in addition to these activities developed an intense interest in studying the economic and social condition of working people.

He spent some twenty-five years making detailed observations of life among the poorer classes in most of the countries of Europe and some in Asia, and gave over the final decade or so of his life to an examination of economic and social conditions in France.

Le Play hoped that his investigations might reveal the basic elements which are necessary for proper family and community welfare. To achieve this, he lived with and carefully studied nearly three hundred individual families of the laboring class in France. His favorite procedure was to live anonymously with such families for a time, compensating them for board, room, and the time they devoted to him. He would study especially their sources of income and their habits of handling their finances. Because nobody had undertaken this kind of study before him, he found no ready-made scientific methodology which he could follow. He was forced, therefore, to invent his methods. The distrust of the families he studied had to be allayed. Many decisions had to be made regarding the items to be selected for observation and the ways in which they could best be observed. Seeking always to be completely impersonal and impartial, he inspected family budgets, discussed with members of the family their financial and social activities, and carefully scrutinized the daily account books kept by housewives. After some two decades of study, he published a partial report of his observations in 1885.

The following year Le Play founded an international organization for the study of social economy and thus encouraged participation by others in this area of research. By introducing the technique of observing representative families directly and in detail, he opened an entirely new approach to sociological problems. His chief contributions to scholarly method lie in his use of exhaustively detailed outlines to guide his observations, his development of a technique for personal interviews, his questionnaires, and his laborious checking of account books and other such records as a means of verifying his data. He also made considerable use of the case study, or objective description of the history and status of an individual or group.

While the studies of Le Play did not actually solve any problem, they provided much important information about selected aspects of family life. Le Play thought, however, that he detected a strong relationship between the economic welfare of the family and its

emotional and social success. Modern researchers in sociology still make use of his methods both in fact-finding and in formulating hypotheses.

### Later Sociological Studies

One of the most prominent successors of Le Play in sociological research was Charles Booth, owner and manager of a steamship company in England. Booth originated the comprehensive study of community life when he investigated conditions in the notorious East Side of London.

Previous descriptions of the squalid life in what we should now call the slums had been generally discredited as too dramatic and impressionistic. Booth went about his investigation coldly and dispassionately. His object was to produce a true picture of living conditions among the very poor, and from this picture to show the necessity for economic aid to distressed people. To obtain all the essential data he hired and meticulously trained a staff of young assistants. By renting a room in a district being studied, watching the activities of its inhabitants at all hours of the day and night, acting and even dressing like those whom he desired to observe, and searching out information through long interviews (often lasting eighteen to twenty hours in all) and written records, he was able to bring together an amazing collection of descriptive material.

His reports on the survey, published at intervals between 1889 and 1903, even had elaborately drawn maps indicating the degrees of poverty which he found in the different streets of the area studied. He also tried by statistical tabulations to show "the numerical relation which poverty, misery, and depravity bear to regular earnings and comparative comfort."

Late in life he became concerned about the plight of the aged poor and strongly advocated governmental old-age pensions, as well as other measures to reform the British Poor Law. His greatest achievement, however, was his extreme thoroughness in studying various aspects of a community's life.

B. S. Rowntree aimed at even greater precision than Booth had obtained when he compared the status of laborers in a small town with that of laborers in a large city. His procedure entailed the



careful study of as many facts as possible relating to a proportion of the population selected at random. This method of random sampling, he believed, gave him an accurate cross-section of the group as a whole. He repeated the same survey about a generation later, finding that living standards for both populations had improved, according to his calculations, about 30 per cent.

The beginning of the twentieth century marked a rapid increase in the use of survey techniques, especially for economic and sociological studies. The Experimental Bureau of Municipal Research was organized in New York in 1896, the Russell Sage Foundation for social improvement was established in 1907, and in 1909 the first city-wide survey in the United States was conducted in Pittsburgh by Paul Kellogg. Other city surveys followed (such as that in Springfield, Illinois, in 1914), and the movement reached its peak around 1928, when almost 3,000 general or partial surveys of our cities had been completed. Regional surveys also were sponsored by such organizations as the New York Regional Planning Commission. Surveys relating to crime and law enforcement followed as well — for example, the Missouri Crime Survey (1926), conducted by a group of Missouri lawyers, and the work of the Wickersham Commission on Law Observance and Enforcement (1929), sponsored by the federal government.

### Surveys in Education

The period between World War I and World War II saw a tremendous development in the use of educational surveys. The growing number of graduate students working in education as a field of study in our universities naturally stimulated educational research, and the survey method seems to have been the one which most of these young people preferred or were encouraged to use. Hundreds of doctoral studies were made relating to school administration and organization, and there were many school district surveys. The result of these investigations was not, of course, to solve educational problems but rather to provide previously lacking *descriptions* of our American school system, to pool many divergent ideas, techniques, and bits of information, and thus indirectly to throw light upon existing conditions that needed change and improvement.

Educational research really began in the eighteen-nineties with the pioneering work of J. M. Rice, editor of *Forum* magazine, who believed that children were being forced to spend more time than was necessary upon certain traditional subjects, and who stumped for the introduction of more science and social studies into the curriculum. Between 1895 and 1910 such scholars as Thorndike, Strayer, and Ayres were making detailed surveys of children's progress in the grade schools.

Continuing surveys, as well as educational research in general, have brought about many fundamental changes in our schools. Teaching methods have been improved, school buildings have been redesigned, and school districts (especially in rural areas) have been reorganized into larger units — all as the result of research. Methods of teaching reading skills and of writing children's books have been vastly revised, for instance, because educational scholars took the trouble to count and record the words actually understood and used by children at the various age levels. The growth pattern of children has been scientifically observed and minutely described in studies made by Gesell and his associates at Yale University and by others. These and many similar examples prove the practical usefulness of the survey study.

### Public Opinion Surveys

Within the past few years a very important use for the survey has been discovered in public opinion polls. These are widely employed both as a means of determining public opinion on national and international issues of the day and as a means of conducting market research.

Business firms have learned that profits can be increased and mistakes avoided in the marketing of their products if the reaction of the potential purchaser and his need for the product can be determined in advance. Before a new detergent washing powder was introduced on the market recently, several months were spent in demonstrating its effectiveness in a campaign of door-to-door interviews with housewives. This research revealed, surprisingly enough, that housewives liked the new powder when it was colored blue, but the same powder colored red, green, or purple produced a

negative response. Business firms also seek to analyze the results of their advertising programs through this kind of research.

Market surveys, then, are public opinion polls conducted usually to test the public's reaction to a new product (or one which is being developed), to discover the relative effectiveness of different ways of packaging a product, to identify consumer preferences for various brands or variations in form of similar products, and to analyze the actual or potential market for a given piece of merchandise. This last often includes prediction of the probable sales, determination of the best selling price, analysis of a company's sales policies, measurement of the effectiveness of its advertising, and the like. Large manufacturing companies today maintain bureaus of research that gather data relating to such matters as these, and there exist a considerable number of advertising and consulting firms which make a business of reporting financial and marketing trends, making many types of special tests and surveys, and furnishing advice on marketing problems.

### **Sampling Procedures**

In public opinion surveys, as in other types of surveys as well, the investigator may find it impossible or unfeasible to make direct contact with all the individual sources of his data — that is, to question every single one in the group whose reaction he is attempting to measure. The market researcher investigating the response of housewives to a new product cannot, without spending an excessive amount of time and money, visit every housewife in the whole country. The canvasser seeking to learn how people are planning to cast their votes in the next election cannot interview each voter. It is necessary, therefore, to select with some care those representatives of the total group (or population) from whom the desired information will be obtained.

A sample may be described simply as a part of the larger number, and the process of sampling in a survey means gathering the information from sources which tend to form a cross-section (or representative sampling) of the entire group from which, if time and expense permitted, it would be desirable to obtain data. Probably the easiest method of sampling is to take a list of all the persons who might

supply the required information and then select from it every tenth name or every twentieth name or whatever proportion of the total is desired, this choice depending somewhat on the number of names on the list. Such a process is known as random sampling.

Before the Presidential election of 1936, the *Literary Digest* magazine conducted a poll to determine whether Alfred M. Landon or Franklin D. Roosevelt would be elected President. The method used was random sampling. Ballots for a straw vote were mailed several weeks before the election to persons whose names had been picked at random from telephone directories in all parts of the country. When the returns were tabulated, the *Literary Digest* confidently predicted Landon's election by a substantial majority. But the official election was won by Roosevelt. The amount of error in this poll totaled nearly 22 per cent, and it was apparently caused by the unrepresentative character of the sample. Various explanations may be offered as to why the sample was unrepresentative, but the important fact here is that it failed to give a true picture of public opinion as a whole. At the same time *Fortune* magazine conducted a poll in which the sampling was made by other methods, and its error amounted only to about one per cent.

The sample, then, should be as nearly representative of the whole group as possible. It should also be large enough to have real reliability. If we ask ten architects which magazines they read regularly in an effort to learn which magazines are favored by architects in general, we may secure a representative sampling of the different kinds of architect among our sampling of ten, but clearly the number of individuals questioned, in relation to the whole, is too small for us to place any reliance upon the results.

**Size and Nature of the Sampling.** In general, the larger the sample (in proportion to the complete population which is to be observed), the higher its degree of reliability. This will depend somewhat, however, on the size of the entire group from which data are desired. If the group, or population, does not number more than a few hundred, a sampling of at least 50 per cent might prove necessary for sufficient reliability. If, on the other hand, it numbers well in the thousands, a sampling of as low as 10 per cent or even less may be satisfactory. These estimates, of course, must be regarded as rule-of-

thumb figures. There are statistical means of deciding upon the proper size of the sampling which ought to be used in any given survey. The essential thing for the scholar to recognize is that both size and representativeness of the sampling have an important bearing on the results he obtains.

The simplest procedure in sampling ordinarily is one which gives an equal chance or probability for every individual in the entire group to be selected as part of the sample. This may be accomplished by drawing up a list of all names in the group and then selecting every fifth or tenth or whatever interval yields the number of names necessary to achieve reliability. Or the names may be written on slips of paper and pulled out of a hat. Such procedures are called unrestricted random sampling. All members of the group are equally likely to be selected, but the investigator does not know in advance which ones they will be; he knows only how many he wishes to select. If a scholar were seeking information from the approximately 1,800 colleges and universities in the United States but came to the decision that a sampling of only 500 of them would prove sufficient for his purposes, he might select this number by writing each of the 1,800 names on a card, shuffling the cards, and then taking 500 cards from the deck at random.

To make certain that the sampling is truly representative, on the other hand, the scholar mentioned above might justifiably argue that the sample must contain at least one institution of higher learning from every state in the union and that it should include also the correct proportional number of universities, liberal arts colleges, technical schools, junior colleges, and so forth. For this reason he might find it advantageous to make a selected or judged sampling rather than one which is arrived at purely through a chance distribution.

Before beginning to select his sample, an investigator must have absolutely clear in his own mind the exact nature of the population he wishes to observe or measure. Just what population the scholar has in mind will naturally depend on the problem he has chosen to study. If, for example, he should undertake to learn whether training in methods of research has proved beneficial to teachers in American public high schools, his population would logically be all those high

school teachers in the United States who have received this kind of training. But since making contact by interviews or questionnaires with all individuals in this fairly large population would no doubt be an impossibility for him, and since what he might find to be true about an adequate cross-section of this group could be assumed to hold true for the entire group, his best procedure would be to select a representative and reliable sample for direct study.

The ideal sample is an exact replica of the larger group of which it forms a part. When working with studies that involve human beings, however, it seems never entirely possible to find samples which can be called exact replicas of the population to be observed. People vary too much to permit achievement of this ideal sample. It is considered sufficient, therefore, if the sample can be ascertained to possess in the identical degree as the total group that special trait or characteristic which is under consideration in the study. Thus a sample of the high school teachers mentioned in the previous paragraph would consist of teachers who had received some instruction in methods of research, but these same teachers might vary considerably with respect to other characteristics.

The scholar must watch, to be sure, for secondary traits which might affect the results of the study. With regard to such a matter as old-age pensions, the attitude of young people may be rather different from that of older people, or the attitude of indigent persons from that of persons with savings accounts and insurance policies. To make sure that the opinions and attitudes measured are actually those of the entire population or group studied, it would be essential for the sample to contain the correct proportion of young people, older people, indigent persons, and financially secure persons. This process of dividing a population into constituent parts for the purpose of making the sample truly representative is partly a matter of the investigator's good judgment and is often called *stratification*. The sample, then, would be a stratified sample; and when the sample is made up of random samplings from each part or stratum, the method may be termed stratified-random sampling. Factors often considered in making up a sample for a public opinion poll include such things as age, location of residence (in a wealthy or poor section, in a city or on a farm, etc.), color, sex, religion, national origin, edu-

cation, present citizenship, occupation, socio-economic status, and political affiliation. In many cases the stratified-random type of sample will prove more nearly representative than that selected by the purely random method.

In sampling, the representativeness of the sample must be determined first, then its optimum size. If a sample is unrepresentative, merely increasing the size of it will not necessarily make it a better sample. While we have previously remarked that, in general, the larger the sample is, the more accurate it is likely to be, this principle holds true only if in becoming larger the sample also becomes more nearly representative. The *Literary Digest* poll did not become representative simply because it was large. We may say, however, that the more homogeneous a group is, the smaller will be the sample required.

Statistical calculations can give us an idea of the degree of confidence which can be placed in the accuracy of a sample of a given size and can suggest the degree of sampling error which may be present in a particular case. By and large, however, the accuracy of any sample can only be estimated. The scholar must simply take steps to guarantee in every reasonable way that the sample he selects will be both representative and reliable.

### The Interview

In a survey one of the most common and most effective means of obtaining the necessary data is the personal interview. To an inexperienced person the interview usually seems a rather simple thing. Actually it is far from that. The technique of interviewing amounts to something much more than merely approaching a number of people and asking a few casual questions. The interview for a scholarly study cannot be conducted in the indiscriminate manner of the sidewalk interviews that we hear on the radio.

The first important step in an effective interview is to seek the confidence and cooperation of the respondent. This often requires making a definite appointment or at least winning permission to call upon him. The second step is to prepare in advance a detailed outline or plan of the complete interview. This ought to include a list of specific and carefully worded questions to be asked. Such ques-



tions must always be asked of each respondent in exactly the same way, and reading them from a written list may help the interviewer to fulfill this requirement of the interviewing technique.

Having prepared his plan and made mutually agreeable arrangements for a meeting, the interviewer should always try to be alone with the respondent throughout the interview, since the presence of other persons may influence or interfere with the responses and may make it difficult to keep the respondent's full attention. At the beginning of an interview, the purpose and scope of the study should be fully explained, as well as the type and number of persons who are being approached for information.

Every question must be clearly stated and its full import understood by the respondent. This may require a fairly detailed explanation of what the question means, and the interviewer should be willing to repeat or explain until he feels quite certain that the respondent understands what he is being asked. Clear diction and proper enunciation are, of course, essential here. Above all, the interviewer must exercise patience. If the respondent has difficulty in comprehending a question, it may have to be rephrased. If he hesitates to give personal or confidential information, an effort must be made to reassure him and thus to encourage an answer. The interviewer must be careful at all times to avoid injecting his own bias or viewpoint into the phrasing of a question or even into the intonation of his voice. The good interviewer never creates the impression that he expects a particular answer or that it matters to him what answer is given. He also refrains from asking questions that might embarrass the respondent. (For the Kinsey survey on sex matters this problem was met by providing an atmosphere of great objectivity and by carefully describing the nature and purpose of the study before any questions were presented.) He does not ask the kind of question that implies an accusation ("Why do you attend church so irregularly?") or that in any way puts the respondent on the defensive.

The interviewer succeeds best when he has the ability to meet people easily and to win their confidence, when he demonstrates complete honesty and dependability, and when he has trained himself to be entirely objective. A pleasant and efficient approach to the

respondent will go farther than one which is either timid and overly solemn or blatant and overpowering.

Finally, the interviewer should learn to record accurately and *at the time of the response* the answers given by the respondent. Preferably these answers ought to be recorded in the respondent's very words. Should this not be possible, at least the record should be so definite and unequivocal that no doubts about what it means will occur later. If the interviewer cannot read his notes intelligently at the end of the interview and recall afterward exactly what each response was, he has wasted his time and that of his respondents as well.

One other suggestion may be added. When an interviewer begins his work, he should learn in advance everything he can about the persons he is to interview. If they are housewives, he will not gain their confidence unless he understands the rudiments of household economy. If they are Spanish-speaking families, he ought to know something of their language, their customs, and their ways of making a living. The less like a total stranger the interviewer appears to the respondent, the more easily will he win cooperation in the study.

### The Questionnaire

The written questionnaire may be regarded as a substitute for the personal interview. Because of the relative ease and speed with which it can be distributed by mail over a large geographical area, the questionnaire has definite advantages in survey research. It saves both time and expense. To visit all 1,800 colleges and universities in the United States for information would require months of time and a considerable expenditure of money for travel, but a mailed questionnaire will reach them all within a few days and at relatively little cost. The disadvantages of the questionnaire lie partly in the uncertainty of obtaining replies and partly in the difficulty of extracting personal and confidential information from the respondents.

A questionnaire consists typically of a series of written questions similar to those which an interviewer might ask, but perhaps even more carefully formulated (because the interviewer will not be on hand to explain what each question means). This questionnaire (usually printed or typewritten) is mailed by the investigator to the

persons who comprise his chosen sample. Each questionnaire must be accompanied by a brief letter of transmittal and explanation, requesting the respondent's aid in the study and outlining the purpose and scope of the research. There should also be enclosed a self-addressed, stamped return envelope. The scholar should remember that he is asking the respondent to do him a favor by supplying the information desired, and his manner of making the request should always be courteous and sincere as well as persuasive. Humor is out of place in the covering letter sent with a research questionnaire.

In general, the effective questionnaire will follow these rules:<sup>1</sup>

1. It should be as brief as possible.
2. The information asked for must be otherwise inaccessible to the investigator. (Else why ask someone to take up his time in supplying it?)
3. The subject inquired about must not be a trivial one but must have importance enough to justify the time and effort involved.
4. The questions ought to be aimed at obtaining factual data, rather than opinions, impressions, or estimates.
5. The wording of every item ought to be understandable and familiar, in order to insure the respondent's comprehension of what is being asked.
6. For the same reason, the items should be arranged in a neat and logical order.
7. The questionnaire should be conveniently planned and set up to take a minimum of the respondent's time.
8. Clear instructions must be included as to the way the answers are to be indicated.

All these points are important in the design of a good questionnaire, but special emphasis needs to be placed on the use of clear, simple, and understandable terms. Words which normally have more than one meaning should be defined. Lack of understanding of the terms obviously leads to errors, often very serious ones, in the results of the study. One should seldom use technical words or the special vocabulary of some vocation, even when the persons receiving the questionnaire might reasonably be expected to know these terms. Usually the meaning of any question can be stated very simply.

Questionnaires can be classified under either of two general categories: the open form and the closed form. In the open form, the questions are asked in such a way that the respondent replies in his own words. In setting up this form of questionnaire, the investigator leaves blank spaces or empty lines on which the answers are to be written. The closed form, on the other hand, suggests the possible answers for each question, and the respondent replies merely by checking or circling or underlining the answer with which he agrees. Many closed questionnaires call for only a "yes" or a "no" answer. In such a case, however, one should always provide a third possible answer (such as "uncertain," "undecided," or "?"). Because of the relative ease of answering the items in a closed questionnaire (and also the greater ease of tabulating the results), the preference is for this form wherever possible. A variation of the closed form is the pictorial questionnaire, in which possible answers are indicated by simple sketches. The pictorial questionnaire is helpful in stimulating interest in the questions and in making the questions clearer for people who are not very good readers. The use of pictures is, of course, to be recommended only if the investigator finds that it will serve a special purpose and, even then, only if he possesses artistic ability or can obtain the assistance of a clever artist.

**Sources of Error in Questionnaires.** As an instrument for acquiring correct information, the questionnaire is far more delicate than the inexperienced scholar might suspect. The chief among many sources of error are summarized below:

1. The questioner's bias or desire for answers of a certain type can readily color the questions asked. This may be because the scholar has a strong wish to prove his hypothesis true—a most unhealthy attitude in research. The failure of objectivity invalidates many questionnaires that are currently being used.

2. The bias of the auspices or sponsorship will almost inevitably affect the results. When a group openly committed to a known point of view or a company interested in the sale of a particular product conducts a questionnaire survey to measure the popularity of that point of view or of that product in comparison with competing products, the results can rarely be accepted as completely unbiased. Thus a questionnaire sponsored by an organization (hypothetical)

called the Society for World Citizenship will receive answers (if the study is typical of others of its kind) which are overwhelmingly in favor of "world citizenship," that is, with the known point of view of the group. Respondents, whether out of courtesy or timidity, tend as a rule to answer in the way they think they are expected to answer. Moreover, those who disagree with or are indifferent to the sponsoring group's views are less likely to reply at all, and thus the answers tend to be weighted on the side of those who do agree.

With these words of caution in mind, the scholar should, however, secure an official sponsor for any questionnaire, since questions asked by an unidentified and lone investigator frequently will be ignored. The best sponsor is a scholarly organization, a college or university, or some other reputable group whose disinterestedness is unquestioned.

3. Imperfections of design may cause inaccuracies in the replies. Haphazard arrangement of items, lack of instructions on how to indicate answers, and failure to explain the purpose and scope of the study — these and many similar imperfections can confuse the respondent and make his replies false or meaningless.

4. An unrepresentative sample, as already noted, can destroy the value of any survey study. But with a questionnaire, the problem is heightened further by the probability that not all those who receive the questionnaire will reply to it. Thus, while the sample selected may be accurately representative, it can become grossly unrepresentative if replies are sent back by only a fraction of those from whom they are expected. It is very important, therefore, that every reasonable effort be exerted to encourage responses. A follow-up letter to request the completion and return of unreturned questionnaires frequently helps to increase the number of responses received. Unless the respondents have been promised absolute anonymity, it is usually wise to keep a record of the replies as they come in, so that (after a lapse of three or four weeks, at the very least) those who have not replied may be reached by a follow-up letter or by direct personal contact. The follow-up request should always be direct and straightforward and should stress both the need for the data and the significance of the study. It should never be an appeal for sympathy, nor should it be angry or humorous.

5. Even when factual information is requested, the various re-

spondents will have different ways of interpreting and even of looking at the same events. Thus descriptions of rather simple incidents may vary greatly. If information is desired regarding a labor dispute, very likely the representatives of management and the workers themselves will disagree markedly over the actual facts.

6. Often the same question answered again by the same person after the lapse of even a short period of time will be answered in a slightly different way. These individual variations apparently cannot be avoided, and they demonstrate the common tendency of human beings toward inaccuracy and changing beliefs in spite of the most conscientious effort at accuracy and consistency.

7. A whole host of additional sources of error might be mentioned. Pure carelessness, accidents of circumstance (the way the respondent happens to feel on the day he reads the questionnaire, for instance), ambiguous questions ("Do you favor world citizenship?") which may be understood differently by different people, or even by the same people at different times — these are a few, and the list could be greatly extended. Not the least of the investigator's worries is the possibility that the respondent may answer unthinkingly and in a perfunctory manner, merely to finish the questionnaire and be done with it.

**Reactions Against Questionnaires.** Innumerable questionnaires appear to be cramming the mail bags these days. The United States has been called "a nation of questionnaires." Many are sent for purposes of research, but others are intended primarily for advertising or propaganda. A businessman who receives a questionnaire asking about his preferences in magazines, automobiles, or imported liquors may learn to his discomfiture that a salesman will arrive later to sell him the product for which he has expressed a preference. Or a questionnaire may precede a solicitation for funds. At the very least, answering a questionnaire takes up a good deal of time that often might be spent more profitably. Furthermore, a vast number of questionnaires have been carelessly put together or in other ways represent a waste of time and effort. Finally, people may consider the questionnaire as an unwarranted attempt to meddle in their affairs. Such experiences and reactions have to be taken into account by the scholar.

Some organizations deliberately protect themselves against unwelcome questionnaires by refusing to accept them at all or by answering only those which can meet minimum standards of quality. The scholar who keeps these minimum standards in mind while preparing his questionnaire will have a much better chance of receiving replies. The following check-list will give an idea of the criteria by which the questionnaire may be judged:

1. Is it sponsored by a reputable organization or institution?
2. Is the purpose of the study fully and clearly stated?
3. Does it concern a topic of sufficient importance to justify it?
4. Is it carefully and logically organized?
5. Are the questions clearly and briefly worded?
6. Can the questions be answered briefly?
7. Is the information asked for available elsewhere? (If so, the investigator should have used the published or otherwise accessible sources.)
8. Is the questionnaire in good mechanical form — that is, printed or typewritten and easy to read?
9. Are the demands upon the respondent reasonable ones? (He should not be asked to spend hours of time and effort in running down records.)
10. Is a summary of the results promised?

If the questionnaire falls below the standards indicated in this check-list, one should not be surprised if it goes unanswered.<sup>1</sup>

The respondent should always be given the opportunity of seeing a summary of the study's results if he is interested in it. He may, of course, be directed to the publication in which the results will appear, or he may be promised a summary when the study is finished. When a summary has been promised, it must be sent without fail. Too many young scholars forget this little courtesy. It is also a helpful and courteous gesture, in sending out the questionnaire, to provide two copies, one to be retained in the respondent's files.

**Validating the Questionnaire.** How can one be certain that his questionnaire is a reasonably satisfactory one? If it proves ineffective

<sup>1</sup> This check-list will be found similar to others which have been published by various organizations. See, for example, the rating scale entitled *The Questionnaire*, published by the Research Division of the National Education Association in January, 1930.



in bringing back accurate and reliable data, the time and money spent on it have been wasted.

First of all, the investigator should examine his questionnaire in its preliminary form with all the above suggestions in mind. If, in his opinion, it successfully meets this test, the next step is to try it in personal interviews with a few of the persons who have been chosen to receive it. This can usually be done quite easily. The trial of a questionnaire in this manner will often reveal items which are misunderstood and other faults in the design also.

After discovering how typical respondents understand and react to the various items in his questionnaire, the scholar should now consider the difficulties he may meet in tabulating and interpreting the responses. Ease of tabulation is a desirable attribute in an instrument of this kind, particularly when one is dealing with replies numbering in the hundreds or thousands. A little experience plus an inspection of successful questionnaires used by others will do more than anything else to uncover the pitfalls which must be avoided.

In the final analysis, the validity of a questionnaire depends largely upon judgment. Nevertheless, the conscientious investigator will take every possible precaution to develop as objective an instrument as possible for gathering reliable data.

Collecting information through the use of questionnaires or interviews is far less difficult than interpreting and summarizing what the information means. This fact points up the basic weakness of the survey method. Although the survey, properly conducted, provides an efficient means of learning details about a current situation or problem, the scholar still must arrive, through straight thinking, at generalizations and principles which follow from the facts established. It is not really facts that solve problems, but the conclusions scholars draw from these facts through reflective thought.

### **Fact-Finding vs. Generalizing**

The fact-finding survey, to be sure, has its uses. As we have previously said, it accurately describes a given situation and may bring attention to conditions and needs that might otherwise go unnoticed. But of much greater significance for scholarship is the survey that can identify a relationship of cause and effect between two phe-

nomena or that can produce valid general principles upon which to base future action.

Are comic strips an effective means of transmitting ideas from business and industrial management to adult workers? Many executives have wondered whether such a lowly device as the comic strip might not be offensive to workers as puerile and insulting to their intelligence. But a survey made by the Department of Communications in Education at New York University has shown that comic strips rate very high with readers at practically every age level. Apparently they are being read by four out of five adults (84 per cent of the men and 79 per cent of the women). They are enjoyed not only by those with little schooling but even by those who have a college background, and almost as many professional workers read them as do unskilled laborers. From such discoveries as these, it would seem reasonable to conclude that properly prepared comic strips will find acceptance among most workers and need not be rejected as a vehicle for the transmission of ideas.

Does the presence of tonsils help in resisting poliomyelitis? The School of Public Health at the University of Minnesota made a survey of some 2,500 victims of this disease and learned that patients who still had their tonsils fared markedly better than those who had tonsilectomies. Only one out of every 12 persons in the group who retained their tonsils contracted the bulbar form of polio. Among those whose tonsils had been removed, one out of every three suffered from this dreaded form of the disease, which frequently results in death. The survey, spreading afield into Egypt, Chile, and Japan, where few tonsilectomies are performed on children, ascertained that bulbar polio is extremely rare in those nations. If the facts are correctly interpreted by those making the study, they seem to indicate that the presence of tonsils helps in resisting at least the bulbar form of poliomyelitis.

The survey, then, should not be mistakenly thought of as merely a fact-finding device. It may — and often does — result in important hypotheses or conclusions that solve serious current problems.

The survey is useful also in providing information for comparison studies and in identifying trends. A survey completed fifteen or twenty years ago may be repeated today, and something will be

learned about changes which have taken place in the meantime. If these changes can be shown to occur at a definite rate of speed and in a certain direction, a trend can be identified and future conditions predicted. The Bureau of the Census predicts the future population of different areas by comparing survey figures of the past and present. Thus movements and changes of many kinds can be detected while they are taking place. In a sense, this really entails combining the survey with documentary research; studies of the past become documents which contain criteria to be used in learning in what respects the present and the past may be different. The scholar soon finds, of course, that any classification of research methods into various types is an artificial and arbitrary one and that there need be no hesitancy about using the different methods in combination. The object of all research, after all, is to discover truth by the best means possible.

### Summary

The survey, or descriptive study, is a process for learning pertinent and precise information about an existing situation. In the hands of the scholar, it has been particularly useful as a tool in sociological and educational studies.

Since in dealing with large groups, or "populations," an enumerative study of each single member is rarely feasible or even necessary, the typical survey entails the selection of a sample, or cross-section of the whole, for purposes of direct, minute observation. This sample should be clearly representative of the population to be studied; ideally it is an exact replica of the larger group of which it forms a part. At the same time, the sample must be large enough, in terms of the whole group and of the problem being studied, to yield reliable results.

The principal device for gathering data from other people through the survey method are the interview and the questionnaire. Each of these must be carefully planned, for there are many pitfalls in their use. Besides the errors stemming from faulty sampling, there are seeds of possible error in the construction of the questionnaire itself. The bias of the investigator, the bias of the sponsor, the use of ambiguous language, the failure to explain the full purpose and scope

of the study, and other failures in objectivity and in communication may distort the results.

In general, it is easier to obtain data through the survey method than to draw valid conclusions from the facts discovered. But the survey need not be purely a fact-finding device. It can also provide a means of testing and establishing principles, of comparing the past with the present, of identifying trends, and thus of presenting a sound basis for action.

# 14

## THE LANGUAGE

### OF STATISTICS

Anyone interested in understanding or conducting research must learn something about the language of statistics. In one sense, we may say that statistics provides a way of describing the data which have been gathered in a study. For instance, a person engaged in medical research might wish to measure the weight and height of all boys in the United States at the age of 11. After weighing and measuring thousands of 11-year-old boys, he is able to tell us, by the use of statistical methods and language, the *average* weight and height of American boys of this age. He can also tell us the extent to which some of the boys *deviate* from this average. In other words, he can use the descriptive terms of statistics to tell us what the sample which he has gathered looks like with regard to those characteristics which he has measured.

Statistics, as everybody knows, involves mathematics. Rightly considered, mathematics constitutes a language in the same way that English or French or Latin does. We have a group of symbols whose meaning is agreed upon, and the symbols are organized into a usable system or structure for the purpose of communicating information from one person to another. It has been said that Einstein's theory of relativity cannot be understood or described in words and that familiarity with mathematical symbols and concepts is necessary to grasp it. Thus we can justly speak of statistics as a descriptive language.

Another purpose in the use of statistics is to determine how accurate the data and conclusions of a study appear to be. One of the commonest rules of experience declares that errors occur in almost every type of measurement. In research it may be extremely important to know just how large an error has occurred. How can one discover this? Through the use of statistics. When astronomers talk of the distance between the earth and the sun, they state it as 93,005,000 miles, plus or minus 9,000 miles. This is an example of the calculation of *probable error*. If we could actually travel from the earth to the sun and measure the distance as we go along, the substitution of careful physical measurements for the calculations now used might result in a much smaller margin of error, though some degree of error no doubt would still occur. The statistician would be able to tell us the probable limits of this error by comparing all the physical measurements made of this distance, and then applying statistical formulas.

Statistical methods applied to the data of research, then, help the investigator chiefly to (1) analyze and more accurately describe the data and (2) calculate the relative accuracy of the measurements used. It need hardly be added that the materials to which statistical methods can be applied effectively are usually those of a quantitative nature. For this reason a knowledge of statistics would prove particularly useful in a survey, but the method is important for other types of study as well.

### **The Theory of Probability**

Statistical methods and formulas in general are based upon a fundamental theory. This theory, in turn, hinges upon observation of what we often speak of as the "law of chance." According to this law of chance, if a person should toss a coin enough times, it would come down "heads" half the time and "tails" the other half of the time. We cannot, of course, ascertain in advance whether it will be "heads" or "tails" on any one particular toss, but we can predict with reasonable accuracy the outcome of a sufficiently large number of tosses. Experience and experiment have told us what we can expect in such a situation. Whenever a coin is tossed, provided there is no false manipulation and the law of chance operates freely, we can

feel sure that the chances of "heads" or "tails" are exactly even, or fifty-fifty. To say this in another way, the probability of "heads" is one out of two tries, or  $\frac{1}{2}$ .

Similarly, in a true-false examination which has 100 items, the person whose answers represent pure guesswork has theoretically an even chance of giving just as many right answers as wrong answers. To reduce this statistical advantage and keep the student from achieving a higher score than he deserves by guessing at many answers, the teacher may charge double for wrong answers when scoring the test (Score = Rights minus Wrongs).

In research the theory of probability has numerous and interesting uses. Rhine and his associates at Duke University, for instance, base their belief in extra-sensory perception largely upon the fact that, in some of their experiments, the results do not follow probability (that is, they are not what one would expect if chance alone were involved) and thus cannot be explained as mere chance results.

One of the first minds to explore the theory of probability in any detail was Blaise Pascal. A great mathematician, Pascal reportedly became interested in the subject while discussing gambling odds with a French nobleman, the Chevalier de Méré. The latter enjoyed some notoriety as a gambler. One day he proposed a theoretical problem to Pascal. Suppose (he said) there are two men playing dice. Each wagers a certain amount of money, the victor to be the one who can win three out of five throws. Each man throws the dice twice, and one of the gamblers wins both of these first two throws. At this point the game is interrupted and cannot be finished. Now the question is: How shall the stakes be divided? If the game had been completed, one or the other of the two men would have won all the stakes, but instead a fair division must be decided upon. Obviously the gambler who had already won two throws out of five would have had the better chance of winning the game finally, but just what were his chances, calculated mathematically?

To any mathematician, the solution offers no serious difficulty. Pascal, however, carried the matter much further by studying the nature of probability as a whole. He noted that, except for minor comments on the subject by such men as Aristotle and Kepler and



Galileo, the field remained practically unexplored. For some time he investigated the question of mathematical probability in his correspondence with another great mathematician of his day, Pierre de Fermat, who added some thoughts of his own to the investigation. Pascal recorded many of his conclusions regarding the calculation of probability in his posthumously published *Treatise on the Arithmetical Triangle* (1665). Later scholars pushed the studies further and found many ways of applying the principles he had developed.

### **Applications of the Theory of Probability**

The "laws of chance" or probability, now formalized in the science of statistics, have become extremely important in many phases of modern life. As one example, they provide the foundation for the insurance business as we know it. By analyzing the mortality records to discover the various ages at which people die, the insurance actuary calculates the relative chances of death at the different age levels and thus determines what insurance premiums must be charged. In a similar way other types of risk may be calculated very accurately.

In directing the firing of artillery, the army's battery commander uses the mathematics of statistics to compute the correct settings of the guns and the number of times they must be fired before he can be certain of hitting the target.

The schoolteacher, in grading test papers, makes use of statistics to assist him in classifying the different scores made by the students. He knows that, according to probability, the "average" student will achieve approximately a middle score and that there will be in the usual school class many more of these "average" scores than there are higher and lower ones. Consequently he will mark those papers falling into the most common (average or middle) group with a grade of C (or some other grade that means "average"), those which are noticeably higher with grades of B or A, and those which are distinctly lower with grades of D or F. He constantly keeps in mind something known in statistics as "the normal curve." This concept of a normal curve of distribution derives from the theory that, when a large quantity of examples of any phenomenon (such as the scores in tests) are considered, they will be seen to group themselves

around a certain average or mean and also to distribute themselves more or less evenly in both directions from this central point.

Statistical calculations are more common in everyday life than most of us would suspect, and many of the terms are familiar to everyone. We frequently hear and use such expressions as "in all probability," "on the average," "relatively constant," "very exceptional," and numerous others of a similar nature — all derived from statistical descriptions. In addition, we are now thoroughly accustomed to the everyday uses of statistical statements in relation to such things as automobile accidents, birth and death records, inches of rainfall, estimates of crop yields, miles flown by airplanes, unemployment figures, cost-of-living indexes, and so on. We are less familiar, perhaps, with the fact that such a theory as Darwin's concerning the process of biological evolution depends for its reasonableness upon the application of statistical principles. (This would be true generally of any study in which the relationships of large masses of data are being determined.) Underlying all statistical calculations is one indispensable idea. Simply stated, it is this: *Events may be expected to move in the direction in which it is most probable they will move.* The statistician usually seeks to discover the probabilities connected with any given event under observation.

But the data to which the statistical method may be applied, as we have noted, must be quantitative. That is to say, a fire insurance company may not be able to predict whether a certain house in a certain city will catch fire and burn down during the coming year, but it can tell with surprising accuracy just how many houses in that city will succumb to fire in that period. The company can, in other words, predict the *total* fire loss which is likely to occur. Events which may prove unpredictable for a single individual can be predicted with reasonable assurance for a group. While nobody knows exactly when John Jones, who is 40 years of age, will die, an actuary is able to state almost precisely how many 40-year-olds will die this year, how many next year, and so on. When dealing with an individual case, the statistician can determine from group statistics the probabilities relating to the individual. He thus can tell a 40-year-old what his life-expectancy is — which means merely the average age at which people who are now 40 years of age can be expected to die. This knowledge, we can clearly see, has many practical uses.

### Measures of Central Tendency

While no attempt can be made in this chapter or elsewhere in this book to teach in detail the various methods of statistics (these must be studied with considerable care, ordinarily in a separate college course entirely devoted to the subject), it may prove of some help to describe briefly a few of the more common kinds of statistical calculation and, in a very general way, their applications to research.

In one widely-used type of calculation, the scholar seeks to discover certain *measures of central tendency*. What, for example, is the average age of college presidents in the United States today? What is the average rainfall in New Mexico? What is the distribution of scores received by a group of students who have taken a test in mathematics? These are a few of the many things which the language of statistics might help one describe. If he can arrive at a number, or measurement, which represents the arithmetic *mean* (or average) of all the many items which have been measured (ages of all college presidents, day-to-day measurements of rainfall in New Mexico, the score of each student on the mathematics test, and so on), the statistician can express in a brief and convenient form the central value of a whole array of data.

The mean can be calculated in the following manner. First, measure each item. Then multiply each measurement by the number of times it occurs (its frequency). Add up the total of these figures. Finally, divide this total by the number of items measured. This is the usual way of calculating an arithmetic mean or average from ungrouped data. The method may be expressed mathematically by a formula. If we let the symbol  $M$  stand for the mean,  $\Sigma$  (sigma) for "sum of,"  $X$  for the amount or quantity represented by each measurement, and  $N$  for the total number of measurements, our formula would be as follows:

$$M = \frac{\Sigma X}{N}$$

When measurements or scores are grouped into a regulated series called a "frequency distribution," the formula for calculating the mean may be changed slightly. All the measurements first are grouped into a table containing equal intervals. The frequency ( $f$ )

of the measurements falling within each interval is multiplied by the mid-point of the interval before being divided by  $N$ . Our formula then reads:

$$M = \frac{\Sigma fX}{N}$$

(For more detailed information, consult a textbook on statistics.)

Suppose we are trying to determine the average (or mean) age of American college presidents. First, we determine how many of them fall into each age group (how many are 60 years of age, how many are 61, and so on). We multiply each age (60, 61, etc.) by the number of presidents of that age (the frequency). If there are ten presidents aged 60, our total for that group will be 600. We then add all these totals together and divide the result by the number of college presidents whose ages have been included in the study. The arithmetic mean in this case might prove to be a figure like 58.76 years. This would be the average age — for statistical or theoretical purposes — of American college presidents. Perhaps there would actually be no presidents of exactly that age; they might all be older or younger than the exact figure obtained. Nevertheless, the arithmetic mean still would be a useful and understandable figure.

In a recent study seeking to learn how large the families of college graduates are, it was discovered that, on the average, women who graduated from college in 1928 have produced 1.73 children. Obviously, no such thing exists as .73 of a child. Yet for statistical purposes the number is highly accurate. It gives us a central value which describes the facts under study in a way that helps us to draw certain conclusions and make various comparisons. We might use the figure above to determine whether women graduates of colleges today produce larger families than did those of 25 years ago. (Actually they do. The mean, according to one recent study, is 1.76 children per family.)

Besides the mean, a statistician may wish to determine other measures of central tendency, such as the median or the mode, of any group of measurements. The *median* is a figure which tells us which measurement in the total group is most typical. It means "the



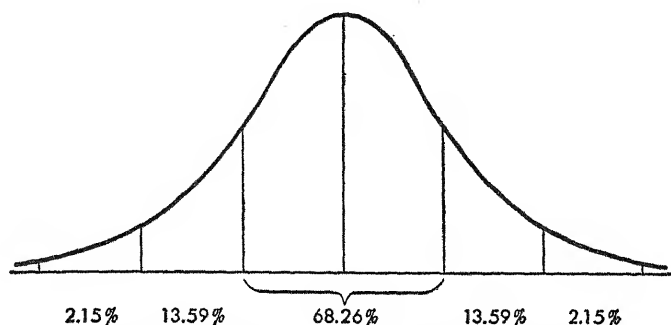
middle number." To determine the median, we arrange all the measurements in order, from the largest to the smallest (usually in a list). We then count from either end until we come to the middle. This middle number is the median. Applying this method of calculation to the ages of college presidents, we might list all the presidents in rank order by age, from the oldest to the youngest. If we have — let us say — 999 names on our list, all arranged according to age, the median will be the age of the person listed as number 500. This would be a whole number like 55 or 56 and would represent the actual age of at least one of the college presidents on the list.

The *mode* simply consists of that category of measurements which has the greatest frequency. That is, it is the measurement or number on the list which occurs the largest number of times. We might find in our study of the ages of college presidents, for instance, that there are more presidents whose age is 59 than there are presidents of any other age. This figure (59) would then be called the mode. In ordinary language, we might refer to it as the *most popular* measurement. In some lists of measurements there may be two modes (we would speak of such a distribution as bimodal) or even more.

### Principles of the Normal Curve

Identifying the mean, median, or mode of any group of measurements can give the scholar useful information — information, that is to say, which describes the data in terms of the central tendencies. A statistician usually is interested not only in the central tendencies of data but also in the way the various measurements are dispersed or distributed in relation to each other. For this purpose he makes use of a device known as the *normal curve*.

In almost any kind of measurement, slight but noticeable differences occur. Two people timing a foot race with stop watches will find that their measurements of the time which elapses during the race do not exactly agree in spite of the most careful attempts to obtain absolute accuracy. In astronomical research the measurements made of the distances between heavenly bodies and of other factors will differ somewhat if made by different astronomers or even by the same astronomer at different times or with different instruments. Mathematicians who noticed these variations in the measure-



The Usual Pattern of the Normal Curve

ments recorded by equally careful astronomers found that, when they were all charted on a graph, they formed a bell-shaped curve. A similar pattern occurred when measurements of other natural phenomena were treated in the same way.

For a long while scientists held the mistaken idea that the bell-shaped figure formed by charting almost any distribution of measurements represented some sort of natural law. They called this figure a normal frequency curve. Later it was ascertained that such a figure is normal chiefly for the distribution of those factors which are controlled entirely by chance. (The combinations which occur when dice are thrown can be charted in just such a pattern.) Thus the bell-shaped figure came to be known as the *normal curve of probability*, or simply as the *normal curve*.

Strictly speaking, the normal curve ought to be regarded as a mathematical ideal. It pictures the theoretical result of all chance distributions. While it tends to describe the ideal distribution rather than the actual distribution of measurements in any given case, a comparison between the actual and the ideal often reveals important information. When one is considering the possible effects of chance factors in a survey or some other type of scholarly study, for instance, the usefulness of the normal curve as a standard of comparison cannot be overemphasized. Not only can the investigator compare the distribution of the measurements he takes with a theoretically perfect distribution, but the probable amount of the error present in his measurements can be accurately calculated.

### Measures of Dispersion or Variability

In addition to the identification in statistical terms of the central tendencies of a group of quantitative data, it may be valuable to discover also the significant facts about the ways in which the various measures are distributed or the ways in which they differ. For example, what is the *range* of our measurements, from the lowest one to the highest? In the investigation cited of the ages of American college presidents, the range would be stated as a figure giving both the lowest age and the highest age of the group studied (32-81, for instance). The range can be small or large, depending on the nature of the data gathered, and this fact might affect the conclusions reached in the study. In comparing ages of college presidents today with ages of college presidents of half a century ago, it might prove possible *by comparing the ranges* to show that more young men are being chosen for college presidencies today (or *vice versa*), even though the average or mean might be very nearly the same for both groups. (This example is purely suppositious.)

The range, however, constitutes only a crude statement of measurement, since it merely tells us the limits below or above which our measurements do not extend. Of greater usefulness in research is a calculation called the *standard deviation*.

Here again we have a measurement of dispersion which is a kind of ideal invented by the mathematician. In the theoretically perfect distribution which we find in the normal curve, statisticians have identified as most nearly average or typical that group of measurements lying within a certain distance (one standard deviation) from the mean, or center of the curve. These measurements are the ones which fall in the area immediately to the right or left of the center line (see the diagram of the normal curve, page 207). The area of the standard deviation constitutes 68.26 per cent of the total area of the normal curve, or 34.13 per cent of the area on each side of the center. Thus, when we speak of one measurement in a certain distribution as being within one standard deviation of the mean, we indicate thereby that it belongs to the group of measurements which are most nearly typical or average for the population being measured.

Those within the second standard deviation are farther from the



mean and are therefore less typical. A measurement, for instance, that falls outside the area of one standard deviation but still within 47.72 per cent of the area directly adjacent to the mean on either side is said to be within two standard deviations.

Measurements in the third standard deviation are those lying farthest from the mean in either direction. The area designating the third standard deviation consists of 2.15 per cent of the total area of the curve on each side of the center line. It is that area which lies at the extremities of the curve, nearest the open ends. In any distribution of measurements the average group would theoretically comprise 68.26 per cent of all the measurements recorded. (We are speaking now of a theoretically perfect or ideal distribution.) Another 27.18 per cent of the measurements would be considered as either just above or just below average. The 4.30 per cent farthest from the mean would be regarded as exceptionally high or low.

A schoolteacher grading tests would probably assign marks of C to all students achieving scores within one standard deviation of the mean. Those who scored in the second standard deviation above the mean might receive the grade of B, and those in the second standard deviation below the mean, the grade of D. Finally, those excellent students achieving grades in the third standard deviation above the mean might be given the grade of A, while those falling the corresponding distance on the opposite side of the normal curve would no doubt be counted as deserving an F. This is not to say, however, that such a distribution is necessarily the one to follow in grading. In the first place, if grades on a classroom test fell into the exact pattern of the normal curve, such a result could obviously occur only as pure chance and would probably indicate weaknesses in the test itself. In the second place, teachers who try to grade "according to the curve" usually assign the grade of A (or its equivalent) to approximately 7 per cent of the class, B to 14 or 15 per cent, C to about 56 per cent, and D and F in the same proportions as B and A, respectively. It must be recognized that this method of grading, though based on statistical ideas, in some respects remains an arbitrary one.

In research the calculation of the standard deviation can prove useful in a number of ways. In a survey the investigator may compile data from several different samples of the population he is

questioning or examining. After calculating the mean score for each group, he charts these mean scores in a curve of distribution to determine how large the differences are among them. Comparing his curve of distribution with a normal curve will tell him the probable amount of error in his figures; in other words, it will tell him approximately how close he is to the correct mean score for the entire population represented by his various samples. This comparison will indicate how much reliance can be placed on the accuracy of the data gathered. When used in this way, the standard deviation is known as the *standard error*.

A simple method of determining the probable amount of an error in calculating a mean score from several samples would be to examine the range of the different mean scores from the different samples and to divide this range in half. But this method depends partly on the investigator's judgment (under certain circumstances) and is a rather crude measurement at best. The *probable error* simply means a limit within which the true measurement is likely to fall. When we say that the sun is 93,005,000 miles from the earth, with a probable error in that measurement of 9,000 miles more or less, we mean that our measurement of this distance is not likely to be wrong by more than about 9,000 miles. Statistically speaking, the chances that this measurement may be wrong are regarded as 50-50, or about equal to the chance of its being right. We should always keep in mind, however, that this figure is arrived at through estimates and that there still remains the possibility that the estimated probable error could be wrong. The laws of probability, on the other hand, give us a certain degree of confidence in the figure as stated above.

Calculations of the standard deviation may help us to determine the relative *significance* of certain types of data. We might ask: "Is there any significant difference between the efficiency of teachers trained at a teachers college and that of teachers trained at a liberal arts college?" The answer to such a question would clearly hinge upon just what we mean by the term *significant*. How large a difference between the two groups would we have to find before we could call it an important one—that is, important enough to result in any justifiable conclusion? To ask the same question in another way, with how much confidence could we predict, after making a

thorough survey, the superiority of one of these two methods of training teachers over the other (if any)?

Suppose we ask the same kind of question with regard to a simpler and more clear-cut matter. Let us say that we wish to learn in advance whether the Democratic or the Republican candidate will win the governorship of a certain state in the next election. To seek the answer we poll a representative group of several thousand voters. Assume that the sampling of the voters' preference thus obtained favors one of the candidates by a ratio of 55 per cent of the sampling to 45 per cent. How sure can we be that this difference did not occur merely by chance, by the fact that in our survey we merely happened to interview more voters from one party than from the other? Is the difference of great enough significance to predict with any degree of confidence the real outcome of the election? To determine this by statistical methods, one would have to calculate the standard deviation which would be theoretically normal for the sampled group and then compare it with the amount of preference expressed by the voters in the sample. (In this case, the preference would amount to 5 per cent, which is the difference between 55 per cent and an even split of the votes.) If the amount of preference indicated by our sample falls outside the area of one standard deviation, we can rely upon it as having a certain amount of significance, the exact degree of significance depending on how it compares with a theoretical difference which might occur entirely by chance.

In science the same or a very similar technique is often used in learning whether a given result in a test or experiment has been caused by chance or by the factor being tested. While trying out or experimenting with a proposed remedy for some disease, the medical researcher must always consider the possibility that the cures he observes may have been effected by some random factor other than the drug or treatment he has administered. This assumption is frequently referred to as the null hypothesis—that is, the supposition that chance rather than an identifiable cause has produced the results observed. In order to be reasonably certain that chance as a causative factor has been eliminated from the study, the investigator applies his knowledge of statistics and makes a *test of significance*; in other words, he examines his data mathematically and seeks

to determine whether they fall into a pattern very much different from that which would result merely from chance.

Since in this book no attempt is being made to offer instruction in the mathematical calculations required by statistical treatment, the reader is referred to the standard textbooks on statistics for further information about probable error, standard error, significance of differences, level of confidence, and other terms used in statistical work.<sup>1</sup> He should become familiar through the same sources with at least the simpler mathematical processes which are involved in calculations made for the purposes described above.

### **Correlation**

The investigator often wishes to learn how much relationship one factor has to another in a given study. Students in the field of education have examined the relationship between IQ scores and the marks received in school subjects. A business firm, hoping to improve its procedures, might seek to discover whether there is any relationship — and how much, precisely — between the length of a salesman's visit with a client and the size of the order the salesman is able to obtain from that client. A public opinion analyst may be interested in the connection (if any) between a man's occupation and his political preferences. The relationship between the number of years of formal education which a person has had and the annual income which he is able to earn has been calculated many times in different studies.

How can a nutritionist make sure that a particular element in the diet actually produces good or bad results in health or growth? One favorite method used in determining such a question has been to experiment with litters of white rats. One litter of rats will be fed a diet which does not contain any of the element under study. Another litter will receive substantially the same diet, except that the extra element (a vitamin, for instance) will be added. By comparing very carefully the rate of growth, condition of the fur and teeth, and similar physiological characteristics of the two litters of rats after a sufficient period of time (or, more usually, by means of a day-to-day comparison), the effectiveness of the dietary element under consideration can be more or less measured. A useful measurement

<sup>1</sup> See Bibliography, pages 295 ff., for some relevant titles.

of its effectiveness can then be expressed in terms of the amount of correlation which has been found to exist between the presence or absence of this factor in the rats' diet and the pattern of growth and of general health which results. If the ratio of correlation turns out to be fairly large, one can predict with some degree of significance (or with a certain level of confidence) that the addition of this element to the diet of rats (and thus of human beings as well!) will always have the same or similar results.

Amount or degree of relationship is commonly expressed as a *coefficient of correlation*. If no correlation exists between the things which are being compared, this coefficient is said to be zero. From this neutral point, the ratio may vary in either a positive or a negative direction. It may go as high as plus one (+1.0) in a positive direction, which means that when one factor is present the other is also present in every case. On the other hand, it may go as low as minus one (-1.0), which means exactly the opposite: that when one factor is present the other is always absent. A positive correlation of .30 or higher ordinarily may be considered sufficient evidence of a positive degree of relationship, though sometimes this may be partly a matter of judgment. In fact, before one decides whether a strong or weak relationship exists between two factors, it is necessary to calculate the amount of error present in the figures used.

In establishing any measure of correlation, care must be taken to ascertain beyond any reasonable doubt that the two or more factors compared really have some relationship to each other. A high correlation between economic prosperity and the brevity of women's skirts, which one researcher discovered, hardly proves that the latter causes the former or that they are necessarily related other than by pure coincidence. Furthermore, a positive relationship between two factors may continue only up to a certain point. If one were to measure the annual rainfall in Iowa and compare it with the amount of corn grown each year in that state, a certain degree of relationship no doubt would be discerned. In general we should probably find that the greater the rainfall, the larger the corn crop. Yet an unusually heavy rainfall in any one year might conceivably ruin much of the corn being grown in that year by flooding the farmlands. Such dangers must be foreseen and avoided in searching for correlations and drawing conclusions about causal relationships.

In dealing with statistical calculations, we should keep in mind at all times that the figures represent only approximations and probabilities. Although statistical measures may appear exact, they seldom are. The belief that "figures never lie" can deceive one into accepting statistical "proofs" which plain common sense will tell him are not true. The scholar must always be on his guard against this tendency. The language of statistics has many excellent uses in research, especially in helping to determine how accurate certain types of quantitative data seem to be, but it is always a means to an end rather than the end itself.

### Summary

No attempt has been made in this chapter to describe statistical processes in detail. This function must be left to the many textbooks available on the subject. What has been attempted is a brief discussion of statistics as a language which may be used in describing certain types of data and in applying the theory of probability to the data which have been collected in order to determine how accurate and complete they appear to be. In addition, ways of arranging data into understandable patterns are discussed, including measures of central tendency (mean, median, mode) and measures of dispersion (standard deviation, probable error, the normal curve, and so on).

Besides measuring and describing the quantitative data of research, statistics can also be used to reveal their significance. Correlation, for example, concerns the use of statistical methods to determine relationships between factors which are being studied.

The scholar is reminded that the data to which statistical methods may be effectively and confidently applied are quantitative. He is also warned against mistaking the figures arrived at in statistical calculations for exact measures. They constitute, rather, approximations and estimates. The language of statistics can easily mislead the unwary, and this fact suggests the advisability of acquiring a thorough knowledge of statistical methods before attempting to make use of them in research. Anyone in education, psychology, sociology, economics, and the natural sciences can benefit by the study of statistics and can find it an irreplaceable tool in research.

# 15

## STATISTICAL REASONING

In the preceding chapter statistical computation has been discussed mainly as a device for *describing* the data gathered in a research project. Without going into the details of mathematical formulas and calculations, which can best be learned by taking a thorough course in statistical mathematics, the chapter deals with various ways in which these may be used by the investigator to arrive at helpful measures of central tendency (mean, median, and mode), measures of dispersion (range, standard deviation), and measures of relationship (correlation) for the data. Calculations made solely or chiefly for the purpose of clarifying the nature and meaning of quantitative data are commonly referred to as *descriptive statistics*.

Another and even more valuable function of statistics in research is that of drawing general inferences from data in order to form reliable generalizations and to test the validity of such generalizations. It will be recalled that a few of the materials presented in the previous chapter deal briefly with the use of this type of statistical computation.

### **Descriptive and Inferential Statistics**

Most people tend to think of statistics merely as record-keeping, as the laborious collection of multitudinous facts and figures. In baseball, exhaustive records have been kept for years of the many details of performance not only of the major professional teams but of all the individual players on these teams as well. Such records



are spoken of as "baseball statistics." The data recorded have meaning for students of the game, it will be noted, only when analyzed, classified, compared, and interpreted. When was the first game of professional baseball played? Which batter has hit the largest number of home runs in one season? What is the greatest number of strike-outs ever made in one game? Information of this kind helps in putting together a picture of those aspects of baseball about which human beings are curious.

"Vital statistics" are the records of all births and deaths in a given country or state or other geographical or political unit over a given period of time. "Actuarial statistics" provide an analysis of these data and reveal such things as the rate of death occurring each year at every age level and from every known cause. By knowing the precise details of past experience in this matter, actuaries can estimate the life expectancy for each age group and sex and thus determine, using the theory of probability, the correct amount of the annual premium that a person of any age must pay in purchasing a life insurance policy.

When the term *statistics* itself was coined in the eighteenth century, it was applied principally to methods of securing and analyzing state or government records. The need for complete and accurate knowledge of the facts in all departments of government became urgent as nations grew in size and population and as modern society rapidly turned more complex. Actions taken upon the basis of casual impressions or personal feelings rather than through careful accounting procedures and statistical analysis were proving increasingly precarious in their outcomes. Thus the art of "stat-istics" developed into a vital tool of public administration and supplied the background for necessary legislation.

Ordinary counting and recording in themselves have essential uses. They can provide information applicable in deciding upon the number of classrooms needed in a school system, calculating the tax rates, or verifying the date and place of an individual's birth. Yet the mathematical steps taken to achieve such purposes remain, as anyone can see, relatively uncomplicated; they serve in the main merely to establish certain facts and to put them to immediate practical

use. On the other hand, when the statistical method is made to do more than describe the data, when it thoroughly searches the facts for broad meanings that can be applied in dealing with other situations of the same kind or in making sound predictions, the resulting scientific *generalizations* can be of the utmost value to mankind's progress.

Indeed, it may be said that the use of statistical devices to derive scientific generalizations from the data (basically an inductive method of logic, or reasoning from the particular to the general) is today the most important purpose of statistics. The present need for statistics (and for the graduate student to study the subject) arises, then, out of the chief business of research, that of establishing scientific laws or principles. Statistical computation makes it possible for an investigator working with items or measurements observed in a single study involving only a small number of cases — a sampling — to generalize or estimate what is true for all cases. The advantages of such a power are obvious. Once acceptable generalizations have been reached regarding any condition or phenomenon, they can be applied in other cases of the same or a similar nature and may serve to predict facts or events previously unknowable. By understanding through the careful measurement of many individuals of different ages the normal growth pattern among children, for example, it is possible to predict with a fair amount of accuracy which individuals among a group of boys and girls will grow up to be tall, average, or short, and even what the approximate heights will be in feet and inches.

Once a scientific generalization (i.e., theory, hypothesis, law, or principle) has been established by examination of a sufficient quantity of data, new doors to knowledge and action suddenly open. Instead of being able to state what is true for only the event or group studied, the investigator may now confidently predict what will be found true for events or groups not yet studied. As soon as educators discovered that children who achieved high scores in tests of mental ability were earning higher grades in school than children with lower IQ ratings, it became possible to determine in advance the quality of performance that may be expected of a child in school.

Over-achievers and under-achievers could now be identified. This is really saying that what will happen or be found true in the future can be anticipated in the majority of cases from what has happened or been found true in the cases actually investigated. Statistically speaking, reliance is placed on the *probability* of a positive relationship between level of intelligence as measured by available tests and school grades, since a definite correlation has been established through past research between these two factors. Where high intelligence exists, high grades are likely to be achieved by the student.

### Theory of Sampling

The aim of inferential statistics, briefly stated, is to draw general conclusions that are as accurate as possible from a particular set of measurements. By securing data regarding their smoking habits from 188,000 American men between the ages of 50 and 69 and then discovering and tallying the various causes of death as members of the group died, the American Cancer Society has produced impressive correlations that tend to support strongly the generalization that cigarette smoking causes both cancer and heart disease. The investigators learned through statistical analysis that heavy smokers in the group generally died earlier and exhibited a far larger incidence of cancer and heart disease than light smokers, while non-smokers tended to live longer than either light or heavy smokers, with significantly fewer cases of the two diseases. (More than twice as many deaths occurred from heart attacks among heavy smokers of cigarettes as among non-smokers, according to the first figures revealed in the study.)

Obviously the 188,000 men included in the group studied represent only a *sample* or *sampling* of all American men in their age group. The total of all men between the designated ages would be known statistically as the *population* studied. If true generalizations are to be realized, the sample must be, of course, typical and representative of the population from which it is drawn. That is to say, the characteristics of the sample must be in all essentials those of the population it represents. In the American Cancer Society study, as in any other study, the conclusions would be invalidated if it were found that the

sample selected was not really representative—that the 188,000 men in the study were in important respects different from typical men in their age group.

Generally speaking, the only fair way of selecting a representative sample from any population being investigated is to make a *random selection*. To be sure, if the population under investigation is rather small (say, two or three hundred in all), there would be little point in selecting a sample; the entire population could be studied as a unit. When, however, as is more commonly the case in research, a population is large and unwieldy, practical difficulties intervene, so that sampling is justified. Random sampling requires that each individual or item in the population to be studied must have an equal chance to be selected and that this chance must not be influenced by the selection of any others. A simple illustration of random sampling is the device of putting slips of paper with different names written on them into a hat and then drawing out a certain percentage of the slips at random. A similar device would be that of selecting every tenth name or item from a long list arranged in no special order.

There are occasional technical problems in sampling which are too intricate to explain in an introductory book of this nature but which can be solved, at least in part, by the application of statistical methods. One of these is the question of exactly how large a sample must be before it can be accepted as representative. A rule of thumb here is that a relatively small population demands a proportionately larger sample, whereas for a large population a 10 per cent sample or even a smaller one may be sufficient. If (to take a simple example) two procedures for teaching reading are being compared, Method A will not necessarily be proved superior because it works better than Method B in a single trial. Clearly, if it works better than Method B on the second trial, reliance in its probable superiority will be increased. A third trial with similar results will further strengthen confidence in Method A. But suppose that the results of a fourth trial are inconclusive and that the fifth trial shows Method B to be superior. Such variations in the results might be caused by one or more of a number of circumstances or factors. They could be, for

instance, mere chance variations, but they could also be caused by uncontrolled factors in the study. On the other hand, they might show that neither method is superior to the other.

Some inferences might be drawn from the degree or amount of superiority exhibited by one of the methods over the other. More confidence would be logically possible if Method A in the first three trials proved markedly superior and if Method B proved only slightly superior in the fifth trial. However, if the degree of superiority in all five trials remained low, it would be logical to reason that the variations were perhaps due purely to chance. In any case, the use of statistical computations makes it possible to decide whether it is safe to accept a conclusion from the data already gathered or whether additional trials comparing the two methods of teaching are still needed in order to secure more conclusive data.

### **Stability of Samples**

As can readily be seen, the problem in drawing any reliable inference from a sampling lies in determining the probable extent to which the descriptive data discovered to be true for the sample actually fit the total population being studied. While it is never possible to be absolutely sure about this without going to the trouble of securing measurements for the entire population, satisfactory estimates can be reached by computing the standard error. As mentioned in the preceding chapter, this process usually consists in recording the amount of variation or fluctuation in the measurements provided by the sample, or in the averages or means of different samples, and mathematically computing the standard deviation from the mean. The amount of the standard deviation in the distribution of the measurements divided by the square root of the number of items measured becomes the standard error of the statistic. In any series of measurements it is theoretically probable that the computed average can be accepted as a reasonably correct estimate if the standard error indicates a degree of deviation different from that attributable to chance.

At best, studies of one or more samples can provide the investigator only with an *estimate* of what is true for a population. If proper

care has been exercised in making every sample sufficiently representative and large enough in size, and if measurements have been accurately made, the estimate should be fairly close. Modern statistics provides a mathematical tool for calculating how nearly correct the estimate is by indicating, within certain limits, the probable size of the error. Thus the degree of confidence to be placed in the estimate can be mathematically stated.

Expressing confidence in an estimate or in the applicability of data derived from samples to a total population really amounts only to computing the *probability* of its being correct and accurate. The statistician expresses his degree or level of confidence in terms of the odds. He will ordinarily accept an estimate if the odds against its having been caused by pure chance are approximately 20 to 1 (the so-called 5 per cent level) or 99 to 1 (the 1 per cent level), though the decision as to which odds he will consider as almost wholly ruling out chance is an arbitrary one.

### Testing the Hypothesis

A favorite method of the scientist in testing a conclusion or hypothesis based upon quantitative data is the *null hypothesis* referred to earlier. This approach in analytical statistics entails, first, the statement of a tentative hypothesis explaining the data. In his experiments with what he has called extra-sensory perception at Duke University, Rhine placed two people in separate rooms and had one of them turn up cards from a stack piled on the table before him. As each card was turned face up, a buzzer was sounded in the next room as a signal for the second person in the experiment to name the card selected. Rhine hypothesized that a person successful in telling which card had been turned up would be able to do so only by relying upon extra-sensory perception, since all other avenues of contact had been blocked.

But such a hypothesis needs to be tested statistically because of the possibility that correct identification of a card under the circumstances described above could conceivably occur by chance. At this point the null hypothesis is adopted. That is, the investigator now assumes, as an alternative hypothesis, that chance rather than extra-

sensory perception has been operating to produce the results observed. Through statistical computation he can determine precisely the odds involved in guessing any given number of cards correctly. If the actual results fit the pattern of probability computed on the basis of chance, the tentative research hypothesis must be rejected. If the opposite is true — that is, if the results obtained in the experiment markedly differ from those that would be obtained by chance — the original hypothesis attributing the results to extra-sensory perception would be supported.

R. A. Fisher gives an excellent and entertaining example of how a hypothesis may be tested through the application of the statistical method.<sup>1</sup> He tells of a lady who has asserted that, by tasting a cup of tea mixed with milk, she can correctly determine whether the milk or the tea was poured into the cup first. At least three different hypotheses are suggested by her assertion:

1. She has the ability claimed. In this event, she is always able to discriminate; and even one error would invalidate the hypothesis, while hundreds or thousands of successes would not prove it completely infallible.

2. She has *some* talent along these lines. She would have to demonstrate considerable success in discrimination, but the hypothesis, at best, is vague.

3. She has *no* ability to discriminate between the two types of tea. If she happens to do so, it is only by chance. This is the null hypothesis.

To put her abilities and the above hypotheses to the test, Fisher would prepare eight cups of tea, as nearly identical as possible except that milk has been poured first into four of the cups and tea first into the other four. The lady is asked to divide the eight cups into two groups of four each, correctly separating the two types. The odds against her succeeding in this task by mere guesswork may be computed as 70 to 1. In other words, according to the null hypothesis, she may be expected to divide the cups into two groups correctly only once in seventy tries. Because the odds against her success are so great, the demonstration of ability to discriminate correctly by

<sup>1</sup> See Chapter II of Ronald A. Fisher, *The Design of Experiments* (New York: Hafner Publishing Co., 1960), pp. 11–26.



separating the cups into the proper groups on the first try would be acceptable proof of the talent which the lady claims. Even when the odds involved are no greater than 20 to 1 (the 5 per cent level of confidence), her chances of success are so unlikely that the null hypothesis, if she succeeds on her first try, would be considered false by most investigators.

### **Faulty Statistical Reasoning**

The most common mistake made with regard to statistical computation is that of accepting its results as precise and certain rather than as approximate or as estimates based upon probability. Suppose that a hundred housewives were to be asked how many minutes per week they spend speaking on the telephone. To be sure, information gathered in this way will depend upon human memory and is therefore subject to a certain amount of unreliability at the very start. Some of the housewives interviewed will simply not remember and will state any figure that sounds reasonable. Others may feel a sense of guilt about spending long periods of time in telephone conversation and may deliberately lie to avoid what they consider a form of self-incrimination. Still others may err in adding up the column of figures on which they have recorded their telephone calls for each day.

But assume that the investigator has received from each housewife a statement indicating the exact length of time she believes she has devoted to telephone conversations during a given week. Now, unless an automatic timing machine has been used to time each call, the investigator must recognize his figures as only estimates. Nevertheless, as often happens in research, he may proceed to add all his figures together and then divide the total by 100 in order to secure an average for the entire group. Further division by seven will give him a statistical average of so many minutes per day for the average housewife. On the strength of this computation, he may announce that the average housewife spends (let us say) 38.073 minutes per day in telephone conversation. This figure will impress many persons as scientifically accurate; and the less they know about science, the more they will be impressed. At best it is nothing more than a crude approximation. In fact, the investigator would be about

equally accurate if he were to say merely that the average time is around three-quarters of an hour. For some reason, however, the first figure sounds much more reliable — which it is not.

Another frequent error of statistical studies is lack of consistency in the research design. For example, two populations that are being compared may be measured by entirely different sets of criteria — a process almost sure to lead into false conclusions. After the 1960 census of the United States, the Bureau of the Census announced its adoption of new standards for differentiating between the rural and urban segments of the American people. Under the revised system of classification, 69.9 per cent of Americans are considered to live in urban areas, whereas under the system followed in the last previous census the population would have been classified as not over 63 per cent urban.<sup>2</sup> While there were undoubtedly some good reasons for the bureau's decision to change its definition of an urban citizen to this extent, the inconsistency between the standards applied in 1950 and those applied in 1960 makes meaningful comparisons more difficult and throws suspicion upon the whole procedure of interpretation. Simply by altering the criteria used for classifying data an investigator may arrive at quite a different conclusion and yet justify it statistically.

Perhaps the fallacy most widespread of all in studies involving statistical inference is that of depending upon information derived from a sample that is not randomly selected and wholly representative. An investigator, often out of laziness, may select a sample merely on the basis of its being available and handy. Once the data have been collected from a sample that is unrepresentative, no amount of statistical calculation or manipulation will succeed in drawing out conclusions of any real benefit.

### Summary

Statistics may be descriptive or inferential, depending on their use in the study. Descriptive statistics tell something about the central tendencies of the data, their dispersion, and the relationships to be found between different factors. Inferential statistics help in

<sup>2</sup> See U.S. Bureau of the Census, *Statistical Abstract of the United States, 1962* (Washington: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1962), p. 21.

drawing scientific generalizations from the data and in establishing the reliability of such generalizations by the theory of probability.

Statistics may be applied to determine the probability that a particular set of measurements derived from a random sample of a population actually fits the total population. It can also help to determine the relative stability of the sample. Use of the null hypothesis is favored by many scientists as a means of deciding whether the results achieved in a study may not have occurred by pure chance. If the null hypothesis proves wrong, the investigator's original research hypothesis tends to be strengthened.

Faulty statistical reasoning is naturally to be avoided. Some examples of this type of error are (1) the tendency to accept statistical figures as accurate rather than as estimates, (2) inconsistency in the research design, and (3) the unrepresentativeness of the sample. Statistics can be of little help in a study which suffers from errors within the research design itself.

# 16

## THE CASE STUDY

When Plutarch wrote his *Parallel Lives* of some of the great men of ancient Greece and Rome, he was really producing what we might call, in one sense, "case histories." His object was not merely to give interesting information in these biographies but to learn and present for the benefit of his readers the sources and nature of important human qualities of character.

The scientific case study, or case history, amounts in essence to a careful and thorough examination of the life and behavior of one individual, or "case." The same techniques used with individuals may be applied with similar effect in the study of groups of individuals (families, communities, or identifiable geographical regions) or to a particular aspect of social behavior.

Sigmund Freud, originator of psychoanalysis, formulated most of his theories regarding the inner consciousness of men and women by conducting lengthy case studies of his subjects. While there may very well be a good proportion of the subjective element in this type of study, the method nevertheless tends to uncover information which might otherwise be overlooked.

As will be recalled from a previous chapter, Frédéric Le Play made some use of the case history method while studying the economic life of lower-class French families. No doubt he realized that a statistical survey, no matter how complete it may be, never gives a wholly understandable picture of the entire situation studied. Quantitative data alone do not always appear to be enough. When human beings constitute the subject matter of a study, actual examples of the experiences and the development of individual histories add

reality to the picture. Quantitative data tend generally to make the description abstract; case histories can make it human.

In sociological and psychological research in general, the survey and the case study often are used as complementary to one another, for there is a close relationship between them. The case study especially seems to be more effective when used in conjunction with the survey method. At the same time, because of its resemblance in some respects to the documentary method of research (particularly when the documentary technique is applied to historical studies), the case study has also been called a historical-genetic type of investigation.

### **Materials Used in the Case Study**

The investigator usually identifies as a "case" for his investigation any person or group of persons (such as a family, an institution, or a community) which he wishes to study in great detail. (Under certain conditions, the method may be applied also to animals.) He then proceeds to gather all the available information which has any possible connection with the life history and the development of the subject. When he has finished this extremely detailed gathering of minute facts, the investigator will be able to put together a fairly complete and continuous picture of the subject's experiences and thoughts over a period of time, and to make an interpretation of these experiences and thoughts. To a certain extent this may sound very much like documentary research. As a matter of fact, it is, except that we are dealing in the case history with living individuals and social groups.

The data gathered in a case study may be derived from a multitude of sources. Chief among these are the personal testimony of the subject (like Freud's method of asking his patients to probe their memories in order to recall their past experiences and feelings), personal documents (letters, diaries, journals, and so on), and biological, psychological, and sociological measurements. The documents examined may well include not only letters and diaries but autobiographies, the accumulated records of schools and social service agencies, medical histories, transcripts of conversations and clinical interviews, and many similar materials. These must be inspected and analyzed

in much the same way that we test any other documents to determine their authenticity and their correct meaning.

What the investigator ordinarily aims at in the case study is not only a thorough description of the individual or group under scrutiny but also the identification of the principal causes leading up to the individual's or group's present status. By analyzing very carefully all the data which can possibly have a bearing upon the present status of the subject, reasons for it (as well as the exact nature of it) may sometimes, though not always, be discovered. Of course, the investigator, having turned up all the significant facts regarding the subject's development and status, may try to use this knowledge in improving that status or in correcting an undesirable condition. That is to say, the result of a complete case study may be reform or cure. This, however, lies properly outside the province of research and constitutes therapy or treatment — another problem entirely.

In a social service agency, for instance, a worker may conduct an extensive case study of a client who has been classified as a juvenile delinquent. In this setting the main purpose of such a study would not be served unless the behavior of the young delinquent could be corrected and his talents reclaimed for the good of himself and society. This would be the ultimate and practical reason in such a set of circumstances for seeking to learn the nature and causes of the delinquency. Yet the problem of cure cannot be regarded as one of the functions of research itself. The case history method merely ascertains the facts and analyzes them in order to draw inferences and establish general principles from these facts. Using such information for psychiatric treatment or for social reform is a different activity altogether, though it may follow directly from the discoveries made in the course of research. We have already noticed the same characteristic, it will be recalled, in the typical survey.

The difference between the survey and the case study lies chiefly in the fact that the survey is a quantitative study, gathering its data or measurements from a large number of individual units (usually persons), whereas the case study thoroughly examines one or more of these units (called cases), preferably those which appear to be most representative or typical. Thus, a survey of delinquency in a high school might reveal the total number of offenses, the different kinds

of offense, the physical and psychological characteristics of the offenders (their age, family background, mental ability, sex, amount of education, health, etc.), and the increase or decrease in delinquent acts over a period of time. The case history method, on the other hand, would attempt to search out the causes of delinquency by making very elaborate investigations into the development and general background of a few typical offenders in the group. Most social workers appear to believe that, for their purposes, the second approach is likely to prove the more useful and revealing of the two. But as a research technique the use of the two methods together is often more fruitful than the use of either one alone.

### Some Techniques Used in the Case Study

The research worker who looks into the case history of a subject carefully refrains from judging either the character or the motives of the person he studies. That is, he maintains a scientific objectivity toward the subject's behavior. Although perfect objectivity may be impossible to attain, he strives to record the facts as he finds them, neither condemning nor praising. The investigator who brings to the study his personal prejudices and preconceived standards of morals or beliefs may see facts imperfectly or distort their meaning. Here, as elsewhere, the function of the research worker is to seek the true nature of reality. His work in the case study method of research is diagnosis rather than reform.

¶ Perhaps the most commonly employed technique in a case study is the personal interview. This means eliciting information directly from the subject being studied. ¶ The conditions under which the interview is conducted can vary considerably and will depend upon the circumstances of each investigation, but as a rule these conditions are more informal in the case study interview than in the survey interview. A free flow of talk is encouraged. The relationship established between interviewer and subject becomes a very important condition of the interview, though the experienced interviewer will know how to keep his own position as objective and unobtrusive as possible. We have seen how Le Play, a pioneer in the use of what we now call the case method, literally moved right in with the working-class families he studied in his survey of eco-



nomic and social conditions in France. Similarly today, a sociologist interviewing hoboes might find it strategic to live among them for a time as a pseudo-hobo, or he might simply visit and question them in hobo jungles, at missions, on freight cars, or in other places where they might be more likely to feel at ease than in the investigator's office. Under such informal conditions, to be sure, accurate note-taking may prove difficult.

Good note-taking is an essential part of the case study method. Notes ought to be taken at the time information is received (e.g., during the course of the interview), or, if this is impossible, they should be written down immediately thereafter. Preferably, the actual words of the speaker or speakers, rather than a paraphrase or approximation, should be recorded. Even in a very informal interview the trained research worker can sometimes record his notes unobtrusively and in a way that will not make the person interviewed feel uneasy or self-conscious. Needless to say, all notes ought to be as complete and correct as possible. Since the interviewer does not always know in advance precisely which data will prove most significant and useful after analysis of all the information gathered, he cannot afford to overlook any fact that may bear upon the development and status of the subject under investigation.

In a case study investigation the use of a prepared questionnaire or schedule does not always produce the best results. In an interview it is likely to inhibit the free flow of talk or even to encourage evasion and lying. For another thing, questions about a life history cannot well be answered with an easily tabulated "Yes" or "No" or check mark. The really helpful answers will tend to be rather detailed and therefore long. Finally, as we have noted before, the characteristic materials of a case study are not primarily quantitative; they lend themselves more to study through the documentary method of research than to quantitative techniques such as the survey questionnaire.

Combined with interviews will be the search for and the exhaustive study of written records. Information acquired in the interview should be verified, if at all possible, by this means. But the written records can provide other data as well. The investigator must be prepared to examine diaries, letters, account books, medical records,

church, school, and social agency records, newspaper notices, and the like, keeping in mind constantly the question of which data seem likely to be most significant for purposes of the study.

In recording data for the case history, it is, of course, desirable to formulate a systematic approach. Each record should contain at least the following information: the date (especially for the interview) on which the data were obtained, the names of persons giving statements, the actual words used in the statements, a brief description of the conditions under which the interview or other form of interrogation took place, a summary of the specific techniques used in any given part of the investigation (such as direct personal observation, interview, questionnaire, and the like), identification of the person or document supplying the information, and supplementary remarks. The whole point (and this can be learned best through experience) is this: A record made of any step in the case study should be so complete that none of the investigative work, once done, will have to be done over again.

The properly conducted case study usually requires a fairly long period of time. Instead of one interview, a whole series may be necessary to obtain the type and amount of information desired. Constant probing of the same ground is often essential in order to find the significant factors in the study. Since the case history describes the subject's development not at a single given point but over a considerable length of time, neither memory nor the available records can be counted on to furnish complete information immediately. The investigator in the case study needs patience. This kind of work is both intensive and inclusive. That is, instead of selecting a few items about which to seek data from a great many sources, as in the survey, the case history investigator puts all his attention on learning everything he can learn with certainty about a limited number of cases.)

But how shall one determine which cases are typical? In choosing his cases for study, the investigator may be misled into selecting those which appear most interesting or spectacular. He must avoid this temptation by trying to be absolutely objective, by looking honestly for representative subjects, and by conducting whenever possible a preliminary statistical survey before making his selection. Nevertheless, the element of subjectivity, of personal judgment,

cannot be entirely absent either in choosing the cases or in assembling the data. This tends to keep the case study method of research from being wholly scientific. No doubt new and more objective techniques will be developed as time goes on; meanwhile, the method has proved so productive that its weaknesses need not prevent its use if the investigator exercises due discretion. As a matter of fact, it has in recent years been more and more widely employed in certain fields, such as education, and with marked success. If nothing else, the use of the case history can decrease the tendency to misinterpret statistical data. The relationship of isolated factors often can be seen more clearly through intensive case study than through mere quantitative analysis.

### Summary

Essentially the case study method comprises a careful and comprehensive analysis of the development and status of one individual, group, or institution. The method can be used effectively in combination with a survey.

The materials used in case study research include information obtained from such sources as personal interviews, personal documents, and medical, educational, and social agency records. The personal interview is perhaps the most important tool, but the data obtained from interviewing should be verified by comparison with written records whenever possible. Notes made in personal interviews must be full and accurate, and preferably written down during the interview itself. In eliciting the materials for the case study, the prepared questionnaire is less effective than in the survey. The well-conducted case study requires time and patience because of the detailed nature of the investigation.

In analyzing the evidence gathered, the investigator usually searches for causes of the current condition or status of the subject studied. The case study differs from the survey in that it constitutes a detailed examination of a few typical cases rather than an accumulation of quantitative data from a vast number of respondents.

The case history investigator must earnestly try to maintain objectivity and refrain from passing moral judgment upon the cases he studies. His object is to learn the truth by diagnosis.

The method suffers from several defects. One of these is the

difficulty of selecting cases for study which are known to be definitely typical. Another is the strong element of subjectivity which, thus far, seems unavoidable in this kind of research. Nevertheless, the case study, especially when used in conjunction with a quantitative survey, often draws attention to information that cannot be obtained successfully in any other way and thus can be justified scientifically.

# 17

## THE ROLE OF ACCIDENT

### IN RESEARCH

It frequently happens that major discoveries in research are made almost entirely by accident. These may come about either through chance observation of some unsuspected phenomenon or through the sudden appearance on the scene of documents, artifacts, or other sources of information whose existence previously had been unknown.

#### **The Chance Appearance of Source Materials**

The erosion or shifting of soil, the drying up of lakes, and other natural alterations in the face of the earth may expose hitherto unknown archaeological or geological data. During the "dust bowl" days of the nineteen-thirties in the western plateau district of the United States, the wind removed several inches of topsoil in many areas and laid bare spots which had been covered for years. At these places geologists and archaeologists picked up Indian relics that probably would have remained hidden forever under different circumstances. What we know of the so-called Folsom Man we may owe largely to another such major shifting of topsoil a decade earlier in New Mexico.

Accidental circumstances have brought to light a number of important documents that would otherwise almost surely have been destroyed. In 1765 Bishop Percy in England one day noticed a housemaid attempting to start a fire with a bundle of old papers.

On an impulse he stopped her and examined the papers. To his great surprise, they turned out to be a manuscript collection of old popular ballads. They interested Percy as the surviving remains of early folk literature, and he began to study them. Later he published them as *Reliques of Ancient English Poetry*, one of the landmarks in English literary history. Had he not been both perceptive and alert, these priceless materials might easily have been destroyed forever.

A similar stroke of fortune saved for scholarship a number of important papers by James Boswell, the noted English biographer of the eighteenth century. In 1850 Major Stone, an officer of the East India Company, made some purchases in a little shop in Boulogne-sur-Mer, France. Upon his return to his lodgings, he chanced to observe that the wrapping paper which the shopkeeper had used was part of an old letter and that this letter bore the signature of James Boswell. Returning to the shop, Major Stone learned that the wrapping paper had been recently purchased from an itinerant vendor. In those days it was not an uncommon practice to use waste paper in this fashion. Stone immediately offered to buy up the entire stock of paper from which the Boswell document came, and he thus recovered for scholarship a most important group of letters written by Boswell to his close friend, William Temple.

The precious and perishable source papers of scholarship often owe not only their discovery but their very preservation to luck. The charred edges of the one extant manuscript of the Old English epic poem *Beowulf* show how nearly it once missed destruction in a fire in the library where it was housed.

### Chance Observations of Phenomena

Familiar to every schoolboy is the tale of Archimedes' dramatic discovery of the law of specific gravity. According to legend, the discovery was at least partly accidental. Requested by Hiero, the ruler of Syracuse, to determine whether the royal crown had actually been manufactured of pure gold, as asserted by the goldsmith, or whether cheaper metals had been mixed in as alloy, Archimedes reportedly stumbled upon the principle of specific gravity while taking a bath. Noticing the displacement of water caused by the

weight and bulk of his own body, he is said to have leaped excitedly out of his bath and run down the street shouting, "Eureka!" By calculating the amount of water which would be displaced if the crown were pure gold, Archimedes was able to expose the fraudulent goldsmith and prove that a quantity of silver had been mixed with the gold in making the crown.

The history of scientific research abounds with instances of the chance observation which acts as a catalyst on the trained mind. Galvani's discovery of "animal electricity" in Bologna, Italy, is supposed to have come about because his wife happened to be preparing some frogs' legs for his dinner. A pupil of Galvani's, operating an electric friction machine close by, accidentally touched one of the legs with a knife he was holding. Much to his amazement, he saw it make a spasmodic twitch. Galvani, when informed of this, promptly undertook to investigate the strange phenomenon. Hanging several frogs' legs from copper wires on his balcony, he noted with surprise and interest that the muscles of the legs twitched whenever the wind blew them against the iron railing of the balcony. From this observation Galvani reasoned that an electrical fluid must be present in the frogs' legs which became active when it was brought into contact with the copper and iron together. Volta later used Galvani's discovery (though they disagreed about the principle involved) in producing the first electric battery. Incidentally, we still recall the significant contributions of Galvani to the study of electricity when we employ such terms as "galvanometer" (the instrument used in measuring small amounts of electrical current) and "galvanize into action," an expression which perhaps can be traced back to the stimulus-and-response phenomenon of the frogs' legs.

The discovery by Louis Pasteur of the means for turning disease germs into agents of immunization may be credited chiefly to accident. Pasteur had been studying cholera in chickens, and in the process had been producing cultures of cholera germs which he used in his experiments. On one occasion he took a few days' vacation. When he returned he inoculated a number of chickens with a germ culture which had become old and which he had meant to destroy. Unexpectedly, these chickens, though they became ill, survived the



disease. Then when they were inoculated with fresh germs, they resisted the disease entirely. Apparently the old germs, through lack of oxygen, had been so weakened that the natural resistance of the chickens prevented their having a fatal effect. Thus Pasteur learned that immunity may be developed by inoculation with a mild form of the disease, using weakened germ cultures. The principle of the vaccine has been applied successfully with several diseases.

When Röntgen discovered the X ray he was experimenting with electrical discharges in vacuum tubes and attempting to detect invisible rays of light through the use of a photographic plate. One day he noticed that a photographic plate covered with black paper which had been lying on his work bench beside the vacuum tube was glowing with fluorescence. He had not previously suspected that there might be certain light rays which could penetrate black paper. To verify his observation, Röntgen covered the vacuum tube completely with black paper and darkened his work room. When the electrical current was turned on, the photographic plate held near the tube glowed luminously, thus proving beyond question that the mysterious rays could penetrate opaque objects.

Unsatisfactory conditions in a dirty laboratory are said to account for Sir Alexander Fleming's discovery of penicillin, one of our most remarkable drugs. The continued handling of certain cultures of staphylococci with which Fleming was working caused them to become contaminated. In one instance he noticed that all the germ colonies on a particular plate except those near the center had died. This suggested to him the possibility that one type of germ colony had killed the others. He identified this colony, a mold, as penicillin and wrote a report of his observations. Years later another experimenter, Howard Florey, read Fleming's report and asked himself whether this unusual substance might not prove useful in the cure of diseases. The result is well known. The odd fact seems to be that Fleming probably would not have made his discovery had he been working in a spotless laboratory under sanitary conditions.

### **Making Use of Chance Discoveries**

For every chance observation which has resulted in some new addition to knowledge, thousands of opportunities have probably passed unnoticed. Certainly others before Röntgen had had similar

opportunities to observe the phenomenon of the X ray. Medical men before Fleming knew that certain molds kill disease germs. Needless to say, the scholar cannot depend upon accident as a method of making discoveries or solving problems. But it is important for him to be alert and ready to profit by unusual occurrences or observations made in a study. The true scholar, seeing something unexpected occur in the course of his investigation, wants to know why it occurred.

As Pasteur so aptly stated: "Chance favors the ready mind." When Charles Goodyear accidentally dropped some raw rubber on a hot stove and thus learned that heat will harden and strengthen rubber, he could put the knowledge to practical use because his mind was prepared as the result of his previous work. If such an incident had happened under other circumstances, the person spilling the liquid rubber on the hot surface might simply have been annoyed by his own clumsiness. Nothing of importance would then have been derived from the accident.

Almost every year discoveries in research take place whose ultimate importance nobody seems at the time to recognize. Though it was asserted as early as 1840 that cod liver oil can be beneficial to children with rickets, the advice went almost unheeded for nearly a century. Fleming's report on penicillin lay on the shelf gathering dust until Florey chanced upon it in a routine inspection of scientific literature.

Thus the effective scholar must remain ever on the alert for fortunate accidents. While he cannot reckon upon these, he must possess both the perspicacity and the common sense to take full advantage of them when they occur, as they frequently will, during the progress of a study.

### Summary

The scholar should prepare his mind for the possibility of accidental discoveries in research. He will do well not to ignore strange and unusual phenomena which he observes during the course of a study but, instead, to search out the explanation. To do so requires an alert and prepared mind which will seize upon every opportunity to inform itself and which looks beyond the merely obvious. As Pasteur said, "Chance favors the ready mind."

**PART FOUR**

Presenting the Results  
of Research



# 18

## PREPARING THE

### WRITTEN REPORT

Writing should not as a rule be attempted until after a study has been completed. Some people have the false idea that the written report *is* the study. Not at all. The report is merely the means by which a scholar informs his colleagues of the work he has done — his conclusions about the problem studied, his method of solving it, and the evidence he has been able to find in support of his hypothesis.

The scholarly report should not be written to entertain the reader. Fiction, popular essays and articles, poems, and many other types of writing serve that purpose. A report of research has only one function: it must *inform*. It propagates knowledge. This does not mean, however, that the research paper needs to be dull and uninteresting or that the scholar is exempt from the requirements of “good” writing. The report *can* be extremely interesting, and it *can* be well written. Nevertheless, interest and style are not primary concerns of the scholar in reporting the results of his study. The flight of rhetoric, the subtle ambiguity, the anecdotal digression — these have no place in the scholarly research paper.

Nor should the report be an attempt to impress the reader with the writer’s erudition. Even though the subject matter may be difficult and specialized, it should not be made more difficult through the manner of writing. Wordiness, indirection, and pompous language are barriers to communication — and to scholarly achievement, for

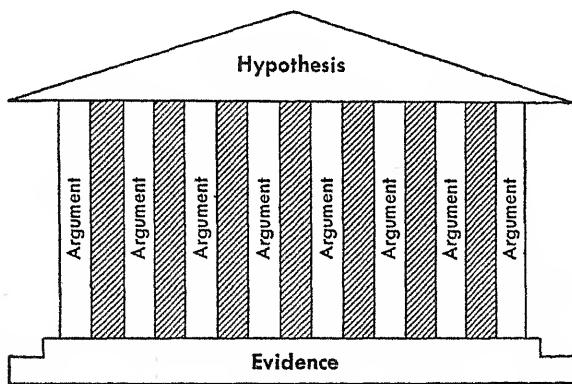
the effective scholar is one who can communicate his findings. Correctness, precision, and clarity should be the scholar's watchwords. Always, in putting his report into written form, he should keep in mind the one essential of a research report: to tell, without pretension or hedging, exactly what was done in the study and what conclusions have been reached.

### **The Best Way to Proceed**

The best way to proceed is to go directly to the point. If the scholar will forego all efforts to make an impression of unusual erudition upon his readers, if he will try to make his paper not as long as possible but as short as possible, if he will conscientiously refrain from adding comments which have nothing at all to do with the study, he will have escaped the principal vices of report writers. After all, the worth of a paper should be measured not by how much it says but by what it says. A great many inept writers waste so much time and space putting down pompous but purposeless remarks or extraneous information that they never seem to arrive at the main issue — a description of what was accomplished in the study. *Get to the point* is probably the first rule of good report writing.

Presumably the scholar who has just completed a thorough and successful study of some problem in his field knows almost everything there is to know about that problem. His brain is full of information. He has formulated his hypothesis and has found the evidence to support it. He knows exactly why he believes his hypothesis to be the correct one. Since he *knows* what he has done in the course of the study and *knows* what evidence there is to support his conclusions, he should be able to write down what he knows. After all, he need only put what is in his mind into words. Lack of practice in writing may hinder the inexperienced scholar somewhat; but, by and large, anyone should be able to express in clear and understandable words anything about which he is firmly sure in his own mind. Thus we might say that the second rule of good writing is to *Know thoroughly the subject about which you write*. For the scholar who has done a satisfactory piece of work in solving his problem, this ought to present no real difficulties. He has only to describe what he has done and to present the evidence for his conclusions.

Perhaps the writing of a report will not seem quite so simple as is implied here for the person who has had little experience with written communication. For him a third rule of procedure may be suggested: *Learn to organize the information you have on the subject you have studied.* In other words, make some orderly pattern of your thoughts. Probably the scholar's quickest and best way of accomplishing this is to ask himself what arguments he has developed in favor of the hypothesis which he believes to be the right one. If each favorable argument is set down in turn, together with the evidence proving it, an almost perfect structure for the research report will result. This structure might be symbolically represented by the outline drawing of a Greek temple, whose roof is supported by pillars, which rest upon a firm floor or foundation. The floor of



The Structure of the Greek Temple  
as a Model for Organizing a Report

the structure would represent the evidence or data on which are built the arguments (or reasons) that support the conclusions (or hypothesis). If data are handled in this way, the hypothesis will clearly be supported by a strong system of what we might call mental architecture.<sup>1</sup>

To make certain of organizing his thoughts effectively and of showing a definite and unquestioned relationship between his evi-

<sup>1</sup> Although we have mentioned the formulation of evidence into supportive arguments only, the scholar may wish to argue in refutation (usually at the outset) of all the possible arguments which might be advanced *against* his hypothesis.



dence and his hypothesis, the scholar will find it helpful to draw up a written outline of his study. This will serve the purpose both of clarifying the picture of the study in his own mind and of helping him plan and write the report. An outline represents the skeleton of the entire study. It shows how the data have been organized into effective arguments and how these arguments lead logically to the conclusion reached. The scholar who cannot outline the main points of the study and gather his data into a pattern of arguments may find that he simply does not have in his mind a firm and clear picture of the study on which he has been working. At the same time, the outline is a mechanical aid in organizing and presenting the materials effectively. As each part of the study (or topic of the outline) is written up in turn, the outline helps the scholar maintain, throughout the writing, a consciousness of the relationship among all the parts and of the cohesiveness of the whole.

### **The Distinction Between the Essay and the Research Report**

Since the requirements of the essay differ markedly from those of the research report, the scholar must never mistake the one for the other nor confuse the two styles when writing a paper of his own.

The research report is never anything but the *description of an actual study* which has been carried to completion by the scholar. The essay, on the other hand, is a *discussion* of some subject or problem, usually expressing the writer's opinion, interpretation, or point of view. The scholarly essay does not necessarily add anything new to the sum total of knowledge; it may simply summarize existing knowledge or suggest possibilities. The research report always constitutes an addition to knowledge.

In writing the essay the scholar is not bound by the same strict rules that govern the presentation of materials in the research report. For example, he may refrain from fully documenting his statements. In the research report, the exact sources of information *must* be clearly and accurately indicated, so that other scholars will be able to find the identical materials by checking the sources named and thus verify, if they wish, the statements and conclusions presented. The writer of a research report is *expected* to do much more than

express his opinions, however logical and appealing these may be; he must offer conclusions based upon sound factual evidence which has been honestly appraised.

Perhaps it is a sufficient indication of the difference between these two types of scholarly writing to say that the research report must always demonstrate that an actual problem has been studied and solved or that new facts have been discovered. In the essay the writer may simply show that he has thought about the problem, or he may describe his personal observations and experiences with it, or he may analyze and classify the opinions and the scholarly discoveries of others regarding it. What the essayist offers, then, cannot be considered a thoroughly substantiated solution of a problem. He may offer penetrating insights, and he may even argue for a solution which has every indication of being true (and which may later, upon further study, really turn out to be true); but he cannot offer a definitive solution (in the scientific sense) of the problem because he has not conducted a scientific study. A scholar who has completed a study along scientific lines does not report his findings in an essay but writes instead an accurate and factual description of the sources of information, the method used in searching for and analyzing data, the hypothesis reached, and the evidence that supports the hypothesis.

The essay may be written partly to entertain as well as to inform. In any case, the writer of an essay usually tries to write in an interesting manner. The research report attempts to present the truth in as direct a manner as possible. Above all, it must remain objective. Scholars writing reports of their studies find that they can maintain their objectivity best by speaking in the third person. The scholar speaks of himself not as *I* but as *the author* or *the present writer*, thus keeping the personal element out of his report as much as possible. In an essay the personal element, together with a certain amount of informality, may be perfectly in place. Most essays, whether they are what we would call scholarly or not, consist mainly of personal observation or opinion or speculation which is not restricted by scientific requirements. In other words, conclusions in an essay are likely to be based upon uncontrolled observation, often supported by selected facts (sometimes only those on one side of an

issue) and by the opinions of authorities. The essay serves a good purpose in its dissemination of ideas and opinions, but its purpose is clearly different in kind, not simply in degree, from the much more precise purpose of the research report.

### **The Outline of a Report**

In planning how materials gathered in the course of a scholarly investigation are to be presented, certain useful customs are to be observed. For one thing, the reader must be informed at once what the problem is that the scholar has undertaken to solve. Ordinarily the statement of the problem is one of the first things the scholar needs to present in his paper. If his readers do not understand what problem was worked on in the study, they will hardly be able to read the report intelligently.

A *brief* description of the problem ought to appear in the title of the paper, but this need not be a full or lengthy statement of it. The title indicates for the benefit of the prospective reader something about the nature and substance of the paper. This information can be presented, however, in abbreviated form — one or two lines, at most. There does not seem to be much point or sense to the eight- or nine-line title sometimes encountered. Often a title of only half a dozen words is sufficient to give the prospective reader an adequate idea of the subject.

### **The Introductory Part of the Paper**

A *full* description of the problem (including any delimitations) ought ordinarily to come in the first paragraph or two of the paper and not, except in very rare cases, in the title. The scholar should be sure to describe his problem clearly and completely, so that there can be no misunderstanding regarding the exact subject matter of the study and the question that the study seeks to answer.

We may say, then, that the opening section of every scholarly report should carry an accurate statement of the *problem* studied. In addition, there should be at once an indication of the solution reached in the study — that is, the scholar's final *hypothesis*. Unsatisfactory hypotheses which were tried out and discarded during the course of the study need not be mentioned in the paper at all,

unless the scholar wishes to mention them simply to refute them. The actual solution of the problem, however, must be revealed before the data are presented. This is necessary in order to help the reader follow the argument properly. The scholar does not build up suspense and save the solution of the problem for the very end of his paper, as if he were writing a mystery story. Rather, he does everything essential to enable his readers to follow the development of the thought and argument upon which the proof of the hypothesis rests.

Often it proves effective to open the paper with a statement of the hypothesis — of what the study has proved. This, of course, is purely a matter of judgment on the part of the scholar when writing his paper. Whether the problem or the hypothesis is first stated really has no basic significance. The important thing to remember is that *both* the problem and the hypothesis must be thoroughly understood by the reader if he is to grasp the argument and see how the data fit logically into the pattern developed by the study. This requires that both the problem and the hypothesis be clearly stated at the beginning of the report.

Another item that should appear very early in the report is a description of the *method* used in solving the problem. Obviously if the method selected has been a poor one, the results cannot be depended upon. The critical reader will carefully consider whether the scholar has followed an approved scientific method and whether the method chosen really fits the problem. Thus a description of the steps taken to solve the problem constitutes one of the most important elements in the introductory portion of a scholarly paper. Too often such attempts to tell how the study was done turn out to be vague and unedifying. The scholar who has difficulty describing the techniques used in conducting the study might very well ask himself whether he really selected suitable techniques and whether he knows what they were. If his techniques were good and if he understood what he was doing in the course of the study, he should have no serious difficulty in telling his reader what method he used. Merely naming the method (calling it a survey, experiment, case study, or the like) does not answer the purpose, of course. The scholar must put down carefully and specifically just what steps were

taken to solve the problem. He should tell where the sources of information were found and how they were selected. He should identify the type of data which were gathered and the ways in which they were analyzed and classified. He should indicate in detail just how he went about the job of testing his hypothesis and (perhaps) why he thinks the method he followed was effective.

In addition to stating the problem, announcing the hypothesis or conclusion, and describing the method used, the scholar may wish in his opening paragraphs to say something about his purpose in conducting the study, and he may wish to define some of his terms. Statement of purpose and definition of terms, however, are not found in all reports and cannot be considered as important as the first three items mentioned.

The purpose of the study is the reason why it was undertaken. In what ways was the study justified? What use will there be for the results? How may the results change the status of knowledge in the field in which the study was undertaken? What is the scholar's special interest in the particular problem studied? These questions indicate something about the purpose for which a study may be made. The scholar may deem it essential or advisable to explain the purpose while making other introductory statements. Many scholars do. Ordinarily, however, one should not spend too much time on these preliminary matters but should move as quickly as possible into the main body of the paper.

In some instances, though not invariably, the scholar may find it necessary to explain in detail the meaning of certain words and phrases he is using in the paper. When special terms are employed or invented by the writer, they should ordinarily be defined at the time they first appear in the paper. If there are many such terms, however, they may well be defined in a special paragraph (or more, if needed) near the beginning of the report. A technical term which may be interpreted in more than one way should always be defined, so that there can be no question of the exact sense in which it is being used. In general, however, the scholar should avoid words which require special definition. It would be best if he could get along without any definitions at all. Unfortunately, this does not always prove possible. To sum up, when definitions are necessary,

they should be carefully supplied, and the introductory section of the paper sometimes is the proper place for them. This kind of thing, on the other hand, should never be overdone.

The opening paragraphs of the usual research report, then, should contain a clear and complete statement of the problem, an indication of the solution which the scholar proposes for this problem (that is, his hypothesis), and a brief but understandable description of the methods used in the study. There may also be something on the purpose for which the study was conducted and perhaps definitions of special terms, if necessary. Anything else in the introductory section of a research paper is likely to be extraneous. In particular, the all-too-frequent habit of opening the paper with oratorical bombast should be avoided. A straightforward clarity and conciseness are basic to effective presentation.

### **The Main Body of the Paper**

Once the preliminary matters have been disposed of, the main part of the report can be presented. This consists in the development of the *argument* — that is, the description of the evidence and of what it shows.

Merely presenting the evidence is not enough. The scholar must interpret it for his readers; he must show what he thinks it proves. To illustrate: A teacher once brought into his classroom three balls of metal. They were all about the same size, and they all looked more or less alike. Holding them up one at a time before the class, he remarked as he displayed each of the balls, "This is aluminum. This is lead. This is iron." The demonstration meant very little to his class, however; for he did not indicate what it was intended to prove. Finally he asked members of the class to hold each of the three metal balls in their hands and compare their weights. "Notice," he said, "that the iron is heavier than the aluminum and the lead heavier than either of the others." Thus he interpreted for his class the meaning of the evidence. He told them what he thought the evidence meant. This is exactly the sort of thing which the scholar must not fail to do. Stating the evidence does not serve his purpose unless he demonstrates in a logical manner that the evidence presented actually substantiates his arguments in favor of his hypothesis.

Only when he interprets as well as presents the evidence can readers weigh it and follow his reasoning through to the conclusion.

The main body of the paper may very well be divided into sections in which the various arguments are taken up in turn. Whether these sections are one page long or three pages or complete chapters or only single paragraphs will depend upon the relative strength of each argument and the amount of evidence which has been uncovered to support it. At any rate, a paper always falls into natural divisions if the material is handled in this manner. Every section should be more or less self-sufficient; that is, it should have an introductory statement which tells what the section deals with, and it should have a summarizing statement at the end which reviews the argument and reminds the reader of what the evidence has demonstrated. Sections of a short paper do not require subtitles, although in a long paper (over twenty pages, for instance) the use of a few subtitles may make the task of understanding the argument and the data an easier one. Young scholars probably tend to overdo the use of subtitles, perhaps to make it clear that they have included everything in the paper which ought to be there. Giving a section of the paper a title or a separate chapter number may make it seem a little more important than it might otherwise appear; but if a subtitle serves only this purpose, it is pure bluff. A paper cut up into too many small sections loses in coherence and continuity. For a paper of twelve to fifteen pages, probably no subdivisions of any kind are necessary; the paper runs through from beginning to end without a break. Longer papers may be broken into numbered sections. A very long paper may have chapters and chapter titles. A chapter, to justify the name, ought to be several pages long in every case. Divisions which are shorter than this do not really deserve to be called chapters.

### **The Final Summary**

The practice of writing a short final summary after all the evidence has been presented and the argument is complete has much to recommend it. Such a summary should not contain any new information but should recapitulate in brief the entire content of the paper. It is as if the scholar were asked by a colleague what problem he had studied and what results he had obtained. He would reply



briefly and to the point, sketching all the important points of the study, describing the conclusions and how he had arrived at them. This, in essence, is what the summary does.

It should be possible from reading the summary alone to learn from it just what the study has demonstrated and how, though without any of the details and without any documentation of the evidence. The summary restates the entire argument, showing how the hypothesis has been substantiated, but it emphasizes the main points rather than the details. It amounts to a condensation, a brief description of the whole study. Whether it is one page long or a complete chapter depends upon the length of the total paper, but in general it should be as short as possible.

Recommendations for action are not normally a part of any research study and thus ought not to be included in a summary. The function of the summary is to tell what was accomplished in the study, especially what new principles or facts of knowledge were discovered. Recommendations as to how such new discoveries may be applied are always a matter of opinion—in a sense, an after-thought. For this reason, if recommendations are made by the scholar, they should be made in a separate chapter or section of the paper and should never be confused with the study itself. The study was made in order to learn certain facts or principles which add to knowledge; it is complete when the investigator solves the problem he set out to solve. Recommendations resulting from the study are not additions to knowledge; they are suggestions as to how the knowledge, or information obtained, may be put to use. This is not primarily the scholar's job, though there is no reason why he should not offer any suggestions and recommendations if he cares to do so. The only thing he must keep firmly in mind is that these recommendations are not a part of the study itself, but something extraneous, something added. If the scholar suggests how the results of the study may be useful in a practical way, he goes beyond the limits of the study itself and enters the realm of opinion. As long as this distinction is understood, there can be no confusion between the summary and the recommendations made (if any). What the scholar needs to avoid is the tendency to think of recommendations as a part of the study proper.

The usual research report, then, consists of three parts. The first

of these is an introductory section which tells what problem was investigated, how it was attacked, and what results were obtained. (The order in which these points are covered in the report is up to the scholar and may vary from paper to paper.) The introduction may also discuss the purpose of the study and perhaps define certain special terms. It ought never to be a mere exercise in rhetoric or a tissue of vague generalizations. The second and main part of the paper gives the various arguments which have induced the scholar to accept his hypothesis or solution as the correct one, together with the factual data upon which the proof of each argument rests. This part of the paper, comparatively speaking, is the essential one. The summary, in the final portion of the paper, gives a description of the study in condensed form and thus, in a sense, draws all the arguments together.

### **Some General Advice**

Perhaps the most pertinent advice that may be offered a young scholar is to use clear and simple English invariably in his writing. By and large, this ought not to prove difficult of accomplishment if he has a clear and accurate conception of the study which he has just completed. Long words, unusual words, and, in particular, vague words hamper an understanding of any paper. While special technical terms may be necessary to convey certain meanings in a few academic fields, they frequently turn out, upon mature consideration, to be much less vital than one might suppose, even in the most involved scholarly paper. One is tempted when reading some papers to conclude that a great many technical words and phrases are pure affectation and that the same ideas could have been expressed more directly and more forcefully with simpler language. Undoubtedly the reports of some studies make the investigation seem unduly complicated and abstruse because the writer of the report lacked the ability to describe his work intelligently. Difficult and specially invented words do not reveal the profundity of the scholar's thought as much as they reveal the barrenness of his ideas. We may speak of thoughts expressed in vague or technically complex language as being "disguised in verbiage."

The scholar while writing his paper should be able to identify

every statement he makes (in effect, every sentence) as one of the following: (1) a direct statement of fact, (2) a basic assumption, (3) an expression of expert opinion, or (4) an opinion of his own.

In setting down a known fact, the scholar must be sure to state how he knows it to be a fact. Ordinarily this is accomplished either by describing the way he observed this fact (if he got it by first-hand observation) or by indicating the source of his information (that is, by documentation). Sources, if they are books, may be described in footnotes. Other sources — like interviews, manuscripts (especially those of unusual importance), or experimental processes — may well be described in the body of the paper itself. The point at issue is precisely how the scholar has made certain that the statement given as fact really is fact. A sentence written to state something which the scholar knows to be true must offer its reader some way of verifying its truth, and usually the quickest and best method of doing this is to identify the source of the information. The scholar must be sure, then, that what he states as fact is not mere opinion. That a respected authority says a thing is true does not make it true. On the other hand, principles and facts discovered by someone else in the course of careful, scientific research may be stated as demonstrated truths. In referring to the results of a good research study by some other scholar, the person writing a report uses words like the following: "Jones [*i. e.*, the other scholar] has shown. . . ." This indicates that the scholar has read a research report written by Jones, has found the research methods used by Jones entirely adequate, and accepts the results as clearly demonstrated. If Jones had written an essay rather than a research report, however, and had stated his results or hypothesis without explaining how his problem had been solved, his conclusions would have to be regarded as opinions rather than as proved facts or principles. Any reference to the conclusions reached by Jones would then be stated somewhat in this manner: "Jones believes. . . ."

A basic assumption has the status of an accepted fact or principle. It is something which informed people so generally recognize and believe that no documentation is necessary. For example, a statement in a scholarly paper that the earth is spherical in shape would hardly be subject to challenge, although perhaps the fact cannot be

proved beyond any shadow of doubt. Similarly, if one assumes that a chair thrown out of a third-floor window will fall downward rather than upward, there is little need for any indication of the source of such an assumption or for any substantiating evidence. People in general will agree to such a statement without requiring any further discussion of the phenomenon. Thus, any fact or principle which can be regarded as true because it has long been understood and accepted or because it is proved by common experience can be stated as a basic assumption without the need of documentation. No reference or source need be mentioned for the information that summers are warmer, as a rule, than winters. The matter is common knowledge. In writing his report the scholar will find that he uses many basic assumptions almost without being conscious of doing so, but he should learn to recognize them for what they are. They are statements of fact or of known and accepted principles; yet they require no documentation in the paper.

In the discovery of truth, opinions ordinarily carry little weight as compared with factual data. Nevertheless, there may be instances in which no evidence can be found except expert opinion. In a court of law, for instance, an expert medical examiner may be called upon to render his opinion as to the cause of some person's death. Although an expert opinion could be wrong, there is a better chance that an opinion will be right if the person giving it is an expert than if the person were chosen at random. Experience and constant study count for something. On the other hand, opinion cannot ever achieve the force of actual fact. When an expert's opinion is quoted or referred to in a scholarly paper, it should always be introduced by a phrase such as "In Smith's opinion. . . ." In other words, the reader should be informed that the statement given is an opinion and not a statement of fact.

The writer's own opinion would probably best not be mentioned at all in a research report, except perhaps in a footnote. Opinions often are based upon impressions rather than upon real evidence, and generally can have no bearing on the results of the study. It seems hardly worth while to express them, other than as a matter of interest. Anything the scholar wishes to say to his readers which he thinks will prove interesting but which has nothing to do with the

proof of his hypothesis ought to be relegated to a footnote and not made an integral part of the paper. Personal opinions tend sometimes to bring the subjective element into a study—an element which the scholar always makes every effort to keep out. Opinions prove nothing of a factual nature, though they may suggest further hypotheses. Occasionally the expression of a personal opinion may constitute a misleading factor in the paper. At best, it can add very little, if anything, to the real objective of the report, which is to inform the reader of the solution the scholar has been able to discover for the problem studied and of the evidence he has unearthed in making sure that his proposed solution is the correct one. In any case, if the writer expresses his opinions at all, he should clearly so label them, in order to distinguish them from statements of fact.

### **What the Critical Reader Looks For**

The scholar when writing a report of a study should constantly keep in mind the reader for whom he is writing. It may help to consider briefly what the critical reader looks for when he reads a scholarly paper. First of all, the scholar should remember that his reader will not be the average person (who would prefer to be entertained) but an especially well informed and critical person who is probably an expert in the field in which the study has been made. This reader can be expected, therefore, to read the paper with unusual care, to be skeptical of its assertions unless they are proved by real evidence, and to make certain efforts to assess the accuracy of the scholar's materials. He may look up the references given in the footnotes to determine whether (1) the footnotes themselves are absolutely correct and (2) the scholar has interpreted his sources correctly. In the case of an experimental study, the reader may even repeat the experiment as described in the paper to see whether he obtains the same result.

In addition to this routine checking, various questions will be raised in the critical reader's mind that must be answered satisfactorily if the report is to be regarded favorably. Is the title an accurately descriptive one, brief and not misleading? Is the problem properly defined and the scope of the study delimited, so that no misunderstanding can develop regarding just what was studied?

Were appropriate methods chosen to test the hypothesis? Are these methods adequately described—so well described, in fact, that another person could repeat the study? Is the problem one which has never been solved before? Has previous research on the subject been found and examined by the scholar, and has he used its results in solving his present problem? Have all the pertinent data been found? Have the data been analyzed intelligently and classified logically? Have sufficient examples and illustrations been given to show how the evidence leads to the conclusions proposed by the scholar? Is the presentation of the arguments clear and logical (so that every step in the argument can be followed)? Has an objective, open-minded attitude been maintained throughout the study? Does the hypothesis follow logically from the facts? Is the thesis a worthwhile contribution to knowledge? Is good form or style (as to grammar, footnotes, etc.) used throughout the paper? Does the scholar show evidence of original thinking in his handling of the problem?

These are some of the questions which come to mind when the critical reader examines a research report. It follows, then, that these questions must also be asked by the scholar of himself when he is writing his paper.

### Graphic Presentation of Data

Any full treatment of graphic presentation comprises a book in itself, and the reader who seeks detailed information on methods and materials should consult one of the several very satisfactory textbooks devoted to the subject.<sup>2</sup> What is attempted here is merely to suggest some of the possibilities of the graphic way of presenting data and to urge its use when appropriate.

The writer of a research report need never hesitate to include in his paper explanatory graphs, charts, illustrations, and similar ex-

<sup>2</sup> See, for example, Bruce L. Jenkinson, *Bureau of the Census Manual of Tabular Presentation* (Washington: U. S. Govt. Printing Office, 1949); R. R. Lutz, *Graphic Presentation Simplified* (New York: Funk & Wagnalls Co., 1949); Rudolf Modley, *How to Use Pictorial Statistics* (New York: Harper and Bros., 1937); Mary Eleanor Spear, *Charting Statistics* (New York: McGraw-Hill Book Co., 1952); Helen M. Walker and Walter N. Durost, *Statistical Tables: Their Structure and Use* (New York: Teachers College, Columbia University, 1936); or Hans Zeisel, *Say It with Figures* (New York: Harper and Bros., 1947).

hibits if they facilitate understanding of the data. Such devices, however, should not be used only because they seem interesting. Illustrations that stimulate interest may be extremely effective in a popular book or article, but they have no place in the scholarly paper if their only function is to arouse interest. The purpose of graphic presentation in writing up the results of research is not entertainment but elucidation.

Before attempting to produce a chart or drawing or photograph as a part of his paper, the scholar would be well advised to avail himself of the practical suggestions offered in a good book on graphic presentation. Most persons of intelligence, with a little aid of this kind, can produce understandable (even if not highly artistic) charts and graphs. If, however, a scholar finds that he has no ability whatsoever in this line, there would surely be no violation of scholarly ethics in his hiring a person with artistic training to do this portion of the work for him from data which the scholar supplies. A photograph made by an expert photographer will prove eminently more satisfactory for illustrative purposes than one bungled by an inexperienced amateur. An artist will know more than the average scholarly investigator about the materials and techniques for an effective chart or graph. Nevertheless, graphic presentation of an elementary kind can be accomplished satisfactorily by almost anyone.

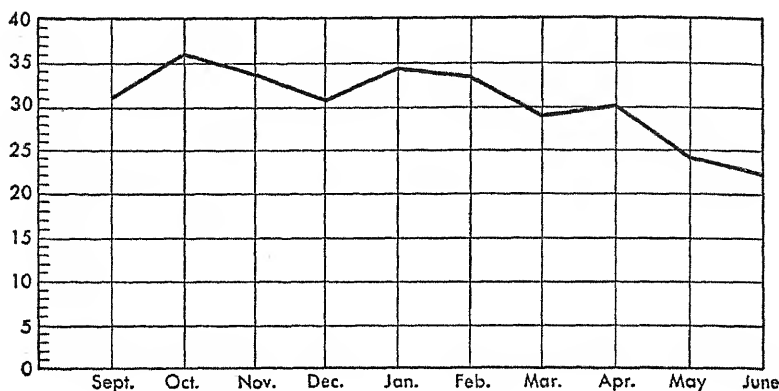
Among the simpler charts which have proved highly effective in giving statistical information one may list, first of all, the *line graph* (also called the rectangular graph, the rectilinear graph, the curve chart, or the Cartesian coordinate graph). Other common types include the *bar chart*, the *pie chart*, the *area or volume chart*, the *component or belt chart*, the *pictorial chart*, the *flow chart*, and *maps* of several kinds. These ought to be familiar to every scholar and may be studied in detail elsewhere. For purposes of this book, a brief description of the principal ones will suffice.

**The Line Graph.** The line graph, perhaps the commonest and most easily contrived of all these types, shows relationships between two factors and appears especially appropriate for presenting changes that occur in a certain factor over a fairly long period of time. Suppose that the average attendance in a classroom over several months is being charted. The attendance may vary from as few as twenty to as





many as forty pupils throughout this period. After the record has been compiled and the average attendance for each month calculated, the information can be presented in very simple graphic form by using a chart like the following.<sup>3</sup>



#### An Example of the Line Graph

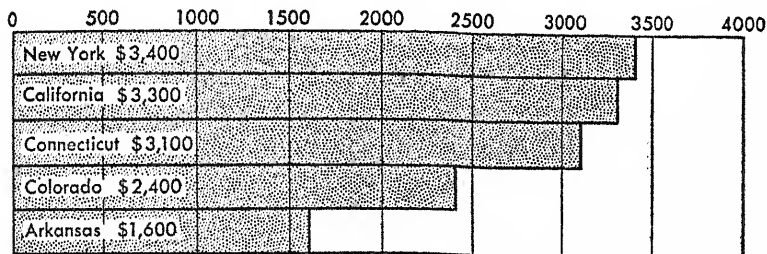
*Average Monthly Attendance in a Classroom, September to June*

In this chart the vertical lines (drawn from equidistant points on the horizontal axis or base line) represent the months of the school year and are so labeled. The horizontal lines (drawn from equidistant points on the vertical axis) indicate the average number of pupils attending the class at various times. Where the lines intersect one may read the average attendance for any given month, and the total pattern quickly provides an idea of the variations which occur throughout the school year. Other possible ways of presenting the same information in a line graph might have been tried. For instance, the average monthly attendance might have been shown by dots placed in the spaces, rather than at the intersections of lines. Or, instead of using units of 5 for the segments on the vertical axis, the scholar might have preferred units of 10, 15, or even 20.

<sup>3</sup> Since the examples shown here are synthetic ones, presented primarily to show the form of the graph or chart and the type of data to which each is suited, rather than to present data in themselves, no documentation is given. In a scholarly research paper the source or sources of the data in a chart must always be fully documented.

This relatively uncomplicated example shows only one of the many ways in which the line graph may be used to present data, but it should serve to illustrate the basic nature of this type of chart, with which the student is no doubt already familiar. On the whole, the line graph should never be complicated by too much detail; usually the simplest pattern turns out best.

**The Bar Chart.** The bar chart, another form of presentation which has the virtue of being rather easily understood, is effective chiefly for comparisons. A number of similar items are measured with respect to some quantitative factor. Bars which represent these different quantities are then drawn to a convenient scale and placed in an arrangement which provides a rapid means of comparing the quantities visually. Often these bars are arranged in descending order of size, the longest bar (indicating the largest quantity) at the top. Suppose the salaries of public schoolteachers in several states are being compared. After information has been collected and averages calculated, the comparison may be made clear in a chart like the following:

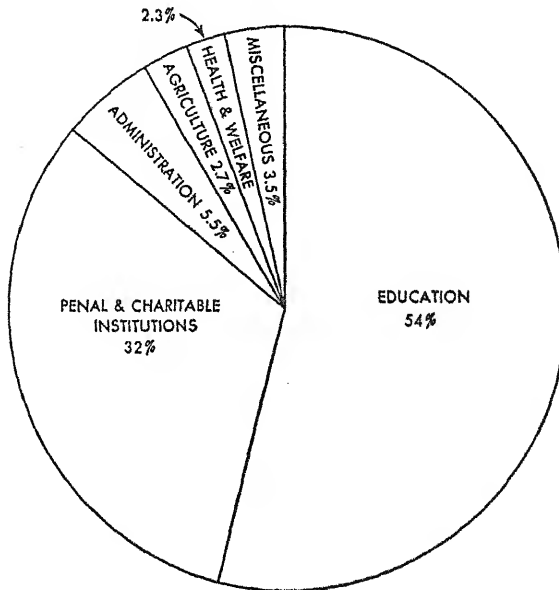


An Example of the Bar Chart

*Average Annual Salaries of Public Schoolteachers  
in Selected States*

When the bars of such a chart are vertical rather than horizontal, the form is known as a *column chart*, but the same principles apply.

**The Pie Chart.** The pie chart has particular advantages when proportions or divisions of a whole are to be shown. In describing how the tax dollar is allocated in a state budget, for example, a chart of this kind may prove helpful.



An Example of the Pie Chart

*Allocation of Tax Funds in the Current Budget of a State*

**Other Types.** In addition to the types of graph mentioned and identified briefly above, the scholar might well become acquainted with the nature and uses of *maps* (to show geographical relationships), and of a number of other useful diagrams such as *flow charts* (to trace the channels of authority and the divisions of responsibility in an organization) and *pictographs* (in which simple pictures or cartoons are used to help the reader grasp quickly the meanings of the symbols). Various forms of the *statistical table* (when used for illustrative purposes) may also be studied profitably in this connection.

**Clear, Accurate, Self-contained Diagrams.** Whatever chart or diagram is used, the scholar should be careful to make it clear, accurate, and self-contained. *Clearness* can best be achieved by keeping the design simple and by limiting the types and number of symbols used. Nothing very complicated should ever be attempted in a single chart, for complexity leads to confusion. When the material to be shown is complicated, the difficulty of presenting it clearly

can often be overcome by making more than one chart and thus distributing the burden of information which each one carries.

*Accuracy* is especially important because an inaccurate chart can easily convey a false impression. The scholar must always ask himself whether his diagram actually gives an honest impression of the facts and makes the true meaning of the facts apparent. (As everybody knows, there are ways of stating facts which amount really to telling lies.) Moreover, graphic representation has many unexpected pitfalls for the amateur. If, for example, you represent a certain quantity by a square whose side is one-quarter of an inch long, you could not accurately represent twice that amount by a square whose side is twice that length, or one-half inch long, because the second square would then actually show *four* times, not twice, the area of the first square.

To be *self-contained* the chart must have a title which identifies it, an explanation of the symbols and of how the information is to be read, a description of what the chart is supposed to show, and a statement (ordinarily in a footnote) giving the sources of the data. The data presented in a chart or table must be documented in exactly the same way as any other quotation or citation in the scholarly paper.

If two or more charts or exhibits are used in a paper, it is customary to number them for ease of reference. (The scholar can refer to them as Figure I, Figure II, etc.) When several charts are used, they should generally be placed in an appendix at the end of the paper; otherwise they may interrupt the continuity and thus interfere with an understanding of the arguments. A style manual will answer most questions that arise over the mechanics of numbering, identifying, and placing the graphic materials in the report.

Graphic presentation does not, of course, take the place of careful verbal explanation. This is an extremely important point. A chart illustrates the evidence discussed in the paper and thus aids in understanding it better or supports it in more detail, but the written presentation should be so capably handled that adequate understanding is possible and adequate support given without illustrations. In other words, the scholar when writing his paper should not lean too heavily upon graphic presentation alone. He must clearly and fully describe his data in verbal or mathematical symbols and then employ

illustrations only as an additional means of elucidating the subject. Graphic presentation can add much to the effectiveness of the written report so long as it is not made a crutch or a substitute for the essential business of presenting information in words.

### **Some Common Faults in Scholarly Papers**

Perhaps the most serious of the faults more commonly found in scholarly papers is the tendency to make broad, sweeping statements without sufficient evidence and sometimes without any documentation. However impressive these may sound, they are dangerous because they mislead not only the reader but the scholar himself, and they are often based upon either thoughtlessness or prejudice.

Another common fault is lack of precision in statements—a tendency to generalize or to state ideas vaguely. This can be corrected by making certain that the scholar really knows what he means and that he is saying exactly what he means.

A third fault is weakness of organization and arrangement. This occurs chiefly when the scholar begins to write without having thought through the total structure of his argument. To write without advance planning can be disastrous.

A fourth fault is failure to describe fully and clearly the method by which the hypothesis was tested. The scholar should never leave his reader in doubt regarding the method used in the study.

A fifth fault, and one which occurs frequently, results probably from the scholar's misunderstanding of his problem; it consists in a lack of direct connection between problem and hypothesis. In other words, the hypothesis really applies to another problem than the one which was supposed to have been studied. The scholar should be sure that his proposed hypothesis constitutes a solution to the problem as he has defined it.

A sixth fault is that of summarizing materials from some source without clearly showing how they are derived from the source and without some introductory statement about the source and the summary which the scholar has made. These omissions may lead to confusion over the nature of the material.

A seventh fault frequently encountered is failure to distinguish between problem and purpose. The statement of the problem tells

*what* was studied; the statement of purpose tells *why* it was studied.

Finally, there is the fault of introducing new elements into the summary. When a new piece of information turns up after the report has been written, it should be placed in the body of the paper (even if this means some rewriting) or in a footnote, never in the summary alone.

### Summary

The scholarly report is the means by which the scholar informs others about his work. It is not ordinarily written until after the successful completion of the study itself. The report and the study are two different things and must not be confused.

A scholarly report is written to inform rather than to entertain or to impress. The writer should avoid oratory and circumlocution and go directly to the point. Before beginning to write he should carefully organize and outline the whole report.

While the scholarly report cannot be said to have any fixed pattern, there is normally an introductory section that describes the problem and the method of study and states the hypothesis or conclusion reached. Following this are presented the reasons or arguments confirming the hypothesis, together with all the evidence in support of these arguments. At the end of the paper it is customary (and also helpful) to summarize briefly the entire study. Recommendations for action based on the results of the study are not properly a part of the scholarly study itself, but may be appended in a separate section if desired.

The scholar should use clear and simple English in writing. He should give the source of every factual statement and should conscientiously identify basic assumptions or mere opinions. He should keep in mind what the critical and intelligent reader will be looking for when reading the report. The tried and proved methods of graphic presentation should be studied and used whenever they may help in elucidating the data. Graphs, charts, tables, and other illustrations and arrays must be understandable, accurate, and self-contained. They should not, however, take the place of a full verbal (or mathematical) explanation of the data.

illustrations only as an additional means of elucidating the subject. Graphic presentation can add much to the effectiveness of the written report so long as it is not made a crutch or a substitute for the essential business of presenting information in words.

### **Some Common Faults in Scholarly Papers**

Perhaps the most serious of the faults more commonly found in scholarly papers is the tendency to make broad, sweeping statements without sufficient evidence and sometimes without any documentation. However impressive these may sound, they are dangerous because they mislead not only the reader but the scholar himself, and they are often based upon either thoughtlessness or prejudice.

Another common fault is lack of precision in statements—a tendency to generalize or to state ideas vaguely. This can be corrected by making certain that the scholar really knows what he means and that he is saying exactly what he means.

A third fault is weakness of organization and arrangement. This occurs chiefly when the scholar begins to write without having thought through the total structure of his argument. To write without advance planning can be disastrous.

A fourth fault is failure to describe fully and clearly the method by which the hypothesis was tested. The scholar should never leave his reader in doubt regarding the method used in the study.

A fifth fault, and one which occurs frequently, results probably from the scholar's misunderstanding of his problem; it consists in a lack of direct connection between problem and hypothesis. In other words, the hypothesis really applies to another problem than the one which was supposed to have been studied. The scholar should be sure that his proposed hypothesis constitutes a solution to the problem as he has defined it.

A sixth fault is that of summarizing materials from some source without clearly showing how they are derived from the source and without some introductory statement about the source and the summary which the scholar has made. These omissions may lead to confusion over the nature of the material.

A seventh fault frequently encountered is failure to distinguish between problem and purpose. The statement of the problem tells



*what* was studied; the statement of purpose tells *why* it was studied.

Finally, there is the fault of introducing new elements into the summary. When a new piece of information turns up after the report has been written, it should be placed in the body of the paper (even if this means some rewriting) or in a footnote, never in the summary alone.

### Summary

The scholarly report is the means by which the scholar informs others about his work. It is not ordinarily written until after the successful completion of the study itself. The report and the study are two different things and must not be confused.

A scholarly report is written to inform rather than to entertain or to impress. The writer should avoid oratory and circumlocution and go directly to the point. Before beginning to write he should carefully organize and outline the whole report.

While the scholarly report cannot be said to have any fixed pattern, there is normally an introductory section that describes the problem and the method of study and states the hypothesis or conclusion reached. Following this are presented the reasons or arguments confirming the hypothesis, together with all the evidence in support of these arguments. At the end of the paper it is customary (and also helpful) to summarize briefly the entire study. Recommendations for action based on the results of the study are not properly a part of the scholarly study itself, but may be appended in a separate section if desired.

The scholar should use clear and simple English in writing. He should give the source of every factual statement and should conscientiously identify basic assumptions or mere opinions. He should keep in mind what the critical and intelligent reader will be looking for when reading the report. The tried and proved methods of graphic presentation should be studied and used whenever they may help in elucidating the data. Graphs, charts, tables, and other illustrations and arrays must be understandable, accurate, and self-contained. They should not, however, take the place of a full verbal (or mathematical) explanation of the data.

# 19

## PUBLICATION:

### THE ULTIMATE GOAL

Discoveries of new knowledge can be of little consequence to the world unless they become known to people who will actually use the information. Without any doubt, much valuable information on hundreds of important current problems lies useless and gathering dust on the shelves of our university libraries in the form of unpublished masters' theses or doctoral dissertations. Other data remain locked in the pages of scholarly reports which the authors never have taken the trouble to publish.

Publication is the means by which the scholar officially makes his discoveries known to his colleagues and to the world in general. Without publication his work may be of use to himself but can hardly be useful to anyone else. Thus publication is not so much a desirable achievement for the scholar as it is a definite obligation upon him. He must release the results of his investigations to the world as a part of his professional duty. There are, of course, research men working for private commercial companies whose discoveries are kept secret for the exclusive use of one company; and there are dictatorial governments which do not allow freedom of publication to their scholars for fear some other country might profit from the information. (In fact, nearly all governments today place restrictions of one kind or another upon the circulation of new knowledge which has important military value.) By and large, however, the scholar seeks truth so that, when it is discovered, it can be given freely to the world for the betterment of mankind and man's condi-

tion. This is an essential portion of the great academic tradition which we have inherited from the scholars of the past.

One of the questions frequently asked by the beginning scholar is: How much can I expect to be paid for a published article? The answer is (with a very few exceptions): Nothing. Perhaps this may prove difficult for the beginner to comprehend. He knows many persons, no doubt, who write articles and stories for money, some of whom even make a living in this way. But such writers produce their works for commercial publication and write chiefly to entertain the general public. They write for profit, and thus publication becomes an end in itself. To a scholar, on the other hand, the writing and publishing of a report cannot be regarded as an end in itself but rather as the means by which he informs his colleagues of his discoveries. He writes in order to make some contribution to the world's knowledge. Often he actually pays for publication out of his own pocket. Publication must be recognized, then, as a scholarly duty rather than as a method of profiting from research.

Furthermore, publications which print the results of research usually are not read (and would not be understood) by the public in general. They can be of use only to the informed scholars of one academic field. Thus they necessarily have a very limited circulation and often must be subsidized by some university or research foundation in order to exist at all. Even if they desired strongly to do so, they could not afford to pay for the work published.

The scholar, therefore, must set aside any ideas of monetary gain from publication of his reports. If a report is book-length, he may even find that he must pay a substantial share of the cost of publication himself. The relatively small number of university presses which issue scholarly books are unable to finance all the volumes they would like to publish. They tend for this reason to restrict their efforts to books which they consider of major importance. A few publishers have experimented with cheaper methods of book production (such as lithoprinting) to make it possible to print works of a scholarly nature which might not otherwise appear in published form.

### **The Scholarly Article**

The manuscript of a scholarly article which is being prepared for

submission to the editor of a periodical should, by and large, receive the same treatment as any paper carefully prepared in the course of one's required graduate work. It should be typewritten neatly and legibly on standard-sized typewriting paper, using only one side of the sheet. The typing should be double-spaced throughout (except for quoted materials of three or more lines, which are single-spaced and indented). Naturally, the grammar and spelling ought to be impeccable, and any typographical errors should be carefully and neatly corrected with pen and ink. In general, with the exception of special information which a graduate school or a professor may desire the student to include on his title page, the publishable article need not be noticeably different in its outward form and appearance from the usual carefully prepared class paper.

The scholar who prepares an article for publication should supply, as his first manuscript page, a suitable title page that contains the full title of the paper (in capital letters), the name and address of the author, and the name and address of the publisher (or of the periodical) to whom the manuscript is being sent. These items really are all that are needed on the title page. On the second page of the manuscript, the scholar should leave three or four inches of space at the top, then write the title as he wishes to have it appear in the printed article (which is just as it appears on the title page also), and skip three or four spaces below the title before starting his first paragraph. Usually no table of contents at the beginning, nor index at the end, is necessary for an article. Beginning at the first page of the article, not counting the title page, every page must be numbered consecutively through to the end, preferably in the upper right-hand corner. It sometimes helps to typewrite across the top of each page an abbreviation of the title and the author's name, in addition to a page number. This identifies the page if it ever becomes misplaced or mixed with other papers.

Footnotes may be placed at the bottom of the page, just as they will appear in the printed article; though some publishers prefer to have them placed at the point of occurrence, immediately under the line in which the reference and footnote number occur. In this case a solid straight line must be typewritten above and below the inserted footnote in order to separate it from the body of the paper. This, of

course, is done mainly for the benefit of the typesetter. In the usual article the footnotes are numbered consecutively throughout the entire work — that is, the author does not begin a new numbering system with each new page.

Because a bibliography does not ordinarily constitute one of the parts of the printed article (although many exceptions to this rule can be found), full information about each work referred to in a footnote should be supplied within the footnote itself. The precise title of the cited work, its author's full name, the place and date of publication, and (especially if it is a fairly recent book) the publisher's name — all these bibliographical facts ought to appear in the footnote if there is to be no bibliography. A few periodicals, however, do encourage the inclusion of a bibliography, and in such instances the amount of detail given in the footnote may be substantially reduced. Nevertheless, there still remains an absolute minimum of information which the footnote must contain: the author's name, the title of the work, and the page number or numbers.

Once the entire manuscript has been typewritten in good form and is ready for mailing, it may be placed unfolded in a large mailing envelope. The pages can be held together with a paper clip; they should not be fastened together with a staple or similar device. Insertion of a sheet of stiff cardboard for backing will prevent wrinkling or folding of the manuscript in transit. The cardboard should fit into the envelope snugly. A manuscript is first-class mailing matter, and it is best sent by registered mail. Or it may go by prepaid express. It should be firmly sealed. Occasionally items do go astray in the mails, and it is always advisable to retain a carbon copy. Before sealing and mailing his manuscript, the author should place inside the envelope sufficient postage for the paper to be returned if it is not accepted for publication. The scholar should never expect the editor of a periodical to bear the cost of mailing back a rejected manuscript. (An exception to this rule might occur, however, if the manuscript was originally sent *by request* of the editor. An unsolicited article must always be accompanied by return postage.)

Young scholars perhaps ought to be cautioned never to send papers to editors merely for criticism — without the intention of of-

fering the material for publication. This kind of thing may be done occasionally by inconsiderate persons, but it only causes annoyance. To make absolutely clear what his intentions are, it is customary for the author to include a short explanation like "Submitted for publication" or "Offered for publication" on his title page or, better, to enclose a brief covering letter with his article. Such a covering letter should never praise or attempt to "sell" the article. The author should simply explain that he is sending his article to be considered for possible publication. He may also point out that return postage has been enclosed, but usually no additional information of any kind is necessary. In rare instances the author may wish to draw special attention to certain matters of unusual importance or interest pertaining to the paper, and he may even invite suggestions for changes which might improve his presentation. As a rule, however, the less he says, the better. His article will stand on its own merits and will undoubtedly receive a thorough and impartial reading by one or more informed scholars in his field before being either accepted or rejected.

Once a manuscript has been sent away to an editor, several weeks may pass before the author will receive any word about it. Some editors — though not all — acknowledge a manuscript as soon as it arrives in the office. A careful reading by those who must pass upon its merits may take weeks in some cases. Eventually the author will be notified that his article has been accepted or will have it returned to him.

If the article has been accepted, publication may not actually occur for as long as a year. Editors plan the various issues of their periodicals well in advance, and scholars must control any impatience to see their work in print. On occasion the editor may report that all space in the periodical has been allocated for more than a year ahead, and in such a situation he may offer the writer a choice between delayed publication or the right to seek a place for the article in some other periodical.

If the article is conditionally accepted, certain changes must be made before it can be published. The author may not care to make the changes proposed; in that case he should ask to have the manuscript returned. If he agrees to the changes, either he or the editor may do the necessary rewriting. (It has been this writer's experience

that alterations proposed by editors almost invariably help to improve the paper.)

If the article is rejected, the author should not expect elaborate critical comments or a detailed explanation of the reasons for non-acceptance, though some considerate editors are kind enough to supply such information. The author should very carefully reread a rejected manuscript before sending it on to the editor of some other periodical. No writer need be discouraged by one or two rejections (or even several), for a rejection does not always imply lack of merit in the paper. What one periodical cannot use may be snatched up eagerly by another. Yet rejection by one editor, especially when the reasons for it are explained by critical comment, should bring to the author's mind immediately the possible need for revision. He should never try his paper on another editor until he has thoroughly convinced himself that rewriting (or even restudy of the problem) would not considerably improve it.

### **Proofreading, Offprints, and Other Matters**

Some weeks before an accepted article is to be printed and issued, galley proof will be forwarded to the author for correction. This will come to him in the form of long sheets of inexpensive paper on which the article has been printed without any page divisions or other attempts at proper spacing. The purpose of a galley reading is to locate and mark all errors which were made by the printer in setting the type. Proofs should be read with extreme care, and every error must be indicated in such a way that the printer can correct it before setting up the article in page form. A scholar who has never before performed the task of proofreading may consult a good modern dictionary for information about the symbols commonly used in the correction of printer's proof.

It should be emphasized that galley proof is sent to the author only to make certain that he has the opportunity of preventing typographical mistakes from appearing in the final printing. He should never, except by special advance arrangement with his editor, seek to rewrite any substantial portion of the article once it has been set up in type. Changes made at this point in the proceedings are expensive and should be unnecessary, and many editors flatly refuse to permit them unless the author is willing to pay the costs. Because



an article is presumed to be in final and perfect form when submitted by its author, there can hardly be any justification for very much rewriting unless new evidence has unexpectedly turned up in the meantime. The author who insists upon the privilege of rewriting and improving his work after he receives the galley proof only demonstrates his lack of maturity or his failure to understand the practical aspects of publishing.

At the same time that he corrects proof, the author of an article usually is offered the opportunity to purchase offprints. An offprint is a separately published copy of the article, printed just as it appears in the periodical, and ordinarily available to the author (but to no one else) for distribution among his friends and colleagues. It may be supplied with or without covers. Most authors of scholarly articles will want 50 to 100 offprints (which, by the way, can be had only while the type is still standing and not later when it has been broken up); the cost of these will depend upon the length of the article, the number of copies ordered, and whether covers are supplied. Offprints are sometimes referred to as reprints, a word which means pretty much the same thing; though *reprint*, strictly speaking, signifies a second printing or a facsimile edition of a work.

The scholar can help to reduce the number of errors which occur in setting type if he will study carefully the periodical for which he is writing before he begins the preparation of his manuscript. The style of presentation in one periodical may be slightly different from that in another. The scholar should acquaint himself with stylistic differences and adapt his own style to them. For example, his manner of handling footnotes must be patterned conscientiously after those of the other articles printed in the periodical for which he is writing. Since every periodical has its own way of treating certain details, the only method by which one can be sure of conforming to the requirements of a particular periodical is to study that periodical beforehand. Any deviations in the manuscript will have to be changed by the editor, and such changes and corrections always open the way to errors.

### **The Scholarly Book Review**

One type of writing which the scholar frequently finds himself

called upon to do for publication is the scholarly book review. Whenever a new book of scholarly interest appears, it is customary for its publisher to send a few review copies to the editors of periodicals in the field with which the book deals. These editors then seek out prominent and respected scholars in that field who are willing to read the book and render their judgment of it.

Sometimes, on the other hand, reviews may be written and submitted voluntarily by individual scholars. There is nothing at all wrong with this latter practice, though it is less usual than the assigned review. Before submitting a book review, the scholar should, of course, make certain that the editor to whom he sends it has not already made arrangements in the matter with somebody else. By and large, a review should not be submitted later than one year (or, at the very most, two years) after the book has been published.

Unless the book seems to be of more than ordinary importance in its field, a review seldom needs to be longer than 500 to 800 words. Occasionally a review of somewhat greater length may be permissible. No special title for the review is customarily required, though some periodicals prefer to have one. The basic bibliographical information about the book serves in place of a title for the review. Such items as the book's full title, its author's name, the date and place of publication, the publishing firm's name, the number of pages, and the price must be set down in the regular form sanctioned by the periodical for which the review is being written.

The review itself should always do more than merely describe whether the reviewer liked or disliked the book. In general, it should seek to accomplish four major purposes. First, it should clearly and succinctly state the main thesis of the book. What has the author attempted to prove? What problem did he study, and what hypothesis did he formulate? What has he contributed to knowledge? Second, it should analyze and assess the materials presented as evidence. Is the author's argument convincing? Do his data bear the test of critical scrutiny? Third, it should consider whether the materials have been well and effectively presented. Are the ideas developed logically? Has the author succeeded in conveying his information with both clarity and forcefulness? Is the material in the book properly organized? Is the style of writing understandable and

pleasing? Finally, the review should contain the critic's judgment as to the general value of the book and the type of reader for whom it will prove useful or interesting. If it contains these four essentials, a review can serve an important purpose for other scholars; for they can save precious time, as new books in their field appear, by determining from a perusal of scholarly reviews which books they must read at once, which books they may reserve until a later time, and which books they need not read at all. For the most part, it may be considered less vital for the scholar who is reading a review to know the critic's judgment or impression of the book than to be accurately informed of exactly what is in the book. Like all scholarly writing, therefore, the review ought to be informative rather than merely entertaining.

### **Summary**

To make his discoveries known to the world, the scholar must accept the task of publication as one of his essential responsibilities. Ordinarily he can expect no payment for this type of service to scholarship; in fact, he may even have to defray a share of the publication costs out of his own pocket.

The manuscript of a scholarly article should be prepared in much the same way that an important course paper is prepared. When ready, it may be submitted to one of the periodicals in the scholar's field, accompanied by a brief covering letter and return postage. If the article is accepted, the author must not expect immediate printing, and he may be asked to make certain changes in the article before the editor deems it publishable. He must be prepared to correct the galley proof carefully; absolute accuracy at every step in this process is vital.

The scholarly book review is a type of writing for publication in which the scholar frequently engages. Reviews help to inform colleagues regarding new publications in the field. A review should explain the thesis of the work reviewed, analyze the materials presented, assess the method by which this presentation is accomplished, and pass judgment on the general value of the work, at the same time indicating the type of reader for whom the book is intended.

# 20 THE QUESTION

## OF ORIGINALITY

How essential is originality in a research project? What are the grounds upon which one may judge whether a piece of research is truly original? These questions appear to perplex some young scholars.

Anything which is not original, of course, cannot really be considered a contribution to knowledge. Every scholar should pride himself upon independence of thought. To pass off another person's ideas as one's own is not only dishonest but also extremely damaging to self-respect. For the true scholar the most highly prized reward of achievement is the exuberant personal satisfaction he experiences in solving a difficult problem which nobody previously has been able to attack successfully, and in thus adding to the stockpile of the world's knowledge a fact or principle never before known, therefore *new* as well as true. To a person imbued with the real spirit of scholarship, no returns in money or glory could equal his mental elation at the triumphant conquest of some profound and knotty problem and the free gift of that new knowledge to his fellow-mortals.

To be called original, a piece of scholarship must be considerably more than a rehash of other scholars' ideas. One sometimes hears on university campuses a rather barren joke, half believed by graduate students until they manage to learn better: To copy from one person's writings is plagiarism, to copy from the writings of many is research. This misconception, actually put into practice by some

young scholars, regrettably stems from a lack of understanding of the real nature of originality. A mere summary of what others have learned or of their opinions with respect to some problem does not provide a solution to the problem. In fact, it constitutes the bare preliminary to research. Learning what others have done or thought about a problem is essential to determine the present state of knowledge on the subject, and therefore always precedes research. But having hunted down all existing studies and comments with respect to the problem chosen, and having examined and summarized all the conclusions reached or the opinions proposed in these sources, the scholar finds himself not finished with his investigation but only ready at last to begin his own search for additional evidence and the formulation of his own hypothesis. An intelligent summary of already existing knowledge on some subject can prove decidedly valuable in extending the student's fund of information and is thus a desirable educative experience, but it should never be confused with real research.

Part of the difficulty in confusing a survey of knowledge with a contribution to knowledge may result from the strong urge felt by many a young investigator to produce a paper and earn favorable recognition for scholarly attainment. There is an old and well-known scholarly disease known as *rushing into print* which affects a considerable number of scholars. The desire to see a piece of work printed and admired (or sometimes the need for a grade and credit in a college course) may cause the scholar to write up his report prematurely, before he can be quite certain of his results — in other words, before he has really carried the study to completion.

Charles Darwin worked for some fifteen years after formulating his theory of natural selection and survival of the fittest before he was ready to publish his discoveries. Even then he probably would have delayed publication had not another investigator of evolutionary biology, Alfred Russel Wallace, arrived at nearly identical conclusions and written an essay on the subject. Wallace, who had previously had some correspondence on scientific matters with Darwin, sent the latter a copy of his essay to read. It was entitled "The Tendency of Varieties to Depart Indefinitely from the Original Type" and was based upon observations made among the flora and fauna

of Brazil and the Malayan archipelago. After consulting some of his close friends and scientific acquaintances who knew about his own work in this field, Darwin wisely arranged for the simultaneous publication of Wallace's essay and an abstract of his own projected book. The two reports were read before a meeting of the Linnaean Society on July 1, 1858. Darwin's principal report, the famous *On the Origin of Species*, appeared slightly more than a year later.

### Credit and Cooperation

When two investigators announce identical discoveries at about the same time and especially when each has arrived at his conclusions independently, to whom shall the credit go? In the case of Darwin and Wallace, the theory of natural selection sometimes is attributed to them jointly and spoken of as the Darwin-Wallace hypothesis. Yet the work of Darwin on the subject was so much more detailed and his data so numerous that Wallace's essay seems almost like a mere abstract of the larger study. Both men, incidentally, appear to have been influenced in developing the theory by reading the work of Malthus on population growth. Most people today are likely to associate the theory of natural selection with Darwin alone. Similar confusion exists with respect to identifying the discoverer of ether's usefulness as an anesthetic. In recent years a large number of medical research men, working both independently and in teams, sharing discoveries as they are made, have conducted studies in the hope of developing a cure or a safe preventive of poliomyelitis. Dr. Salk is usually given the credit for the first successful vaccine, but others also made significant contributions.

Strictly speaking, the ideal attitude in research considers public service before everything else. The credit for an important new discovery should be regarded as of less moment than the fact of the discovery itself. Perhaps this ideal tends to ignore the ever-prevalent human factor, the natural desire of all human beings for public recognition of their achievements. Years ago it was quite common to see scholars withholding bits of information from one another, out of what might be called professional jealousy. Occasionally two scholars would engage in a race to see which of them could succeed in finishing a study first and publishing his report before the other.

The first one to publish would then receive the credit; the other might be considered an interloper or imitator. We have now grown more mature, and scholars today delight in exchanging information with one another, knowing that such mutual aid furthers the cause of all scholarship. No honest scholar, of course, would accept information or ideas from another without making proper and grateful acknowledgment of the debt in his published report.

As was mentioned in an earlier chapter, the ethics of scholarship dictate that no scholar shall undertake to investigate a problem which already is under investigation by another scholar. No reputable scholar would knowingly violate this principle, though occasionally it may be transgressed through ignorance. The principle, to be sure, does not apply in the case of an unusual or pressing investigation in which the efforts of many investigators have been invited and encouraged. For example, experiments aimed at finding the means of preventing poliomyelitis have been conducted over a period of years in many medical laboratories throughout the United States, not to mention the studies which have been going on at the same time in other countries. Here a special and vigorous campaign has been waged in the hope of securing results as quickly as possible. Public funds have been collected for the support of such research. We have, then, an extraordinary set of circumstances which do not apply to most research projects; there is no violation of ethics when dozens of medical research teams attack, as they have in this instance, an identical problem of such obvious magnitude and one which so directly concerns the public welfare. A scholar is also justified in taking a problem, even though it has been studied by someone else, if the other investigator has failed to produce results within a reasonable time or has given up his attempts to solve it.

### **The Dangers of the Premature Report**

Rather than exercising an unwise eagerness to rush into print, the scholar should be concerned first of all with the soundness of his work. This nearly always means taking a great deal of time and pains. "Be sure you are right before you publish" is an old but excellent piece of scholarly advice. The young scholar must be willing to spend much more time than he may suppose to be necessary in



making absolutely certain that he has found the best solution of his problem, that he has discovered all essential data, that he has not been misled by inaccurate or incomplete observation or by his own prejudgments. Proper assimilation of the vast amount of data usually compiled in the course of any thorough study takes time in itself. The deadline a student must meet in the graduate school or his own very natural desire to be first in the field with some new hypothesis tends to develop a feeling of annoyed impatience with the laborious processes of good research. But research, like genius, owes much to an infinite capacity for taking pains, and the best counsel one can give to an inexperienced investigator is this: *Never be in too much of a hurry.*

The same tendency toward impatience which we often find in the young scholar may blind him to the vital advantage of revising the early drafts of his written report. Revision may well be done several times — and with increasing profit each time. Hardly anyone except a practiced writer can say everything he wishes to say as effectively as possible at his first attempt. Even competent writers of long experience find it essential to revise their writings in order to improve them. How much more beneficial revision must be, then, for the person without much experience in writing or without a special flair for it, especially when he is trying to record numerous and minute details which must be handled with exceeding care and accuracy! Painstaking care in the presentation of research data in the written report can be as vital to the success of a study as the care with which the data were gathered and analyzed in the first place. For most persons the best way to achieve the utmost possible effectiveness in writing the research report is to make an outline of the material first, then to write a preliminary draft of the report, and finally to revise this draft until it satisfies the writer's highest critical standards. The truly original study is the one that has been carefully carried through to completion at every stage, including the final writing.

### **Originality in the Selection of a Problem**

Perhaps a further word needs to be said at this point with regard to the originality involved in the selection of a subject for study. Since

the scholar would not be likely to make a really new discovery except by approaching an entirely new problem, originality can be seen to start with problem selection. Although it may be possible to study an old problem in some new way, most investigators find it more satisfactory to attack a problem never before studied. A danger to avoid here, however, is the tendency to pick subjects which are palpably trivial and therefore not worth the time and effort spent in solving them. The value of any problem, it must be admitted, always is a matter of judgment and opinion. A subject which appears trivial at first glance may prove on later examination to have some significance. Nevertheless, many subjects picked by graduate students have the fault of being *obviously* trivial in value, and most of these apparently are picked only because nobody else has previously studied them. Newness in itself should not be the sole criterion in the selection of a problem. In considering any possible topic for investigation, the young scholar may well ask himself whether a particular problem has remained unsolved for the very good reason that it is not really worth solving. A person thoroughly familiar with his field can find plenty of subjects of demonstrable importance needing solution. He should select one of these rather than waste his abilities, in the hope of being original, on matters too slight to justify the time and effort involved. On the other hand, when curiosity truly piques him to learn the solution to some intriguing problem, no matter how trivial it may be, the scholar should be willing to accept the challenge. He should, of course, keep his judgments in perspective and recognize a slight and unimportant problem for what it is.

### **The Nature of the Doctoral Dissertation and the Master's Thesis**

In most graduate schools it is customary to require, as part of the work done to earn an advanced degree, an independent study of an original nature properly conducted by the student, with a report of the procedures and findings written up in the form of a dissertation or thesis. The purpose of this requirement is principally to determine whether the student is able to add original knowledge to his field. Can he successfully carry through a major piece of independent research? Many students misunderstand the nature and the purpose

of a doctoral study or master's thesis and naively expect members of the faculty to exercise strict supervision over every phase of the investigation. Such is not the case in most good graduate schools. The student is deliberately thrown upon his own resources and must prove his ability to identify a suitable problem, to devise a workable method of solving it, to locate and assess correctly the value and meaning of all pertinent evidence, and to arrive at a logical, defensible conclusion.

The doctoral dissertation or master's thesis ordinarily begins when the student applies to the authorities of the graduate school or the department (often through a major professor) for permission to investigate a certain problem within his field. He may indicate what steps he has taken to assure the fact that the problem is new and that he himself is qualified to undertake a solution. Some universities may ask the student to submit a detailed written outline of his proposal, including a careful statement of the problem and its limitations, a description of the procedures he plans to follow, a tentative hypothesis, an explanation of his reasons for undertaking the investigation and the probable usefulness of its results, definitions of special terms to be used in the final report, a review of the current literature (i. e., research) on the subject, and a brief statement regarding the student's qualifications for the project. Other universities may be content to know only what the actual problem is. In either case, the essential thing to understand is that, whatever the university authorities may ask for in the way of preliminary information, they expect the student to shoulder the burden of proof as to his capability and his plans, as well as to assume the full initiative in getting the study under way. Permission to conduct the study under university auspices does not include any kind of guarantee that the study will prove feasible, that the problem approved will not have to be changed, or that the method adopted will bring satisfactory results. If the problem later has to be abandoned or the results prove inconclusive, the student should not blame the faculty for approving it but only himself. The action the faculty takes is merely to make sure, in granting its permission to proceed, that the student has a real problem in mind and that he seems qualified to investigate it.

Once he has received official sanction to begin the study, the student should not look to his adviser or major professor to tell him exactly what he must do. Except for occasional conferences, he should work, in the main, independently. Some professors are willing to work very closely and for long periods of time with a student and like to keep in direct and continual touch with all the steps in the study. Other professors make no attempt at checking on the young scholar's progress and volunteer no advice, but are always willing to discuss difficulties he may encounter in his investigation and will offer sound advice when consulted. In general, the student should regard his major professor as a "resource person" who can provide aid when the going gets rough but not as one who lays down detailed instructions for the conduct of the study. The doctoral dissertation or master's thesis loses much of its value for the student and can be no true test of his ability if too many of the basic decisions have to be made by a professor instead of by the student himself.

When the student has by hard work and profound thinking completed a significant study independently and has presented it in good form as part of the requirement for his degree, he can be justly proud of his achievement. He can now claim a place among the world's leaders in the advancement of knowledge. He has demonstrated beyond question his power to stand upon his own feet as a thinking man and produce an original work of research. There is, and should be, great personal and intellectual satisfaction in this accomplishment. It is to those who have learned how to solve difficult, serious problems of scholarship independently and who can thus add vital original knowledge to the world's present store that we look for the continued progress of our civilization in the generations to come.

### **Summary**

Originality is the touchstone of all true research, for research means adding new knowledge to the field in which it is undertaken. A rehash of other people's ideas or discoveries does not constitute research.

The scholar of today, in striving for originality, is striving to add new truth to the store of human knowledge; he is not concerned with

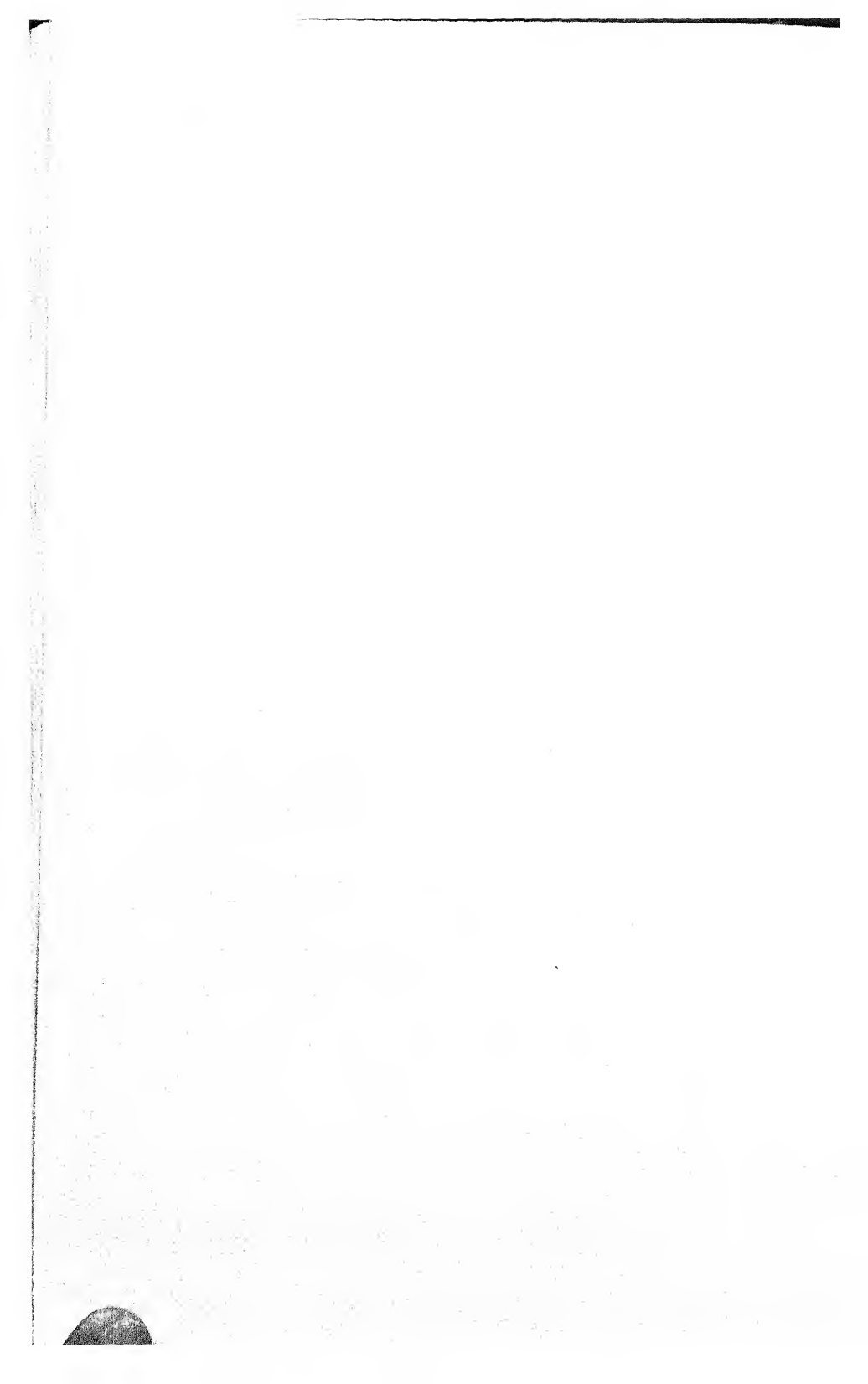
originality as a means of enhancing his prestige. In the past, scholars frequently vied with one another to secure exclusive credit for making new discoveries. Today, having developed a more mature attitude in scholarship, we have a constant exchange of information among those working on similar studies. No scholar will undertake a problem on which another scholar is already working, in the hope of solving it first and winning the race for publication; on the other hand, if a problem is in the public interest, many scholars may ethically work on it at the same time, in the hope of speeding its solution.

Lack of originality may result from failure to carry a project far enough. An exhaustive survey of the ground covered by others is only the starting point for original work of one's own. Impatience to obtain a degree or to see one's work in print may destroy the value of a study by encouraging a premature report — a report made, that is, before the problem has really been solved or properly written up.

Originality is an important consideration in choosing a subject. The problem, to yield new knowledge, must normally be a hitherto untouched one. The search for a new problem, however, occasionally traps a young scholar into the mistake of choosing a trivial subject not worth his time and effort.

Work done by the student on a doctoral dissertation or master's thesis must be original and independent. He should not expect the faculty to instruct him in his method of procedure, for he is being tested to determine whether he can successfully carry through an original research project. Independent success in research not only provides great personal satisfaction to the scholar but marks him as one who is capable of assuming leadership in the essential and rewarding task of adding to the world's knowledge.

CDEFGHIJ-R-73210/6987654



## SELECTED BIBLIOGRAPHY

---

- Albaugh, Ralph M. *Thesis Writing*. Ames, Iowa: Littlefield, Adams and Co., 1951.
- Alexander, Carter, and Arvid J. Burke. *How to Locate Educational Information and Data*. New York: Teachers College, Columbia University, 1958.
- Altick, Richard D. *The Scholar Adventurers*. New York: The Macmillan Co., 1950.
- Barnes, John B. *Educational Research for Classroom Teachers*. New York: G. P. Putnam's Sons, 1960.
- Barr, Arvil S., and others. *Educational Research and Appraisal*. Philadelphia: J. B. Lippincott Co., 1953.
- Barton, Mary N., compiler. *Reference Books: A Guide for Students and Other Users of the Library*. Baltimore: Enoch Pratt Free Library, 1951.
- Barzun, Jacques, and Henry F. Graff. *The Modern Researcher*. New York: Harcourt, Brace and Co., 1957.
- Berelson, Bernard. *Graduate Education in the United States*. New York: McGraw-Hill Book Co., 1960.
- Berger, Joseph, and others. *Types of Formalization in Small-Group Research*. Boston: Houghton Mifflin Co., 1962.
- Best, John W. *Research in Education*. Englewood Cliffs, N.J.: Prentice-Hall, 1959.
- Beveridge, W. I. B. *The Art of Scientific Investigation*. New York: W. W. Norton and Co., 1950.
- Blommers, Paul, and E. F. Lindquist. *Elementary Statistical Methods in Psychology and Education*. Boston: Houghton Mifflin Co., 1960.
- Borg, Walter R. *Educational Research: An Introduction*. New York: David McKay Co., 1963.
- Burton, William H., Roland B. Kimball, and Richard L. Wing. *Education for Effective Thinking*. New York: Appleton-Century-Crofts, 1960.
- Burt, Edwin Arthur. *Right Thinking*. New York: Harper and Bros., 1946.
- Campbell, Angus, and Charles A. Metzner. *Public Use of the Library and Other Sources of Information*. Ann Arbor: Institute for Social Research, University of Michigan, 1950.



- Campbell, William G. *Form and Style in Thesis Writing*. Boston: Houghton Mifflin Co., 1954.
- Chapin, Francis S. *Experimental Design in Sociological Research*. New York: Harper and Bros., 1947.
- Chew, Victor, editor. *Experimental Designs in Industry*. New York: John Wiley and Sons, 1958.
- Clark, Charles E. *An Introduction to Statistics*. New York: John Wiley and Sons, 1953.
- Cochran, William G. *Sampling Techniques*. New York: John Wiley and Sons, 1953.
- Cohen, Lillian. *Statistical Methods for Social Scientists*. New York: Prentice-Hall, 1954.
- Cohen, Morris R. *A Preface to Logic*. New York: Henry Holt and Co., 1944.
- Columbia Associates in Philosophy. *An Introduction to Reflective Thinking*. Boston: Houghton Mifflin Co., 1923.
- Corey, Stephen M. *Action Research to Improve School Practices*. New York: Teachers College, Columbia University, 1953.
- Curti, Merle, editor. *American Scholarship in the Twentieth Century*. Cambridge: Harvard University Press, 1953.
- Deming, William Edwards. *Some Theory of Sampling*. New York: John Wiley and Sons, 1950.
- Dewey, John. *How We Think*. Boston: D. C. Heath and Co., 1933.
- Downie, N. M., and Robert W. Heath. *Basic Statistical Methods*. New York: Harper and Bros., 1959.
- Downs, Robert B. *American Library Resources: A Bibliographical Guide*. Chicago: American Library Association, 1951. Later supplements.
- Edwards, Allen L. *Experimental Design in Psychological Research*. New York: Rinehart and Co., 1950.
- Eells, Walter Crosby. *Surveys of American Higher Education*. New York: Carnegie Foundation for the Advancement of Teaching, 1937. Especially Chapter IX.
- Ferber, Robert, and P. J. Verdoorn. *Research Methods in Economics and Business*. New York: The Macmillan Co., 1962.
- Festinger, Leon, and Daniel Katz. *Research Methods in the Behavioral Sciences*. New York: Dryden Press, 1953.
- Finney, D. J. *Experimental Design and Its Statistical Basis*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1955.
- Fisher, Ronald A. *The Design of Experiments*. New York: Hafner Publishing Co., 1960.
- Freund, John E. *Modern Elementary Statistics*. New York: Prentice-Hall, 1952.

- Gage, N. L., editor. *The Handbook of Research on Teaching*. Chicago: Rand McNally and Co., 1963.
- Garraghan, Gilbert J. *A Guide to Historical Method*. New York: Fordham University Press, 1948.
- Garrett, Allen M. *An Introduction to Research in Music*. Washington: Catholic University of America Press, 1958.
- Garrett, Henry E. *Statistics in Psychology and Education*. New York: David McKay Co., 1958.
- Gee, Wilson. *Social Science Research Methods*. New York: Appleton-Century-Crofts, 1950.
- Good, Carter V. *Introduction to Educational Research*. New York: Appleton-Century-Crofts, 1959.
- Goode, William J., and Paul K. Hatt. *Methods in Social Research*. New York: McGraw-Hill Book Co., 1952.
- Hagood, Margaret Jarman. *Statistics for Sociologists*. New York: Henry Holt and Co., 1941.
- Hammond, Kenneth R., and James E. Householder. *Introduction to Statistical Method*. New York: Alfred A. Knopf, 1962.
- Hansen, Morris H., William N. Hurwitz, and William G. Madow. *Sample Survey Methods and Theory*, 2 vols. New York: John Wiley and Sons, 1953.
- Harris, Chester, W., editor. *Encyclopedia of Educational Research*. New York: The Macmillan Co., 1960.
- Hilbish, Florence M. A. *The Research Paper*. New York: Bookman Associates, 1952.
- Hockett, Homer C. *Critical Method in Historical Research and Writing*. New York: The Macmillan Co., 1955.
- Holmes, Henry W., and others. *Educational Research*. Washington: American Council on Education, 1939.
- Holmes, Parker M. *Marketing Research: Principles and Readings*. Cincinnati: South-Western Publishing Co., 1960.
- Huff, Darrell. *How to Lie with Statistics*. New York: W. W. Norton and Co., 1954.
- Hyman, Herbert H., and others. *Interviewing in Social Research*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1954.
- Jahoda, Marie, Morton Deutsch, and Stuart W. Cook. *Research Methods in Social Relations*. 2 vols. New York: Dryden Press, 1951.
- Jenkinson, Bruce L. *Bureau of the Census Manual of Tabular Presentation*. Washington: U.S. Govt. Printing Office, 1949.
- Johnson, Palmer O. *Statistical Methods in Research*. New York: Prentice-Hall, 1949.

- Kahn, Robert L., and Charles F. Cannell. *The Dynamics of Interviewing*. New York: John Wiley and Sons, 1957.
- Koos, Leonard V. *The Questionnaire in Education*. New York: The Macmillan Co., 1928.
- Larson, Leonard A., Morey R. Fields, and Milton A. Gabrielson. *Problems in Health, Physical and Recreation Education*. New York: Prentice-Hall, 1953.
- Lazarfeld, Paul F., and Morris Rosenberg. *The Language of Social Research*. Glencoe, Ill.: The Free Press, 1955.
- Lewis, Edward E. *Methods of Statistical Analysis in Economics and Business*. Boston: Houghton Mifflin Co., 1953.
- Lindquist, E. F. *Design and Analysis of Experiments in Psychology and Education*. Boston: Houghton Mifflin Co., 1953.
- Luck, David J., and Hugh G. Wales. *Marketing Research*. New York: Prentice-Hall, 1952.
- Lutz, R. R. *Graphic Presentation Simplified*. New York: Funk and Wagnalls Co., 1949.
- Madge, John H. *The Tools of Social Science*. New York: Longmans, Green and Co., 1953.
- McAshan, Hildreth H. *Elements of Educational Research*. New York: McGraw-Hill Book Co., 1963.
- McCall, William A. *How to Experiment in Education*. New York: The Macmillan Co., 1930.
- McConnell, T. R., Douglas E. Scates, and Frank N. Freeman. *The Conceptual Structure of Educational Research*. Chicago: University of Chicago, 1942.
- McKerrow, R. B. *An Introduction to Bibliography for Literary Students*. Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1927.
- McNemar, Quinn. *Psychological Statistics*. New York: John Wiley and Sons, 1955.
- Mead, Margaret, and Rhoda Métraux, editors. *The Study of Culture at a Distance*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1953.
- Measurement and Evaluation Materials in Health, Physical Education, and Recreation*. Bulletin of the American Association for Health, Physical Education, and Recreation. Washington, 1950.
- Merton, Robert K., Marjorie Fiske, and Patricia L. Kendall. *The Focused Interview*. Glencoe, Ill.: The Free Press, 1956.
- Modley, Rudolf. *Pictographs and Graphs: How to Make and Use Them*. New York: Harper and Bros., 1952.
- Monroe, Walter S., and Max D. Engelhardt. *The Scientific Study of Educational Problems*. New York: The Macmillan Co., 1936.

- Mood, Alexander McFarlane. *Introduction to the Theory of Statistics*. New York: McGraw-Hill Book Co., 1950.
- Northrop, F. S. C. *The Logic of the Sciences and the Humanities*. New York: The Macmillan Co., 1947.
- Palmero, David S., and Lewis P. Lipsitt, editors. *Research Readings in Child Psychology*. New York: Holt, Rinehart and Winston, 1963.
- Peatman, John G. *Introduction to Applied Statistics*. New York: Harper and Row, 1963.
- Pugh, Griffith Thompson. *Guide to Research Writing*. Boston: Houghton Mifflin Co., 1963.
- Quirke, Arthur J. *Forged, Anonymous and Suspect Documents*. London: George Routledge and Sons, 1930.
- Remmers, H. H. *Introduction to Opinion and Attitude Measurement*. New York: Harper and Bros., 1954.
- Research for Curriculum Improvement*. 1957 Yearbook of the Association for Supervision and Curriculum Development, National Education Association. Washington, 1957.
- Research Methods Applied to Health, Physical Education, and Recreation*. Bulletin of the American Association for Health, Physical Education, and Recreation. Washington, 1949.
- Robinson, Victor. *The Story of Medicine*. New York: Tudor Press, 1931.
- Rummel, J. Francis. *An Introduction to Research Procedures in Education*. New York: Harper and Bros., 1958.
- Ryan, W. Carson. *Studies in Early Graduate Education*. New York: Carnegie Foundation for the Advancement of Teaching, 1939.
- Sanders, Chauncey. *An Introduction to Research in English Literary History*. New York: The Macmillan Co., 1952.
- Schneider, George. *Theory and History of Bibliography*, translated by Ralph Robert Shaw. New York: Columbia University Press, 1934.
- Simpson, George, and Fritz Kafka. *Basic Statistics*. New York: W. W. Norton and Co., 1952.
- Smith, Henry Lester, and Johnnie Rutland Smith. *An Introduction to Research in Education*. Bloomington, Ind.: Educational Publications, 1959.
- Spear, Mary Eleanor. *Charting Statistics*. New York: McGraw-Hill Book Co., 1952.
- Stephan, Frederick F., and Philip J. McCarthy. *Sampling Opinions*. New York: John Wiley and Sons, 1958.



- Storr, Richard J. *The Beginnings of Graduate Education in America*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1953.
- Travers, Robert M. W. *An Introduction to Educational Research*. New York: The Macmillan Co., 1958.
- Underwood, Benton J. *Psychological Research*. New York: Appleton-Century-Crofts, 1957.
- Van Dalen, Deobald B. *Understanding Educational Research*. New York: McGraw-Hill Book Co., 1962.
- Walker, Helen M., and Walter N. Durost. *Statistical Tables: Their Structure and Use*. New York: Teachers College, Columbia University, 1936.
- Wechsler, Irving R., and Paula Brown, editors. *Evaluating Research and Development*. Los Angeles: University of California Institute of Industrial Relations, 1953.
- Wert, James E., Charles O. Neidt, and J. Stanley Ahmann. *Statistical Methods in Educational and Psychological Research*. New York: Appleton-Century-Crofts, 1954.
- Willoughby, Edwin Eliott. *The Uses of Bibliography*. Hamden, Conn.: The Shoe String Press, 1957.
- Wilson, E. Bright, Jr. *An Introduction to Scientific Research*. New York: McGraw-Hill Book Co., 1952.
- Wolfe, Dael, editor. *Symposium on Basic Research*. Washington: American Association for the Advancement of Science, 1959.
- Wootton, Barbara F. *Testament for Social Science; An Essay in Application of Scientific Method to Human Problems*. New York: W. W. Norton and Co., 1950.
- Young, Pauline V. *Scientific Social Surveys and Research*. New York: Prentice-Hall, 1949.
- Zeisel, Hans. *Say It with Figures*. New York: Harper and Bros., 1947.

# INDEX

- Accident, in finding source materials, 246-247  
 in observations of phenomena, 247  
 making use of in research, 249-250  
 the role of in research, 246-250  
*Account of the Principal Lazarettos in Europe*, 190  
 Accuracy in graphic presentation, 273  
 Adding to knowledge, early methods of, 5-11  
 Agreement, method of. *See* Mill's canons  
*Almagest*, 124  
 American Association for the Advancement of Science, 57  
 American Association of School Administrators, 56  
 American Cancer Society, 188-189, 230-231  
 Anaximander, 15  
 Angell, James B., 39  
 Archaeological remains as documents, 144  
 Archaeology, 16-17, 54  
 Archimedes, 15, 247-248  
 Aristotle, 7, 8, 9, 10, 13, 15, 141, 167, 168  
 Article, the scholarly, 278-282  
 Assumptions, basic, 33-34, 265  
 Authority, appeal to, 6-8  
 Autobiographies as documents, 144  
 Ayres, Leonard P., 58, 194  
 Bacon, Francis, 10, 16, 158  
 Bacon, Roger, 16, 161  
 Bancroft, George, 156  
 Bar charts, 271  
 Barnard, Henry, 160  
 Basic assumptions, 33-34, 265  
 Beard, Charles A., 162-163  
 Bell, Alexander Graham, 40  
*Beowulf*, 154, 247  
 Bible, King James version of, 154  
 Bibliography, as research, 159, 162  
 compilation of, 94-95  
 place of in the manuscript, 279  
 Binet, Alfred, 60  
 Biographical research, 159-160  
 Biographies as documents, 144  
 Biology, 16  
 Boas, George, 52  
 Bodenhoff, Giertrud Birgitte, 76  
 Book review, the scholarly, 282-284  
 Booth, Charles, 192  
 Boswell, James, 145-146, 247  
 Boyle, Robert, 16  
 Briggs, Henry, 16  
 Brown University, 37  
 Browning, Robert, 158-159  
 Bryce, James, 40  
 Buckingham, B. R., quoted, 109-111  
 Bureau of the Census, U.S., 236  
 Butler, Nicholas Murray, quoted, 35  
 Caesar Augustus, census of, 187  
 California, University of, 26, 112  
 California Institute of Technology, 100  
 Cambridge University, 37  
 Cancer survey, 188-189, 230-231  
 Cannon, Walter B., quoted, 12  
 Carter, John, 150, 152  
 Case (in a case study), 238  
 Case history. *See* Case study  
 Case study, the, 238-245  
   difference between survey and, 240-241  
   interview in, 241-242  
   materials used in, 239-241  
   note-taking for, 242-243  
   questionnaires in, 242  
   some techniques of, 241-244  
   subjectivity in, 243-244  
   written records in, 242-243  
 Central tendency, measures of, 216-219  
   means, 216-217  
   median, 217-218  
   mode, 218  
   normal curve, 218-219  
 Chadwick, E. B., 55  
 Champollion, Jean François, 154

- Chance. *See* Accident, the role of in research
- Chance in learning truth, 4
- Charts and graphs. *See* Graphic presentation
- Chatterton, Thomas, 158-159
- Chaucer, Geoffrey, 147, 155
- Chemistry, beginnings of, 16
- Chicago, University of, 44, 46-49
- Child, Francis J., 40
- Christian Fathers, 7
- Clark, Jonas Gilman, 42, 43-45
- Clark University, 42-46
- Clearness in graphic presentation, 272-273
- Clearness in writing reports, 264
- Closed questionnaires, 203
- Clues, in scholarship, 85-87  
the search for, 84-98  
where to look for, 87-88
- Coefficient of correlation, 225
- Coincidence mistaken for cause-and-effect, 82, 225
- Colorado State College, 26, 160
- Columbia University, 36, 57, 58
- Comparative survey, 190
- Complete research, 103-106
- Conclusion. *See* Hypothesis
- Conclusion of an investigation, 77-78
- Conclusions, premature, 79-80
- Concomitant variations, method of.  
*See* Mill's canons
- Congress, Library of, system of classifying books, 93
- Control group, in experiments, 180-182
- Cooperation in doing research, 287-288
- Cooperative research, 25-26, 287-288
- Copernicus, Nicolaus, 16, 124-127, 176
- Correlation, 224-226  
coefficient of, 225
- Courtis arithmetic tests, 58
- Credit for research, 287-288
- Crime, research and solution of a, 70-72
- Critical interpretation, 101-103
- Critical reader, what he looks for, 267-268
- Critical thinking. *See* Thinking
- Cubberley, Ellwood P., 58
- Curve, normal, 218-219
- Darwin, Charles, 10-11, 16, 121, 160, 286-287  
quoted, 10-11
- Data, examination of, 77  
faulty selection of, 158-159  
insufficiency of, 157-158
- Deductive reasoning, 9-11
- Defining special terms, 117-118, 260-261
- Defoe, Daniel, 155
- Democritus, 15
- De Revolutionibus Orbium Coelestium*, 125-126
- Descriptive research. *See* Survey
- Descriptive statistics, 227-229
- Descriptive studies as documents, 144
- Detective work, compared to research, 69-98
- De Vries, Hugo, 121
- Dewey, John, 78, 79  
quoted, 78
- Dewey, Melvil, 92
- Dewey Decimal System, 92, 93
- Diaries as documents, 144, 239
- Dickinson, Emily, 91
- Dispersion or variability, measures of, 220-224, 227  
probable error, 222  
range, 220-221, 227  
significance, 222-224  
standard deviation, 220-221, 227  
standard error, 222
- Dissertation, doctoral, 290-292
- Documentary research, 137, 141-164  
hypothesis in, 162-163  
types of, 159-162
- Documents, accuracy and trustworthiness of, 155-157  
dangers in using, 157-159  
external appraisal of, 148-153  
internal appraisal of, 153-157  
kinds of, 142-145
- Duke University, 213, 233
- Dvorak typewriter keyboard, 180
- Education, research in, 54-65, 193-194
- Educational surveys, 193-194
- Eight-Year Study, 63
- Einstein, Albert, 176
- Element 87, experiments to discover, 81-82
- Eliot, Charles W., 39, 40



- Engelhardt, N. L., 63  
 Equivalent-group method, 179-180  
 Errors in questionnaires, 203-205  
 Essays, 33  
   difference between research reports and, 256-258  
 "Ethan Brand," 123-124  
 Evidence, ignoring adverse, 80  
   presenting, 72-74  
   qualities of, 163-164  
   relevant, material, and competent, 74-75  
   rules of in research and law, 69-83  
   second-hand or hearsay, 75-76  
   *See also* Data  
 Experimental Bureau of Municipal Research, 193  
 Experimental group, 178-182  
 Experimental research, 137, 165-186  
   difficulties in (with people), 182-185  
   in the laboratory, 174-176  
   one-group method of, 178-179  
   parallel-group method of, 179-182  
   rotation-group method of, 182  
   with people, 176-182  
 Eye-witness accounts as documents, 143-144
- Fact, statements of, in research reports, 33, 34, 265  
 Fact-finding research, 99-101  
 Facts, inability to obtain, 81  
 Faults in scholarly papers, 274-275  
 Fermat, Pierre de, 214  
 Final summary in the research report, 262-264  
 Fisher, George, 54-56  
 Fisher, R. A., 234-235  
 Fleming, Alexander, 249, 250  
 Florey, Howard, 249, 250  
 Flow charts, 272  
 Footnotes in the manuscript, 278-279  
 Forum magazine, 55, 194  
 Freud, Sigmund, 238, 239
- Galileo (Galileo Galilei), 16  
   experiment with falling bodies, 13, 166-167  
   some experiments of, 167-168  
 Galton, Francis, 54  
 Galvani, Luigi, 248
- Generalization. *See* Hypothesis  
 Generalization from experience, 4  
 Generalization from statistics, 229-236  
 Geological remains as documents, 144  
 Geology, 16  
 Germany, universities of, 36-37  
 Gesell, Arnold, 61, 194  
 Gilman, Daniel Coit, 39-42, 52  
 Goodyear, Charles, 250  
 Graduate school, aims, 26-27, 34-35  
   beginnings of in the U.S., 36-56  
   methods of instruction in, 28  
 Graduate students, as apprentices in scholarship, 24-26  
   desirable attitudes and habits of, 29-31  
   increase in numbers of, 50  
   number enrolled, 21  
   opportunities of, 19-35  
 Graduate study, characteristics of, 21-28  
   compared with undergraduate study, 20-22  
   methods of instruction in, 28  
   research and, 3-53  
   research as part of, 23-24  
   specialization in, 22-23  
 Graphic presentation, 268-274  
   accuracy in, 273  
   bar charts in, 271  
   clearness in, 272-273  
   flow charts in, 272  
   line graphs in, 269-271  
   maps in, 272  
   pictographs in, 272  
   pie charts in, 271  
   self-contained charts in, 273  
   statistical tables in, 272  
 Graphs. *See* Graphic presentation  
 Greek logic, 8  
 Griswold, A. Whitney, 20, 21  
   quoted, 20  
 Grotefend, Georg Friedrich, 154  
 Growth and development, research in, 60-61
- Hall, G. Stanley, 43-46, 52, 60  
   quoted, 45-46  
 Hanus, Paul, 57, 58  
 Harper, William Rainey, 44, 46-49, 52  
 Harvard University, 36, 51, 57, 146

- Harvey, William, 16, 29  
 Hawthorne, Nathaniel, 123-124, 152  
*Henry V*, 158  
 Herbart, Johann Friedrich, 54  
 Hippocrates, 15  
 Historical-genetic research, 239  
 Historical research. *See* Documentary research  
 Historical studies as documents, 144  
 Historical writings as documents, 144  
 Histories of institutions and organizations, 159, 160  
 History of ideas, 159, 161-162  
 Homer, 145  
 Hopkins, Johns, 38  
 Howard, John, 189-190  
 Hypothesis, 77, 120-131  
     final, 123  
     marks of a good, 127-129  
     necessity of the, 130-131  
     provisional, 122-123, 129-130  
     Ptolemaic vs. Copernican, 124-127  
     stating, in the paper, 258-259  
     testing the, 77, 136-138, 233-235  
  
 Inaccuracy of observation, 81-82  
 Inductive reasoning, 9-11  
 Inference, statistical, 227, 229-236  
 Intelligence, measurement of, 60  
 Interpretation, critical, 101-103  
 Interviews, 199-201  
     in the case study, 241-242  
 Introductory part of a paper, 258-261  
 Intuition in learning truth, 12  
 Investigations, steps in pursuing, 76-78  
 Investigative techniques, 135-250  
     case study, 238-245  
     common sense about, 135-140  
     documentary, 137, 141-164  
     experimental, 137, 165-186  
     statistics in, 211-237  
     survey, 137, 187-210  
 Isham, Ralph, 146  
  
 James, William, 40  
 Johns Hopkins University, 38-42, 60, 100  
     aims of graduate school at, 52-53  
     first graduate program at, 39-42  
 Johnson, Samuel, 145  
 Joint method (Mill's canons), 172-173  
  
 Journals as documents, 144, 239  
  
 Kellogg, Paul, 193  
 Kensington Stone, 148-149  
  
 Lack of objectivity, 82-83  
 Lamarck, Chevalier de, 121  
 Landon, Alfred M., 196  
 Lanier, Sidney, 40  
 Law. *See* Hypothesis  
 Law of chance. *See* Probability, theory of  
 Law of Parsimony, 128  
 Learning process, research on the, 61-62  
*Lehrfreiheit*, 37  
 Lenin, Nikolai, 7  
 Le Play, Frédéric, 190-192, 238, 241  
*Lernfreiheit*, 37  
 Letters as documents, 144, 239  
 Library, as a storehouse of learning, 90-91  
     card catalogues in the, 93-94  
     importance of the, in research, 87  
     periodicals in the, 94  
     systems of classification used by the, 92-93  
     use of a, 91-94  
 Library of Congress system of classifying books, 93  
 Lincoln, Abraham, 150  
 Line graphs, 269-271  
 Literary and philosophical studies as documents, 144  
*Literary Digest* poll, 196  
 Locke, John, 61  
 Logarithms, invention of, 16  
 Logic, 5, 8  
 Lowell, James Russell, 40  
*Lycidas*, 155  
 Lyell, Charles, 16  
 Lysenko, Trofim, 7, 82  
  
 Mailing the manuscript, 279-280  
 Main body of the paper, 261-262  
 Malthus, Thomas, 11, 160, 287  
 Mann, Horace, 102  
 Manuscript, mailing the, 279-280  
     preparation of the, 277-280  
     title page of the, 278  
 Maps, 272  
 Market surveys, 194-195  
 Marlowe, Christopher, 158

- Marx, Karl, 7  
 Master's thesis, 290-292  
 McConnell, T. R., quoted, 21  
 Mean, 216-217  
 Measures of central tendency, 216-219  
 Measures of dispersion or variability, 220-224  
 Median, 217  
 Melville, Herman, 101, 123-124  
 Memoirs as documents, 144  
 Méré, Chevalier de, 213  
 Method, joint. *See* Mill's canons  
 Method, statement of, in research reports, 259-260  
 Method of agreement, 170-172  
 Method of concomitant variations, 173-174  
 Method of difference, 172  
 Method of residues, 173  
 Methods of research. *See* Investigative techniques  
 Michelson, A. M., 175-176  
 Michelson-Morley experiment, 175-176  
 Michigan, University of, 37  
 Mill, John Stuart, 170-174, 177  
 Mill's canons, 170-174  
   joint method, 172-173  
   method of agreement, 170-172  
   method of concomitant variations, 173-174  
   method of difference, 172  
   method of residues, 173  
 Milton, John, 102, 155  
 Missouri Crime Survey, 193  
*Moby-Dick*, 101  
 Mode, 217  
*Modest Proposal*, A, 155  
 Mohammedan learning, 16  
 Morley, E. W., 175-176
- Napier, John, 16  
 National Education Association, 38, 55  
 National Teachers' Association, 38  
 Newman, John Henry, quoted, 21-22  
 Newspaper accounts as documents, 143  
 Newton, Isaac, 16, 175, 176  
 New York Regional Planning Commission, 193  
 New York school survey, 58, 59  
 Normal curve of probability, 218-219  
 Normative-survey. *See* Survey
- Notes, taking, 95-96  
   in the case study, 242  
*Novum Organum*, 16  
 Null hypothesis, 223, 233-235
- Objectivity, lack of, 82-83  
 Observation, inaccuracy of, 81-82  
 Official records as documents, 142-143  
 Offprints of articles, 282  
*Omnis ex Ovo*, 29  
*On the Origin of Species*, 287  
 One-group method of experiment, 178-179  
 Open and closed questionnaires, 203  
 Opinion, expert, 75  
   in research reports, 33, 34, 265, 266-267  
   of a recognized authority, 34, 75  
   use of, in learning truth, 7  
 Origin of living things, 168-170  
 Originality in research, 285-293  
   credit for and cooperation in research, 287-288  
   in selection of the problem, 289-290  
 Outlining, 255-256  
 Oxford University, 37
- Parallel-group method of experiment, 179-182  
*Parallel Lives*, 238  
 Parsimony, Law of, 128  
 Pascal, Blaise, 213-214  
   quoted, 34  
 Pasteur, Louis, 169-170, 248-249  
   quoted, 250  
 Pavlov, Ivan, 178  
 Payment for publication, 277  
 Pearson, Karl, 54  
 Peirce, Charles S., 40  
 Pepys, Samuel, 154  
 Percy, Bishop Thomas, 246-247  
 Periodicals as sources, 87-88  
   judging, 88-90  
 Physics, 16  
 Pictographs, 272  
 Pictorial questionnaires, 203  
 Pic charts, 271-272  
 Pierpont Morgan Library, 152  
 Plato, 7  
 Plutarch, 238  
 Poe, Edgar Allan, 78  
 Pollard, Graham, 150, 152  
 Population, statistical, 230-232

- Premature conclusions, 79-80  
 Premature report of research, dangers of the, 288-289  
 Preparation of manuscript, 277-281  
 Primary sources, importance of, 88-90, 146-148  
 Probable error, 212, 222  
 Probability, theory of, 212-214  
   applications of, 214-215, 230  
   law of chance, 212, 214  
 Problem of an investigation or study, 76  
   in introductory part of paper, 258  
   judging, 118-119  
   originality in selection of, 289-290  
   questions to ask about, 113-115  
   selection of, 107-119  
   stating, 115-118, 258, 260, 261  
 Progressive Education Association, 63  
 Proofreading, 281-282  
 Psychology, research in, 54, 60-62  
 Ptolemy of Alexandria, 15, 124-127  
 Public opinion surveys, 194-195  
 Publication, 276-284  
   offprints, 282  
   payment for, 277  
   preparation of manuscript for, 277-280  
   proofreading, 281-282  
   scholarly book review, 282-284  
 Purpose of study, statement of, in research reports, 260  
 Pythagoras, 15
- Questionnaires, 201-207  
   errors in, 203-205  
   in the case study, 242  
   open and closed, 203  
   pictorial, 203  
   reactions against, 205-206  
   validating, 206-207  
 Quirke, Capt. Arthur J., 151
- Random sampling. *See* Sampling  
 Range (in statistical distribution), 220-221  
 Ratiocination, 78  
 Reactions against questionnaires, 205-206  
 Reading proof, 281-282  
 Reading skills, importance of, 97  
 Reasoning, deductive and inductive, 9-11
- Redi, Francesco, 168-169  
 Reflection. *See* Thinking  
 Reflective thinking. *See* Thinking  
*Reliques of Ancient English Poetry*, 247  
 Representatives of samples, 196-199, 230-233  
 Research, and graduate study, 3-53  
   case study, 137, 238-245  
   common sense about, 135-140  
   complete, 103-106  
   cooperative, 25-26, 287-288  
   credit for, 287-288  
   critical interpretation, 101-103  
   ✓development of, 14-17  
   documentary, 137, 141-164  
   experimental, 137, 165-186  
   fact-finding, 99-101  
   importance of, 3-18  
   originality in, 285-293  
   preparing a report of, 253-275  
   presenting the results of, 253-293  
   publication of, 276-284  
   role of accident in, 246-250  
   statistics in, 211-237  
   steps in, 12  
   survey, 137, 187-210  
   three types of, 99-106  
   what is not, 106  
   who carries on, 4  
 Research design, consistency in, 236  
 Research reports, 32-34, 253-275  
   difference between essays and, 256-258  
 Residues, method of. *See* Mill's canons  
 Results of research, presenting the, 253-293  
   originality in, 285-293  
   preparing the written report in, 253-275  
   publication, 276-284  
 Review of literature in a research report, 268, 291  
 Revision of the paper, 289  
 Rhine, Joseph B., 213, 233  
 Rice, J. M., 55, 56-57, 61, 194  
 Rockefeller, John D., 46  
 Röntgen, Wilhelm Konrad, 80, 81, 249  
 Roosevelt, Franklin D., 156, 196  
 Rosetta Stone, 154  
 Rotation-group method in experiments, 182

- Rowntree, B. S., 192-193  
 Rules of evidence. *See* Evidence  
 Rushing into print, 286  
 Russell Sage Foundation, 193
- Salk vaccine, 177  
 Sampling, 195-199, 230-235  
   errors in, 235  
   random, 197, 231  
   representativeness of, 196-199, 236  
   size and nature of, 196-199  
   stability of, 232-233  
   stratification in, 198  
   theory of, 230-232  
 Santschi, Felix, 165-166  
 Schliemann, Heinrich, 17, 54, 145  
 Scholar, definition of a, 22  
 Scholarly article, 277-281  
 Scholarly book review, 282-284  
 Scholarly papers. *See* Written report, preparing the  
 Scholarship, meaning of, 23  
   the ways of, 69-131  
 Scientific attitude, 31-32  
 Scientific inquiry, 5  
 Scientific method, 11-13, 17-18  
 Scientific thinking. *See* Thinking  
 Seashore Test of Musical Talent, 62  
 Secondary sources. *See* Sources, primary and secondary  
 Seminar method, 28  
 Shakespeare, William, 151, 157-158, 161  
*Shortest Way with Dissenters, The*, 155  
 Significance (in statistical measurement), 222-224  
 Simple language in research reports, 264  
 Size of sampling, 196-199  
 Sloan, Alfred P., Jr., quoted, 31  
 Social survey, beginnings of, 189-192  
   later, 192-193  
 Solution. *See* Hypothesis  
 Sources, primary and secondary, 88-90  
 Soviet Russia, research in, 7, 82, 121  
 Special terms, 117-118  
 Standard deviation, 220-221  
 Standard error, 222  
 Stanford University, 58  
*State of Prisons, The*, 190  
 Statements of fact in research reports, 33, 34, 265
- Statistical reasoning, 227-237  
   faulty, 236  
 Statistical tables, 262  
 Statistics, 211-237  
   applications of probability, 212-214  
   correlation, 224-226  
   mean, 216-218  
   measures of central tendency, 216-219  
   measures of dispersion or variability, 220-224  
   median, 217-218  
   mode, 218  
   normal curve, 218-219  
   probable error, 212, 222  
   range, 220  
   significance, 222-224  
   standard deviation, 220-222  
   standard error, 222  
   theory of probability, 212-214  
 Status studies. *See* Survey  
 Stewart, Randall, 152  
 Stone, Major, 247  
 Strabo, 15  
 Stratification. *See* Sampling  
 Strayer, George D., 58, 63, 194  
 Summary in the research report, 262-264  
 Survey, 187-210  
   cancer, 188-189  
   comparative, 190  
   educational, 57-60, 193-194  
   fact-finding, 207-209  
   generalizing from the, 207-209  
   interviews for the, 199-201  
   past surveys as documents, 144  
   public opinion, 194-195  
   questionnaires in the, 201-207  
   sampling procedures for the, 195-199  
   social, 189-193  
 Swift, Jonathan, 155  
 Syllogism, 8-9
- Tappan, Henry, 36, 37, 38  
 Teacher training in graduate programs, 51  
 Techniques of research. *See* Investigative techniques  
 Temple, William, 247  
 Testing the hypothesis. *See* Hypothesis  
 Thales, 15

- Theophrastus, 15  
 Theory. *See* Hypothesis  
 Theory of probability, 212-214  
 Thesis, master's, 290-292  
 Thinker, the scholar as, 78-79  
 Thinking, critical, 78  
     dangers to, 79-83  
     reflective (reflection), 78  
     scientific, 78  
     within fixed limits, 80-81  
 Third person used in research reports, 257  
 Thorndike, Edward L., 57, 58, 61, 62, 178, 184, 194  
 Thorndike Scale (handwriting), 57  
 Three types of research, 99-106  
 Thucydides, 141  
 Tinker, Chauncey B., 145-146  
 Title page of the manuscript, 278  
*Treatise on the Arithmetical Triangle*, 214  
 Trial-and-error method of learning truth, 4  
 Tufts, James H., 27-28  
 Turner, Frederick Jackson, 162  
 Types of research, three, 99-106  
  
 Validating the questionnaire, 206-207  
 Vanderbilt University, 152  
 Variability, measures of, 220-224  
 Vinci, Leonardo da, 10  
  
 Virginia, University of, 36  
  
 Washington, George, 156  
 Wayland, Francis, 37-38  
 Ways of Scholarship, the, 69-131  
 Weismann, August, 121  
 White, Andrew D., 39  
 Wickersham Commission on Law Observance and Enforcement, 193  
 Wilson, Woodrow, 40  
 Written report, common faults of the, 274-275  
     distinction between essays and research reports, 256-258  
     final summary in the, 262-264  
     graphic presentation in the, 268-274  
     how to proceed with the, 254-256  
     introductory information in the, 258-261  
     main body of the, 261-262  
     organizing for the, 258  
     preparing the, 253-275  
     purpose of the, 253  
     use of third person in the, 257  
 Wundt, Wilhelm, 54  
  
 X-ray, discovery of the, 80-81, 249  
  
 Yale University, 20, 26, 46, 51, 61, 145, 194

